

GW6600 Series User manual

Issue: 1.7
Date: 13 July 2018

1	Introduction	10
1.1	Document scope	10
1.2	Using this documentation	10
2	GW6600 Series hardware	13
2.1	Hardware specification.....	13
2.2	Hardware features	13
2.3	GSM and LTE technology.....	13
2.4	Power supply	14
2.5	Dimensions	14
2.6	Compliance	14
2.7	Operating temperature range	15
2.8	Antenna.....	16
2.9	Components.....	16
2.10	Inserting the SIM cards	17
2.11	Connecting the SIM lock	17
2.12	Connecting cables	17
2.13	Connecting the antenna.....	17
2.14	Connecting the WiFi antenna	18
2.15	Powering up	18
2.16	Reset button	18
3	GW6600 Series LED behaviour.....	19
3.1	Main LED behaviour.....	19
3.2	Ethernet port LED behaviour	21
4	Factory configuration extraction from SIM card	22
5	Accessing the router.....	23
5.1	Configuration packages used	23
5.2	Accessing the router over Ethernet using the web interface.....	23
5.3	Accessing the router over Ethernet using an SSH client	24
5.4	Accessing the router over Ethernet using a Telnet client	25
5.5	Configuring the password.....	25
5.6	Configuring the password using the web interface.....	25
5.7	Configuring the password using UCI	26
5.8	Configuring the password using package options.....	26
5.9	Accessing the device using RADIUS authentication	27
5.10	Accessing the device using TACACS+ authentication	28
5.11	SSH	31
5.12	Package dropbear using UCI.....	33
5.13	Certs and private keys.....	34
5.14	Configuring a router's web server	35
5.15	Basic authentication (httpd conf)	40

5.16	Securing uhttpd	41
5.17	Displaying custom information via login screen	41
6	Router file structure	43
6.1	System information	43
6.2	Identify your software version	44
6.3	Image files	45
6.4	Directory locations for UCI configuration files	45
6.5	Viewing and changing current configuration	45
6.6	Configuration file syntax	46
6.7	Managing configurations	46
6.8	Exporting a configuration file	47
6.9	Importing a configuration file	48
7	Using the Command Line Interface	52
7.1	Overview of some common commands	52
7.2	Using Unified Configuration Interface (UCI)	55
7.3	Configuration files	60
7.4	Configuration file syntax	60
8	Upgrading router firmware	62
8.1	Software versions	62
8.2	Upgrading firmware using CLI	68
8.3	Firmware recovery	70
9	System settings	71
9.1	Syslog overview	71
9.2	Configuration package used	71
9.3	Configuring system properties	72
9.4	System settings using command line	77
9.5	System diagnostics	79
9.6	Advanced filtering of syslog messages	82
10	Configuring an Ethernet interface	87
10.1	Configuration packages used	87
10.2	Configuring an Ethernet interface using the web interface	87
10.3	Interface configuration using command line	100
10.4	Configuring port maps	103
10.5	Port map packages	103
10.6	Interface diagnostics	104
11	Configuring VLAN	107
11.1	Maximum number of VLANs supported	107
11.2	Configuration package used	107
11.3	Configuring VLAN using the web interface	107
11.4	Viewing VLAN interface settings	110

11.5	Configuring VLAN using the UCI interface.....	111
12	Configuring a WiFi connection	112
12.1	Configuration packages used	112
12.2	Configuring a WiFi interface using the web interface.....	112
12.3	Configuring WiFi in AP mode.....	118
12.4	Configuring WiFi using UCI	120
12.5	Creating a WiFi in client mode using the web interface.....	123
12.6	Configuring WiFi in client mode using command line.....	124
13	Configuring an ADSL interface	126
13.1	ADSL connections	126
13.2	ADSL connection options on your router	126
13.3	Configuration package used	127
13.4	Creating a new ADSL PPPoA connection	127
13.5	PPPoA: general setup	129
13.6	PPPoA: advanced settings	130
13.7	PPPoA: firewall settings	131
13.8	Creating an ADSL PPPoA connection using UCI	132
13.9	Creating a new ADSL PPPoEoA connection.....	133
13.10	Configuring an ADSL PPPoEoA connection using UCI.....	139
13.11	Configuring an ADSL bridge connection with static IP	140
13.12	ADSL diagnostics	147
14	Configuring a mobile connection	150
14.1	Configuration package used	150
14.2	Configuring a mobile connection using the web interface.....	150
14.3	Configuring a mobile connection using CLI	156
14.4	Diagnostics	158
15	Configuring mobile manager.....	161
15.1	Configuration package used	161
15.2	Configuring mobile manager using the web interface.....	161
15.3	Configuring mobile manager using command line.....	166
15.4	Monitoring SMS	168
15.5	Sending SMS from the router	169
15.6	Sending SMS to the router	169
16	Configuring a GRE interface	170
16.1	Configuration packages used	170
16.2	Creating a GRE connection using the web interface	170
16.3	GRE configuration using command line	175
16.4	GRE configuration using UCI.....	175
16.5	GRE configuration using package options	175
16.6	GRE diagnostics	176

17 Dial modem	178
17.1 V.90 modem scenarios	178
17.2 Setting up the V.90 physical port connection	179
17.3 Configuring the modem as a dial out interface via UCI interface.....	179
17.4 Configuring the modem as a dial in interface via UCI	180
18 Configuring static routes	183
18.1 Configuration package used	183
18.2 Configuring static routes using the web interface	183
18.3 Configuring IPv6 routes using the web interface	184
18.4 Configuring routes using command line	184
18.5 IPv4 routes using UCI	185
18.6 IPv4 routes using package options	186
18.7 IPv6 routes using UCI	186
18.8 IPv6 routes using packages options.....	186
18.9 Static routes diagnostics	187
19 Configuring BGP (Border Gateway Protocol)	188
19.1 Configuration package used	188
19.2 Configuring BGP using the web interface	188
19.3 Configuring BGP using command line.....	192
19.4 View routes statistics.....	194
20 Configuring OSPF (Open Shortest Path First)	196
20.1 Introduction	196
20.2 Configuration package used	201
20.3 Configuring OSPF using the web interface	202
20.4 Configuring OSPF using the command line	205
20.5 OSPF using UCI	206
20.6 OSPF using package options.....	207
20.7 OSPF diagnostics	208
20.8 Quagga/Zebra console.....	209
21 Configuring VRRP	215
21.1 Overview	215
21.2 Configuration package used	215
21.3 Configuring VRRP using the web interface	215
21.4 Configuring VRRP using command line.....	219
22 Configuring Routing Information Protocol (RIP)	222
22.1 Introduction	222
22.2 Configuration package used	223
22.3 Configuring RIP using the web interface.....	224
22.4 Configuring RIP using command line	228
22.5 RIP diagnostics	232

23 Configuring Multi-WAN	236
23.1 Configuration package used	236
23.2 Configuring Multi-WAN using the web interface	236
23.3 Configuring Multi-WAN using UCI	240
23.4 Multi-WAN diagnostics	242
24 Automatic operator selection.....	244
24.1 Configuration package used	244
24.2 Configuring automatic operator selection via the web interface	244
24.3 Configuring via UCI	267
24.4 Configuring no PMP + roaming using UCI	272
24.5 Automatic operator selection diagnostics via the web interface	274
24.6 Automatic operator selection diagnostics via UCI	275
25 Configuring Connection Watch (cwatch)	280
25.1 Configuration package used	280
25.2 Configuring Connection Watch using the web interface	280
25.3 Configuring cwatch using command line.....	282
25.4 cwatch diagnostics	283
26 Configuring DHCP server and DNS (Dnsmasq).....	284
26.1 Configuration package used	284
26.2 Configuring DHCP and DNS using the web interface	284
26.3 Configuring DHCP and DNS using command line	294
27 Configuring DHCP client.....	299
27.1 Configuration packages used	299
27.2 Configuring DHCP client using the web interface	299
27.3 Configuring DHCP client using command line	305
27.4 DHCP client diagnostics	306
28 Configuring DHCP forwarding	309
28.1 Configuration packages used	309
28.2 Configuring DHCP forwarding using the web interface	309
28.3 Configuring DHCP forwarding using command line	310
28.4 DHCP forwarding over IPSec.....	311
28.5 DHCP forwarding diagnostics	314
29 Configuring Dynamic DNS.....	316
29.1 Overview	316
29.2 Configuration packages used	316
29.3 Configuring Dynamic DNS using the web interface	316
29.4 Dynamic DNS using UCI.....	318
30 Configuring hostnames.....	320
30.1 Overview	320
30.2 Local host file records.....	320

30.3	PTR records.....	322
30.4	Static leases.....	324
31	Configuring firewall	327
31.1	Configuration package used	327
31.2	Configuring firewall using the web interface	327
31.3	Configuring firewall using UCI	339
31.4	IPv6 notes	342
31.5	Implications of DROP vs. REJECT	342
31.6	Connection tracking	343
31.7	Firewall examples	343
32	Configuring IPsec.....	351
32.1	Configuration package used	351
32.2	Configuring IPsec using the web interface.....	351
32.3	Configuring IPsec using UCI	360
32.4	Configuring an IPsec template for DMVPN via the web interface	364
32.5	Configuring an IPsec template to use with DMVPN	371
32.6	IPsec diagnostics using the web interface	373
32.7	IPsec diagnostics using UCI	373
33	Dynamic Multipoint Virtual Private Network (DMVPN)	374
33.1	Prerequisites for configuring DMVPN.....	374
33.2	Advantages of using DMVPN.....	374
33.3	DMVPN scenarios	375
33.4	Configuration packages used	377
33.5	Configuring DMVPN using the web interface	377
33.6	DMVPN diagnostics.....	379
34	Configuring multicasting using PIM and IGMP interfaces	382
34.1	Overview	382
34.2	Configuration package used	382
34.3	Configuring PIM and IGMP using the web interface.....	382
34.4	Configuring PIM and IGMP using UCI	384
35	QoS: VLAN 802.1Q PCP tagging	386
35.1	Configuring VLAN PCP tagging	386
36	QoS: type of service.....	389
36.1	QoS configuration overview	389
36.2	Configuration packages used	389
36.3	Configuring QoS using the web interface	389
36.4	Configuring QoS using UCI	391
36.5	Example QoS configurations.....	394
37	Management configuration settings	395
37.1	Activator.....	395

37.2	Monitor	395
37.3	Configuration packages used	395
37.4	Autoload: boot up activation.....	396
37.5	Autoload packages	396
37.6	Autoload using UCI	399
37.7	HTTP Client: configuring activation using the web interface	400
37.8	Httpclient: Activator configuration using UCI	402
37.9	Httpclient: Activator configuration using package options.....	403
37.10	User management using UCI	404
37.11	Configuring the management user password using UCI.....	405
37.12	Configuring management user password using package options.....	405
37.13	User management using UCI	406
37.14	User management using package options	406
37.15	Configuring user access to specific web pages	407
38	Configuring Monitor	408
38.1	Introduction	408
38.2	Reporting device status to Monitor	408
38.3	Reporting GPS location to Monitor	414
38.4	Reporting syslog to Monitor	415
38.5	Configuring ISAD	417
39	Configuring SNMP	420
39.1	Configuration package used	420
39.2	Configuring SMNP using the web interface.....	420
39.3	Configuring SNMP using command line	427
39.4	Configuring SNMP interface alias with static SNMP index	435
39.5	SNMP diagnostics.....	437
40	Event system	439
40.1	Configuration package used	439
40.2	Event system overview	439
40.3	Configuring the event system using the web interface	440
40.4	Configuring the event system using command line	452
40.5	Event system diagnostics.....	460
41	Configuring data usage monitor	463
41.1	Introduction	463
41.2	Configuration package used	463
41.3	Configuring data usage using the web interface	463
41.4	Data usage status	466
41.5	Data usage diagnostics	466
42	Configuring Terminal Server.....	468
42.1	Overview	468

42.2	Configuration packages used	468
42.3	Configuring Terminal Server using the web interface	468
42.4	Terminal Server using UCI	479
42.5	Terminal Server using package options.....	480
42.6	Terminal server DSR signal management network configuration	480
42.7	Serial mode GPIO control.....	482
42.8	Terminal Server diagnostics	482
43	Configuring SAToP and CESoPSN	485
43.1	What are SAToP and CESoPSN?	485
43.2	Clocking.....	485
43.3	Virtual Access proprietary SAToP/CESoPSN protocol extension.....	486
43.4	Configuration package used	486
43.5	Configuring SAToP/CESoPSN	487
43.6	Configuring main settings using UCI	488
43.7	Configuring port settings using the web interface	489
43.8	Configuring port settings using UCI	494
43.9	CESoPSN diagnostics.....	496
44	Configuring ISDN pseudowire.....	506
44.1	Introduction	506
44.2	Pseudowire functionality	507
44.3	ISDN pseudowire in client role	507
44.4	ISDN pseudowire in client and provider role (back-to-back)	508
45	Configuring a leased line interface	512
45.1	Terminal Server: V.23 modem emulation	512
45.2	CESoPSN: transparent mode	512
45.3	Gain and attenuation control	512
45.4	Leased line (LL) status.....	514
45.5	Leased line (LL) statistics.....	514
45.6	LL wiring.....	516
46	Serial interface	517
46.1	Overview	517
46.2	Monitoring serial interfaces using the web interface.....	517
46.3	Monitoring serial interfaces using command line	518

1 Introduction

Based on the very latest ADSL2+, WiFi and 3G HSPA+ technology, Virtual Access GW6600 Series routers address the needs of today's businesses for managed resilient broadband connectivity. Point of Sale (POS), retail branch office, security monitoring and other key business applications demand managed connectivity that is cost-effective, high performance and resilient to network outage or last mile circuit failure.

Designed for managed network providers, GW6600 Series routers provide secure WAN connectivity for internet and private networking environments over both ADSL2+ and 3G broadband paths and incorporate optional 802.11n WiFi connectivity.

1.1 Document scope

This document covers the following GW6600 Series models.

GW6600 Series										
Model	ADSL2+	ETH	WiFi	3G/HSPA+	4G/LTE	CDMA 450	Dual SIM	V.92 Modem	Analog Leased Line	ISDN BRI
GW6610	1	4						Opt	Opt	Opt
GW6611W	1	4	1					Opt	Opt	Opt
GW6630	1	4		yes			yes	Opt	Opt	Opt
GW6630W	1	4	1	yes			yes	Opt	Opt	Opt
GW6640	1	4		yes	yes		yes	Opt	Opt	Opt
GW6640W	1	4	1	yes	yes		yes	Opt	Opt	Opt
GW6650	1	4				yes		Opt	Opt	Opt
GW6650W	1	4	1			yes		Opt	Opt	Opt

1.2 Using this documentation

You can configure your router using either the router's web interface or via the command line using UCI commands. Each chapter explains first the web interface settings, followed by how to configure the router using UCI. The web interface screens are shown along with a path to the screen for example, 'In the top menu, select **Service -> SNMP**.' followed by a screen grab.

After the screen grab there is an information table that describes each of the screen's fields.

1.2.1 Information tables

We use information tables to show the different ways to configure the router using the router's web and command line. The left-hand column shows three options:

- **Web:** refers the command on the router's web page,
- **UCI:** shows the specific UCI command, and
- **Opt:** shows the package option.

The right-hand column shows a description field that describes the feature's field or command and shows any options for that feature.

Some features have a drop-down menu and the options are described in a table within the description column. The default value is shown in a grey cell.

Values for enabling and disabling a feature are varied throughout the web interface, for example, 1/0; Yes/No; True/False; check/uncheck a radio button. In the table descriptions, we use **0** to denote Disable and **1** to denote Enable.

Some configuration sections can be defined more than once. An example of this is the routing table where multiple routes can exist and all are named 'route'. For these sections, the UCI command will have a code value **[0]** or **[x]** (where x is the section number) to identify the section.

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Metric UCI: network.@route[0].metric Opt: metric	Specifies the route metric to use.

Note: these sections can be given a label for identification when using UCI or package options.

```
network.@route[0]=route
network.@route[0].metric=0
```

can be written as:

```
network.routename=route
network.routename.metric=0
```

However the documentation usually assumes that a section label is not configured.

The following table shows fields from a variety of chapters to illustrate the explanations above.

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																
Web: Enable UCI: cesop.main.enable Opt: enable	Enables CESoPSN services. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.												
0	Disabled.																
1	Enabled.																
Web: Syslog Severity UCI: cesop.main.severity Opt: log_severity	Selects the severity used for logging events CESoPSN in syslog. The following levels are available. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Emergency</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Alert</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>Critical</td></tr> <tr> <td>3</td><td>Error</td></tr> <tr> <td>4</td><td>Warning</td></tr> <tr> <td>5</td><td>Notice</td></tr> <tr> <td>6</td><td>Informational</td></tr> <tr> <td>7</td><td>Debug</td></tr> </table>	0	Emergency	1	Alert	2	Critical	3	Error	4	Warning	5	Notice	6	Informational	7	Debug
0	Emergency																
1	Alert																
2	Critical																
3	Error																
4	Warning																
5	Notice																
6	Informational																
7	Debug																
Web: Agent Address UCI: snmpd.agent[0].agentaddress Opt: agentaddress	Specifies the address(es) and port(s) on which the agent should listen. [(udp tcp):]port[@address][,...]																

Table 1: Example of an information table

1.2.2 Definitions

Throughout the document, we use the host name 'VA_router' to cover all router models. UCI commands and package option examples are shown in the following format:

```
root@VA_router:~# vacmd show current config
```

1.2.3 Diagnostics

Diagnostics are explained at the end of each feature's chapter.

1.2.4 UCI commands

For detailed information on using UCI commands, read chapters 'Router File Structure' and 'Using Command Line Interface'.

2 GW6600 Series hardware

2.1 Hardware specification

2.1.1 GW6600 Series router model variants

Model	ADSL2+	Eth	WiFi	3G HSPA	4G LTE	CDMA 450	Dual SIM	V92 Modem	ALL	ISDN BRI
GW6610	1	4	opt						opt	
GW6611	1	4	opt					yes	opt	
GW6612	1	4	opt						opt	yes
GW6630	1	4	opt	yes			yes		opt	
GW6631	1	4	opt	yes			yes	yes	opt	
GW6632	1	4	opt	yes			yes		opt	yes
GW6640	1	4	opt		yes		yes		opt	
GW6641	1	4	opt		yes		yes	yes	opt	
GW6642	1	4	opt		yes		yes		opt	yes
GW6650	1	4	opt			yes			opt	

2.2 Hardware features

2.2.1 GW6600 Series hardware features

- Dual SIM sockets
- Dual antenna SMA connectors
- Four 10/100 Mbps Ethernet ports
- Optional V.92, ALL or ISDN ports
- Optional WiFi
- Optional SIM cover

2.3 GSM and LTE technology

- HSPA+
- EDGE/GPRS
- Download up to 21Mbps
- Upload up to 5.76Mbps
- 2100/1900/900/850MHz bands
- LTE 2100/1900/1800/850/2600/900/800MHz bands

2.4 Power supply

The GW6600 Series router has three power supply options:

- 100V-240V AC PSU (standard)
- 100V-240V AC PSU with extended temperature support -20°C to +70°C
- 10V-59V DC power lead

2.5 Dimensions

Unit size:	225W 158D 37H mm
Unit weight:	916g

2.6 Compliance

The GW6600 Series routers are compliant and tested to the following standards:

Safety	EN60950-1: 2006 + A12: 2011
EMC	EN55022: 2010 Class B and EN55024: 2010
Environmental	ETSI 300 019-1-3 Sinusoidal Vibration and Shock ETSI 300 019-2-3 Random Vibration

2.7 Operating temperature range

The operating temperature range depends on the router model and the router's type of module.

RF Band	Region	2G Bands	3G Bands	LTE Bands	Operating Temp	Order Code
A	Europe China	850/900/1800/ 1900	900/2100	-	-40°C to 70°C	-RFA
B	Europe Asia	850/900/1800/ 1900	850/900/1900/ 2100	-	-40°C to 70°C	-RFB
C	Europe Asia	850/900/1800/ 1900	850/900/1900/2100	B1/B2/B3/B5/B7/B8/B20	-30°C to 70°C	-RFC
D	Worldwide	-	-	B3/B7/B20/B31	-20°C to 60°C	-RFD
E	Europe	900/1800	900/2100	B1/B3/B7/B8/B20/ B38/B40	-30°C to 70°C	-RFE
F	Worldwide	-	CDMA TX 452.500 ~ 457.475 RX 462.000 ~ 467.475	-	-20°C to 60°C	-RFF
G	Worldwide	850/900/1800/ 1900	850/900/2100	B1/B3/B5/B7/B20	-40°C to 70°C	-RFG
H	North America	-	850/1900	B2/B4/B5/B17	-30°C to 70°C	-RFH
J	Worldwide	450	-	-	-40°C to 70°C	-RFJ
K	EMEA APAC	850/900/1800/ 1900	850/900/1800/ 1900	B1/B2/B3/B7/B8/B20/B5/B28	-20°C to 70°C	-RFK
L	Europe APAC	900/1800	900/2100	-	-40°C to 70°C	-RFL
M	North America	-	850/1900	B2/B4/B5/B17	-30°C to 70°C	-RFM
N	Worldwide	-	850/900/1700/1800/ 1900/2100	B1/B2/B3/B4/B5/ B7/B12/B13/B20/ B25/B26/B29/B30/ B41	-40°C to 70°C	-RFN
P	Australia New Zealand Latin America Taiwan	850/900/1800/ 1900	850/900/1900/2100	B1/B2/B3/B4/B5/ B7/B8/B28/B40	-40°C to 70°C	-RFP
Q	Mexico USA Canada	-	850/1900	B1/B2/ B4/B5/ B12/B13	-40°C to 70°C	-RFQ
R	EMEA Korea Thailand Indonesia	900/1800	850/900/2100	B1/B2/B3/B5/B7 B8/B20/B38/B40 B41	-40°C to 70°C	-RFR
S	Europe	900/1800	850/900/2100	B1/B3/B5/B7/B8 B20/B38/B40/B41	-40°C to 70°C	-RFS
X	Australia	900/1800	850/900/2100	B1/B3/B5/B7/B28	-40°C to 70°C	-RFX

Table 2: RF bands with operating temperatures

2.7.1 Standard operating temperature range

0°C to +50°C

2.7.2 Optional industrial temperature range

Order code: -ET-20°C to +65°C

Order code: -RFF -20°C to +60°C

2.7.3 External AC PSU operating temperature ranges

0°C to +70°C PSU

-40°C to +70°C PSU

2.8 Antenna

GW6600 Series routers have four SMA connectors for connection of up to four antennas for antenna diversity. Antenna diversity helps improve the quality of a wireless link by mitigating problems associated with multipath interference.

2.9 Components

To enable and configure connections on your router, it must be correctly installed.

The GW6600 Series router contains an internal web server that you use for configurations. Before you can access the internal web server and start the configuration, ensure the components are correctly connected and that your PC has the correct networking setup.

All GW6600 Series routers come with the following components as standard:

1 x GW6600 Series router (models vary)	
1 x Ethernet cable RJ45 to RJ45 (yellow).	
1 x ADSL cable: RJ11 to RJ11 (purple)	
1 x 12V power supply unit (2 parts).	

Table 3: GW6600 Series router standard components

Optional components include:

1 x V.90 cable: RJ45 to RJ11 (blue) (IE/EU customers only)	
1 x V.90 cable: RJ45 to 431A BT cable (UK customers only)	
1 x ISDN cable: RJ45 to RJ45 (yellow)	
1 x lockable SIM cover.	
1 x 3G antenna	
1 x WiFi antenna	
Extra antennas	Virtual Access supplies a wide range of antennas for 3G and WiFi. Please visit our website: www.virtualaccess.com or contact Virtual Access for more information.

Table 4: GW6600 Series router optional components

2.10 Inserting the SIM cards

2.10.1 GW6600 Series models

- Ensure the unit is powered off.
- Hold the SIM 1 card with the chip side facing down and the cut corner front left.
- Gently push the SIM card into the SIM slot 1 until it clicks in.
- If using SIM 2 hold the SIM with the chip side facing down and the cut corner front left.
- Gently push the SIM card into the SIM slot 2 until it clicks in.

2.11 Connecting the SIM lock

Connect the SIM lock using the Allen key provided.

2.12 Connecting cables

Connect one end of the Ethernet cable into port A and the other end to your PC or switch.

2.13 Connecting the antenna

If you are only connecting one antenna, screw the antenna into the MAIN SMA connector.

If you are using more than one antenna, screw the main antenna into the MAIN SMA connector and the secondary antenna into the 3G-AUX SMA connector.

2.14 Connecting the WiFi antenna

If you are connecting one antenna, screw the antenna into either of the WiFi SMA connectors. You can use a second WiFi antenna if necessary.

2.15 Powering up

Plug the power cable into an electrical socket suitable for the power supply.

The GW6600 takes approximately 2 minutes to boot up. During this time, the power LED flashes.

Other LEDs display different diagnostic patterns during boot up.

Booting is complete when the power LED stops flashing and stays on steady.

2.16 Reset button

The reset button is used to request a system reset.

When you press the reset button all LEDs turn on simultaneously. The length of time you hold the reset button will determine its behaviour.

Press Duration	PWR / CONFIG LED behaviour	Router Behaviour on depress
0-3 seconds	On	Normal reset to running config. No special LED activity.
Between 3 and 15 seconds	Flashing slowly	Releasing between 3-15 seconds switches the router back to factory configuration.
Between 15 and 20 seconds	On	Releasing between 15-20 seconds performs a normal reset to running config.
Between 20 seconds and 30 seconds	Flashing faster	Releasing between 20-30 seconds reboots the router in recovery mode.
Over 30 seconds	On	Releasing after 30 seconds performs a normal reset.

Table 5: GW6600 Series router reset behaviour

2.16.1 Recovery mode

Recovery mode is a fail-safe mode where the router can load a default configuration from the routers firmware. If your router goes into recovery mode, all config files are kept intact. After the next reboot, the router will revert to the previous config file.

You can use recovery mode to manipulate the config files, but should only be used if all other configs files are corrupt. If your router has entered recovery mode, contact your local reseller for access information.

3 GW6600 Series LED behaviour

3.1 Main LED behaviour

The GW6600 Series router has single colour LEDs. When the router is powered on, the power LED is green.



Figure 1: LEDs on a GW6630 Series router

The possible LED states are:

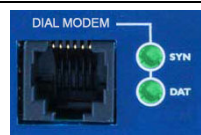
- Off
- Flashing slowly
- Flashing quickly
- On

Booting up		The router takes approximately 2 minutes to boot up. During this time, the power LED flashes. Other LEDs display different diagnostic patterns during boot up. Booting is complete when the power LED stops flashing and stays on steady.
Power LED	On	Power
	Off	No power. Boot loader does not exist.
Config LED	On	Unit running a valid configuration file.
	Flashing slowly	Unit running in recovery mode (2.5 flashes per second).
	Flashing quickly	Unit running in factory configuration (5 flashes per second).
SIM1 & SIM2 LEDs	On	SIM selected and registered on the 3G/4G network.
	Off	Not selected or SIM not inserted.
	Flashing	SIM selected and not registered on the network.
WiFi	On	WiFi access point active.
	Off	WiFi access point not active.
	Flashing	WiFi data activity.
3G/LTE Cellular Signal Strength LEDs	None	Data link not connected or signal strength $\leq -113\text{dBm}$.
	1	Data link connected and signal strength $\leq -89\text{dBm}$.
	2	Data link connected and signal strength between -89dBm and -69dBm .
	3	Data link connected and signal strength $> -69\text{dBm}$.
DSL SYN LED	On	Connected and established to ADSL or VDSL DSLAM.
	Off	Not active.
	Flashing slowly	Searching for DSL connection.
	Flashing quickly	Connection negotiating.
DSL DAT LED	On	Transmit data.
	Off	No data transmit.

Table 6: GW6600 LED behaviours and meanings

Note: When PPP is not connected, none of the signal strength LEDs will light regardless of signal strength.

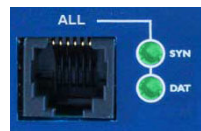
3.1.1 LED variations for dial modem, leased line and ISDN



Applies to GW6631 and GW6641 models.

Dial modem SYN LED	On	Connection established.
	Off	Not connected.
	Flashing	Modem training.
Dial modem DAT LED	Off	No data transmit.
	Flashing	Transmit data.

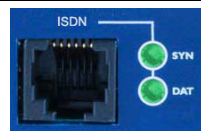
Table 7: Dial modem LED behaviour on GW6600 Series models



Applies to the GW6610-LL model.

Leased Line SYN LED	On	CESoP enabled.
	Off	CESoP disabled.
Leased Line DAT LED	On	Receive data.
	Off	No data received.

Table 8: Lease Line LED behaviour on GW6600 Series models



Applies to the GW6610-ISDN model.

ISDN SYN LED	On	Audio channel active (dial tone or call in progress).
	Off	Audio channel inactive.
ISDN DAT LED	On	Audio channel active (dial tone or call in progress).
	Off	Audio channel inactive.

Table 9: ISDN LED behaviour on GW6600 Series models

3.2 Ethernet port LED behaviour

The Ethernet port has two LEDs: a LINK LED (green) and an ACT LED (amber). When looking at the port, the LED on the left hand side is the LINK LED, and the ACT LED is on the right hand side.

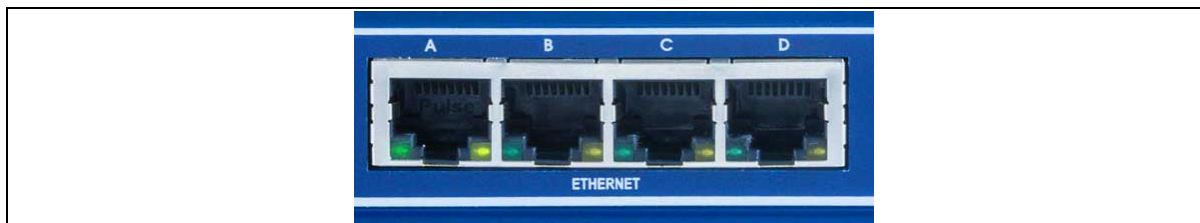


Figure 2: Ethernet LED activity

Link LED (green)	On	Physical Ethernet link detected.
	Off	No physical Ethernet link detected.
Data LED (amber)	Flashing	Data is being transmitted or received over the link
	Off	No data activity

Table 10: Ethernet LED behaviour on GW6000 Series models

Link LED (green)	On	Physical Ethernet link detected.
	Off	No physical Ethernet link detected.
	Flashing	Data is being transmitted or received over the link
Speed LED (amber)	On	Link operating at 10/100 mode
	Off	Link operating at 1Gb/s

Table 11: Ethernet LED behaviour on GW6600V Series models

4 Factory configuration extraction from SIM card

Virtual Access routers have a feature to update the factory configuration from a SIM card. This allows you to change the factory configuration of a router when installing the SIM.

1. Make sure the SIM card you are inserting has the required configuration written on it.
2. Ensure the router is powered off.
3. Hold the SIM 1 card with the chip side facing down and the cut corner front left.
4. Gently push the SIM card into SIM slot 1 until it clicks in.
5. Power up the router.

Depending on the model, the power LED and/or the configuration LED flash as usual.

The SIM LED starts flashing. This indicates the application responsible for 3G and configuration extraction management is running. It also means the update of the configuration is happening.

When the update is finished, depending on the model, the power LED and/or the configuration LED blink alternatively and very fast for 20 seconds.

Note: factory configuration extraction is only supported on mobile modules that support phone book operations.

5 Accessing the router

Access the router through the web interface or by using SSH. By default, Telnet is disabled.

5.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
dropbear	dropbear
system	main
uhttpd	main cert

5.2 Accessing the router over Ethernet using the web interface

DHCP is disabled by default, so if you do not receive an IP address via DHCP, assign a static IP to the PC that will be connected to the router.

PC IP address	192.168.100.100
Network mask	255.255.255.0
Default gateway	192.168.100.1

Assuming that the PC is connected to Port A on the router, in your internet browser, type in the default local IP address 192.168.100.1, and press **Enter**. The Authorization page appears.

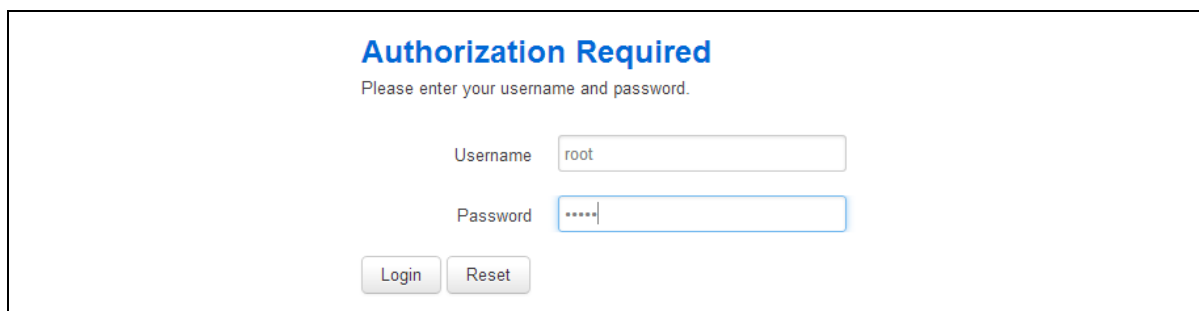


Figure 3: The login page

The password may vary depending on the factory configuration the router has been shipped with. The default settings are shown below. The username and password are case sensitive.

In the username field, type **root**.

In the Password field, type **admin**.

Click **Login**. The Status page appears.

5.3 Accessing the router over Ethernet using an SSH client

You can also access the router over Ethernet, using Secure Shell (SSH) and optionally over Telnet.

To access CLI over Ethernet start an SSH client and connect to the router's management IP address, on port **22**: **192.168.100.1 / 24**.

On the first connection, you may be asked to confirm that you trust the host.

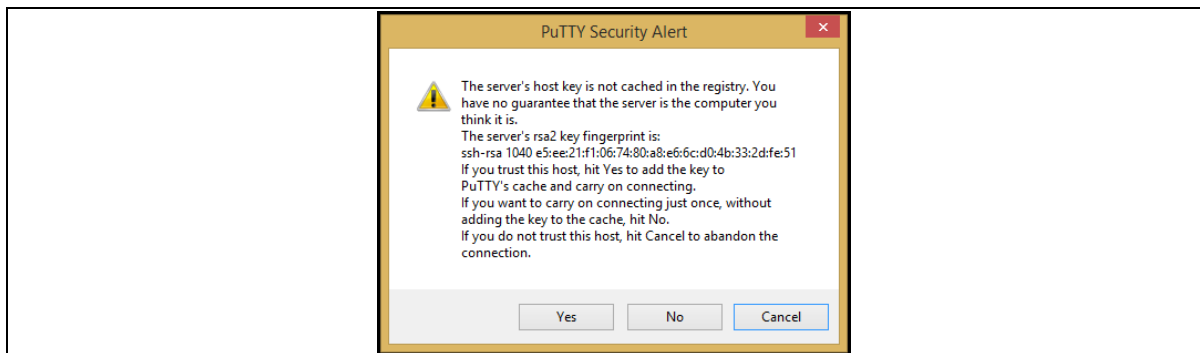


Figure 4: Confirming trust of the routers public key over SSH

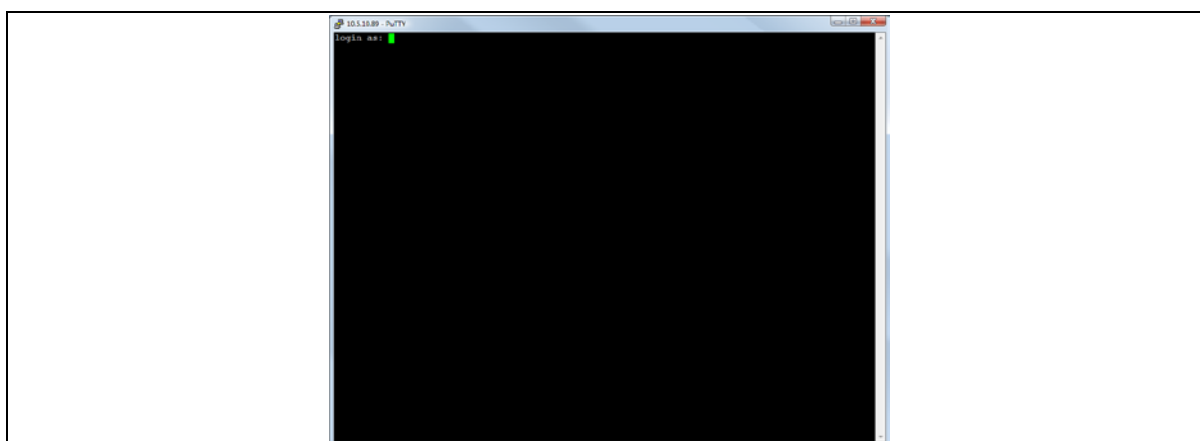


Figure 5: SSH CLI login screen

In the SSH CLI login screen, enter the default username and password.

Username: **root**

Password: **admin**

5.3.1 SCP (Secure Copy Protocol)

As part of accessing the router over SSH, you can also use SCP protocol. Use the same user authentication credentials as for SSH access. You can use SCP protocol to securely, manually transfer files from and to the router's SCP server.

No dedicated SPC client is supported; select the SCP client software of your own choice.

5.4 Accessing the router over Ethernet using a Telnet client

Telnet is disabled by default, when you enable Telnet, SSH is disabled.

To enable Telnet, enter:

```
root@VA_router: ~# /etc/init.d/dropbear disable
root@VA_router: ~# reboot
```

To re-enable SSH, enter:

```
root@VA_router: ~# /etc/init.d/dropbear enable
root@VA_router: ~# reboot
```

Note: As SSH is enabled by default, initial connection to the router to enable Telnet must be established over SSH.

5.5 Configuring the password

5.5.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
system	main

5.6 Configuring the password using the web interface

To change your password, in the top menu click **System -> Administration**. The Administration page appears.

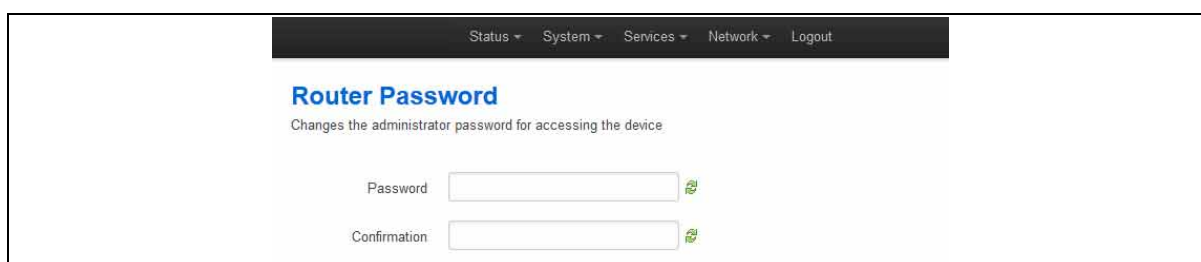


Figure 6: The router password section

In the Router Password section, type your new password in the password field and then retype the password in the confirmation field.

Scroll down the page and click **Save & Apply**.

Note: the username 'root' cannot be changed.

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Password	Defines the root password. The password is displayed encrypted via the CLI using the 'hashpassword' option.
UCI: system.main.password	
Opt: password	
	UCI: system.main.hashpassword
	Opt: hashpassword

5.7 Configuring the password using UCI

The root password is displayed encrypted via the CLI using the hashpassword option.

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show system
system.main=system
system.main.hostname=VA_router
system.main.hashpassword=$1$jRX/x8A/$U5kLCmpi9dcahRh0l7eZV1
```

If you are changing the password using UCI, enter the new password in plain text using the password option.

```
root@VA_router:~# uci system.main.password=newpassword
root@VA_router:~# uci commit
```

The new password will take effect after reboot and will now be displayed in encrypted format via the hashpassword option.

5.8 Configuring the password using package options

The root password is displayed encrypted via the CLI using the hashpassword option.

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export system
package system

config system 'main'
    option hostname 'VA_router'
    option hashpassword '$1$wRYYiJ0z$EeHN.GQcxXhRgNPVbqxVw
```

If you are changing the password using UCI, enter the new password in plain text using the password option.

```
package system

config system 'main'
    option hostname 'VA_router'
    option hashpassword '$1$wRYYiJ0z$EeHN.GQcxXhRgNPVbqxVw
    option password 'newpassword'
```

The new password will take effect after reboot and will now be displayed in encrypted format via the hashpassword option.

5.9 Accessing the device using RADIUS authentication

You can configure RADIUS authentication to access the router over SSH, web or local console interface.

```
package system

config system 'main'
    option hostname 'VirtualAccess'
    option timezone 'UTC'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'login'
    option pammodule 'auth'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
    option type 'radius'
    option servers '192.168.0.1:3333|test|20 192.168.2.5|secret|10'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'sshd'
    option pammodule 'auth'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'          it checks package
management_users
    option type 'radius'
    option servers '192.168.0.1:3333|test|20 192.168.2.5|secret|10'

config 'pam_auth'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'luci'
    option pammodule 'auth'
    option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
    option type 'radius'
    servers '192.168.0.1:3333|test|20 192.168.2.5|secret|10'
```

UCI / Package Option	Description						
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].enabled=yes Opt: enabled	Enables and disables RADIUS configuration sections. <table> <tr> <td>yes</td><td>Enables following RADIUS configuration section.</td></tr> <tr> <td>no</td><td>Disables following RADIUS configuration section.</td></tr> </table>	yes	Enables following RADIUS configuration section.	no	Disables following RADIUS configuration section.		
yes	Enables following RADIUS configuration section.						
no	Disables following RADIUS configuration section.						
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].pamservice Opt: pamservice	Selects the method which users should be authenticated by. <table> <tr> <td>login</td><td>User connecting over console cable.</td></tr> <tr> <td>sshd</td><td>User connecting over SSH.</td></tr> <tr> <td>luci</td><td>User connecting over web.</td></tr> </table>	login	User connecting over console cable.	sshd	User connecting over SSH.	luci	User connecting over web.
login	User connecting over console cable.						
sshd	User connecting over SSH.						
luci	User connecting over web.						
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].pamcontrol Opt: pamcontrol	Specifies authentication behaviour after authentication fails or connection to RADIUS server is broken. <table> <tr> <td>Sufficient</td><td>First authenticates against remote RADIUS if password authentication fails then it tries local database (user defined in package management_users)</td></tr> <tr> <td>Required</td><td>If either authentication fails or RADIUS server is not reachable then user is not allowed to access the router.</td></tr> <tr> <td>[success=done new_authtok_reqd=done authinfo_unavail=ignore default=die]</td><td>Local database is only checked if RADIUS server is not reachable.</td></tr> </table>	Sufficient	First authenticates against remote RADIUS if password authentication fails then it tries local database (user defined in package management_users)	Required	If either authentication fails or RADIUS server is not reachable then user is not allowed to access the router.	[success=done new_authtok_reqd=done authinfo_unavail=ignore default=die]	Local database is only checked if RADIUS server is not reachable.
Sufficient	First authenticates against remote RADIUS if password authentication fails then it tries local database (user defined in package management_users)						
Required	If either authentication fails or RADIUS server is not reachable then user is not allowed to access the router.						
[success=done new_authtok_reqd=done authinfo_unavail=ignore default=die]	Local database is only checked if RADIUS server is not reachable.						
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].pammodule.auth Opt: pammodule	Enables user authentication.						
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].type.radius Opt: type	Specifies the authentication method.						
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].servers Opt: servers	Specifies the RADIUS server or multiple servers along with port number and password. The example below explains the syntax. 192.168.0.1:3333 test 20 192.168.2.5 secret 10						

Table 12: Information table for RADIUS authentication

5.10 Accessing the device using TACACS+ authentication

TACACS+ authentication can be configured for accessing the router over SSH, web or local console interface.

```
package system

config system 'main'
    option hostname 'VirtualAccess'
    option timezone 'UTC'

config pam_auth
    option enabled 'yes'
    option pamservice 'sshd'
```



```
option pammodule 'auth'
option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
option type 'tacplus'
option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
```

```
config pam_auth
```

```
option enabled 'yes'
option pamservice 'sshd'
option pammodule 'account'
option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
option type 'tacplus'
option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
option args 'service=ppp'
```

```
config pam_auth
```

```
option enabled 'yes'
option pamservice 'sshd'
option pammodule 'session'
option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
option type 'tacplus'
option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
option args 'service=ppp'
```

```
config pam_auth
```

```
option enabled 'yes'
option pamservice 'luci'
option pammodule 'auth'
option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
option type 'tacplus'
option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
```

```
config pam_auth
```

```
option enabled 'yes'
option pamservice 'luci'
option pammodule 'account'
option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
option type 'tacplus'
```

```
option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
option args 'service=ppp'

config pam_auth
option enabled 'yes'
option pamservice 'luci'
option pammodule 'session'
option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
option type 'tacplus'
option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
option args 'service=ppp'

config pam_auth
option enabled 'yes'
option pamservice 'login'
option pammodule 'auth'
option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
option type 'tacplus'
option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'

config pam_auth
option enabled 'yes'
option pamservice 'login'
option pammodule 'account'
option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
option type 'tacplus'
option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
option args 'service=ppp'

config pam_auth
option enabled 'yes'
option pamservice 'login'
option pammodule 'session'
option pamcontrol 'sufficient'
option type 'tacplus'
option servers '192.168.0.1:49|secret'
option args 'service=ppp'
```

UCI / Package Option	Description						
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].enabled=yes Opt: enabled	Enables and disables TACACS configuration sections. <table> <tr> <td>yes</td><td>Enables following TACACS configuration section.</td></tr> <tr> <td>no</td><td>Disables following TACACS configuration section.</td></tr> </table>	yes	Enables following TACACS configuration section.	no	Disables following TACACS configuration section.		
yes	Enables following TACACS configuration section.						
no	Disables following TACACS configuration section.						
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].pamservice Opt: pamservice	Selects the method which users should be authenticated by. <table> <tr> <td>login</td><td>User connecting over console cable.</td></tr> <tr> <td>sshd</td><td>User connecting over SSH.</td></tr> <tr> <td>luci</td><td>User connecting over web.</td></tr> </table>	login	User connecting over console cable.	sshd	User connecting over SSH.	luci	User connecting over web.
login	User connecting over console cable.						
sshd	User connecting over SSH.						
luci	User connecting over web.						
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].pamcontrol Opt: pamcontrol	Specifies authentication behaviour after authentication fails or connection to TACACS server is broken. <table> <tr> <td>Sufficient</td><td>First authenticates against remote TACACS if password authentication fails then it tries local database (user defined in package management_users)</td></tr> <tr> <td>Required</td><td>If either authentication fails or TACACS server is not reachable then user is not allowed to access the router.</td></tr> <tr> <td>[success=done new_authtok_reqd=done authinfo_unavail=ignore default=die]</td><td>Local database is only checked if TACACS server is not reachable.</td></tr> </table>	Sufficient	First authenticates against remote TACACS if password authentication fails then it tries local database (user defined in package management_users)	Required	If either authentication fails or TACACS server is not reachable then user is not allowed to access the router.	[success=done new_authtok_reqd=done authinfo_unavail=ignore default=die]	Local database is only checked if TACACS server is not reachable.
Sufficient	First authenticates against remote TACACS if password authentication fails then it tries local database (user defined in package management_users)						
Required	If either authentication fails or TACACS server is not reachable then user is not allowed to access the router.						
[success=done new_authtok_reqd=done authinfo_unavail=ignore default=die]	Local database is only checked if TACACS server is not reachable.						
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].pammodule.auth Opt: pammodule	Selects which TACACS module this part of configuration relates to. <table> <tr> <td>auth</td><td>auth module provides the actual authentication and sets credentials</td></tr> <tr> <td>account</td><td>account module checks to make sure that access is allowed for the user</td></tr> <tr> <td>session</td><td>session module performs additional tasks which are needed to allow access</td></tr> </table>	auth	auth module provides the actual authentication and sets credentials	account	account module checks to make sure that access is allowed for the user	session	session module performs additional tasks which are needed to allow access
auth	auth module provides the actual authentication and sets credentials						
account	account module checks to make sure that access is allowed for the user						
session	session module performs additional tasks which are needed to allow access						
system.@pam_auth[0].type=tacplus Opt: type	Specifies the authentication method.						
UCI: system.@pam_auth[0].servers Opt: servers	Specifies the TACACS servers along with port number and password. The example below explains the syntax. 192.168.0.1:49 secret '						
UCI: system.@pam_auth[1].args=service=ppp Opt: args	Additional arguments to pass to TACACS server.						

Table7: Information table for TACACS authentication

5.11 SSH

SSH allows you to access remote machines over text-based shell sessions. SSH uses public key cryptography to create a secure connection. These connections allow you to issue commands remotely via a command line.

The router uses a package called Dropbear to configure the SSH server on the box. You can configure Dropbear via the web interface or through an SSH connection by editing the file stored on: `/etc/config_name/dropbear`.

5.11.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
dropbear	dropbear

5.11.2 SSH access using the web interface

In the top menu, click **System -> Administration**. The Administration page appears. Scroll down to the SSH Access section.

The screenshot shows the 'SSH Access' configuration page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'Status', 'System', 'Services', 'Network', and 'Logout'. Below the navigation bar, the page title is 'SSH Access' with a subtitle 'Dropbear offers SSH network shell access and an integrated SCP server'. The main section is titled 'Dropbear Instance' and contains several configuration options:

- Interface:** A list of radio buttons for selecting the interface: '3G', 'ADSL', 'lan', 'lan1', 'loopback', and 'unspecified'. A note below says 'Listen only on the given interface or, if unspecified, on all'.
- Port:** A text input field with the value '22'. A note says 'Specifies the listening port of this Dropbear instance'.
- Password authentication:** A checkbox that is checked, with a note 'Allow SSH password authentication'.
- Allow root logins with password:** A checkbox that is checked, with a note 'Allow the root user to login with password'.
- Gateway ports:** A checkbox that is unchecked, with a note 'Allow remote hosts to connect to local SSH forwarded ports'.
- Idle Session Timeout (seconds):** A text input field. A note says 'Remote session will be closed after this many seconds of inactivity'.

At the bottom left, there is an 'Add' button. At the top right of the configuration area, there is a 'Delete' button.

Figure 7: The SSH access section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Basic settings					
Web: Interface UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].Interface Opt: interface	Listens only on the selected interface. If unspecified is checked, listens on all interfaces. All configured interfaces will be displayed via the web GUI. <table> <tr> <td>(unspecified)</td><td>listens on all interfaces.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>Configured interface names.</td></tr> </table>	(unspecified)	listens on all interfaces.	Range	Configured interface names.
(unspecified)	listens on all interfaces.				
Range	Configured interface names.				
Web: Port UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].Port Opt: port	Specifies the listening port of the Dropbear instance. <table> <tr> <td>22</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0-65535</td></tr> </table>	22		Range	0-65535
22					
Range	0-65535				
Web: Password authentication UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].PasswordAuth Opt: PasswordAuth	If enabled, allows SSH password authentication. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Allow root logins with password UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].RootPasswordAuth Opt: RootPasswordAuth	Allows the root user to login with password. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Gateway ports UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].GatewayPorts Opt: GatewayPorts	Allows remote hosts to connect to local SSH forwarded ports. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Idle Session Timeout UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].IdleTimeout Opt: IdleTimeout	Defines the idle period where remote session will be closed after the allocated number of seconds of inactivity. <table> <tr> <td>30</td><td>30 seconds.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	30	30 seconds.	Range	
30	30 seconds.				
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].BannerFile Opt: BannerFile	Defines a banner file to be displayed during login. <table> <tr> <td>/etc/banner</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/etc/banner		Range	
/etc/banner					
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: dropbear.@dropbear[0].MaxLoginAttempts Opt: MaxLoginAttempts	Specifies maximum login failures before session terminates. <table> <tr> <td>10</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>0-infinite</td><td></td></tr> </table>	10		0-infinite	
10					
0-infinite					

Table 13: Information table for SSH access settings

5.12 Package dropbear using UCI

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show dropbear
dropbear.@dropbear[0]=dropbear
dropbear.@dropbear[0].PasswordAuth=on
dropbear.@dropbear[0].RootPasswordAuth=on
dropbear.@dropbear[0].GatewayPorts=0
dropbear.@dropbear[0].IdleTimeout=30
dropbear.@dropbear[0].Port=22
dropbear.@dropbear[0].MaxLoginAttempts=3
Package dropbear using package options

```

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export dropbear
package dropbear
config dropbear'
    option PasswordAuth 'on'
    option RootPasswordAuth 'on'
    option Port '22'
    option GatewayPorts '0'
    option IdleTimeout '30'
    option MaxLoginAttempts '3'

```

5.13 Certs and private keys

Certificates are used to prove ownership of a public key. They contain information about the key, its owner's ID, and the digital signature of an individual that has verified the content of the certificate.

In asymmetric cryptography, public keys are announced to the public, and a different private key is kept by the receiver. The public key is used to encrypt the message, and the private key is used to decrypt it.

To access certs and private keys, in the top menu, click **System -> Administration**. The Administration page appears. Scroll down to the Certs & Private Keys section.

Certificates & Private Keys
 Certificates and private keys used for various services could be uploaded here

IPsec Certificates and Keys No file chosen ⓘ
 Upload a *.tar.gz file containing certificates and/or private keys. All the ipsec certs previously uploaded will be deleted when new ones uploaded. Archive structure should match this of /etc/ipsec.d folder. Every file should be in one of 8 subfolders according to it's purpose:
 private (private keys) certs (entity certs)
 crls (revocation lists)
 cacerts (CA certs)
 ocspcerts (OCSP signer certs)
 aacerts (Authorization Authority certs)
 acerts (attribute certs)
 reqs (PKCS#10 cert requests)
[More info](#)

OpenVPN Certificates and Keys No file chosen ⓘ
 Upload a *.tar.gz file containing certificates and/or private keys. All the openvpn certs previously uploaded will be deleted when new ones uploaded. OpenVPN requires no special folder structure, hence files will be installed into the openvpn folder as they are in archive

VA Certificates and Keys No file chosen ⓘ
 Upload a *.tar.gz file containing certificates and/or private keys. All the va certs previously uploaded will be deleted when new ones uploaded. Archive structure should match this of /etc/certs folder which is similar to /etc/ipsec.d folder.

Figure 8: The certificates & private keys section

This section allows you to upload any certificates and keys that you may have stored. There is support for IPsec, OpenVPN and VA certificates and keys.

If you have generated your own SSH public keys, you can input them in the SSH Keys section, for SSH public key authentication.

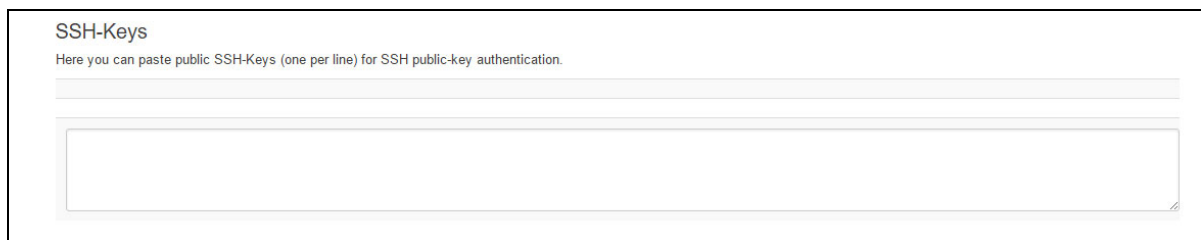


Figure 9: The SSH-keys box

5.14 Configuring a router's web server

The router's web server is configured in package uhttpd. This file defines the behaviour of the server and default values for certificates generated for SSL operation. uhttpd supports multiple instances, that is, multiple listen ports, each with its own document root and other features, as well as cgi and lua. There are two sections defined:

Main: this uHTTPd section contains general server settings.

Cert: this section defines the default values for SSL certificates.

5.14.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
uhttpd	main
	cert

To configure the router's HTTP server parameters, in the top menu, select **Services -> HTTP Server**. The HTTP Server page has two sections.

Main Settings	Server configurations
Certificate Settings	SSL certificates.

5.14.2 Main settings

Figure 10: HTTP server settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description						
Web: Listen Address and Port UCI: uhttpd.main.listen_http Opt: list listen_http	Specifies the ports and addresses to listen on for plain HTTP access. If only a port number is given, the server will attempt to serve both IPv4 and IPv6 requests. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0.0.0.0:80</td><td>Bind at port 80 only on IPv4 interfaces.</td></tr> <tr> <td>:::80</td><td>Bind at port 80 only on IPv6 interfaces</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>IP address and/or port</td></tr> </table>	0.0.0.0:80	Bind at port 80 only on IPv4 interfaces.	:::80	Bind at port 80 only on IPv6 interfaces	Range	IP address and/or port
0.0.0.0:80	Bind at port 80 only on IPv4 interfaces.						
:::80	Bind at port 80 only on IPv6 interfaces						
Range	IP address and/or port						
Web: Secure Listen Address and Port UCI: uhttpd.main.listen_https Opt: list listen_https	Specifies the ports and address to listen on for encrypted HTTPS access. The format is the same as listen_http. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0.0.0.0:443</td><td>Bind at port 443 only</td></tr> <tr> <td>:::443</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>IP address and/or port</td></tr> </table>	0.0.0.0:443	Bind at port 443 only	:::443		Range	IP address and/or port
0.0.0.0:443	Bind at port 443 only						
:::443							
Range	IP address and/or port						
Web: Home path UCI: uhttpd.main.home Opt: home	Defines the server document root. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>/www</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/www		Range			
/www							
Range							
Web: Cert file UCI: uhttpd.main.cert Opt: cert	ASN.1/DER certificate used to serve HTTPS connections. If no listen_https options are given the key options are ignored. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>/etc/uhttpd.crt</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/etc/uhttpd.crt		Range			
/etc/uhttpd.crt							
Range							
Web: Key file UCI: uhttpd.main.key Opt: key	ASN.1/DER private key used to serve HTTPS connections. If no listen_https options are given the key options are ignored. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>/etc/uhttpd.key</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/etc/uhttpd.key		Range			
/etc/uhttpd.key							
Range							

Web: CGI profile UCI: uhttpd.main.cgi_prefix Opt: cgi_prefix	Defines the prefix for CGI scripts, relative to the document root. CGI support is disabled if this option is missing. <table> <tr> <td>/cgi-bin</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/cgi-bin		Range	
/cgi-bin					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.lua_prefix Opt: lua_prefix	Defines the prefix for dispatching requests to the embedded lua interpreter, relative to the document root. Lua support is disabled if this option is missing. <table> <tr> <td>/luci</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/luci		Range	
/luci					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.lua_handler Opt: lua_handler	Specifies the lua handler script used to initialise the lua runtime on server start. <table> <tr> <td>/usr/lib/lua/luci/cgi/uhttpd.lua</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/usr/lib/lua/luci/cgi/uhttpd.lua		Range	
/usr/lib/lua/luci/cgi/uhttpd.lua					
Range					
Web: Script timeout UCI: uhttpd.main.script_timeout Opt: script_timeout	Sets the maximum wait time for CGI or lua requests in seconds. Requested executables are terminated if no output was generated. <table> <tr> <td>60</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	60		Range	
60					
Range					
Web: Network timeout UCI: uhttpd.main.network_timeout Opt: network_timeout	Maximum wait time for network activity. Requested executables are terminated and connection is shut down if no network activity occurred for the specified number of seconds. <table> <tr> <td>30</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	30		Range	
30					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.realm Opt: realm	Defines basic authentication realm when prompting the client for credentials (HTTP 400). <table> <tr> <td>OpenWrt</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	OpenWrt		Range	
OpenWrt					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.config Opt: config	Config file in Busybox httpd format for additional settings. Currently only used to specify basic auth areas. <table> <tr> <td>/etc/http.conf</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/etc/http.conf		Range	
/etc/http.conf					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.index_page Opt: index_page	Index file to use for directories, for example, add index.php when using php. <table> <tr> <td></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>			Range	
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: httpd.main.error_page Opt: error_page	Virtual URL of file of CGI script to handle 404 requests. Must begin with '/' (forward slash). <table> <tr> <td></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>			Range	
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.no_symlinks Opt: no_symlinks	Does not follow symbolic links if enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: N/A UCI: uhttpd.main.no_dirlists Opt: no_symlinks	Does not generate directory listings if enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Web: rfc 1918 filter UCI: uhttpd.main.rfc1918_filter=1 Opt: rfc1918_filter	Enables option to reject requests from RFC1918 IPs to public server IPs (DNS rebinding counter measure).
0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.

Table 14: Information table for http server basic settings

5.14.3 HTTP server using UCI

Multiple sections of the type uhttpd may exist. The init script will launch one webserver instance per section.

A standard uhttpd configuration is shown below.

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show uhttpd
uhttpd.main=uhttpd
uhttpd.main.listen_http=0.0.0.0:80
uhttpd.main.listen_https=0.0.0.0:443
uhttpd.main.home=/www
uhttpd.main.rfc1918_filter=1
uhttpd.main.cert=/etc/uhttpd.crt
uhttpd.main.key=/etc/uhttpd.key
uhttpd.main.cgi_prefix=/cgi-bin
uhttpd.main.script_timeout=60
uhttpd.main.network_timeout=30
uhttpd.main.config=/etc/http.conf
HTTP server using package options
root@VA_router:~# uci export dropbear
config uhttpd 'main'
    list listen_http '0.0.0.0:80'
    list listen_https '0.0.0.0:443'
    option home '/www'
    option rfc1918_filter '1'
    option cert '/etc/uhttpd.crt'
    option key '/etc/uhttpd.key'
    option cgi_prefix '/cgi-bin'
    option script_timeout '60'
    option network_timeout '30'
    option config '/etc/http.conf'
```

5.14.4 HTTPs server certificate settings

To configure HTTPs server certificate settings, in the top menu, select **Services -> HTTP Server**. Scroll down to the Certificate Settings section.

Certificate Settings
Set parameters for initial certificate generation.

Days: 3650 Validity time of the generated certificates in days.

Bits: 1024 Size of the generated RSA key in bits.

country: IE ISO country code of the certificate issuer.

state: Dublin State of the certificate issuer.

location: Dublin Location/city of the certificate issuer.

commonname: VirtualAccessGW Common name covered by the certificate.

Buttons: Save & Apply, Save, Reset

Figure 11: HTTP server certificate settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Days UCI: uhttpd.px5g.days Opt: days	Validity time of the generated certificates in days. 730 Range
Web: Bits UCI: uhttpd.px5g.bits Opt: bits	Size of the generated RSA key in bits. 1024 Range
Web: Country UCI: uhttpd.px5g.country Opt: country	ISO code of the certificate issuer.
Web: State UCI: uhttpd.px5g.state Opt: state	State of the certificate issuer.
Web: Location UCI: uhttpd.px5g.location Opt: location	Location or city of the certificate user.
Web: Commonname UCI: uhttpd.commonname Opt: commonname	Common name covered by the certificate. For the purposes of secure Activation, this must be set to the serial number (Eth0 MAC address) of the device.

Table 15: Information table for HTTP server certificate settings

5.14.5 HTTPs server using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show uhttpd.px5g
uhttpd.px5g=cert
uhttpd.px5g.days=3650
uhttpd.px5g.bits=1024
uhttpd.px5g.country=IE
uhttpd.px5g.state=Dublin
uhttpd.px5g.location=Dublin
uhttpd.px5g.commonname=00E0C8000000
HTTPs server using package options
root@VA_router:~# uci export uhttpd
package uhttpdconfig 'cert' 'px5g'
    option 'days' '3650'
    option 'bits' '1024'
    option 'state' 'Dublin'

    option 'location' 'Dublin'
    option 'commonname' '00E0C8000000'
```

5.15 Basic authentication (httpd conf)

For backward compatibility reasons, uhttpd uses the file `/etc/httpd.conf` to define authentication areas and the associated usernames and passwords. This configuration file is not in UCI format.

Authentication realms are defined in the format `prefix:username:password` with one entry and a line break.

Prefix is the URL part covered by the realm, for example, `cgi-bin` to request basic auth for any CGI program.

Username specifies the username a client has to login with.

Password defines the secret password required to authenticate.

The password can be either in plain text format, MD5 encoded or in the form `$p$user` where the user refers to an account in `/etc/shadow` or `/etc/passwd`.

If you use `$p$...` format, uhttpd will compare the client provided password against the one stored in the shadow or passwd database.

5.16 Securing uhttpd

By default, uhttpd binds to 0.0.0.0 which also includes the WAN port of your router. To bind uhttpd to the LAN port only you have to change the `listen_http` and `listen_https` options to your LAN IP address.

To get your current LAN IP address, enter:

```
uci get network.lan.ipaddr
```

Then modify the configuration appropriately:

```
uci set uhttpd.main.listen_http='192.168.1.1:80'
uci set uhttpd.main.listen_https='192.168.1.1:443'

config 'uhttpd' 'main'
    list listen_http      192.168.1.1:80
    list listen_https     192.168.1.1:443
```

5.17 Displaying custom information via login screen

The login screen, by default, shows the hostname of the router in addition to the username and password prompt. However, the router can be configured to show some other basic information if required using a UDS script.

Note: this can only be configured via the command line.

5.17.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
luci	main
uds	script

5.17.2 Configuring login screen custom information

The luci package option `login_page_info_template` is configured with the path to a UDS script that would render the required information on the right side of the login page.

The following example shows how to display serial number and mobile signal strength.

Note: this can only be configured via the command line.

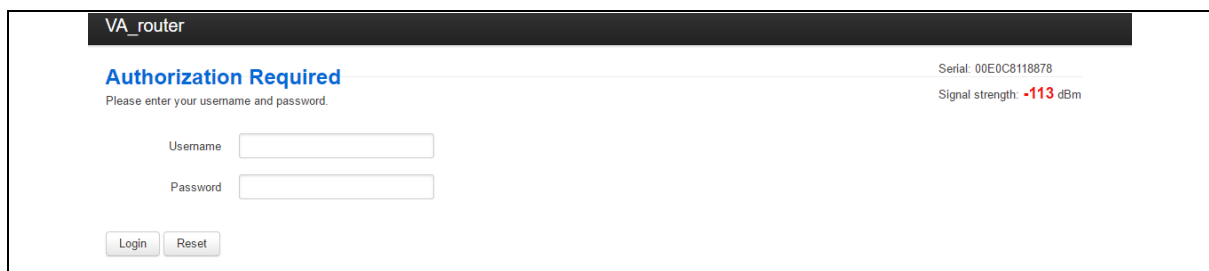


Figure 12: Example login screen displaying serial and signal strength

5.17.2.1 Login screen custom information using UCI

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show luci
luci.main=core
luci.main.login_page_info_template=/tmp/uds/sysauth_template

root@VA_router:~# uci show uds
uds.sysauth_template=script
uds.sysauth_template.enabled=1
uds.sysauth_template.exec_type=none
uds.sysauth_template.fname=sysauth_template.htm
uds.sysauth_template.type=none
uds.sysauth_template.text=Serial: <%=pcdata(luci.version.serial)%><br/> <%
local sig = luci.dispatcher.uci.cursor_state():get("mobile", "3g_1_1",
"sig_dbm") or -113 sig = tonumber(sig) local hue = (sig + 113) * 2 local
hue = math.min(math.max(hue, 0), 120) %> Signal strength: <h3
style="color:hsl(<%=hue%>, 90%, 50%); display:inline;"><%=sig%></h3> dBm

```

5.17.2.2 Login screen custom information using package options

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export luci
package luci
config core 'main'
    option login_page_info_template '/tmp/uds/sysauth_template'
root@VA_router:~# uci export uds
package uds
config script 'sysauth_template'
    option enabled '1'
    option exec_type 'none'
    option fname 'sysauth_template.htm'
    option type 'none'
    list text 'Serial: <%=pcdata(luci.version.serial)%><br/>'
    list text '<% local sig =
luci.dispatcher.uci.cursor_state():get("mobile", "3g_1_1", "sig_dbm") or -
113'

    list text 'sig = tonumber(sig)'
    list text 'local hue = (sig + 113) * 2'
    list text 'local hue = math.min(math.max(hue, 0), 120) %>'
    list text 'Signal strength: <h3 style="color:hsl(<%=hue%>, 90%,
50%); display:inline;"><%=sig%></h3> dBm

```

6 Router file structure

This section describes the file structure and location of essential directories and files on Virtual Access routers.

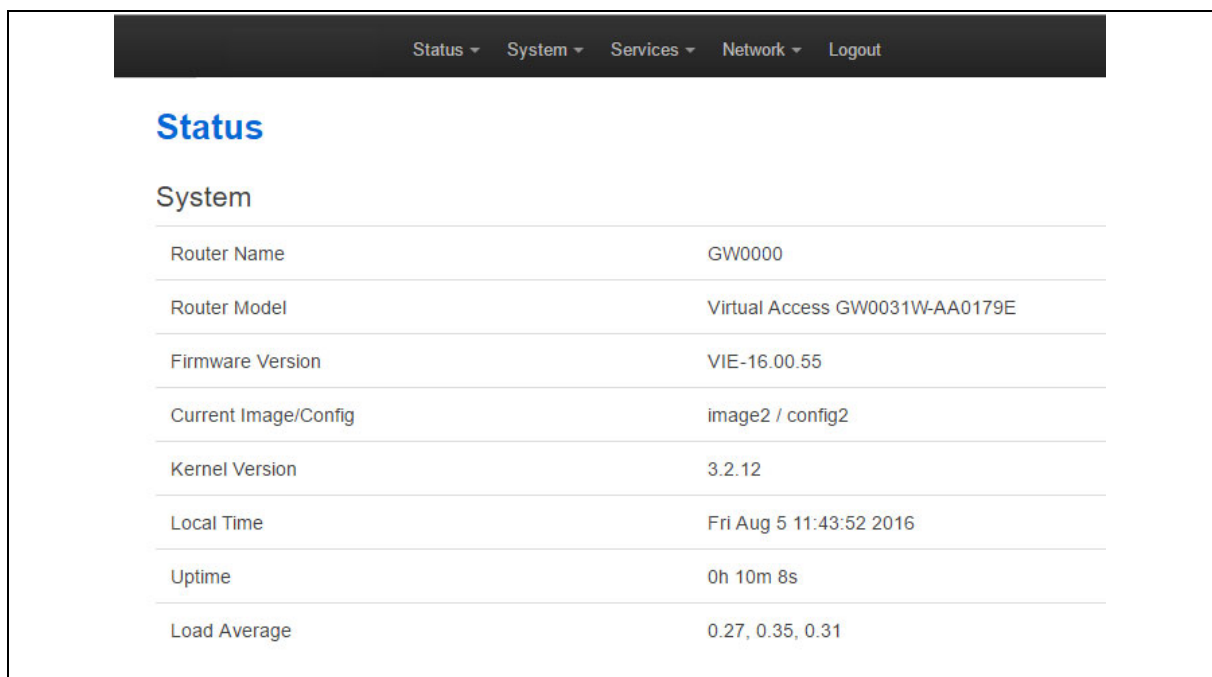
Throughout this document, we use information tables to show the different ways to configure the router using the router's web interface and command line interface (CLI).

When showing examples of the command line interface we use the host name 'VA_router' to indicate the system prompt. For example, the table below displays what the user should see when entering the command to show the current configuration in use on the router:

```
root@VA_router:~# va_config.sh
```

6.1 System information

General information about software and configuration used by the router is displayed on the Status page. To view the running configuration file status on the web interface, in the top menu, select **Status -> Overview**. This page also appears immediately after you have logged in.



Status ▾ System ▾ Services ▾ Network ▾ Logout	
Status	
System	
Router Name	GW0000
Router Model	Virtual Access GW0031W-AA0179E
Firmware Version	VIE-16.00.55
Current Image/Config	image2 / config2
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Fri Aug 5 11:43:52 2016
Uptime	0h 10m 8s
Load Average	0.27, 0.35, 0.31

Figure 13: Example of the status page

System information is also available from the CLI if you enter the following command:

```
root@VA_router:~# va_vars.sh
```

The example below shows the output from the above command.

```

VA_SERIAL:      00E0C8121215
VA_MODEL:       GW0000
VA_ACTIVEIMAGE: image2
VA_ACTIVECONFIG: config1
VA_IMAGE1VER:   VIE-16.00.44
VA_IMAGE2VER:   VIE-16.00.44

```

6.2 Identify your software version

To check which software version your router is running, in the top menu, browse to **Status -> Overview**.

Status	
System	
Router Name	GW0000
Router Model	Virtual Access GW0031W-AA0179E
Firmware Version	VIE-16.00.55
Current Image/Config	image2 / config2
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Fri Aug 5 11:43:52 2016
Uptime	0h 10m 8s
Load Average	0.27, 0.35, 0.31

Figure 14: The status page showing a software version prior to 72.002

Status	
System	
Router Name	dmvpn
Router Model	GW2028
Firmware Version	LIS-15.00.72.002rc4
Current Image/Config	image1 / config1
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Thu Jan 26 14:46:03 2017
Uptime	0h 39m 37s
Load Average	1.02, 0.53, 0.48

Figure 15: The status page showing software version 72.002

In the Firmware Version row, the first two digits of the firmware version identify the hardware platform, for example LIS-15; while the remaining digits: .00.72.002, show the software version.

6.3 Image files

The system allows for two firmware image files:

- image1, and
- image2

Two firmware images are supported to enable the system to rollback to a previous firmware version if the upgrade of one image fails.

The image names (image1, image2) themselves are symbols that point to different partitions in the overall file system. A special image name "altimage" exists which always points to the image that is not running.

The firmware upgrade system always downloads firmware to "altimage".

6.4 Directory locations for UCI configuration files

Router configurations files are stored in folders on:

- /etc/factconf,
- /etc/config1, and
- /etc/config2

Multiple configuration files exist in each folder. Each configuration file contains configuration parameters for different areas of functionality in the system.

A symbolic link exists at /etc/config, which always points to one of factconf, config1 or config2 is the active configuration file.

Files that appear to be in /etc/config are actually in /etc/factconf|config1|config2 depending on which configuration is active.

If /etc/config is missing on start-up, for example on first boot, the links and directories are created with configuration files copied from /rom/etc/config/.

At any given time, only one of the configurations is the active configuration. The UCI system tool (Unified Configuration Interface) only acts upon the currently active configuration.

6.5 Viewing and changing current configuration

To show the configuration currently running, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# va_config.sh
```

To show the configuration to run after the next reboot, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# va_config.sh next
```

To set the configuration to run after the next reboot, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# va_config.sh -s [factconf|config1|config2|altconfig]
```

6.6 Configuration file syntax

The configuration files consist of sections – or packages - that contain one or more config statements. These optional statements define actual values.

Below is an example of a simple configuration file.

```
package 'example'
config 'example' 'test'
    option 'string'      'some value'
    option 'boolean'     '1'
    list 'collection'    'first item'
    list 'collection'    'second item'
```

The config 'example' 'test' statement defines the start of a section with the type example and the name test.

Command	Target	Description
export	[<config>]	Exports the configuration in a machine readable format. It is used internally to evaluate configuration files as shell scripts.
import	[<config>]	Imports configuration files in UCI syntax.
add	<config> <section-type>	Adds an anonymous section of type-section type to the given configuration.
add_list	<config>.<section>.<option>=<string>	Adds the given string to an existing list option.
show	[<config>[.<section>[.<option>]]]	Shows the given option, section or configuration in compressed notation.
get	<config>.<section>[.<option>]	Gets the value of the given option or the type of the given section.
Set	<config>.<section>[.<option>]=<value>	Sets the value of the given option, or adds a new section with the type set to the given value.
delete	<config>[.<section>[.<option>]]	Deletes the given section or option.

Table 1: Common commands, target and their descriptions

6.7 Managing configurations

6.7.1 Managing sets of configuration files using directory manipulation

Configurations can also be managed using directory manipulation.

To remove the contents of the current folder, enter:

```
root@VA_router:/etc/config1# rm -f *
```

Warning: the above command makes irreversible changes.

To remove the contents of a specific folder regardless of the current folder (config2), enter:

```
root@VA_router:/ # rm -f /etc/config1/*
```

Warning: the above command makes irreversible changes.

To copy the contents of one folder into another (config2 into config1), enter:

```
root@VA_router:/etc/config1# cp /etc/config2/* /etc/config1
```

6.8 Exporting a configuration file

If you have software versions prior to 72.002, to export a configuration file using the web interface, go to section 6.8.1.

If you have software version 72.002 or above, export a configuration file using the web interface go to section 6.8.2.

To export a configuration file using CLI, for any software version, go to section 6.8.3.

6.8.1 Exporting a configuration file using the web interface for software versions pre- 72.002

The current running configuration file may be exported using the web interface.

In the top menu, select **System > Backup / Flash Firmware**. The Flash operations page appears.

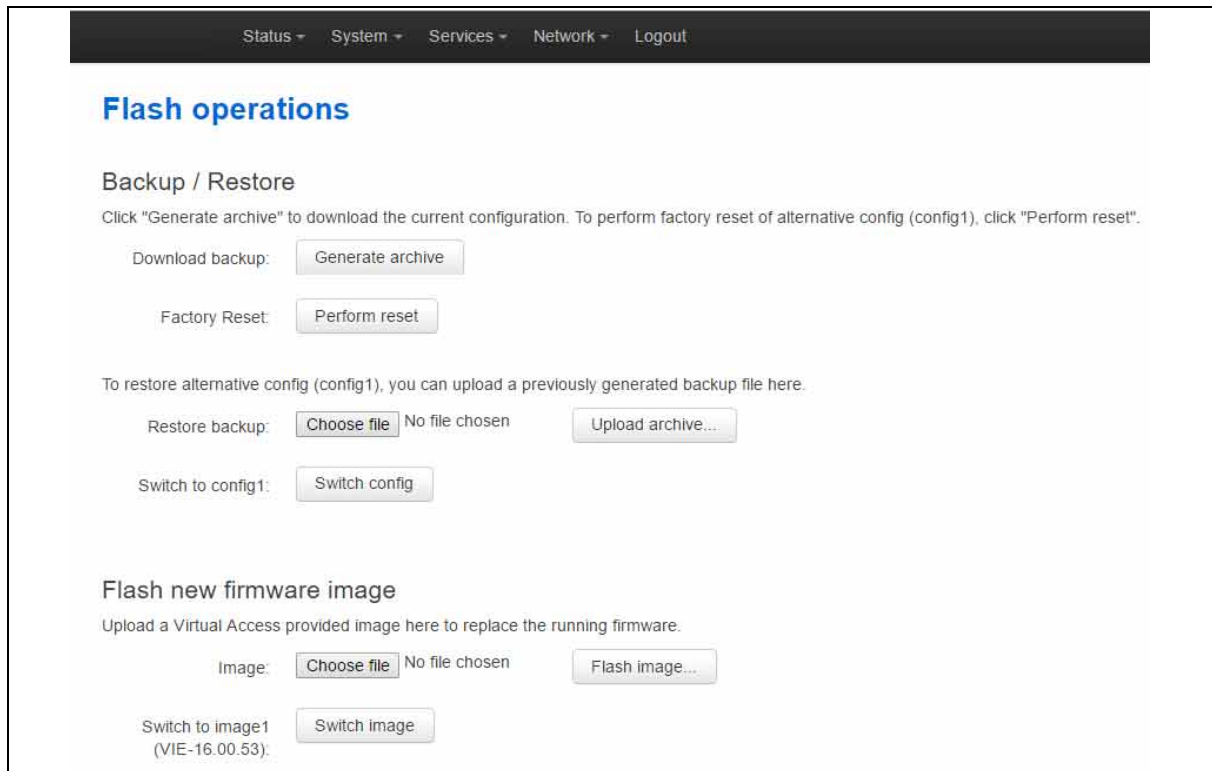


Figure 16: The flash operations page

In the Backup/Restore section, select **Generate Archive**.

6.8.2 Exporting a configuration file using the web interface for software version 72.002 and above

The current running configuration file may be exported using the web interface.

In the top menu, select **System > Flash Operations**. The Flash operations page appears.

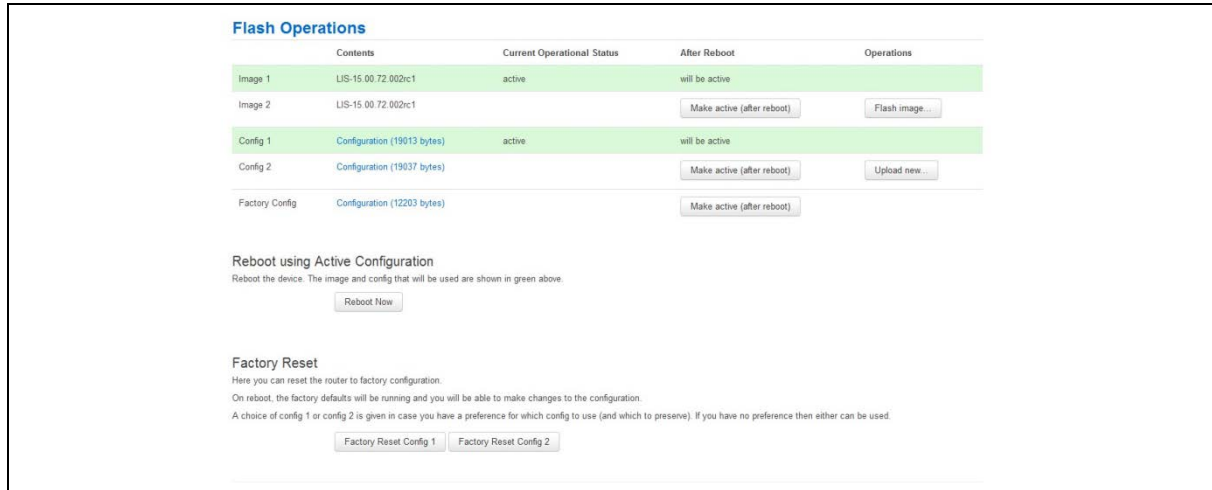


Figure 17: The flash operations page

In the **Flash Operation** section, click the configuration file in the Contents column to download it.

6.8.3 Exporting a configuration file using UCI

You can view any configuration file segment using UCI.

To export the running configuration file, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export
```

To export the factory configuration file, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci -c /etc/factconf/ export
```

To export config1 or config2 configuration file, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci -c /etc/config1/ export
root@VA_router:~# uci -c /etc/config2/ export
```

6.9 Importing a configuration file

If you have software versions prior to 72.002, to export a configuration file using the web interface, go to section 6.9.1.

If you have software version 72.002 or above, export a configuration file using the web interface go to section 6.9.2.

To export a configuration file using CLI, for any software version, go to section 6.9.3.

6.9.1 Importing a configuration file using the web interface for software versions pre- 72.002

You can import a configuration file to the alternate configuration segment using the web interface. This will automatically reboot the router into this configuration file.

In the top menu, select **System > Backup / Flash Firmware**. The Flash operations page appears.

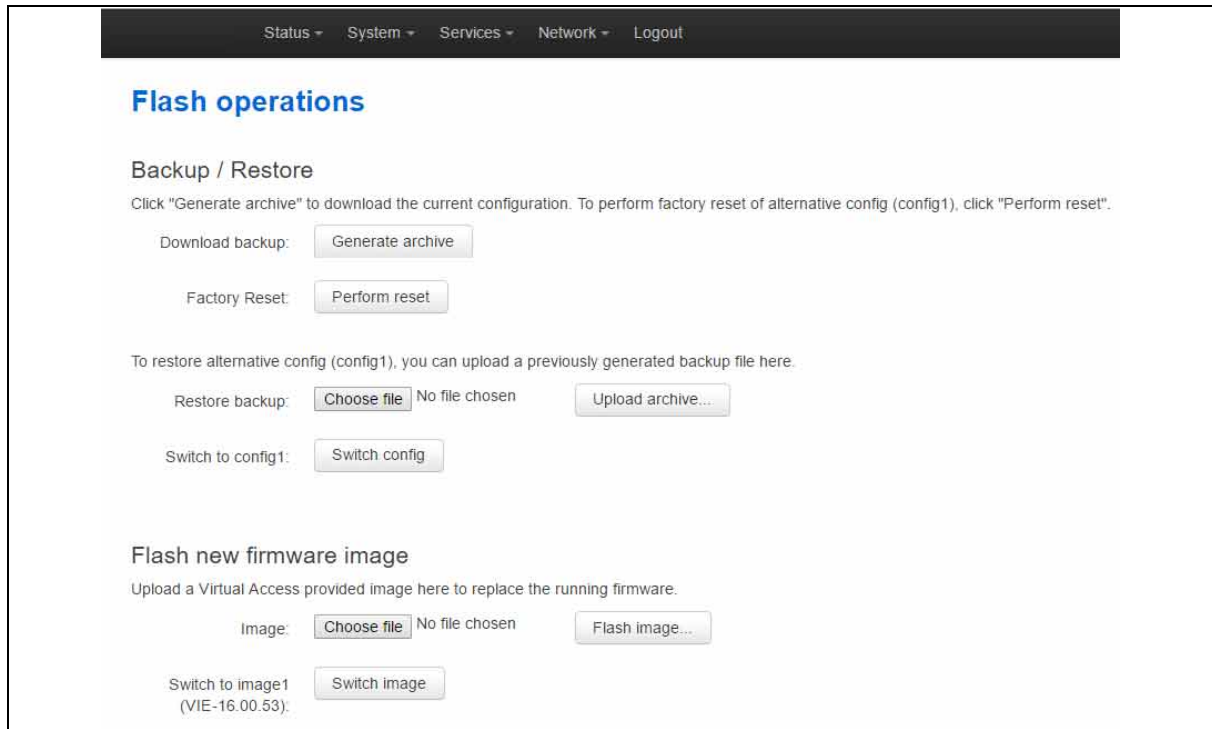


Figure 18: The flash operations page

Under Backup/Restore, choose **Restore Backup: Choose file**. Select the appropriate file and then click **Upload archive**.

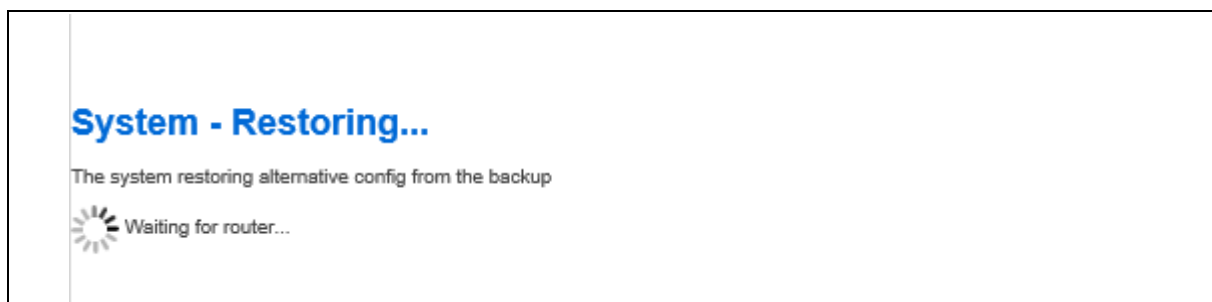


Figure 19: The system – restoring...page

When the 'waiting for router' icon disappears, the upgrade is complete, and the login homepage appears.

6.9.2 **Importing a configuration file using the web interface for software version 72.002 and above**

You can import a configuration file to the alternate configuration segment using the web interface.

In the top menu, select **System > Flash Operations**. The Flash operations page appears.

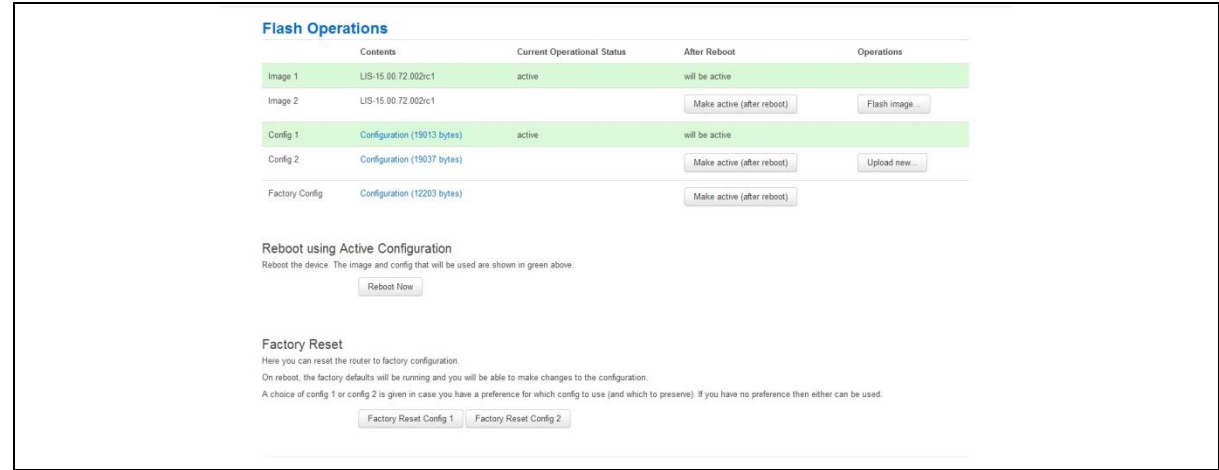


Figure 20: The flash operations page

In the Operations column, click **Upload new**. Select the appropriate file.

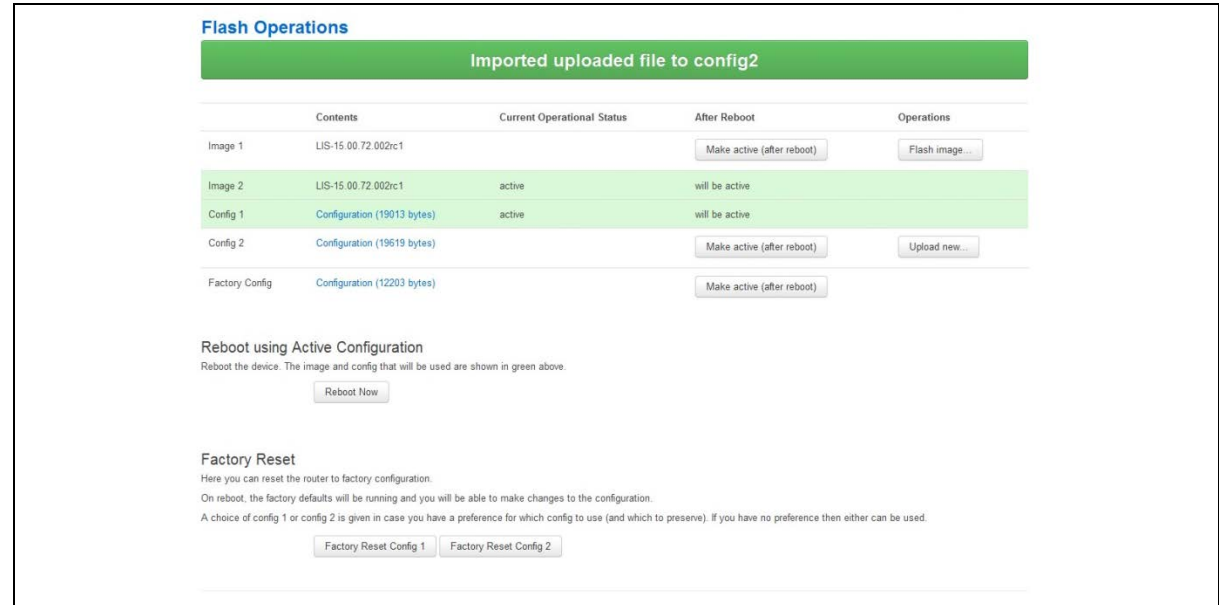


Figure 21: The flash operations succeed upload configuration page

If you select 'Flash image and do not reboot', the router will only run this configuration if you click **OK** to return to the Flash Operations page. There you can manually select **Made Active (after reboot)**. Then click **Reboot Now** in the 'Reboot using Active Configuration' section.

6.9.3 Importing a configuration file using UCI

You can import a configuration file to any file segment using UCI.

To import to config1, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci -c /etc/config1/ import  
<paste in config file>  
<CTRL-D>
```

Note: it is very important that the config file is in the correct format otherwise it will not import correctly.

7 Using the Command Line Interface

This chapter explains how to view Virtual Access routers' log files and edit configuration files using a Command Line Interface (CLI) and the Unified Configuration Interface (UCI) system. Some commands may vary between router models.

7.1 Overview of some common commands

Virtual Access routers' system has an SSH server typically running on port 22.

The factconf default password for the root user is **admin**.

To change the factconf default password, enter:

```
root@VA_router:/# uci set system.main.password="*****"  
root@VA_router:/# uci commit system
```

To reboot the system, enter:

```
root@VA_router:/# reboot
```

The system provides a Unix-like command line. Common Unix commands are available such as `ls`, `cd`, `cat`, `top`, `grep`, `tail`, `head`, `more` and `less`.

Typical pipe and redirect operators are also available, such as: `>`, `>>`, `<`, `|`

The system log can be viewed using any of the following commands:

```
root@VA_router:/# logread  
  
root@VA_router:/# logread | tail  
  
root@VA_router:/# logread -f
```

These commands will show the full log, end of the log (`tail`) and continuously (`-f`). Enter **Ctrl-C** to stop the continuous output from `logread -f`.

To view and edit configuration files, the system uses the Unified Configuration Interface (UCI) which is described further on in this chapter. This is the preferred method of editing configuration files. However, you can also view and edit these files using some of the standard Unix tools.

For example, to view a text or configuration file in the system, enter:

```
root@VA_router:/# cat /etc/passwd
```


The command output information shows the following, or similar output.

```
root:x:0:0:root:/root:/bin/ash
daemon*:1:1:daemon:/var:/bin/false
ftp*:55:55:ftp:/home/ftp:/bin/false
sftp*:56:56:sftp:/var:/usr/lib/sftp-server
network*:101:101:network:/var:/bin/false
nobody*:65534:65534:nobody:/var:/bin/false
```

To view files in the current folder, enter:

```
root@VA_router:/# ls

bin      etc      lib      opt      sbin     usr
bkrepos  home     linuxrc  proc     sys      var
dev      init     mnt      root     tmp      www
```

For more details add the -l argument:

```
root@VA_router:/# ls -l

drwxrwxr-x  2 root    root    642 Jul 16  2012 bin
drwxr-xr-x  5 root    root   1020 Jul  4 01:27 dev
drwxrwxr-x  1 root    root      0 Jul  3 18:41 etc
drwxr-xr-x  1 root    root      0 Jul  9  2012 lib
drwxr-xr-x  2 root    root      3 Jul 16  2012 mnt
drwxr-xr-x  7 root    root      0 Jan  1  1970 overlay
dr-xr-xr-x 58 root    root      0 Jan  1  1970 proc
drwxr-xr-x 16 root    root   223 Jul 16  2012 rom
drwxr-xr-x  1 root    root      0 Jul  3 22:53 root
drwxrwxr-x  2 root    root   612 Jul 16  2012 sbin
drwxr-xr-x 11 root    root      0 Jan  1  1970 sys
drwxrwxrwt 10 root    root   300 Jul  4 01:27 tmp
drwxr-xr-x  1 root    root      0 Jul  3 11:37 usr
lrwxrwxrwx  1 root    root      4 Jul 16  2012 var -> /tmp
drwxr-xr-x  4 root    root     67 Jul 16  2012 www
```

To change the current folder, enter **cd** followed by the desired path:

```
root@VA_router:/# cd /etc/config1
root@VA_router:/etc/config1#
```

Note: if the specified directory is actually a link to a directory, the real directory will be shown in the prompt.

To view scheduled jobs, enter:

```
root@VA_router:/# crontab -l

0 * * * * slaupload 00FF5FF92752 TFTP 1 172.16.250.100 69
```

To view currently running processes, enter:

```
root@VA_router:/# ps
```

PID	Uid	VmSize	Stat	Command
1	root	356	S	init
2	root		DW	[keventd]
3	root		RWN	[ksoftirqd_CPU0]
4	root		SW	[kswapd]
5	root		SW	[bdflush]
6	root		SW	[kupdated]
8	root		SW	[mtdblockd]
89	root	344	S	logger -s -p 6 -t
92	root	356	S	init
93	root	348	S	syslogd -C 16
94	root	300	S	klogd
424	root	320	S	wifi up
549	root	364	S	httpd -p 80 -h /www -r VA_router
563	root	336	S	crond -c /etc/crontabs
6712	root	392	S	/usr/sbin/dropbear
6824	root	588	S	/usr/sbin/dropbear
7296	root	444	S	-ash
374	root	344	R	ps ax
375	root	400	S	/bin/sh /sbin/hotplug button
384	root	396	R	/bin/sh /sbin/hotplug button
385	root		RW	[keventd]

To search for a process, enter: `pgrep -fl '<process name or part of name>'`:

```
root@VA_router:/# pgrep -fl 'wifi'

424 root          320 S    wifi up
```

To kill a process, enter the PID:

```
root@VA_router:~# kill 424
```

7.2 Using Unified Configuration Interface (UCI)

The system uses Unified Configuration Interface (UCI) for central configuration management. Most common and useful configuration settings can be accessed and configured using the UCI system.

UCI consists of a Command Line Utility (CLI), the files containing the actual configuration data, and scripts that take the configuration data and apply it to the proper parts of the system, such as the networking interfaces. Entering the command 'uci' on its own will display the list of valid arguments for the command and their format.

```
root@VA_router:/lib/config# uci
```

Usage: `uci [<options>] <command> [<arguments>]`

Commands:

```
export      [<config>]
import      [<config>]
changes     [<config>]
commit      [<config>]
add         <config> <section-type>
add_list    <config>.<section>.<option>=<string>
show        [<config>[.<section>[.<option>]]]
get         <config>.<section>[.<option>]
set         <config>.<section>[.<option>]=<value>
delete      <config>[.<section>[.<option>]]
rename      <config>.<section>[.<option>]=<name>
revert      <config>[.<section>[.<option>]]
```

Options:

```
-c <path>  set the search path for config files (default: /etc/config)
-d <str>   set the delimiter for list values in uci show
-f <file>  use <file> as input instead of stdin
-m         when importing, merge data into an existing package
```

-n	name unnamed sections on export (default)
-N	don't name unnamed sections
-p <path>	add a search path for config change files
-P <path>	add a search path for config change files and use as default
-q	quiet mode (don't print error messages)
-s	force strict mode (stop on parser errors, default)
-S	disable strict mode
-X	do not use extended syntax on 'show'

The table below describes commands for the UCI command line and some further examples of how to use this utility.

Command	Target	Description
commit	[<config>]	Writes changes of the given configuration file, or if none is given, all configuration files, to the filesystem. All "uci set", "uci add", "uci rename" and "uci delete" commands are staged into a temporary location and written to flash at once with "uci commit". This is not needed after editing configuration files with a text editor, but for scripts, GUIs and other programs working directly with UCI files.
export	[<config>]	Exports the configuration in a UCI syntax and does validation.
import	[<config>]	Imports configuration files in UCI syntax.
changes	[<config>]	Lists staged changes to the given configuration file or if none given, all configuration files.
add	<config> <section-type>	Adds an anonymous section of type section-type to the given configuration.
add_list	<config>.<section>.<option>=<string>	Adds the given string to an existing list option.
show	[<config>[.<section>[.<option>]]]	Shows the given option, section or configuration in compressed notation.
get	<config>.<section>[.<option>]	Gets the value of the given option or the type of the given section.
set	<config>.<section>[.<option>]=<value>	Sets the value of the given option, or add a new section with the type set to the given value.
delete	<config>[.<section>[.<option>]]	Deletes the given section or option.
rename	<config>.<section>[.<option>]=<name>	Renames the given option or section to the given name.
revert	<config>[.<section>[.<option>]]	Deletes staged changes to the given option, section or configuration file.

Table 16: Common commands, target and their descriptions

Note: all operations do not act directly on the configuration files. A commit command is required after you have finished your configuration.

```
root@VA_router:~# uci commit
```

7.2.1 Using uci commit to avoid router reboot

After changing the port, uhttpd listens on from 80 to 8080 in the file `/etc/config/uhttpd`; save it, then enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci commit uhttpd
```

Then enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# /etc/init.d/uhttpd restart
```

For this example, the router does not need to reboot as the changes take effect when the specified process is restarted.

7.2.2 Export a configuration

Using the `uci export` command it is possible to view the entire configuration of the router or a specific package. Using this method to view configurations does not show comments that are present in the configuration file:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export httpd

package 'httpd'
config 'httpd'
option 'port' '80'
option 'home' '/www'
```

7.2.3 Show a configuration tree

The configuration tree format displays the full path to each option. This path can then be used to edit a specific option using the `uci set` command.

To show the configuration 'tree' for a given config, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network

network.loopback=interface
network.loopback.ifname=lo
network.loopback.proto=static
network.loopback.ipaddr=127.0.0.1
network.loopback.netmask=255.0.0.0
network.lan=interface
network.lan.ifname=eth0
network.lan.proto=dhcp
network.wan=interface
network.wan.username=foo
```

```
network.wan.password=bar
network.wan.proto=3g
network.wan.device=/dev/ttyACM0
network.wan.service=umts
network.wan.auto=0
network.wan.apn=arkessa.com
network.@va_switch[0]=va_switch
network.@va_switch[0].eth0=A B C
network.@va_switch[0].eth1=D
```

It is also possible to display a limited subset of a configuration:

```
root@VA_router:/# uci show network.wan
network.wan=interface
network.wan.username=foo
network.wan.password=bar
network.wan.proto=3g
network.wan.device=/dev/ttyACM0
network.wan.service=umts
network.wan.auto=0
network.wan.apn=hs.vodafone.ie
```

7.2.4 Display just the value of an option

To display a specific value of an individual option within a package, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci get httpd.@httpd[0].port
80
root@VA_router:~#
```

7.2.5 High level image commands

To show the image running currently, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# vacmd show current image
```

To set the image to run on next reboot, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# vacmd set next image [image1|image2|altimage]
root@VA_router:~# reboot
```

7.2.6 Format of multiple rules

When there are multiple rules next to each other, UCI uses array-like references for them. For example, if there are 8 NTP servers, UCI will let you reference their sections as `timeserver.@timeserver[0]` for the first section; or `timeserver.@timeserver[7]` for the last section.

You can also use negative indexes, such as `timeserver.@timeserver[-1]` '-1' means the last one, and '-2' means the second-to-last one. This is useful when appending new rules to the end of a list.

```
root@VA_router:/# uci show va_eventd
va_eventd.main=va_eventd
va_eventd.main.enabled=yes
va_eventd.main.event_queue_file=/tmp/event_buffer
va_eventd.main.event_queue_size=128K
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0]=conn_tester
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].name=Ping
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].type=ping
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_dest_addr=192.168.250.100
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_success_duration_sec=5
va_eventd.@target[0]=target
va_eventd.@target[0].name=MonitorSyslog
va_eventd.@target[0].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@target[0].type=syslog
va_eventd.@target[0].target_addr=192.168.250.100
va_eventd.@target[0].conn_tester=Ping
va_eventd.@target[0].suppress_duplicate_forwardings=no
va_eventd.@forwarding[0]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].className=ethernet
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].target=MonitorSyslog
va_eventd.@forwarding[1]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[1].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[1].className=auth
va_eventd.@forwarding[1].target=MonitorSyslog
va_eventd.@forwarding[2]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[2].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[2].className=adsl
```

```

va_eventd.@forwarding[2].target=MonitorSyslog
va_eventd.@forwarding[3]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[3].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[3].className=ppp
va_eventd.@forwarding[3].target=MonitorSyslog

```

7.3 Configuration files

The table below lists common package configuration files that can be edited using uci commands. Other configuration files may also be present depending on the specific options available on the Virtual Access router.

File	Description
Management	
/etc/config/autoload	Boot up Activation behaviour (typically used in factconf)
/etc/config/httpclient	Activator addresses and urls
/etc/config/monitor	Monitor details
Basic	
/etc/config/dropbear	SSH server options
/etc/config/dhcp	Dnsmasq configuration and DHCP settings
/etc/config/firewall	NAT, packet filter, port forwarding, etc.
/etc/config/network	Switch, interface, L2TP and route configuration
/etc/config/system	Misc. system settings including syslog
Other	
/etc/config/snmpd	SNMPd settings
/etc/config/uhttpd	Web server options (uHTTPd)
/etc/config/strongswan	IPSec settings

7.4 Configuration file syntax

The configuration files usually consist of one or more config statements, so-called sections with one or more option statements defining the actual values.

Below is an example of a simple configuration file.

```

package 'example'
config 'example' 'test'
    option 'string'      'some value'
    option 'boolean'     '1'
    list      'collection' 'first item'
    list      'collection' 'second item'

```

The config 'example' 'test' statement defines the start of a section with the type example and the name test. There can also be so-called anonymous sections with only a type, but no name identifier. The type is important for the processing programs to decide how to treat the enclosed options.

The option 'string' 'some value' and option 'boolean' '1' lines define simple values within the section.

Note: there are no syntactical differences between text and boolean options. Per convention, boolean options may have one of the values '0', 'no', 'off' or 'false' to specify a false value or '1', 'yes', 'on' or 'true' to specify a true value.

In the lines starting with a list keyword, an option with multiple values is defined. All list statements that share the same name collection in our example will be combined into a single list of values with the same order as in the configuration file.

The indentation of the option and list statements is a convention to improve the readability of the configuration file but it is not syntactically required.

Usually you do not need to enclose identifiers or values in quotes. Quotes are only required if the enclosed value contains spaces or tabs. Also it is legal to use double-quotes instead of single-quotes when typing configuration options.

All of the examples below are valid syntax.

```
option example value
option 'example' value
option example "value"
option "example" 'value'
option 'example' "value"
```

In contrast, the following examples are not valid syntax.

```
option 'example" "value'
```

Quotes are unbalanced.

```
option example some value with space
```

Missing quotes around the value.

It is important to note that identifiers and config file names may only contain the characters a-z, A-Z, 0-9 and `_`. However, option values may contain any character, as long they are properly quoted.

8 Upgrading router firmware

This chapter describes how to upgrade router firmware. The upgrade process is as follows:

- Firmware is transferred to the device.
- Firmware is checked to ensure there are no corruptions.
- Firmware is saved to persistent storage.
- Data in persistent storage is validated.

To avoid any unrecoverable errors during the process, you must follow several safety steps described in this chapter.

On successful completion of the process, you can restart the device running the new firmware.

8.1 Software versions

If you have software versions prior to 72.002, to upgrade firmware using the web interface, go to section 8.1.2.

If you have software version 72.002 or above, to upgrade firmware using the web interface go to section 8.1.3.

To upgrade firmware using CLI, for any software version, go to section 8.1.4.

8.1.1 Identify your software version

To check which software version your router is running, in the top menu, browse to **Status -> Overview**.

Status	
System	
Router Name	GW0000
Router Model	Virtual Access GW0031W-AA0179E
Firmware Version	VIE-16.00.55
Current Image/Config	image2 / config2
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Fri Aug 5 11:43:52 2016
Uptime	0h 10m 8s
Load Average	0.27, 0.35, 0.31

Figure 22: The status page showing a software version prior to 72.002

Status	
System	
Router Name	dmvpn
Router Model	GW2028
Firmware Version	LIS-15.00.72.002rc4
Current Image/Config	image1 / config1
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Thu Jan 26 14:46:03 2017
Uptime	0h 39m 37s
Load Average	1.02, 0.53, 0.48

Figure 23: The status page showing software version 72.002

In the Firmware Version row, the first two digits of the firmware version identify the hardware platform, for example LIS-15; while the remaining digits: .00.72.002, show the software version.

8.1.2 Upgrading router firmware for software versions pre- 72.002

Copy the new firmware issued by Virtual Access to a PC connected to the router.

In the top menu, select **System tab -> Backup/Flash Firmware**. The Flash operations page appears.

Status ▾
System ▾
Services ▾
Network ▾
Logout

Flash operations

Backup / Restore

Click "Generate archive" to download the current configuration. To perform factory reset of alternative config (config1), click "Perform reset".

Download backup:

Factory Reset:

To restore alternative config (config1), you can upload a previously generated backup file here.

Restore backup: No file chosen

Switch to config1:

Flash new firmware image

Upload a Virtual Access provided image here to replace the running firmware.

Image: No file chosen

Switch to image2 (VIE-16.00.53):

Figure 24: The flash operations page

Under Flash new firmware image, click **Choose File** or **Browse**.

Note: the button will vary depending on the browser you are using.

Select the appropriate image and then click **Flash Image**. The Flash Firmware – Verify page appears.

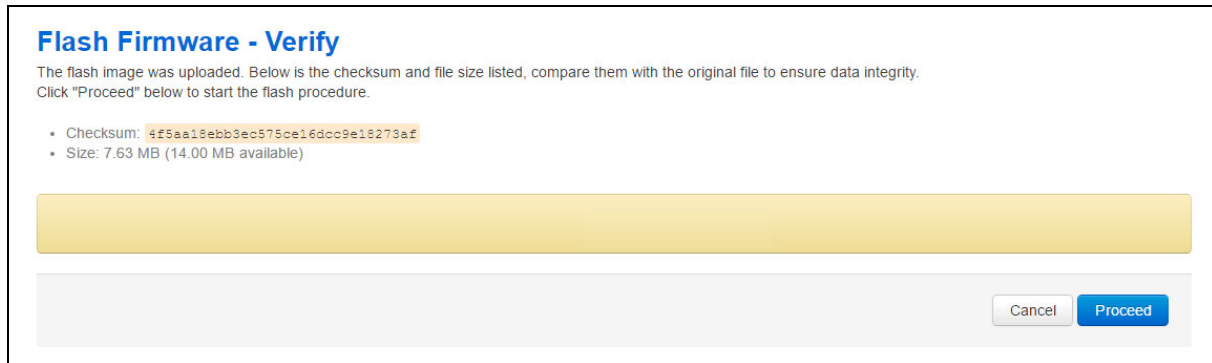


Figure 25: The flash firmware - verify page

Click **Proceed**. The System – Flashing... page appears.

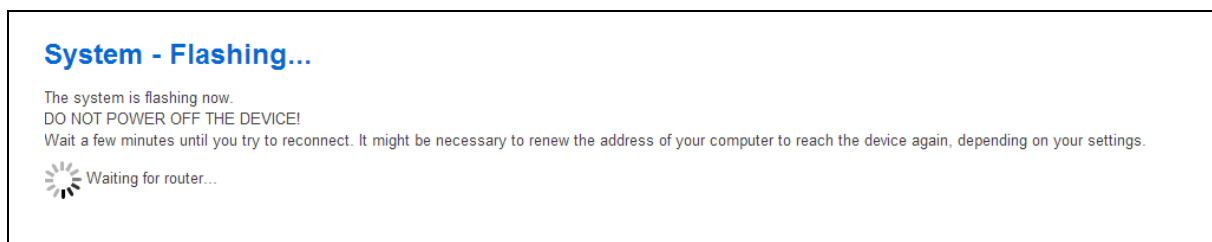


Figure 26: The system – flashing...page

When the 'waiting for router' icon disappears, the upgrade is complete, and the login homepage appears.

To verify that the router has been upgraded successfully, click **Status** in the top menu. The Firmware Version shows in the system list.

Status	
System	
Router Name	GW0000
Router Model	Virtual Access GW0031W-AA0179E
Firmware Version	VIE-16.00.55
Current Image/Config	image2 / config2
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Fri Aug 5 11:43:52 2016
Uptime	0h 10m 8s
Load Average	0.27, 0.35, 0.31

Figure 27: The system status list

8.1.3 Upgrading router firmware for software version 72.002 and above

Copy the new firmware issued by Virtual Access to a PC connected to the router.

In the top menu, select **System tab > Flash operations**. The Flash operations page appears.

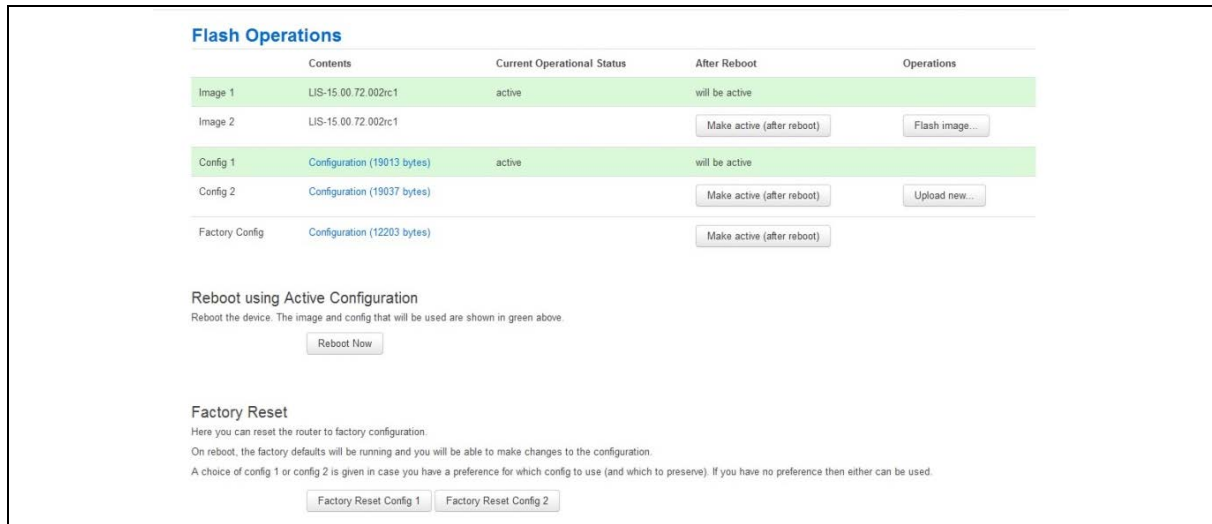


Figure 28: The flash operations page

Under Flash Operations, click **Flash Image**. Only the inactive image is available to flash. Select the appropriate image and then wait until image has loaded.

Note: this process may take a while depending on the available connection speed.

When the image has loaded, the Update Firmware page appears.

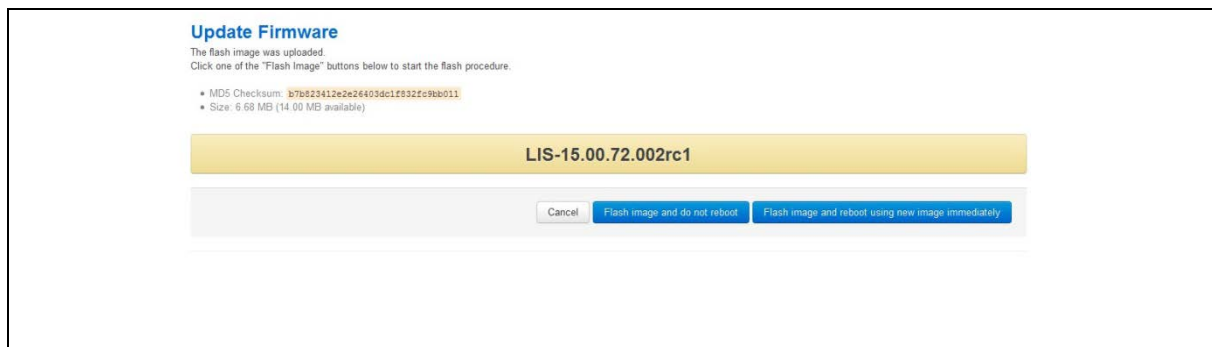


Figure 29: The flash firmware - verify page

Click either: **Flash image and do not reboot**, or **Flash image and reboot using new image immediately**. The 'Firmware update is being applied' message appears.

When the firmware update is complete, the Update Firmware page appears. There are various messages, depending on which option you selected, or if any corruptions have occurred.

8.1.4 Flash image and do not reboot option

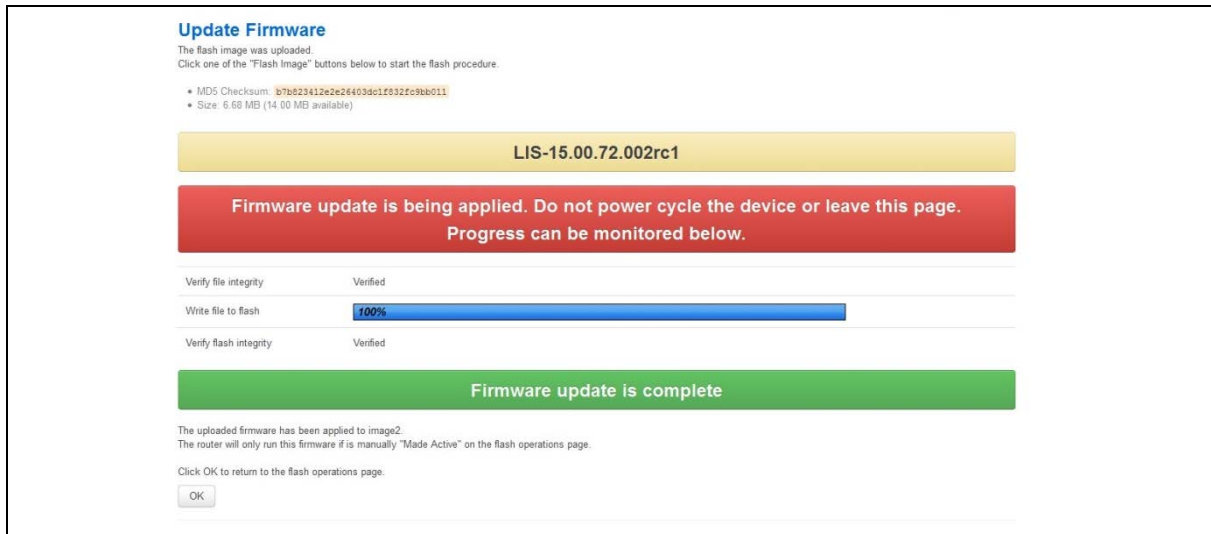


Figure 30: The firmware update page after '...do not reboot' option selected

If you select 'Flash image and do not reboot', the router will only run the firmware if you click **OK** to return to the Flash Operations page. There you can manually select **Made Active (after reboot)**. Then click **Reboot Now** in the 'Reboot using Active Configuration' section.

8.1.5 Update flash image and reboot using new image immediately option

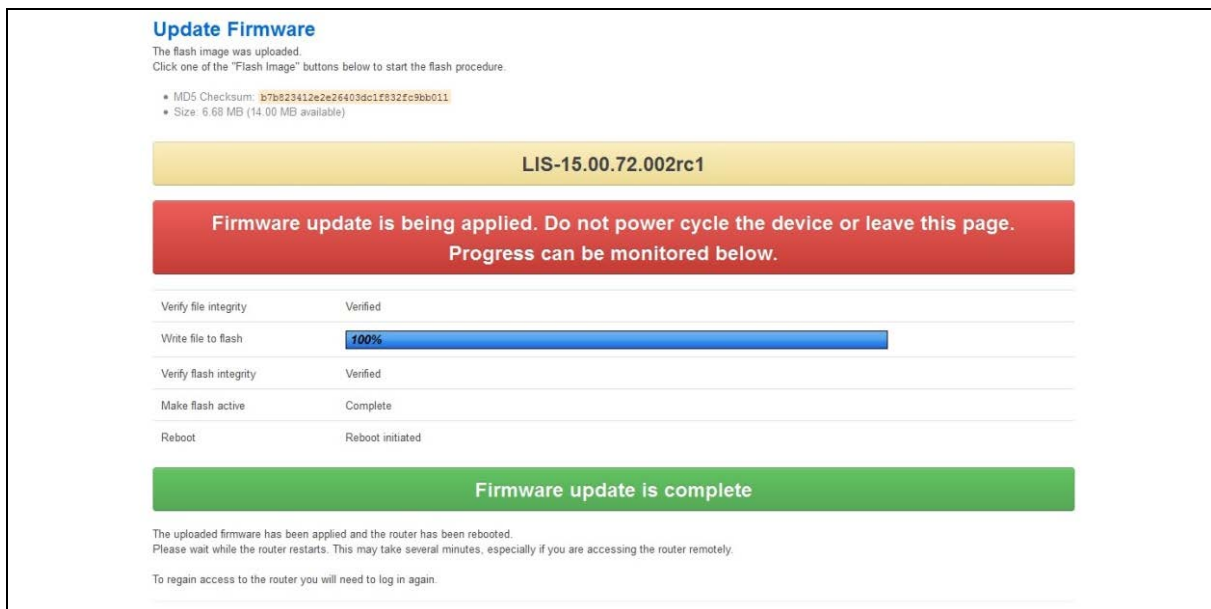


Figure 31: The firmware update page after 'update flash image and reboot...' option selected

If you select 'Update flash image and reboot using new image immediately' and the overall validation and flashing process has succeeded, the router will reboot immediately. To regain access to the router you must login again. If any part of the processes encounters an error the reboot does **not** occur and a report is given.

8.1.6 Possible file corruption

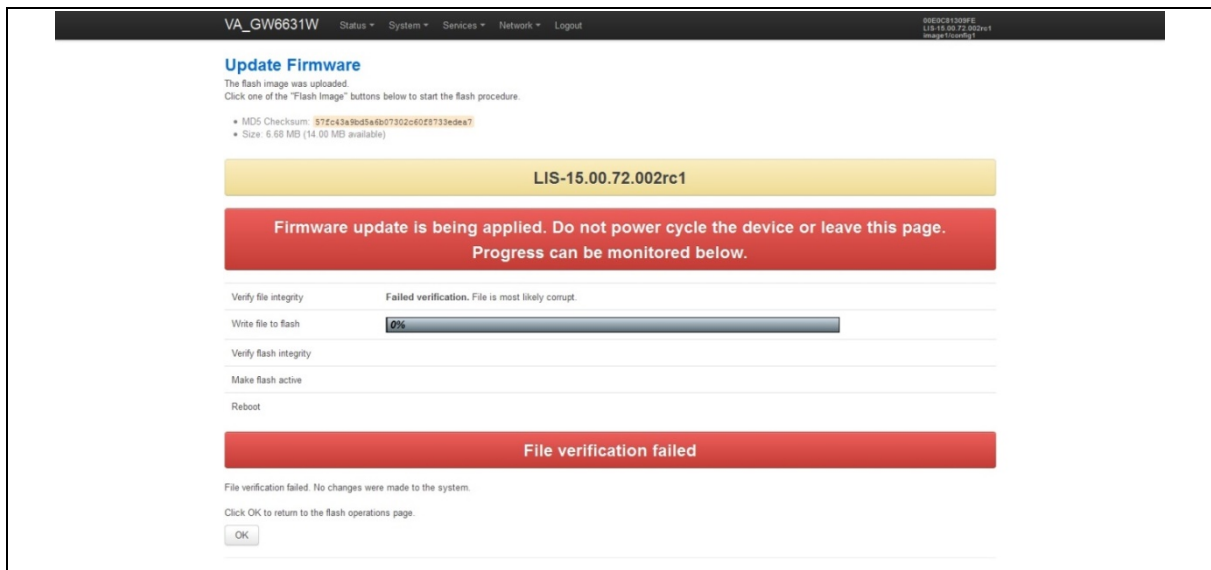


Figure 32: The firmware update failure page

In the unfortunate event that the firmware upgrade fails, the 'Failed verification File is most likely corrupt' or similar message will appear in the Verify file integrity row. No changes will be made to the system and the general message **File verification failed** appears.

8.1.7 Verify the firmware has been upgraded successfully

To check the firmware version, in the top menu, browse to **System -> Flash Operations**, or after router reboots, in the top menu, click **Status**. The Firmware Version shows in the system list and also in the right top corner of the menu bar.

Status	
System	
Router Name	GW0000
Router Model	Virtual Access GW0031W-AA0179E
Firmware Version	VIE-16.00.55
Current Image/Config	image2 / config2
Kernel Version	3.2.12
Local Time	Fri Aug 5 11:43:52 2016
Uptime	0h 10m 8s
Load Average	0.27, 0.35, 0.31

Figure 33: The system status list showing current firmware version

8.2 Upgrading firmware using CLI

8.2.1 Transfer file to router

To upgrade firmware using CLI, you will need a TFTP server on a connected PC or SCP available.

Open up an SSH or Telnet session to the router.

Enter in the relevant username and password.

To access the temp folder, enter **cd /tmp**

Depending on the router's software version the following TFTP clients are available:

- atftp
- curl

To determine which is available on your router, enter:

```
which curl || which atftp
```

The output shows the available application:

```
/usr/bin/curl
```

ATFTP

Inline command usage:

```
atftp -g -r LIS-15.00.72.002.image -l /tmp/LIS-15.00.72.002.image x.x.x.x
```

where x.x.x.x is the IP address of your PC, **-g** is get operation and **-l / -r** are local and remote file name to store.

CURL

Inline command usage:

```
curl tftp://x.x.x.x/LIS-15.00.72.002.image -o /tmp/LIS-15.00.72.002.image
```

where x.x.x.x is the IP of your PC, **-o** is local file name to store.

SCP

Secure Copy (SCP) is a part of Secure Shell (SSH) and enables file transfers to the router using authentication and encryption. It is different to TFTP, which uses UDP, while SCP uses a TCP connection. On Unix machines, SCP is a standard part of the system; on Windows it requires an additional application.

The usage example below is for a Unix machine and therefore assumes the image file is in the current folder.

```
scp LIS-15.00.72.002.image root@x.x.x.x:/tmp/LIS-15.00.72.002.image
```


Where the first argument 'LIS-15.00.72.002.image' in SCP is the source and the second argument 'tmp/LIS-15.00.72.002.image' is the destination path, enter **root** as the username to connect to x.x.x.x IP address.

After you execute the above command you will be asked to provide a root password.

At this stage the output shows the process of copying the software file into destination directory.

```
root@192.168.100.1's password:
LIS-15.00.72.000.image          100% 6812KB  2.2MB/s    00:03
```

8.2.2 Image verification before flashing

To verify the integrity of the image, firmware version xx.yy.72.002 and later uses an image-check application.

Note: it is the user's responsibility to verify the image before starting to write the image to flash process.

To use the image-check on downloaded image, enter:

```
image-check /tmp/LIS-15.00.72.002.image
```

In the case of any image corruption, an appropriate error message appears:

```
Error: no SquashFS filesystem after CRC'd section - data length 3
Error: read failed, expected at least 3 more bytes
```

or similar.

Note: the image is valid only if no error message appears. This process is done automatically during Web UI firmware update.

8.2.3 Flashing

When downloaded firmware verification succeeds, the new image can be written to flash.

To write the image into the alternative image, enter:

```
mtm write LIS-15.00.72.002.image altimage
```

Note: this is an example, substitute the correct file name.

8.2.4 Flash verification after flashing

After the write process has finished, you must complete a post verification of the firmware.

To verify the checksum of downloaded firmware, enter:

```
va_image_csum.sh /tmp/LIS-15.00.72.002.image
```

The checksum of the downloaded binary is shown:

```
08761cd03e33c569873bcc24cf2b7389 7006920 LIS-15.00.72.002 This MD5
```

To verify the checksum of written firmware, enter:

```
va_image_csum.sh alt
```

After a while the checksum will be calculated:

```
Calculating checksum.....
```

```
08761cd03e33c569873bcc24cf2b7389 7006920 LIS-15.00.72.002 This MD5
```

Verify and compare the checksum with the MD5 sum of the downloaded image.

If the checksum of the written firmware in altimage matches the one from the downloaded image in /tmp, the new firmware has been programmed successfully.

8.2.5 Setup an alternative image

Provided the programming has succeeded, you can set it as the next image to use after reboot; enter:

```
vacmd set next image altimage
```

To reboot using the new firmware, enter:

```
reboot
```

8.3 Firmware recovery

The router has an automatic boot recovery feature that will

- revert the active firmware to the alternate firmware segment on three consecutive failed software restarts.
- Change the boot configuration to factory configuration after ten failed restarts

By design this feature is intended to allow recovery from firmware problems and therefore excludes restarts due to power loss.

9 System settings

The system section contains settings that apply to the most basic operation of the system, such as the host name, time zone, logging details, NTP server, language and style.

The host name appears in the top left hand corner of the interface menu bar. It also appears when you open a Telnet or SSH session.

Note: this document shows no host name in screen shots. Throughout the document we use the host name 'VA_router'.

The system configuration contains a logging section for the configuration of a Syslog client.

9.1 Syslog overview

Most syslog settings appear in the main System configuration page.

Syslog messages have a timestamp, source facility, priority, and message section. Often the message section begins with an optional tag identifying the usermode program name and process ID responsible for the message.

Messages can be stored locally and also forwarded remotely. Separate filter options apply to each case. At a broad level, you can set the minimum severity level for local and remote targets; only messages with a priority more severe than the configured level will be recorded.

Kernel messages are recorded separately in their own buffer. However, for convenience, these are copied to the system log automatically so that a unified system log is available.

In addition, you can also define filter rules to determine how particular log messages are handled. For example, you may decide that certain debug messages are directed into their own log file, to avoid cluttering up the main system log, and to save bandwidth if delivering to a remote syslog server. You can define filters to be applied to local and remote targets, or both. A filter matches specific log messages and then determines an action for them.

9.2 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
system	main
	syslog_fillter
	timeserver

9.3 Configuring system properties

To set your system properties, select **System -> System**. There are four sections in the System page.

Section	Description
General settings	Configure host name, local time and time zone.
Logging	Configure a router to log to a server. You can configure a Syslog client in this section.
Language and Style	Configure the router's web language and style.
Time synchronization	Configure the NTP server in this section.

9.3.1 General settings

Figure 34: General settings in system properties

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Local Time	Sets the local time and syncs with browser. You can manually configure on CLI, using: <code>date -s YYYY.MM.DD-hh:mm:ss</code>
Web: hostname UCI: system.main.hostname Opt: hostname	Specifies the hostname for this system.
Web: Timezone UCI: system.main.timezone Opt: timezone	Specifies the time zone that the date and time should be rendered in by default.
Web: n/a UCI: system.main.timezone Opt: time_save_interval_min	Defines the interval in minutes to store the local time for use on next reboot. 10m

Table 17: Information table for general settings section

9.3.2 Logging

System Properties

General Settings
Logging
Language and Style

Log Storage
File

System log buffer size
64
kiB

System log buffer size for RAM
64
kiB

External system log server
0.0.0.0

External system log server port
514

External system backup log server
0.0.0.0

External system backup log server port
514

Log file location
/root/syslog.messages

Rotated log files to keep
1

Custom log hostname

Log output level
Info

Remote log output level
Debug

Figure 35: The logging section in system properties

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description									
Web: Log storage UCI: system.main.log_type Opt: log_type	Defines the system log storage type. Messages stored in RAM can be seen using logread. Note: System log stored in RAM will be lost on reboot. <table><tr><th>Web value</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>RAM</td><td>Store system log in RAM. Lost on reboot. Viewed using logread</td><td>circular</td></tr><tr><td>File</td><td>Store system log in flash. Maintained through reboot. Viewed using cat /log_file</td><td>file</td></tr></table>	Web value	Description	UCI	RAM	Store system log in RAM. Lost on reboot. Viewed using logread	circular	File	Store system log in flash. Maintained through reboot. Viewed using cat /log_file	file
Web value	Description	UCI								
RAM	Store system log in RAM. Lost on reboot. Viewed using logread	circular								
File	Store system log in flash. Maintained through reboot. Viewed using cat /log_file	file								
Web: System log buffer size UCI: system.main.log_size Opt: log_size	File log buffer size in KB. Note: when the file reaches the configured size it is copied to the archive file (log_file_name.0). <table><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>16</td><td>16 KB</td></tr></table>	Range		16	16 KB					
Range										
16	16 KB									
Web: System log buffer size for RAM UCI: system.main.log_size_ram Opt: log_size_ram	RAM log buffer size in KB. <table><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>16</td><td>16 KB</td></tr></table>	Range		16	16 KB					
Range										
16	16 KB									
Web: External system log server UCI: system.main.log_ip Opt: log_ip	External syslog server IP address. If defined syslog messages will be sent in addition to local storage. <table><tr><td>Range</td><td>IP of FQDN</td></tr><tr><td>0.0.0.0</td><td></td></tr></table>	Range	IP of FQDN	0.0.0.0						
Range	IP of FQDN									
0.0.0.0										

Web: External system log server port UCI: system.main.log_port Opt: log_port	External syslog server port number. <table><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>514</td><td></td></tr></table>	Range		514																								
Range																												
514																												
Web: External system backup log server UCI: system.main.log_ip_backup Opt: log_ip_backup	Backup external syslog server IP address. If defined syslog messages will be sent here in addition to the main log server. <table><tr><td>Range</td><td>IP or FQDN</td></tr><tr><td>0.0.0.0</td><td></td></tr></table>	Range	IP or FQDN	0.0.0.0																								
Range	IP or FQDN																											
0.0.0.0																												
Web: External system backup log server port UCI: system.main.log_port_backup Opt: log_port_backup	External syslog server port number for use with backup server. <table><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>514</td><td></td></tr></table>	Range		514																								
Range																												
514																												
Web: Log file location UCI: system.main.log_file Opt: log_file	Defines the file path for log storage when Log Storage is set to 'file'. Note: when the file reaches the configured size it is copied to the archive file (log_file_name.0). Set to root/syslog.messages <table><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>/root/syslog</td><td></td></tr></table>	Range		/root/syslog																								
Range																												
/root/syslog																												
Web: Rotated log files to keep UCI: system.main.log_file_count Opt: log_file_count	Defines the file number of archive files for storage in flash when Log Storage is set to 'file'. When the system log file reaches the configured size it is copied to the archive file (log_file_name.0). Existing archive files are copied to log_file_name.(x+1). <table><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Store 1 archive log file in flash.</td></tr></table>	Range		1	Store 1 archive log file in flash.																							
Range																												
1	Store 1 archive log file in flash.																											
Web: Custom log hostname UCI: system.main.log_hostname Opt: log_hostname	Defines a custom host name for syslog messages. Magic values %hostname (system hostname), %ser (serial), and %mon (Monitor dev_reference) are also recognised <table><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Empty</td><td>Use router hostname for syslog messages.</td></tr></table>	Range		Empty	Use router hostname for syslog messages.																							
Range																												
Empty	Use router hostname for syslog messages.																											
Web: Log output level UCI: system.main.conloglevel Opt: conloglevel	Sets the maximum log output level severity for system events. System events are written to the system log. Messages with a lower level or level equal to the configured level are displayed on the console using the logread command, or alternatively written to a flash file, if configured to do so. <table><tr><th>Web value</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>Debug</td><td>Information useful to developers for debugging the application.</td><td>8</td></tr><tr><td>Info</td><td>Normal operational messages that require no action.</td><td>7</td></tr><tr><td>Notice</td><td>Events that are unusual, but not error conditions.</td><td>6</td></tr><tr><td>Warning</td><td>May indicate that an error will occur if action is not taken.</td><td>5</td></tr><tr><td>Error</td><td>Error conditions</td><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>Critical</td><td>Critical conditions</td><td>3</td></tr><tr><td>Alert</td><td>Should be addressed immediately</td><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>Emergency</td><td>System is unusable</td><td>1</td></tr></table>	Web value	Description	UCI	Debug	Information useful to developers for debugging the application.	8	Info	Normal operational messages that require no action.	7	Notice	Events that are unusual, but not error conditions.	6	Warning	May indicate that an error will occur if action is not taken.	5	Error	Error conditions	4	Critical	Critical conditions	3	Alert	Should be addressed immediately	2	Emergency	System is unusable	1
Web value	Description	UCI																										
Debug	Information useful to developers for debugging the application.	8																										
Info	Normal operational messages that require no action.	7																										
Notice	Events that are unusual, but not error conditions.	6																										
Warning	May indicate that an error will occur if action is not taken.	5																										
Error	Error conditions	4																										
Critical	Critical conditions	3																										
Alert	Should be addressed immediately	2																										
Emergency	System is unusable	1																										

Web: Remote log output level UCI: system.main. remotologlevel Opt: remotologlevel	Sets the maximum log output level severity for system events sent to remote syslog server. <table><tr><th>Web value</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>Debug</td><td>Information useful to developers for debugging the application.</td><td>8</td></tr><tr><td>Info</td><td>Normal operational messages that require no action.</td><td>7</td></tr><tr><td>Notice</td><td>Events that are unusual, but not error conditions.</td><td>6</td></tr><tr><td>Warning</td><td>May indicate that an error will occur if action is not taken.</td><td>5</td></tr><tr><td>Error</td><td>Error conditions.</td><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>Critical</td><td>Critical conditions.</td><td>3</td></tr><tr><td>Alert</td><td>Should be addressed immediately.</td><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>Emergency</td><td>System is unusable.</td><td>1</td></tr></table>	Web value	Description	UCI	Debug	Information useful to developers for debugging the application.	8	Info	Normal operational messages that require no action.	7	Notice	Events that are unusual, but not error conditions.	6	Warning	May indicate that an error will occur if action is not taken.	5	Error	Error conditions.	4	Critical	Critical conditions.	3	Alert	Should be addressed immediately.	2	Emergency	System is unusable.	1
Web value	Description	UCI																										
Debug	Information useful to developers for debugging the application.	8																										
Info	Normal operational messages that require no action.	7																										
Notice	Events that are unusual, but not error conditions.	6																										
Warning	May indicate that an error will occur if action is not taken.	5																										
Error	Error conditions.	4																										
Critical	Critical conditions.	3																										
Alert	Should be addressed immediately.	2																										
Emergency	System is unusable.	1																										
Web: n/a UCI: system.main.audit_shell Opt: audit_shell	Log every command executed in shell. <table><tr><td>1</td><td>Enable</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Disable</td></tr></table>	1	Enable	0	Disable																							
1	Enable																											
0	Disable																											
Web: n/a UCI: system.main.audit_cfg Opt: audit_cfg	Log changes made to configuration file through any interface. <table><tr><td>1</td><td>Enable</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Disable</td></tr></table>	1	Enable	0	Disable																							
1	Enable																											
0	Disable																											
Web: n/a UCI: system.main.audit_cfg_hul_interval_h ours Opt: audit_cfg_hul_interval_hours	Defines the interval, in hours, at which configuration changes are uploaded to Activator. Set to 0 to disable. <table><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>6 hours</td></tr></table>	Range		6	6 hours																							
Range																												
6	6 hours																											
Web: n/a UCI: system.main.audit_cfg_max_size_kb Opt: audit_cfg_max_size_kb	Defines the maximum size audit data can take in flash in 1024 byte units. <table><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>1024</td><td>6 hours</td></tr></table>	Range		1024	6 hours																							
Range																												
1024	6 hours																											

Table 18: Information table for the logging section

9.3.3 Language and style

System Properties

General Settings
Logging
Language and Style

Language

auto

Design

Bootstrap

Time Synchronization

Time Synchronization is not configured yet.

Setup Time Synchronization

Figure 36: The language and style section in system properties

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Language	Sets the language to 'auto' or 'English'. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Auto</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>English</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Auto		English	
Auto					
English					
Design	Sets the router's style.				

Table 19: Information table for the language and style page

9.3.4 Time synchronization

The router time must be synchronized using NTP. The router can act as both an NTP client and an NTP server. It is enabled as an NTP client by default and individual interfaces can be configured to respond to NTP requests.

Time Synchronization

NTP update interval:

NTP server candidates:

- 0.openwrt.pool.ntp.org
- 1.openwrt.pool.ntp.org
- 3.openwrt.pool.ntp.org

NTP Server Interface:

NTP Server Stratum:

Figure 37: The time synchronization section in system properties

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: NTP update interval UCI: system.ntp.interval_hours Opt: interval_hours	Specifies interval of NTP requests in hours. Default value set to auto. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Auto</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>auto; 1-23</td></tr> </table>	Auto		Range	auto; 1-23
Auto					
Range	auto; 1-23				
Web: NTP server candidates UCI: system.ntp.server Opt: list server	Defines the list of NTP servers to poll the time from. If the list is empty, the built-in NTP daemon is not started. Multiple servers can be configured and are separated by a space if using UCI. By default all fields are set to 0.0.0.0.				
Web: NTP Server Interface UCI: system.ntp.listen Opt: listen	Defines a list of interfaces that respond to NTP requests. Interfaces should be delimited using space. Example: option listen 'LAN1 LAN2' <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>Do not respond to NTP requests.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Blank	Do not respond to NTP requests.	Range	
Blank	Do not respond to NTP requests.				
Range					
Web: NTP Server Stratum UCI: system.ntp.stratum Opt: stratum	Defines how far this NTP Server is from the reference clock. For example, an NTP server getting time directly from the reference clock will have a stratum of 1. In general, this should be left blank, which means that the router NTP Server will derive the stratum from the NTP dialogue. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>NTP server will derive stratum</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Blank	NTP server will derive stratum	Range	
Blank	NTP server will derive stratum				
Range					

Table 20: Information table for time synchronization section

9.3.5 System reboot

The router can be configured to reboot immediately, or scheduled to reboot a configured time in the future.

In the top menu, select **System -> Reboot**. The System page appears.

Ensure you have saved all your configuration changes before you reboot.

Figure 38: The reboot page

Check the **Reboot now** check box and then click **Reboot**.

9.4 System settings using command line

System settings are configured under the system package `/etc/config/system`. There are several configuration sections.

Section	Description
system	General system configuration options
timeserver	Router time and NTP conguration options
syslog_filter	Advanced filter rules (see Advanced filter section)

9.4.1 System settings using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show system
system.main=system
system.main.hostname=VA_router
system.main.timezone=UTC
system.main.log_ip=1.1.1.1
system.main.log_port=514
system.main.remoteloglevel=8
system.main.log_file=/root/syslog.messages
system.main.log_size=400
system.main.log_type=file
```

```
system.main.log_file_count=3
system.main.conloglevel=8
system.main.cronloglevel=8
system.ntp.interval_hours=auto
system.ntp.server=0.VA_router.pool.ntp.org 10.10.10.10
```

9.4.2 System settings using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export system
package 'system'

config 'system' 'main'
    option 'hostname' "VA_router"
    option 'timezone' "UTC"
    option 'log_ip' "1.1.1.1"
    option 'log_port' "514"
    option remoteloglevel '8'
    option log_file '/root/syslog.messages'
    option log_size '400'
    option log_type 'file'
    option log_file_count '3'
    option time_save_interval_min "10"
    option conloglevel '8'
    option cronloglevel '8'

config 'timeserver' 'ntp'
    option interval_hours 'auto'
    list server "0.VA_router.pool.ntp.org"
    list server '10.10.10.10'
    option listen 'LAN1 LAN2'
```

9.5 System diagnostics

9.5.1 System log messages

System log messages comprise of a date, source facility, hostname, severity and message description in the form tag: message.

9.5.1.1 Source facility list:

Facility	Description
auth	Authorisation/security
authpriv	Authorisation (private)
cron	Scheduled jobs
daemon	Background daemons
kern	Kernel messages
local0	hotplug scripts
security	Same as auth
syslog	Internal syslog events
user	General user-mode application messages

Table 21: Syslog message severity list

9.5.1.2 Event severity list

The severities are ordered from most severe to least severe.

Level	Name	Description
0	emerg	System is unusable
1	alert	Immediate action required
2	crit	Critical conditions
3	error	Error conditions
4	warning	Warning conditions
5	notice	Normal but significant
6	info	Informational
7	debug	Debug-level messages
-	none	No priority

Table 22: Syslog message severity list

9.5.1.3 System log messages in RAM

By default, system log messages are stored in the system log in RAM.

To view the system log in RAM, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# logread
```

Shows the log.

```
root@VA_router:~# logread |tail
```

Shows end of the log.

```
root@VA_router:~# logread | more
```

Shows the log page by page.

```
root@VA_router:~# logread -f
```

Shows the log on an ongoing basis. To stop this option, press **ctrl-c**.

```
root@VA_router:~# logread -f &
```

Shows the log on an ongoing basis while in the background. This allows you to run other commands while still tracing the event logs. To stop this option, type **fg** to view the current jobs, then press **ctrl-c** to kill those jobs.

9.5.1.4 System log messages in flash

Since logread is limited by memory size and does not survive a reset, it is beneficial to write system messages to flash memory. To do this, modify the system config under the system package. Set the options '**log_file**', '**log_size**', '**log_type**' and '**log_file_count**' as shown below:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export system
package system
config system 'main'
    option hostname 'VA_router'
    option zonename 'UTC'
    option timezone 'GMT0'
    option conloglevel '8'
    option cronloglevel '8'
    option time_save_interval_hour '10'
    option log_hostname '%serial'
    option log_ip '1.1.1.1'
    option log_port '514'
    option log_file '/root/syslog.messages'
    option log_size '400'
    option log_type 'file'
    option log_file_count '3'
```

The above commands will take effect after a reboot, or by running the console command:

```
root@VA_router:~# /etc/init.d/syslogd restart
```

```
root@VA_router:~# cat /root/syslog.messages
```

Shows all the system events stored in flash.

```
root@VA_router:~# tail /root/syslog.messages
```

Shows end of the events stored flash.

```
root@VA_router:~# tail -f /root/syslog.messages &
```

Shows the log on an ongoing basis. To stop this option, press **ctrl-c**.

9.5.2 Kernel messages

To view kernel messages, enter `dmesg`

```
root@VA_router:~# dmesg
[    0.000000] Linux version 3.10.12 (info@virtualaccess.com) (gcc version
4.8.1 20130401 (prerelease) (Linaro GCC 4.8-2013.04) ) #130 PREEMPT 1970-
01-01T00:00:00Z
[    0.000000] SoC: xRX330 rev 1.1
[    0.000000] bootconsole [early0] enabled
[    0.000000] CPU0 revision is: 00019556 (MIPS 34Kc)
[    0.000000] adding memory size:267386880 from DT
[    0.000000] MIPS: machine is Virtual Access GW6600V series
[    0.000000] Determined physical RAM map:
[    0.000000]   memory: 0ff00000 @ 00000000 (usable)
[    0.000000] User-defined physical RAM map:
[    0.000000]   memory: 07200000 @ 00000000 (usable)
```

Note: kernel messages are also copied to the main system log by default.

9.5.3 Console log messages GW6600/GW660V Series only

To view console log messages, enter `cat /proc/conlog`

```
root@VA_router:~# cat /proc/conlog
-- Reset number 1 --

U-Boot 2010.06-LANTIQ-v-2.3.10 (Sep 26 2017 - 13:26:21)
```

The console log survives a warm reboot, and so may hold output from several sessions. It is reset whenever power is removed.

9.5.4 Syslog process

To check the syslog process is running correctly, enter `pgrep -fl syslogd`

```
root@VA_router:~# pgrep -fl syslogd
```

```
5409 /sbin/syslogd -h VARouter -L -R 192.168.14.202:514 -l 7 -r 8 -s 400 -O  
/root/syslog.messages -b 3 -C64 -R localhost:2048
```

Changes to the syslog configuration will take effect with a restart of syslogd

```
root@VA_router:~# /etc/init.d/syslogd restart
```

9.5.5 NTP process

To check the NTP process is running correctly, enter `pgrep -fl chrony`

```
root@VA_router:~# pgrep -fl chrony  
2553 /usr/sbin/chronyd -f /etc/chrony.conf
```

Changes to the NTP configuration will take effect with a restart of chrony

```
root@VA_router:~# /etc/init.d/chrony restart
```

9.6 Advanced filtering of syslog messages

Syslog messages can be filtered against a series of rules that are checked for each message generated. If a match is found, then the specified action is taken. If no match occurs, then the default action is taken, as defined in the main system logging settings.

A message may match multiple filters. They are processed in the order listed. For example, you may wish to record authorisation messages in the main system log, but also make a copy in a separate authorisation log which can span a much longer period of time.

By default, all matching filters will be applied to each message. However, you can mark a filter to indicate that after it matches, no further filter processing should take place.

The filter rules are defined in a free-form text list in the **syslog_filter** configuration section. There are two section types, one for messages to be stored locally, and one for messages delivered remotely.

Configuring advanced filters on the web interface is not currently supported; they must be edited using the command line interface.

9.6.1 Advanced filtering using command line

Filters are defined in the **syslog_filter** configuration section of the **system** package. A set of filters can be either **local** or **remote**.

- All messages are matched against both local and remote filter rules, if configured.

- Each local filter matched is executed; if there is no match, then the default local logging action applies.
- Any remote filter matched is executed; if there is no match, then the default remote logging action applies.

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export system
package system
.....
config syslog_filter 'local'
    list text "...line 1..."
    list text "...line 2..."
    list text "...line 3..."
    ...

config syslog_filter 'remote'
    list text "...line 1..."
    list text "...line 2..."
    list text "...line 3..."
    ...

```

Lines defined here are copied to the router runtime file **/var/conf/syslog.conf** which may be reviewed to determine current rules in use.

9.6.2 Filter definitions

Each filter ruleset is a series of lines. Each line can be:

- A filter pattern, of the form `facility.[op]severity(pattern) target [~]`
- A blank line, or comment line, starting with hash (`#`).

If a message doesn't match any of the filter lines for a destination, local or remote, the default action for that destination is taken.

The sections of a filter pattern break down as follows:

Section	Description
facility	Any keyword or comma-separated list of keywords from the source facility list. See the Source Facilities table in section 1.5.1.1. Use the wildcard '*' to match all facilities.
severity	Any keyword from the event severity list (see Event Severity table above). The rule will match all severities more urgent if the message severity level is at least as urgent as this. Use the wildcard '*' to match all facilities.

op	Defines an optional severity condition. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>(empty)</td><td>match listed severity, and also anything more severe</td></tr> <tr> <td>!</td><td>match on less urgent severities than that listed</td></tr> <tr> <td>=</td><td>severity must match exactly</td></tr> <tr> <td>!=</td><td>match any severity other than the listed severity</td></tr> </table> Examples: *.debug matches all messages of debug severity and greater (ie. debug, info, warning, etc). *.=debug matches all debug messages.	(empty)	match listed severity, and also anything more severe	!	match on less urgent severities than that listed	=	severity must match exactly	!=	match any severity other than the listed severity										
(empty)	match listed severity, and also anything more severe																		
!	match on less urgent severities than that listed																		
=	severity must match exactly																		
!=	match any severity other than the listed severity																		
pattern	Defines an optional pattern to match against the message text. The pattern is used to restrict the number of log messages matching this filter. The pattern syntax is a simple case-insensitive regular expression, using these characters: <table border="1"> <tr> <td>*</td><td>Matches zero or more characters.</td></tr> <tr> <td>?</td><td>Matches any single character (use this for spaces).</td></tr> <tr> <td>!</td><td>Matches anything not matching the following pattern.</td></tr> <tr> <td>^</td><td>Matches the start of a message.</td></tr> <tr> <td>\$</td><td>Matches the end of a message.</td></tr> </table> Examples: <table border="1"> <tr> <td>(firewall:)</td><td>Match any message containing the string 'firewall:'</td></tr> <tr> <td>(up*eth1)</td><td>Match any UP message referencing eth1</td></tr> <tr> <td>(!mobile)</td><td>Match only messages that don't include the string 'mobile'</td></tr> <tr> <td>(^mobile)</td><td>Match only messages beginning with the string 'mobile'</td></tr> </table>	*	Matches zero or more characters.	?	Matches any single character (use this for spaces).	!	Matches anything not matching the following pattern.	^	Matches the start of a message.	\$	Matches the end of a message.	(firewall:)	Match any message containing the string 'firewall:'	(up*eth1)	Match any UP message referencing eth1	(!mobile)	Match only messages that don't include the string 'mobile'	(^mobile)	Match only messages beginning with the string 'mobile'
*	Matches zero or more characters.																		
?	Matches any single character (use this for spaces).																		
!	Matches anything not matching the following pattern.																		
^	Matches the start of a message.																		
\$	Matches the end of a message.																		
(firewall:)	Match any message containing the string 'firewall:'																		
(up*eth1)	Match any UP message referencing eth1																		
(!mobile)	Match only messages that don't include the string 'mobile'																		
(^mobile)	Match only messages beginning with the string 'mobile'																		
target	Defines what to do with the log message when a match occurs. It is optional for remote filters. It can be the name of a disk file, or one of the special target keywords listed below. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>default</td><td>Do whatever the default action is, as if not filter rule matched.</td></tr> <tr> <td>ignore</td><td>Never log this message (useful for remote filtering).</td></tr> <tr> <td>console</td><td>Log this message to the console. To view the console use cat /proc/conlog For GW6600/GW6600V Series only.</td></tr> <tr> <td>mem</td><td>Log this message to the memory buffer (logread), if configured. Note: logread is not stored through reboot.</td></tr> </table>	default	Do whatever the default action is, as if not filter rule matched.	ignore	Never log this message (useful for remote filtering).	console	Log this message to the console. To view the console use cat /proc/conlog For GW6600/GW6600V Series only.	mem	Log this message to the memory buffer (logread), if configured. Note: logread is not stored through reboot.										
default	Do whatever the default action is, as if not filter rule matched.																		
ignore	Never log this message (useful for remote filtering).																		
console	Log this message to the console. To view the console use cat /proc/conlog For GW6600/GW6600V Series only.																		
mem	Log this message to the memory buffer (logread), if configured. Note: logread is not stored through reboot.																		
~	Optional flag to indicate no further filters should be checked, if this filter matches. This prevents later filters from acting on the same message. For convenience this is automatically implied when a target of ignore is used. A space must be present before the ~ character. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>~</td><td>no further filters should be checked after a match.</td></tr> <tr> <td>(empty)</td><td>continue checking other filters after a match.</td></tr> </table>	~	no further filters should be checked after a match.	(empty)	continue checking other filters after a match.														
~	no further filters should be checked after a match.																		
(empty)	continue checking other filters after a match.																		

Table 23: Filter syntax definitions

9.6.3 Filter examples

9.6.3.1 Example 1

Log all debug messages to memory buffer. Do not log anywhere else locally.

Log all authorisation facility messages to filepath 'var/log/auth'. Do not log anywhere else locally.

Log all ipsec messages to filepath 'va/log/ipsec'. Do not log anywhere else locally.

For everything else, apply default local logging.

No remote filter rules defined, so apply default remote logging to all messages.

```
config syslog_filter 'local'
```



```
list text '*.debug mem ~'
list text 'auth,authpriv.* /var/log/auth ~'
list text '.*(ipsec:) /var/log/ipsec ~'
```

9.6.3.2 Example 2

As Example 1 but in addition to specified local files, copy auth, authpriv and ipsec to local default log.

```
config syslog_filter 'local'
list text '*.debug mem ~'
list text 'auth,authpriv.* /var/log/auth'
list text '.*(ipsec:) /var/log/ipsec'
list text '.* default'
```

9.6.3.3 Example 3

As in Example 2, except **do not** send any auth or auth priv messages remotely.

```
config syslog_filter 'local'
list text '*.debug mem ~'
list text 'auth,authpriv.* /var/log/auth'
list text '.*(ipsec:) /var/log/ipsec'
list text '.* default'

config syslog_filter 'remote'
list text 'auth,authpriv.* ignore'
```

9.6.3.4 Example 4

As in Example 3, except **only** send auth or auth priv messages remotely.

```
config syslog_filter 'local'
list text '*.debug mem ~'
list text 'auth,authpriv.* /var/log/auth'
list text '.*(ipsec:) /var/log/ipsec'
list text '.* default'

config syslog_filter 'remote'
list text 'auth,authpriv.* ~'
list text '.* ignore'
```

9.6.4 Filter diagnostics

To view configured filters, enter `cat /var/conf/syslog.conf`

```
root@VA_router:~# cat /var/conf/syslog.conf
[local]
auth,authpriv.* /var/log/auth
*.*(ipsec:)      /var/log/ipsec
*.*             default

[remote]
auth,authpriv.info
*.* ignore
```

10 Configuring an Ethernet interface

This section describes how to configure an Ethernet interface including configuring the interface as a DHCP server, adding the interface to a firewall zone, mapping the physical switch ports and defining loopback interface.

10.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
network	interface
	route
	va_switch
	alias
firewall	zone
dhcp	dhcp

10.2 Configuring an Ethernet interface using the web interface

To create and edit interfaces via the web interface, in the top menu, click **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces overview page appears.

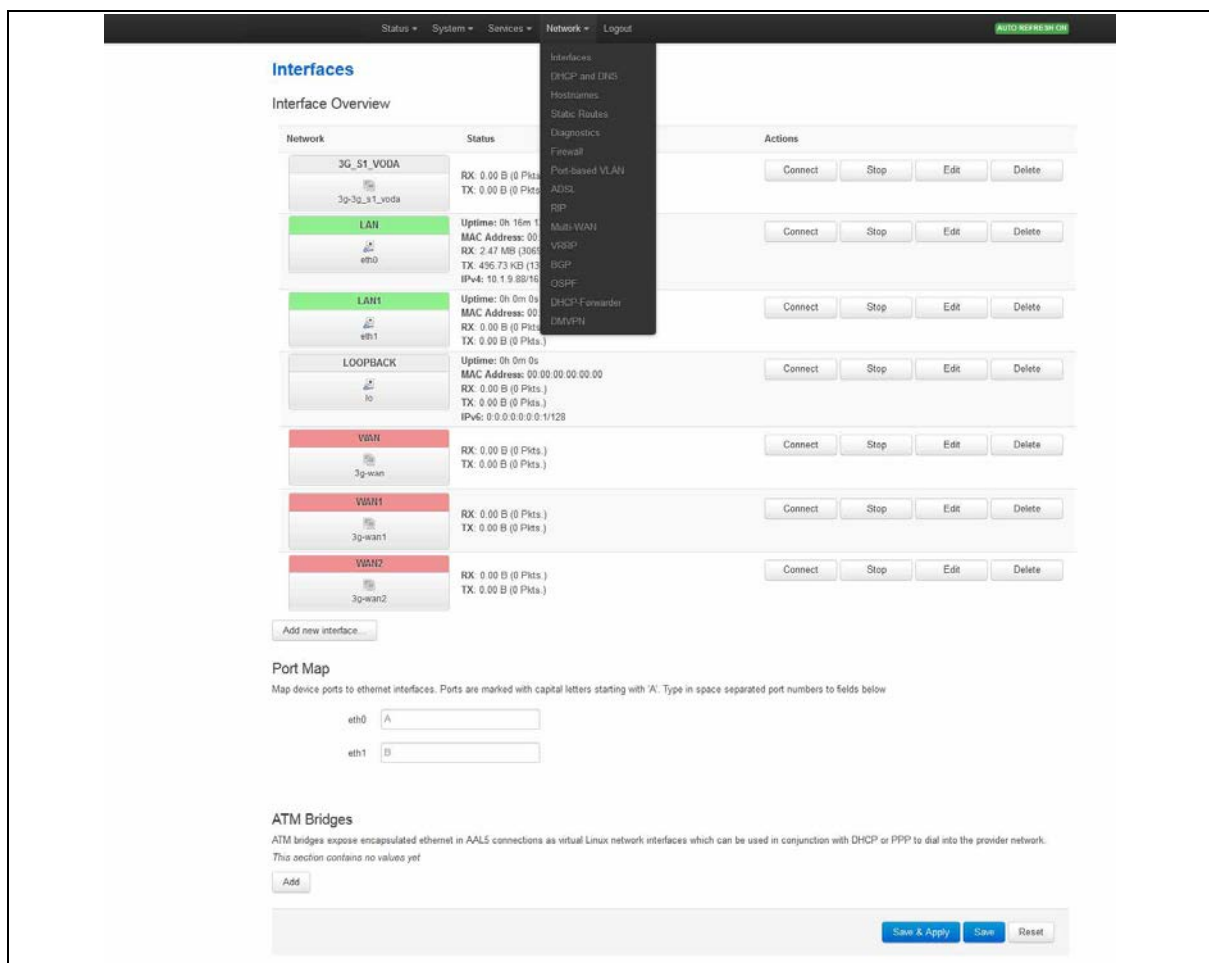


Figure 39: The interfaces overview page

There are three sections in the Interfaces page.

Section	Description
Interface Overview	Shows existing interfaces and their status. You can create new, and edit existing interfaces here.
Port Map	In this section you can map device ports to Ethernet interfaces. Ports are marked with capital letters starting with 'A'. Type in space-separated port character in the port map fields.
ATM Bridges	ATM bridges expose encapsulated Ethernet in AAL5 connections as virtual Linux network interfaces, which can be used in conjunction with DHCP or PPP to dial into the provider network.

10.2.1 Interface overview: editing an existing interface

To edit an existing interface, from the interface tabs at the top of the page, select the interface you wish to configure. Alternatively, click **Edit** in the interface's row.

10.2.2 Interface overview: creating a new interface

To create a new interface, in the Interface Overview section, click **Add new interface**. The Create Interface page appears.

Figure 40: The create interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																																																		
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network.<if name> Opt: config interface	Assigns a logical name to the interface. The network interface section will assign this name (<if name>). Type the name of the new interface. Allowed characters are A-Z, a-z, 0-9 and _																																																		
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.<if name>.proto Opt: proto	Specifies what protocol the interface will operate on. Select Static . <table><tr><th>Web</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td><td>static</td></tr><tr><td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td><td>dhcp</td></tr><tr><td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>none</td></tr><tr><td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>Used with tunnel brokers.</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td><td>Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol</td><td>gre</td></tr><tr><td>IOT</td><td>IOT</td><td>iot</td></tr><tr><td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol</td><td>l2tp</td></tr><tr><td>L2TPv3</td><td>L2TPv3 Tunnelling Protocol</td><td>l2tpv3</td></tr><tr><td>PPP</td><td>Point to Point Protocol</td><td>ppp</td></tr><tr><td>PPTP</td><td>Point to Point Tunnelling Protocol</td><td>pptp</td></tr><tr><td>PPPoE</td><td>PPP over Ethernet</td><td>pppoe</td></tr><tr><td>PPPoATM</td><td>PPP over ATM</td><td>pppoa</td></tr><tr><td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td><td>3g</td></tr><tr><td>PPP(PSTN-Modem)</td><td>PPP v90 modem</td><td>pppmodem</td></tr></table>			Web	Description	UCI	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	static	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	dhcp	Unmanaged	Unspecified	none	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.		IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.		GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	gre	IOT	IOT	iot	L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	l2tp	L2TPv3	L2TPv3 Tunnelling Protocol	l2tpv3	PPP	Point to Point Protocol	ppp	PPTP	Point to Point Tunnelling Protocol	pptp	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	pppoe	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	pppoa	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.	3g	PPP(PSTN-Modem)	PPP v90 modem	pppmodem
Web	Description	UCI																																																	
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	static																																																	
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	dhcp																																																	
Unmanaged	Unspecified	none																																																	
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.																																																		
IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.																																																		
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	gre																																																	
IOT	IOT	iot																																																	
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	l2tp																																																	
L2TPv3	L2TPv3 Tunnelling Protocol	l2tpv3																																																	
PPP	Point to Point Protocol	ppp																																																	
PPTP	Point to Point Tunnelling Protocol	pptp																																																	
PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	pppoe																																																	
PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	pppoa																																																	
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.	3g																																																	
PPP(PSTN-Modem)	PPP v90 modem	pppmodem																																																	
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network.<if name>.type Opt: type	If you select this option, then the new logical interface created will act as a bridging interface between the chosen existing physical interfaces. <table><tr><td>Empty</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Bridge</td><td>Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.</td></tr></table>			Empty		Bridge	Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.																																												
Empty																																																			
Bridge	Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.																																																		
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network.<if name>.ifname Opt: ifname	Physical interface name to assign to this logical interface. If creating a bridge over multiple interfaces select two interfaces to bridge. When using uci the interface names should be separated by a space e.g. option ifname 'eth2 eth3'																																																		

Table 24: Information table for the create new interface page

Click **Submit**. The Interface configuration page appears. There are three sections:

Section	Description
Common Configuration	Configure the interface settings such as protocol, IP address, gateway, netmask, custom DNS servers, MTU and firewall configuration.
IP-Aliases	Assigning multiple IP addresses to the interface.
DHCP Server	Configuring DHCP server settings for this interface.

10.2.3 Interface overview: common configuration

The common configuration section has four sub sections:

Section	Description
General Setup	Configure the basic interface settings such as protocol, IP address, gateway, netmask, custom DNS servers.
Advanced Settings	'Bring up on boot', 'Monitor interface state', Override MAC address, Override MTU and 'Use gateway metric'.
Physical Settings	Bridge interfaces, VLAN PCP to SKB priority mapping.
Firewall settings	Assign a firewall zone to the interface.

10.2.3.1 Common configuration – general setup

Common Configuration

General Setup
Advanced Settings
Physical Settings
Firewall Settings

Status



MAC Address: 00:E0:C8:D3:18:20
RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)
TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)

Protocol

Static address ▼

IPv4 address

IPv4 netmask

▼

IPv4 gateway

IPv4 broadcast

Use custom DNS servers

Accept router advertisements

☐

Send router solicitations

☒

IPv6 address

IPv6 gateway

Figure 41: The Ethernet connection common configuration settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																																																		
General Setup																																																			
Web: Status	Shows the current status of the interface.																																																		
Web: Protocol UCI: network.<if name>.proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. The interface protocol may be one of the options shown below. The protocol selected in the previous step will be displayed as default but can be changed if required. <table><tr><th>Web</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td><td>static</td></tr><tr><td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td><td>dhcp</td></tr><tr><td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified.</td><td>none</td></tr><tr><td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>Used with tunnel brokers.</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td><td>Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol.</td><td>gre</td></tr><tr><td>IOT</td><td>IOT</td><td>iot</td></tr><tr><td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol</td><td>l2tp</td></tr><tr><td>L2TPv3</td><td>L2TPv3 Tunnelling Protocol</td><td>l2tpv3</td></tr><tr><td>PPP</td><td>Point to Point Protocol</td><td>ppp</td></tr><tr><td>PPTP</td><td>Point to Point Tunnelling Protocol</td><td>pptp</td></tr><tr><td>PPPoE</td><td>PPP over Ethernet</td><td>pppoe</td></tr><tr><td>PPPoATM</td><td>PPP over ATM</td><td>pppoa</td></tr><tr><td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td><td>3g</td></tr><tr><td>PPP(PSTN-Modem)</td><td>PPP v90 modem</td><td>pppmodem</td></tr></table>			Web	Description	UCI	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	static	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	dhcp	Unmanaged	Unspecified.	none	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.		IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.		GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol.	gre	IOT	IOT	iot	L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	l2tp	L2TPv3	L2TPv3 Tunnelling Protocol	l2tpv3	PPP	Point to Point Protocol	ppp	PPTP	Point to Point Tunnelling Protocol	pptp	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	pppoe	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	pppoa	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.	3g	PPP(PSTN-Modem)	PPP v90 modem	pppmodem
Web	Description	UCI																																																	
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	static																																																	
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	dhcp																																																	
Unmanaged	Unspecified.	none																																																	
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.																																																		
IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.																																																		
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol.	gre																																																	
IOT	IOT	iot																																																	
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	l2tp																																																	
L2TPv3	L2TPv3 Tunnelling Protocol	l2tpv3																																																	
PPP	Point to Point Protocol	ppp																																																	
PPTP	Point to Point Tunnelling Protocol	pptp																																																	
PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	pppoe																																																	
PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	pppoa																																																	
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.	3g																																																	
PPP(PSTN-Modem)	PPP v90 modem	pppmodem																																																	
Web: IPv4 address UCI: network.<if name>.ipaddr Opt: ipaddr	The IPv4 address of the interface. This is optional if an IPv6 address is provided.																																																		
Web: IPv4 netmask UCI: network.<if name>.netmask Opt: netmask	Subnet mask to be applied to the IP address of this interface.																																																		
Web: IPv4 gateway UCI: network.<if name>.gateway Opt: gateway	IPv4 default gateway to assign to this interface (optional).																																																		
Web: IPv4 broadcast UCI: network.<if name>.broadcast Opt: broadcast	Broadcast address. This is automatically generated if no broadcast address is specified.																																																		
Web: Use custom DNS servers UCI: network.<if name>.dns Opt: list dns	List of DNS server IP addresses (optional). Multiple DNS Servers are separated by a space if using UCI.																																																		
Web: Accept router advertisements UCI: network.<if name>.accept_ra Opt: accept_ra	Specifies whether to accept IPv6 Router Advertisements on this interface (optional). Note: default is 1 if protocol is set to DHCP, otherwise defaults to 0 .																																																		
Web: Send router solicitations UCI: network.<if name>.send_rs Opt: send_rs	Specifies whether to send Router Solicitations on this interface (optional). Note: defaults to 1 for static protocol, otherwise defaults to 0 .																																																		
Web: IPv6 address UCI: network.<if name>.ip6addr Opt: ip6addr	The IPv6 IP address of the interface. Optional if an IPv4 address is provided. CIDR notation for the IPv6 address is required.																																																		

Web: IPv6 gateway UCI: network.<if name>.ip6gw Opt: ip6gw	Assign given IPv6 default gateway to this interface (optional).
---	---

Table 25: Information table for LAN interface common configuration settings

10.2.3.2 Common configuration: advanced settings

Common Configuration

General Setup Advanced Settings Physical Settings Firewall Settings

Bring up on boot ☒

Monitor interface state ☐ This interface state would be reported to VA Monitor via [keep-alive](#)

Use broadcast flag ☐ Required for certain ISPs, e.g. Charter with DOCSIS 3

Use default gateway ☒ If unchecked, no default route is configured

Use DNS servers advertised by peer ☒ If unchecked, the advertised DNS server addresses are ignored

Use gateway metric

Client ID to send when requesting DHCP

Vendor Class to send when requesting DHCP

Override MAC address

Override MTU

Figure 42: The Ethernet connection advanced settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Bring up on boot UCI: network.<if name>.auto Opt: auto	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Monitor interface state UCI: network.<if name>.monitored Opt: monitored	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Override MAC address UCI: network.<if name>.macaddr Opt: macaddr	Override the MAC address assigned to this interface. Must be in the form: hh:hh:hh:hh:hh:hh, where h is a hexadecimal number.	
Web: Override MTU UCI: network.<if name>.mtu Opt: mtu	1500	1500 bytes

Web: Use gateway metric UCI: network.<if name>.metric Opt: metric	Specifies the default route metric to use for this interface (optional). <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range							
0											
Range											
Web: Dependant Interfaces UCI: network[..x..].dependants Opt: dependants	Lists interfaces that are dependent on this parent interface. Dependant interfaces will go down when parent interface is down and will start or restart when parent interface starts. Separate multiple interfaces by a space when using UCI. Example: option dependants 'PPPADSL MOBILE' This replaces the following previous options in child interfaces. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>gre</td><td>option local_interface</td></tr> <tr> <td>lt2p</td><td>option src_ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>iot</td><td>option wan1 wan2</td></tr> <tr> <td>6in4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>6to4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> </table>	gre	option local_interface	lt2p	option src_ipaddr	iot	option wan1 wan2	6in4	option ipaddr	6to4	option ipaddr
gre	option local_interface										
lt2p	option src_ipaddr										
iot	option wan1 wan2										
6in4	option ipaddr										
6to4	option ipaddr										
Web: SNMP Alias ifindex UCI: network[..x..].snmp_alias_ifindex Opt: snmp_alias_ifindex	Defines a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface, that can be polled via the SNMP interface index (snmp_alias_ifindex+1000). See 'Configuring SNMP' section for more information. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>No SNMP interface alias index</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0 - 4294966295</td></tr> </table>	Blank	No SNMP interface alias index	Range	0 - 4294966295						
Blank	No SNMP interface alias index										
Range	0 - 4294966295										

Table 26: Information table for common configuration advanced settings

10.2.3.3 Common configuration: physical settings

Status ▾ System ▾ Services ▾ Network ▾ Logout

Common Configuration

General Setup
Advanced Settings
Physical Settings
Firewall Settings

Bridge interfaces ☐ creates a bridge over specified interface(s)

VLAN PCP to skb->priority mapping
 Space separated list of <pcp>:<priority>

skb->priority to VLAN PCP mapping

Interface
☐ Ethernet Adapter: "3G" (3G)
☐ Ethernet Adapter: "ADSL" (ADSL)
☐ Ethernet Adapter: "eth0"
☐ Ethernet Adapter: "eth1" (lan1)
☐ Ethernet Adapter: "eth2"
☐ Ethernet Adapter: "eth3"
☐ Ethernet Adapter: "lo" (loopback)
☐ Ethernet Adapter: "teql0"
☐ Ethernet Adapter: "tunl0"
☐ Ethernet Adapter: "usb0"
☒ Wireless Network: Master "GW6630W_VA" (lan)
☐ Custom Interface:

Figure 43: The common configuration physical settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Bridge interfaces UCI: network.<if name>.type Opt: type	Sets the interface to bridge over a specified interface(s). The physical interfaces can be selected from the list and are defined in network.<if name>.ifname. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Empty</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Bridge</td><td>Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.</td></tr> </table>	Empty		Bridge	Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.
Empty					
Bridge	Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.				
Web: Enable STP UCI: network.<if name>.stp Opt: stp	Enable Spanning Tree Protocol. This option is only available when the Bridge Interfaces option is selected. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: VLAN PCP to skb>priority mapping UCI: network.<if name>.vlan_qos_map_ingress Opt: list vlan_qos_map_ingress	VLAN priority code point to socket buffer mapping. Multiple priority mappings are entered with a space between them when using UCI. Example: network.<if name>. vlan_qos_map_ingress =1:2 2:1				
Web: skb priority to >VLAN PCP mapping UCI: network.<if name>.vlan_qos_map_egress Opt: list vlan_qos_map_egress	Socket buffer to VLAN priority code point mapping. Multiple priority mappings are entered with a space between them when using UCI. Example: network.<if name>. vlan_qos_map_egress =1:2 2:1				
Web: Interface UCI: network.<if name>.ifname Opt: ifname	Physical interface to assign the logical interface to. If mapping multiple interfaces for bridging the interface names are separated by a space when using UCI and package options. Example: option ifname 'eth2 eth3' or network.<if name>.ifname=eth2 eth 3				

Table 27: Information table for physical settings page

10.2.3.4 Loopback interfaces

Loopback interfaces are defined in exactly the same way as Ethernet interfaces. Please see section above.

Note: there is no software limitation as to how many loopback interfaces can exist on the router.

10.2.3.5 Common configuration: firewall settings

Use this section to select the firewall zone you want to assign to this interface.

Select **unspecified** to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

Figure 44: GRE firewall settings

10.2.4 Interface overview: IP-aliases

IP aliasing means associating more than one IP address to a network interface. You can assign multiple aliases.

10.2.4.1 IP-alias packages

Package	Sections
Network	alias

10.2.4.2 IP-alias using the web

To use IP-aliases, enter a name for the alias and click **Add**. This name will be assigned to the alias section for this IP-alias. In this example, we use the name 'ethalias1'.

Figure 45: The IP-Aliases section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
UCI: network.<alias name>=ifname Opt: config interface 'aliasname'	Assigns the alias name.
UCI: network.<alias name>.interface Opt: interface	This maps the IP-Alias to the interface.
UCI: network.<alias name>.proto Opt: proto	This maps the interface protocol to the alias.

Table 28: Information table for IP-Aliases name assignment

After you have clicked Add, the IP Aliases configuration options page appears. The IP-Alias is divided into two sub sections: general setup and advanced.

10.2.4.3 IP-aliases: general setup

Figure 46: The IP-Aliases general setup section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: IPv4-Address UCI: network.<alias name>.ipaddr Opt: ipaddr	Defines the IP address for the IP alias.
Web: IPv4-Netmask UCI: network.<alias name>.netmask Opt: netmask	Defines the netmask for the IP alias.
Web: IPv4-Gateway UCI: network.<alias name>.gateway Opt: gateway	Defines the gateway for the IP alias.

Table 29: Information table for IP-Alias general setup page

10.2.4.4 IP-aliases: advanced settings

Figure 47: The IP-Aliases advanced settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: IPv4-Broadcast UCI: network.<alias name>.bcast Opt: bcast	Defines the IP broadcast address for the IP alias.
Web: DNS-Server UCI: network.<alias name>.dns Opt: dns	Defines the DNS server for the IP alias.

Table 30: Information table for IP-Alias advanced settings page

10.2.5 Interface overview: DHCP server

Note: this option is only available for interfaces with a static IP address.

10.2.5.1 DHCP server: packages

Package	Sections
dhcp	dhcp

To assign a DHCP Server to the interface, click **Setup DHCP Server**.

Figure 48: The DHCP Server settings section

The DHCP Server configuration options will appear. The DHCP Server is divided into two sub sections – general setup and advanced.

10.2.5.2 DHCP server: general setup

DHCP Server

General Setup
Advanced Settings

Ignore interface ☐ [Disable DHCP for this interface.](#)

Mode DHCPv4 [Mode of operation](#)

Start 100 [Lowest leased address as offset from the network address.](#)

Limit 150 [Maximum number of leased addresses.](#)

Leasetime 12h [Expiry time of leased addresses, minimum is 2 Minutes \(2m\).](#)

Figure 49: The DHCP server general setup section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description		
Web: Ignore interface UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].ignore Opt: ignore	Defines whether the DHCP pool should be enabled for this interface. If not specified for the DHCP pool then default is disabled i.e. dhcp pool enabled.		
	0	Disabled.	
	1	Enabled.	
Web: Mode UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].mode Opt: mode	Defines whether the DHCP pool should be enabled for this interface. If not specified for the DHCP pool then default is disabled i.e. dhcp pool enabled.		
	Web	Description	UCI
	DHCPv4	DHCP for IPv4	ipv4
	DHCPv6	DHCP for IPv6	ipv6_dhcp
	IPv6 Router Advertisements	IPv6 RA	ipv6_ra
	DHCPv6 Prefix Delegation	DHCPv6 prefix delegation	ipv6_pd
Web: Start UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].start Opt: start	Defines the offset from the network address for the start of the DHCP pool.		
	Example: for network address 192.168.100.10/24, start=100, DHCP allocation pool will start at 192.168.100.100.		
	For subnets greater than /24, it may be greater than 255 to span subnets. Alternatively, specify in IP address notation using the wildcard '0' where the octet is required to inherit bits from the interface IP address.		
	Example: to define a DHCP scope starting from 10.1.20.0 on an interface with 10.1.0.0/16 address, set start to 0.0.20.1100		
	Range		
Web: Limit UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].limit Opt: limit	Defines the size of the address pool.		
	Example: for network address 192.168.100.10/24, start=100, limit=150, DHCP allocation pool will be .100 to .249		
	150		
	Range	0 – 255	

Web: Leasetime UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].leasetime Opt: leasetime	Defines the lease time of addresses handed out to clients, for example 12h or 30m. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>12h</td><td>12 hours</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	12h	12 hours	Range	
12h	12 hours				
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].interface Opt: interface	Defines the interface that is served by this DHCP pool. This must be one of the configured interfaces. When configured through the web UI this will be automatically populated with the interface name <table border="1"> <tr> <td>lan</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	lan		Range	
lan					
Range					

Table 31: Information table for DHCP server general setup page

10.2.5.3 DHCP server: advanced settings

DHCP Server

General Setup | **Advanced Settings**

Dynamic DHCP ☒ Dynamically allocate DHCP addresses for clients. If disabled, only clients having static leases will be served.

Force ☐ Force DHCP on this network even if another server is detected.

IPv4-Netmask Override the netmask sent to clients. Normally it is calculated from the subnet that is served.

DHCP-Options Define additional DHCP options, for example "6,192.168.2.1,192.168.2.2" which advertises different DNS servers to clients.

Figure 50: The DHCP server advanced settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Dynamic DHCP UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].dynamicdhcp Opt: dynamicdhcp	Defines whether to dynamically allocate DHCP leases. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Dynamically allocate leases.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Use /etc/ethers file for serving DHCP leases.</td></tr> </table>	1	Dynamically allocate leases.	0	Use /etc/ethers file for serving DHCP leases.
1	Dynamically allocate leases.				
0	Use /etc/ethers file for serving DHCP leases.				
Web: Force UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].force Opt: force	Forces DHCP serving on the specified interface even if another DHCP server is detected on the same network segment. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: IPv4-Netmask UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].netmask Opt: netmask	Defines a netmask sent to clients that overrides the netmask as calculated from the interface subnet. <table border="1"> <tr> <td></td><td>Use netmask from interface subnet</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>		Use netmask from interface subnet	Range	
	Use netmask from interface subnet				
Range					
Web: DHCP-Options UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].dhcp_option Opt: list dhcp_option	Defines additional options to be added for this dhcp pool. For example with 'list dhcp_option 26,1470' or 'list dhcp_option mtu, 1470' you can assign a specific MTU per DHCP pool. Your client must accept the MTU option for this to work. Options that contain multiple values should be separated by a comma. Example: list dhcp_option 6,192.168.2.1,192.168.2.2 <table border="1"> <tr> <td></td><td>No options defined.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Syntax</td><td>Option_number, option_value</td></tr> </table>		No options defined.	Syntax	Option_number, option_value
	No options defined.				
Syntax	Option_number, option_value				
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].networkid Opt: networkid	Assigns a network-id to all clients that obtain an IP address from this pool. <table border="1"> <tr> <td></td><td>Use network from interface subnet</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>		Use network from interface subnet	Range	
	Use network from interface subnet				
Range					

Table 32: Information table for DHCP advanced settings page

For more advanced configuration on the DHCP server, read 'DHCP server and DNS configuration section.

10.3 Interface configuration using command line

The configuration files are stored at **/etc/config/network**, **/etc/config/firewall** and **/etc/config/dhcp**.

10.3.1 Interface configuration using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network
... .
network.newinterface=interface
network.newinterface.proto=static
network.newinterface.ifname=eth0
network.newinterface.monitored=0
network.newinterface.ipaddr=2.2.2.2
network.newinterface.netmask=255.255.255.0
network.newinterface.gateway=2.2.2.10
network.newinterface.broadcast=2.2.2.255
network.newinterface.vlan_qos_map_ingress=1:2 2:1
network.ethalias1=alias
network.ethalias1.proto=static
network.ethalias1.interface=newinterface
network.ethalias1.ipaddr=10.10.10.1
network.ethalias1.netmask=255.255.255.0
network.ethalias1.gateway=10.10.10.10
network.ethalias1.bcast=10.10.10.255
network.ethalias1.dns=8.8.8.8

root@VA_router:~# uci show firewall
... .
firewall.@zone[0]=zone
firewall.@zone[0].name=lan
firewall.@zone[0].input=ACCEPT
firewall.@zone[0].output=ACCEPT
firewall.@zone[0].forward=ACCEPT
firewall.@zone[0].network=lan newinterface

root@VA_router:~# uci show dhcp
...
```



```

dhcp.@dhcp[0]=dhcp
dhcp.@dhcp[0].interface=newinterface
dhcp.@dhcp[0].mode=ipv4
dhcp.@dhcp[0].start=100
dhcp.@dhcp[0].limit=150
dhcp.@dhcp[0].leasetime=12h

```

To change any of the above values use `uci set` command.

10.3.2 Interface configuration using package options

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export network
package network
.....
config interface 'newinterface'
    option proto 'static'
    option ifname 'eth0'
    option monitored '0'
    option ipaddr '2.2.2.2'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
    option gateway '2.2.2.10'
    option broadcast '2.2.2.255'
    list vlan_qos_map_ingress '1:2'
    list vlan_qos_map_ingress '2:1'

config alias 'ethalias1'
    option proto 'static'
    option interface 'newinterface'
    option ipaddr '10.10.10.1'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
    option gateway '10.10.10.10'
    option bcast '10.10.10.255'
    option dns '8.8.8.8'

root@VA_router:~# uci export firewall
package firewall
config zone
    option name 'lan'

```

```

option input 'ACCEPT'
option output 'ACCEPT'
option forward 'ACCEPT'
option network 'lan newinterface'

root@VA_router:~# uci export dhcp
package dhcp
.....
config dhcp
    option interface 'newinterface'
    option mode 'ipv4'
    option start '100'
    option leasetime '12h'
    option limit '150'

```

To change any of the above values use `uci set` command.

10.3.3 Loopback interfaces

Loopback interfaces are defined in exactly the same way as Ethernet interfaces. Read the section above.

Note: there is no software limitation as to how many loopback interfaces can exist on the router.

An example showing a partial uci export of a loopback interface configuration is shown below.

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export network
....
config interface 'loopback'
    option proto 'static'
    option ifname 'lo'
    option ipaddr '127.0.0.1'
    option netmask '255.0.0.0'

```

10.4 Configuring port maps

10.5 Port map packages

Package	Sections
Network	va_switch

10.5.1 Configuring port map using the web interface

The new logical Ethernet interface needs to be mapped to a physical switch port. To configure the Ethernet switch physical port to logical interface mappings, go to the Port Map section at **Network->Interfaces**.

Port Map
Map device ports to ethernet interfaces. Ports are marked with capital letters starting with 'A'. Type in space separated port numbers to fields below

eth0

eth1

eth2

eth3

Figure 51: The Interface port map section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description								
Web: eth0 UCI: network.@va_switch[0].eth0 Opt: eth0	Defines eth0 physical switch port mapping. Must be entered in upper case. <table> <tr><td>A</td><td>Eth0 assigned to switch port A</td></tr> <tr><td>B</td><td>Eth0 assigned to switch port B</td></tr> <tr><td>C</td><td>Eth0 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> <tr><td>D</td><td>Eth0 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> </table>	A	Eth0 assigned to switch port A	B	Eth0 assigned to switch port B	C	Eth0 assigned to switch port C	D	Eth0 assigned to switch port C
A	Eth0 assigned to switch port A								
B	Eth0 assigned to switch port B								
C	Eth0 assigned to switch port C								
D	Eth0 assigned to switch port C								
Web: eth1 UCI: network.@va_switch[0].eth1 Opt: eth1	Defines eth1 physical switch port mapping. Must be entered in upper case. <table> <tr><td>A</td><td>Eth1 assigned to switch port A</td></tr> <tr><td>B</td><td>Eth1 assigned to switch port B</td></tr> <tr><td>C</td><td>Eth1 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> <tr><td>D</td><td>Eth1 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> </table>	A	Eth1 assigned to switch port A	B	Eth1 assigned to switch port B	C	Eth1 assigned to switch port C	D	Eth1 assigned to switch port C
A	Eth1 assigned to switch port A								
B	Eth1 assigned to switch port B								
C	Eth1 assigned to switch port C								
D	Eth1 assigned to switch port C								
Web: eth2 UCI: network.@va_switch[0].eth2 Opt: eth2	Defines eth0 physical switch port mapping. Must be entered in upper case. <table> <tr><td>A</td><td>Eth2 assigned to switch port A</td></tr> <tr><td>B</td><td>Eth2 assigned to switch port B</td></tr> <tr><td>C</td><td>Eth2 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> <tr><td>D</td><td>Eth2 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> </table>	A	Eth2 assigned to switch port A	B	Eth2 assigned to switch port B	C	Eth2 assigned to switch port C	D	Eth2 assigned to switch port C
A	Eth2 assigned to switch port A								
B	Eth2 assigned to switch port B								
C	Eth2 assigned to switch port C								
D	Eth2 assigned to switch port C								
Web: eth3 UCI: network.@va_switch[0].eth3 Opt: eth3	Defines eth0 physical switch port mapping. Must be entered in upper case. <table> <tr><td>A</td><td>Eth3 assigned to switch port A</td></tr> <tr><td>B</td><td>Eth3 assigned to switch port B</td></tr> <tr><td>C</td><td>Eth3 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> <tr><td>D</td><td>Eth3 assigned to switch port C</td></tr> </table>	A	Eth3 assigned to switch port A	B	Eth3 assigned to switch port B	C	Eth3 assigned to switch port C	D	Eth3 assigned to switch port C
A	Eth3 assigned to switch port A								
B	Eth3 assigned to switch port B								
C	Eth3 assigned to switch port C								
D	Eth3 assigned to switch port C								

Table 33: Information table for interface port map page

10.5.2 Configuring port maps using UCI

The configuration files are stored on **/etc/config/network**

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network
.....
network.@va_switch[0]=va_switch
network.@va_switch[0].eth0=A
network.@va_switch[0].eth1=B
network.@va_switch[0].eth2=C
network.@va_switch[0].eth3=D
```

To change any of the above values use `uci set` command.

10.5.3 Configuring port map using package options

The configuration files are stored on **/etc/config/network**

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export network
....
config va_switch
    option eth0 'A'
    option eth1 'B'
    option eth2 'C'
    option eth3 'D'
```

To change any of the above values use `uci set` command.

10.5.4 ATM bridges

The ATM bridges section is not used when configuring an Ethernet interface.

10.6 Interface diagnostics

10.6.1 Interfaces status

To show the current running interfaces, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# ifconfig
3g-CDMA    Link encap:Point-to-Point Protocol
            inet addr:10.33.152.100  P-t-P:178.72.0.237  Mask:255.255.255.255
            UP POINTOPOINT RUNNING NOARP MULTICAST  MTU:1400  Metric:1
            RX packets:6 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
            TX packets:23 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
            collisions:0 txqueuelen:3
```

```

RX bytes:428 (428.0 B)  TX bytes:2986 (2.9 KiB)

eth0      Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 00:E0:C8:12:12:15
          inet addr:192.168.100.1  Bcast:192.168.100.255
Mask:255.255.255.0
          inet6 addr: fe80::2e0:c8ff:fe12:1215/64 Scope:Link
          UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
          RX packets:6645 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:523 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
          RX bytes:569453 (556.1 KiB)  TX bytes:77306 (75.4 KiB)

lo        Link encap:Local Loopback
          inet addr:127.0.0.1  Mask:255.0.0.0
          inet6 addr: ::1/128 Scope:Host
          UP LOOPBACK RUNNING  MTU:16436  Metric:1
          RX packets:385585 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:385585 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
          RX bytes:43205140 (41.2 MiB)  TX bytes:43205140 (41.2 MiB)

```

To display a specific interface, enter:

```

root@VA_router:~# ifconfig eth0
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 00:E0:C8:12:12:15
          inet addr:192.168.100.1  Bcast:192.168.100.255
Mask:255.255.255.0
          inet6 addr: fe80::2e0:c8ff:fe12:1215/64 Scope:Link
          UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
          RX packets:7710 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:535 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
          RX bytes:647933 (632.7 KiB)  TX bytes:80978 (79.0 KiB)

```

10.6.2 ARP table status

To show the current ARP table of the router, enter:

```
root@GW7314:~# arp
? (10.67.253.141) at 30:30:41:30:43:36 [ether] on eth8
? (10.47.48.1) at 0a:44:b2:06 [ether] on gre-gre1
```

10.6.3 Route status

To show the current routing status, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# route -n
Kernel IP routing table
Destination      Gateway          Genmask          Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
192.168.100.0    *                255.255.255.0    U        0      0        0 eth0
```

Note: a route will only be displayed in the routing table when the interface is up.

11 Configuring VLAN

11.1 Maximum number of VLANs supported

Virtual Access' routers support up to 4095 VLANs.

11.2 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
Network	

11.3 Configuring VLAN using the web interface

11.3.1 Create a VLAN interface

To configure VLAN using the web interface, in the top menu, select **Network - > Interfaces**.

Click **Add** new interface. The Create Interface page appears.

Figure 52: The create interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																										
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network.vlan1=interface Opt: interface	Type the name of the new interface. For example, VLAN1.																										
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.vlan_test.proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. Select Static . <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>Used with tunnel brokers.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td><td>Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point to Point Protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>PPP over Ethernet</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>PPP over ATM</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.	IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	PPP	Point to Point Protocol	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.																										
IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol																										
PPP	Point to Point Protocol																										
PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet																										
PPPoATM	PPP over ATM																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network.vlan1.type Opt: type	Create a bridge over multiple interfaces.																										
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network.vlan1.ifname Opt: ifname	Check the Custom Interface radio button. Enter a name, for example eth0.100. This will assign VLAN 100 to the eth0 interface.																										

Table 34: Information table for the create interface page

Click **Submit**. The Interfaces page for VLAN1 appears.

11.3.2 General setup: VLAN

Status ▾ System ▾ Services ▾ Network ▾ Logout

UNSAVED CHANGES: 0 AUTO REFRESH ON

WAN VLAN1 **VLAN2** LAN

Interfaces - VLAN1

On this page you can configure the network interfaces. You can bridge several interfaces by ticking the "bridge interfaces" field and enter the names of several network interfaces separated by spaces. You can also use VLAN notation `INTERFACE.VLANNR` (e.g.: `eth0.1`).

Common Configuration

General Setup **Advanced Settings** Physical Settings Firewall Settings

Status **eth0.1**

Uptime: 0h 4m 41s
MAC Address: 00:E0:C8:10:10:50
RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)
TX: 252.00 B (6 Pkts.)
IPv4: 172.16.100.1/24

Protocol:

IPv4 address:

IPv4 netmask:

IPv4 gateway:

IPv4 broadcast:

Use custom DNS servers:

Figure 53: The VLAN 1 interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																										
Web: Protocol UCI: network.VLAN1.proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>Used with tunnel brokers.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td><td>Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point to Point Protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>PPP over Ethernet</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>PPP over ATM</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.	IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	PPP	Point to Point Protocol	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.																										
IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol																										
PPP	Point to Point Protocol																										
PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet																										
PPPoATM	PPP over ATM																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: IPv4 address UCI: network.VLAN1.ipaddr Opt: ipaddr	The IPv4 address of the interface. This is optional if an IPv6 address is provided.																										
Web: IPv4 netmask UCI: network.VLAN1.netmask Opt: netmask	Subnet mask to be applied to the IP address of this interface.																										

Web: IPv4 gateway UCI: network.VLAN1.gateway Opt: gateway	IPv4 default gateway to assign to this interface (optional).
Web: Use custom DNS servers UCI: network.VLAN1.dns Opt: dns	List of DNS server IP addresses (optional).

Table 35: Information table for VLAN general settings

11.3.3 Firewall settings: VLAN

Use this section to select the firewall zone you want to assign to the VLAN interface.

Select **unspecified** to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

Figure 54: Firewall settings page

When you have added all the VLAN interfaces you require, click **Save & Apply**.

11.4 Viewing VLAN interface settings

To view the new VLAN interface settings, in the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces Overview page appears.

The example below shows two VLAN interfaces configured.

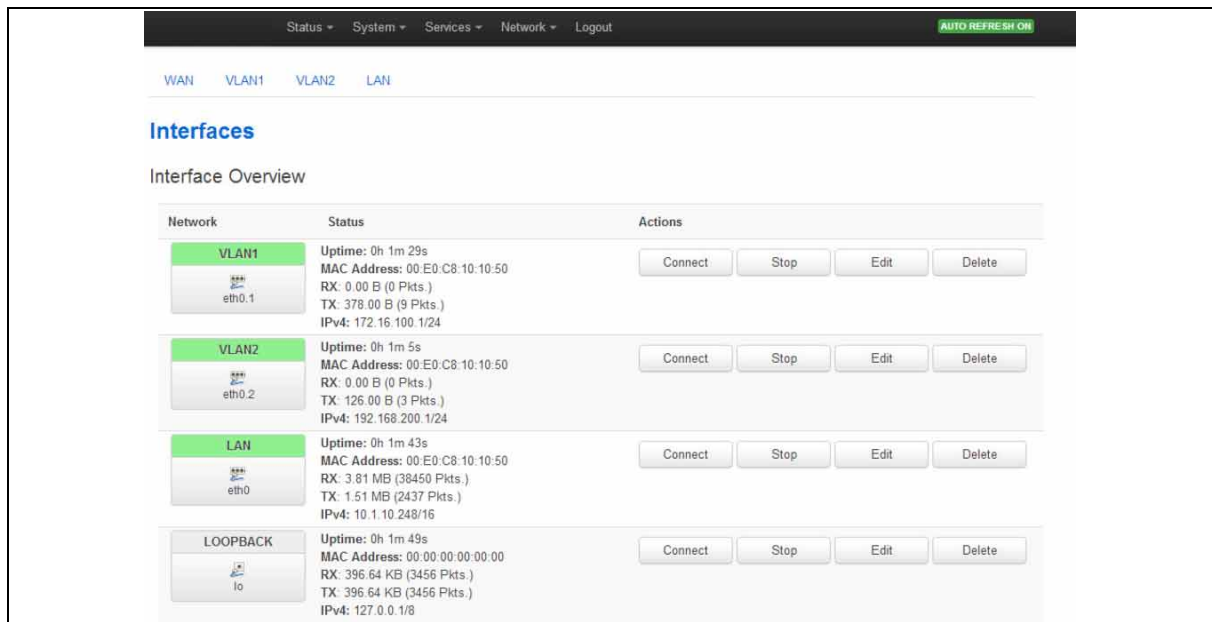


Figure 55: The interface overview page showing two VLAN interfaces

11.5 Configuring VLAN using the UCI interface

You can configure VLANs through CLI. The VLAN configuration file is stored on: **/etc/config/network**

```
# uci export network
package network
config interface 'vlan100'
    option proto 'static'
    option ifname 'eth0.100'
    option monitored '0'
    option ipaddr '192.168.100.1'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
    option gateway '192.168.100.10'
    option broadcast '192.168.100.255'
    option dns '8.8.8.8'
```

Modify these settings by running `uci set <parameter>` command.

When specifying the ifname ensure that it is written in dotted mode, that is, eth1.100 where eth1 is the physical interface assigned to VLAN tag 100.

Note: VLAN1 is, by default the native VLAN and will not be tagged.

12 Configuring a WiFi connection

This section explains how to configure WiFi on a Virtual Access router using the web interface or via UCI.

WiFi can act as an Access Point (AP) to another device in the network or it can act as a client to an existing AP.

You can configure WiFi in two different ways:

- on a new interface, or
- on an existing interface

12.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
network	wlan_ap wlan_client
wireless	wifi-device wifi-iface

12.2 Configuring a WiFi interface using the web interface

To create a new WiFi interface via the web interface, in the top menu, click **Network -> Wifi**. The Wireless overview page appears.

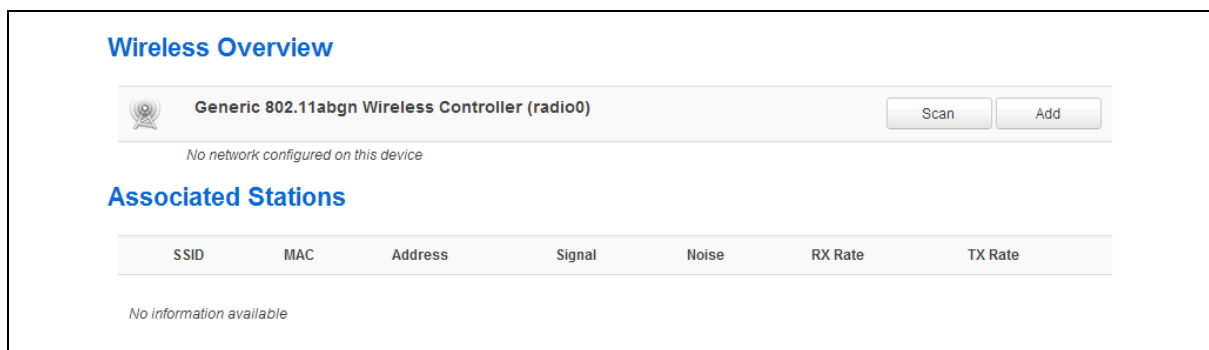


Figure 56: The wireless overview page

Click **Add** to create a new WiFi interface. The Wireless Network configuration page appears. The Wireless Network configuration page consists of two sections:

Section	Description
Device Configuration	Configuration of physical wireless radio settings such as channel and transmit power settings, HT mode, country code, distance optimization, fragmentation threshold and RTS/CTS threshold. The settings are shared among all defined wireless networks.
Interface Configuration	Configuration of the network interface - interface name, mode, network settings, security and filtering

12.2.1 Wireless network: device configuration

The Device Configuration section covers physical settings of the radio hardware such as channel, transmit power or antenna selection, which is shared among all defined wireless

networks (if the radio hardware is multi-SSID capable). There are two sections within the Device Configuration section.

Section	Description
General Setup	Channel and transmit power settings.
Advanced Settings	HT mode, country code, distance optimization, fragmentation threshold and RTS/CTS threshold.

12.2.1.1 Device configuration: general setup

Figure 57: The device configuration general setup section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Wireless network UCI: wireless.radio0.disabled Opt: disanabled	Enable or disables a wireless <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Disables Wifi interface.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Enables Wifi interface.</td></tr> </table>	1	Disables Wifi interface.	0	Enables Wifi interface.
1	Disables Wifi interface.				
0	Enables Wifi interface.				
Web: Channel UCI: wireless.radio0.channel Opt: channel	Select the channel you require. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>1-11</td></tr> <tr> <td>11 (2.462GHz)</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Range	1-11	11 (2.462GHz)	
Range	1-11				
11 (2.462GHz)					
Web: Transmit power UCI: wireless.radio0.txpower Opt: txpower	Select the transmit power range range you require. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0dBm(1mW)-17dBm(50mW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>17dBm(50mW)</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Range	0dBm(1mW)-17dBm(50mW)	17dBm(50mW)	
Range	0dBm(1mW)-17dBm(50mW)				
17dBm(50mW)					

Table 36: Information table for the device configuration section

12.2.1.2 Device configuration: advanced settings

Device Configuration

General Setup | **Advanced Settings**

Mode: 802.11g+n

HT mode: 20MHz

Country Code: US - United States Use ISO/IEC 3166 alpha2 country codes.

Distance Optimization: Distance to farthest network member in meters.

Fragmentation Threshold:

RTS/CTS Threshold:

Figure 58: The device configuration advanced settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description														
Web: Mode UCI: wireless.radio0.hwmode Opt: hwmode	Mode options. <table> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>Auto</td><td>Wireless protocol negotiate with supplicant device.</td></tr> <tr> <td>802.11b</td><td>Select the wireless protocol to use.</td></tr> <tr> <td>802.11g</td><td>Select the wireless protocol to use.</td></tr> <tr> <td>802.11a</td><td>Select the wireless protocol to use.</td></tr> <tr> <td>802.11g+n</td><td>Select the wireless protocol to use.</td></tr> <tr> <td>802.11a+n</td><td>Select the wireless protocol to use.</td></tr> </table>	Option	Description	Auto	Wireless protocol negotiate with supplicant device.	802.11b	Select the wireless protocol to use.	802.11g	Select the wireless protocol to use.	802.11a	Select the wireless protocol to use.	802.11g+n	Select the wireless protocol to use.	802.11a+n	Select the wireless protocol to use.
Option	Description														
Auto	Wireless protocol negotiate with supplicant device.														
802.11b	Select the wireless protocol to use.														
802.11g	Select the wireless protocol to use.														
802.11a	Select the wireless protocol to use.														
802.11g+n	Select the wireless protocol to use.														
802.11a+n	Select the wireless protocol to use.														
Web: HT mode UCI: wireless.radio0.htmode Opt: country	HT mode options. <table> <tr> <td>20MHz</td><td>Specifies the channel width in 802.11</td></tr> <tr> <td>40MHz 2nd channel below</td><td>Specifies the channel width in 802.11</td></tr> <tr> <td>40MHz 2nd channel above</td><td>Specifies the channel width in 802.11</td></tr> </table>	20MHz	Specifies the channel width in 802.11	40MHz 2nd channel below	Specifies the channel width in 802.11	40MHz 2nd channel above	Specifies the channel width in 802.11								
20MHz	Specifies the channel width in 802.11														
40MHz 2nd channel below	Specifies the channel width in 802.11														
40MHz 2nd channel above	Specifies the channel width in 802.11														
Web: Country Code UCI: wireless.radio0.country Opt: country	Sets the country code. Use ISO/IEC 3166 alpha2 country codes.														
Web: Distance Optimization UCI: wireless.radio0.distance Opt: distance	Defines the distance between the AP and the furthest client in meters <table> <tr> <td>15</td><td>15 meters</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	15	15 meters	Range											
15	15 meters														
Range															
Web: Fragmentation Threshold UCI: wireless.radio0.frag Opt: frag	Defines the fragmentation threshold. <table> <tr> <td>None</td><td>Routers defaults applied</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	None	Routers defaults applied	Range											
None	Routers defaults applied														
Range															
Web: RTS/CTS Threshold UCI: wireless.radio0.rts Opt: rts	Defines the RTS/CTS threshold. <table> <tr> <td>None</td><td>Router defaults applied</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	None	Router defaults applied	Range											
None	Router defaults applied														
Range															

Table 37: Information table for device configuration advanced settings

12.2.2 Wireless network: interface configuration

The interface configuration section is used to configure the network and security settings. It has three sub sections.

Section	Description
General Setup	Identification, network and mode settings.
Wireless Security	Encryption, cipher and key security settings
MAC Filter	MAC address filter settings.

12.2.2.1 Interface configuration: general setup

Use this section to configure the interface name, mode and network settings. Differing web options may be presented depending on the mode selected.

The screenshot displays the 'Interface Configuration' web interface with the 'General Setup' tab selected. The 'Wireless Security' and 'MAC-Filter' tabs are also visible. The 'ESSID' field is set to 'OpenWrt'. The 'Mode' dropdown is set to 'Access Point'. Under the 'Network' section, several radio buttons are listed: 3G, ADSL, Test_BC, Tunnel1, lan, lan2, lan3, lan4, loopback, and 'unspecified -or- create:'. The 'unspecified -or- create:' option is selected. Below the network list, there is a blue information icon and text: 'Choose the network you want to attach to this wireless interface. Select unspecified to not attach any network or fill out the create field to define a new network.' At the bottom left, there is a 'Hide ESSID' checkbox. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Save & Apply' (blue), 'Save' (blue), and 'Reset' (grey).

Figure 59: The interface configuration general setup section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																		
Web: ESSID UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0]..ssid Opt: ssid	Extended Service Set Identification. Type the name of the wireless local area network.																		
Web: Mode UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].mode Opt: mode	Mode type. For AP mode, select Access Point . <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Web value</td><td>UCI</td></tr> <tr> <td>Access Point</td><td>ap</td></tr> <tr> <td>Client</td><td>sta</td></tr> <tr> <td>Ad-Hoc</td><td>adhoc</td></tr> <tr> <td>802.11s</td><td>mesh</td></tr> <tr> <td>Pseudo Ad-Hoc (ah demo)</td><td>ahdemo</td></tr> <tr> <td>Monitor</td><td>monitor</td></tr> <tr> <td>Access Point (WDS)</td><td>ap-wds</td></tr> <tr> <td>Client (WDS)</td><td>sta-wds</td></tr> </table>	Web value	UCI	Access Point	ap	Client	sta	Ad-Hoc	adhoc	802.11s	mesh	Pseudo Ad-Hoc (ah demo)	ahdemo	Monitor	monitor	Access Point (WDS)	ap-wds	Client (WDS)	sta-wds
Web value	UCI																		
Access Point	ap																		
Client	sta																		
Ad-Hoc	adhoc																		
802.11s	mesh																		
Pseudo Ad-Hoc (ah demo)	ahdemo																		
Monitor	monitor																		
Access Point (WDS)	ap-wds																		
Client (WDS)	sta-wds																		
Web: Mode UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].bssid Opt: bssid	Defines the BSSID value. Only displayed if using client, ad-hoc or client (wds) modes.																		
Web: Network UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].network Opt: network	The network the wireless interface is attached to. If using an existing interface select the appropriate network. Select unspecified to not attach to any network or fill out the create field to define a new network.																		
Web: Hide ESSID UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].hidden Opt: hidden	Hides the SSID when enabled. Only displayed if using access point or access point (wds) modes. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.														
1	Enabled.																		
0	Disabled.																		

Table 38: Information table for the interface configuration general setup section

12.2.2.2 Interface configuration: wireless security

Use this section to configure encryption, cipher and create a security key. Differing options will be defined depending on the encryption selected.

The screenshot shows the 'Interface Configuration' page with the 'Wireless Security' tab selected. The 'General Setup' and 'MAC-Filter' tabs are also visible. The 'Encryption' dropdown is set to 'WPA2-PSK', the 'Cipher' dropdown is set to 'auto', and the 'Key' field is masked with dots. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'Save & Apply' (blue), 'Save' (blue), and 'Reset' (grey).

Figure 60: The wireless security section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																		
Web: Encryption UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].encryption Opt: encryption	Method of encryption. <table> <tr> <th>Web value</th><th>UCI value</th></tr> <tr> <td>No encryption</td><td>none</td></tr> <tr> <td>WEP Open System</td><td>wep-open</td></tr> <tr> <td>WEP Shared Key</td><td>wep-shared</td></tr> <tr> <td>WPA-PSK</td><td>psk</td></tr> <tr> <td>WPA2-PSK</td><td>psk2</td></tr> <tr> <td>WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK Mixed Mode</td><td>psk-mixed</td></tr> <tr> <td>WPA-EAP</td><td>wpa</td></tr> <tr> <td>WPA2-WAP</td><td>wpa2</td></tr> </table>	Web value	UCI value	No encryption	none	WEP Open System	wep-open	WEP Shared Key	wep-shared	WPA-PSK	psk	WPA2-PSK	psk2	WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK Mixed Mode	psk-mixed	WPA-EAP	wpa	WPA2-WAP	wpa2
Web value	UCI value																		
No encryption	none																		
WEP Open System	wep-open																		
WEP Shared Key	wep-shared																		
WPA-PSK	psk																		
WPA2-PSK	psk2																		
WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK Mixed Mode	psk-mixed																		
WPA-EAP	wpa																		
WPA2-WAP	wpa2																		
Web: Cipher UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].cipher= Opt: cipher	Cipher type. Only displayed if WPA encryption modes are selected. <table> <tr> <th>Web value</th><th>UCI</th></tr> <tr> <td>Auto</td><td>auto</td></tr> <tr> <td>Force CCMP (AES)</td><td>ccmp</td></tr> <tr> <td>Force TKIP</td><td>tkip</td></tr> <tr> <td>Force TKIP and CCMP</td><td>tkip+ccmp</td></tr> </table>	Web value	UCI	Auto	auto	Force CCMP (AES)	ccmp	Force TKIP	tkip	Force TKIP and CCMP	tkip+ccmp								
Web value	UCI																		
Auto	auto																		
Force CCMP (AES)	ccmp																		
Force TKIP	tkip																		
Force TKIP and CCMP	tkip+ccmp																		
Web: Key UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].key Opt: key	Specifies the wireless key authentication phrase.																		
Web: Key #1 UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].key1 Opt: key1	Specifies the first wireless key authentication phrase.																		
Web: Key #2 UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].key2 Opt: key2	Specifies the second wireless key authentication phrase.																		
Web: Key #3 UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].key3 Opt: key3	Specifies the third wireless key authentication phrase.																		
Web: Key #4 UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].key4 Opt: key4	Specifies the fourth wireless key authentication phrase.																		
Web: Radius Authentication-Server UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].auth_server Opt: auth_server	Defines the Radius server for EAP authentication.																		
Web: Radius Authentication-Port UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].auth_port Opt: auth_port	Defines the Radius server port for EAP authentication.																		
Web: Radius Authentication-Secret UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].auth_secret Opt: auth_secret	Defines the Radius server secret for EAP authentication.																		
Web: Radius Accounting-Server UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].acct_server Opt: acct_server	Defines the Radius server for EAP accounting.																		
Web: Radius Accounting -Port UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].acct_port Opt: acct_port	Defines the Radius port for EAP accounting.																		
Web: Radius Accounting -Secret UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].acct_secret Opt: acct_secret	Defines the Radius secret for EAP accounting.																		

Web: NAS ID UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].nasid Opt: nasid	Defines the nas ID for the wireless interface.
---	--

Table 39: Information table for the interface configuration wireless security section

12.2.2.3 Interface configuration: MAC filter

The screenshot shows the 'Interface Configuration' page with the 'MAC-Filter' tab active. Below the tabs, there is a 'MAC-Address Filter' dropdown menu currently set to 'disable'. At the bottom right of the form, there are three buttons: 'Save & Apply' (blue), 'Save' (blue), and 'Reset' (grey).

Figure 61: The MAC filter section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description		
Web: MAC-Address Filter UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].macfilter Opt: macfilter	MAC address filtering process.		
	Option	Description	UCI
	Disable	Disables MAC Address filter.	disable
	Allow listed only	Allows only the MAC address listed in the text field.	allow
Web: MAC -List UCI: wireless.@wifi-iface[0].maclist Opt: list maclist	Allow all except listed	Allows everything but the MAC address listed in the text field.	deny
	Defines the MAC addresses to use. Multiple MAC address should be separated by a space if using UCI. MAC must be in the format hh:hh:hh:hh:hh:hh		

Table 40: Information table for interface configuration MAC filter section

12.3 Configuring WiFi in AP mode

AP mode is when the routers WiFi is used as an access point to one of the routers other interfaces. For example, if a router is connected to the internet via 3G, the WiFi on the router can be used as an access point for other devices to connect to the router and use its 3G internet connection.

12.3.1 AP mode on a new interface

Configure the WiFi network in AP mode as described in the above section 'Configuring a WiFi interface', selecting a new interface for the Wireless Network in the Interface Configuration section.

Next, in the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interface Overview page appears.

In the Interface Overview page, click **Edit** on the newly created WiFi interface. Then configure the interface by following instructions in the chapter 'Configuring an Ethernet interface'. When you have completed those steps, continue with the section below.

12.3.2 AP mode on an existing Ethernet interface

Configure the WiFi network in AP mode as described in the above section 'Configuring a WiFi interface'.

Next, in the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interface Overview page appears.

In the Interface Overview page, click **Edit** on the Ethernet interface that will be bridged into the router's WiFi AP. The Common Configuration page appears. It has four sections.

This configuration only uses the Physical Settings section.

Figure 62: The physical settings section in the common configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Bridge Interfaces UCI: network.lan.type Opt: Type	Creates a bridge over the specified interface. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Empty</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Bridge</td><td>Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.</td></tr> </table>	Empty		Bridge	Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.
Empty					
Bridge	Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.				
Web: Enable STP UCI: network.lan.stp Opt: stp	Enables the Spanning Tree Protocol on this bridge. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Interface UCI: network.lan.ifname Opt: ifname	Select the physical interfaces to bridge. If mapping multiple interfaces for bridging the interface names are separated by a space when using UCI and package options. Example: option ifname 'eth2 eth3' or network.<ifname>.ifname=eth2 eth3				

Table 41: Information table for the physical section on the common configuration page

12.4 Configuring WiFi using UCI

The configuration files are stored on:

- Network file /etc/config/network
- Wireless file /etc/config/wireless

12.4.1 AP modem on a new Ethernet interface using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export network
package network
config interface 'newwifilan'
    option proto 'static'
    option ipaddr '192.168.111.1'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
root@VA_router:~# uci export wireless
package wireless
config wifi-device 'radio0'
    option type 'mac80211'
    option channel '11'
    option phy 'phy0'
    option hwmode '11ng'
    option htmode 'HT20'

list ht_capab 'SHORT-GI-40'
    list ht_capab 'TX-STBC'
    list ht_capab 'RX-STBC1'
    list ht_capab 'DSSS_CCK-40'
    option txpower '17'
    option country 'US'
config wifi-iface
    option device 'radio0'
    option mode 'ap'
    option disabled '1'
    option ssid 'Test_AP'
    option network 'newwifilan'
    option encryption 'psk'
    option key 'secretkey'
```

12.4.2 AP modem on a new Ethernet interface using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network
network.newlan=interface
network.newlan.proto=static
network.newlan.ipaddr=192.168.111.1
network.newlan.netmask=255.255.255.0
root@VA_router:~# uci show wireless
wireless.radio0=wifi-device
wireless.radio0.type=mac80211
wireless.radio0.channel=11
wireless.radio0.phy=phy0
wireless.radio0.hwmode=11ng
wireless.radio0.htmode=HT20
wireless.radio0.ht_capab=SHORT-GI-40 TX-STBC RX-STBC1 DSSS_CCK-40
wireless.radio0.txpower=17
wireless.radio0.country=US
wireless.@wifi-iface[0]=wifi-iface
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].device=radio0
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].mode=ap
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].disabled=1
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].ssid=Test_AP
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].network=newlan
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].encryption=psk
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].key=secretkey
```

12.4.3 AP mode on an existing Ethernet interface using packages options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export network
package network
config interface 'lan'
    option ifname 'eth0'
    option proto 'static'
    option ipaddr '192.168.100.1'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
    option type 'bridge'
root@VA_router:~# uci export wireless
package wireless
```

```
config wifi-device 'radio0'
    option type 'mac80211'
    option channel '11'
    option phy 'phy0'
    option hwmode '11ng'
    option htmode 'HT20'
    list ht_capab 'SHORT-GI-40'
    list ht_capab 'TX-STBC'
    list ht_capab 'RX-STBC1'
    list ht_capab 'DSSS_CCK-40'
    option txpower '17'
    option country 'US'

config wifi-iface
    option device 'radio0'
    option mode 'ap'
    option disabled '1'
    option ssid 'Test_AP'
    option network 'lan'
    option encryption 'psk'
    option key 'secretkey'
```

12.4.4 AP mode on an existing Ethernet interface using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network
network.lan=interface
network.lan.ifname=eth0
network.lan.proto=static
network.lan.ipaddr=192.168.6.1
network.lan.netmask=255.255.255.0
network.lan.type=bridge
root@VA_router:~# uci show wireless
wireless.radio0=wifi-device
wireless.radio0.type=mac80211
wireless.radio0.channel=11
wireless.radio0.phy=phy0
wireless.radio0.hwmode=11ng
```

```
wireless.radio0.htmode=HT20
wireless.radio0.ht_capab=SHORT-GI-40 TX-STBC RX-STBC1 DSSS_CCK-40
wireless.radio0.txpower=17
wireless.radio0.country=US
wireless.@wifi-iface[0]=wifi-iface
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].device=radio0
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].mode=ap
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].disabled=1
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].ssid=Test_AP
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].network=lan
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].encryption=psk
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].key=secretkey
```

12.5 Creating a WiFi in client mode using the web interface

A WiFi network in Client mode receives a wireless network from another WiFi AP.

Configure the Wifi network in Client mode as described in the above section 'Configuring a WiFi interface', selecting a new interface for the Wireless Network in the Interface Configuration section. For the examples below the new WiFi interface will be called 'newwifiClient'

Example:

```
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].network=newwifiClient
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].mode=sta
```

In the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces Overview page appears. Click **Edit** in the newly created WiFi Client interface. The Common Configuration page appears.

Interfaces - WCLIENT

On this page you can configure the network interfaces. You can bridge several interfaces by ticking the "bridge interfaces" field and enter the names of several network interfaces separated by spaces. You can also use VLAN notation `INTERFACE.VLANID` (e.g.: `eth0.1`).

Common Configuration

General Setup

Status: Unknown "VA-Wireless" MAC Address: 00:00:00:00:00:00
RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)

Protocol: DHCP client

Really switch protocol?

IP-Aliases

This section contains no values yet

Figure 63: The client interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Protocol UCI: network. newwifiClient.proto Opt: proto	Specifies what protocol the interface will operate on. Select DHCP Client .	
	Option	Description
	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.
	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.
	Unmanaged	Unspecified
	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.
	IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.
	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol
	IOT	
	L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol
	PPP	Point to Point Protocol
	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet
	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM
	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.

Table 42: Information table for interfaces WClient page

When you have clicked **Save and Apply**, the router will restart the network package. It may take up to one minute for connectivity to the router to be restored.

12.6 Configuring WiFi in client mode using command line

The configuration files are stored on:

- Network file /etc/config/network
- Wireless file /etc/config/wireless

12.6.1 Client modem using package options

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export network
package network
config interface 'newwifiClient'
    option proto 'dhcp'
root@VA_router:~# uci export wireless
package wireless
config wifi-device 'radio0'
    option type 'mac80211'
    option channel '11'
    option phy 'phy0'
    option hwmode '11ng'
    option htmode 'HT20'
    list ht_capab 'SHORT-GI-40'

```



```

list ht_capab 'TX-STBC'
list ht_capab 'RX-STBC1'
list ht_capab 'DSSS_CCK-40'
option txpower '17'
option country 'US'

config wifi-iface
    option device 'radio0'
    option ssid 'Remote-AP'
    option mode 'sta'
    option network ' newwifiClient '
    option encryption 'psk2'
    option key 'testtest'

```

12.6.2 Client modem using UCI

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show network
network.new=interface
network.WCLIENT.proto=dhcp

```

12.6.2.1 uci show wireless

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show wireless
wireless.radio0=wifi-device
wireless.radio0.type=mac80211
wireless.radio0.channel=11
wireless.radio0.phy=phy0
wireless.radio0.hwmode=11ng
wireless.radio0.htmode=HT20
wireless.radio0.ht_capab=SHORT-GI-40 TX-STBC RX-STBC1 DSSS_CCK-40
wireless.radio0.txpower=17
wireless.radio0.country=US
wireless.@wifi-iface[0]=wifi-iface
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].device=radio0
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].ssid=Remote-AP
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].mode=sta
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].network= newwifiClient
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].encryption=psk2
wireless.@wifi-iface[0].key=testtest

```

13 Configuring an ADSL interface

13.1 ADSL connections

ADSL access services typically use the Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) protocol to provide a low level communications path between the user's access equipment and the service provider head end. The headend may be a Broadband Access Server (BAS) that sits, logically, behind the ADSL central office Digital Subscriber Line Access Multiplexer (DSLAM) and is connected using an ATM backbone. ATM is a high-speed switching technology where data is grouped into cells.

Connection between the user equipment and the BAS is then achieved using the Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) running over the ATM connection path. PPP is a defined industry standard used widely to allow two devices to communicate across a logical link. It is extensively deployed by service providers as a means of connecting customers to Internet Protocol (IP)-based services, such as the Internet.

The method of running PPP between the user equipment and the BAS may be either directly over the ATM layer (PPPoA) or over an intermediate Ethernet layer (PPPoE).

13.2 ADSL connection options on your router

You can configure two main types of ADSL service on your router:

- ADSL routed PPPoA connection
- ADSL bridged connection

If you select the routed PPP service, you can run the PPP over ATM (PPPoA) or over Ethernet (PPPoE). The following diagrams illustrate the topology of these connections.

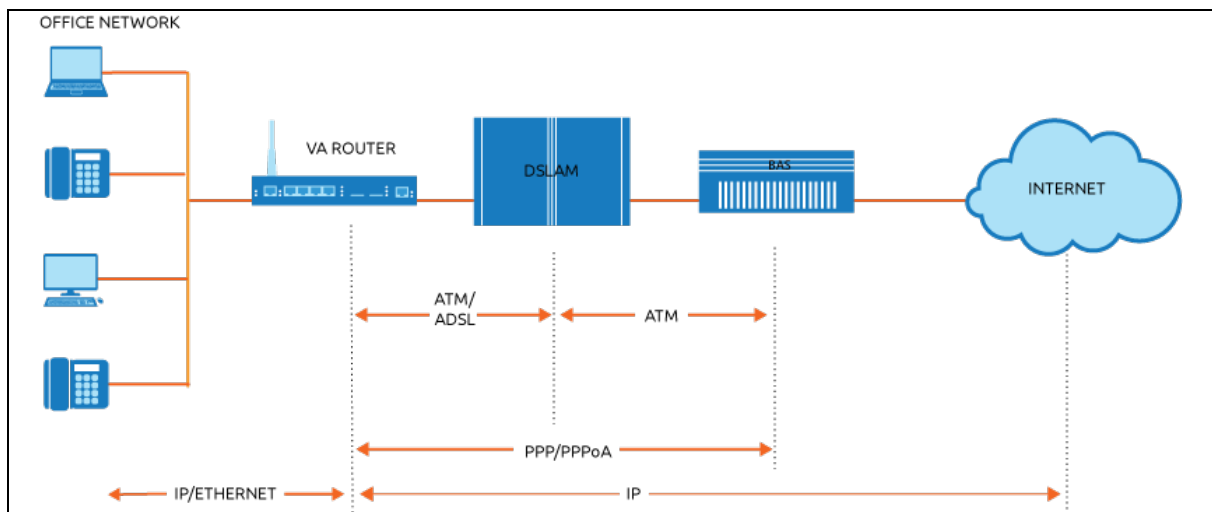


Figure 64: A routed ADSL connection over PPPoA

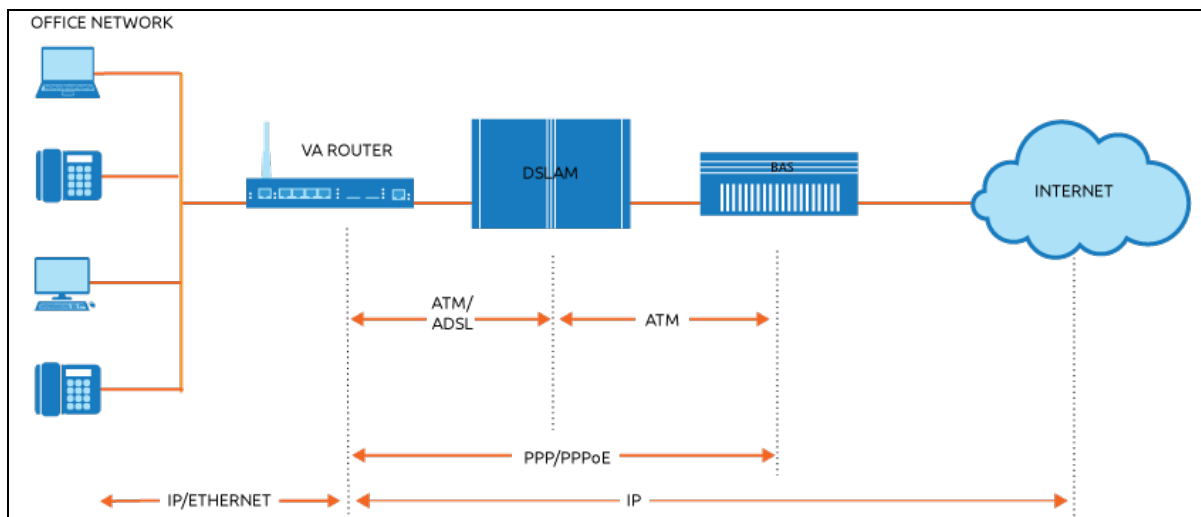


Figure 65: A routed ADSL connection over PPPoE

Less commonly, you may need to configure a bridged connection over ADSL. In this type of configuration the router will be receiving Ethernet packets over the ADSL line and can be configured with an IP address for management.

13.3 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
network	adsl

13.4 Creating a new ADSL PPPoA connection

To create a new ADSL PPPoA interface via the web interface, in the top menu, click **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces overview page appears.

There are three sections in the Interfaces page.

Section	Description
Interface Overview	Shows existing interfaces and their status. You can create new, and edit existing interfaces here.
Port Map	In this section you can map device ports to Ethernet interfaces. Ports are marked with capital letters starting with 'A'. Type in space separated port numbers in the port map fields.
ATM Bridges	ATM bridges expose encapsulated Ethernet in AAL5 connections as virtual Linux network interfaces, which can be used in conjunction with DHCP or PPP to dial into the provider network.

In the Interface Overview section, click **Add new interface**. The Create Interface page appears.

Figure 66: The create new interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																										
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network[..x..] Opt: [...x..]	Allowed characters are A-Z, a-z, 0-9 and _																										
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network[..x..].proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. Select PPPoATM . <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6 over IPv4</td><td>IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point to Point Protocol.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>Point to Point Protocol over ATM.</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.	IPv6 over IPv4	IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation.	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.	PPP	Point to Point Protocol.	PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.	PPPoATM	Point to Point Protocol over ATM.	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.																										
IPv6 over IPv4	IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation.																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.																										
PPP	Point to Point Protocol.																										
PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.																										
PPPoATM	Point to Point Protocol over ATM.																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network[..x..].type Opt: type	Enables bridge between two interfaces. <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.																						
0	Disabled.																										
1	Enabled.																										
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network[..x..].ifname Opt: ifname	Select interfaces for bridge connection.																										

Table 43: Information table for the create new interface page

Click **Submit**. The Common Configuration page appears. There are three sections in the Common Configurations page.

Section	Description
General Setup	Configure the basic interface settings such as protocol, service type, APN information, user name and password.
Advanced Settings	Set forwarding mode for the connection.
Firewall settings	Assign a firewall zone to the connection.

13.5 PPPoA: general setup

Figure 67: The PPPoA common configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Status UCI: N/A ifconfig Opt: N/A	Shows the current status of the interface. Note: run ifconfig command on SSH to check interface status.				
Web: Protocol UCI: network[..x..].proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. The PPPoA interface protocol is showing as the selected interface.				
Web: PPPoA Encapsulation UCI: network[..x..].encaps Opt: encaps	Service type that will be used to connect to the network. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>VC-Mux</td><td>Virtual Circuit Multiplexing.</td></tr> <tr> <td>LLC</td><td>Logical Link Control.</td></tr> </table>	VC-Mux	Virtual Circuit Multiplexing.	LLC	Logical Link Control.
VC-Mux	Virtual Circuit Multiplexing.				
LLC	Logical Link Control.				
Web: ATM Device Number UCI: network[..x..]. atmdev Opt: atmdev	Sets the ATM device number. Set to 0 . <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		1	
0					
1					
Web: ATM Virtual Channel Identifier (VCI) UCI: network[..x..].vci Opt: vci	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>35</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Range		35	
Range					
35					
Web: ATM Virtual Path Identifier (VPI) UCI: network[..xx..].vpi Opt: vpi	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>8</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Range		8	
Range					
8					

Web: PAP/CHAP username UCI: network.[...].username Opt: username	User name used to authenticate PPP connection.
Web: PAP/CHAP password UCI: network. [...].password Opt: password	Password used to connect to authenticate PPP connection.

Table 44: Information table for PPPoA general set up

13.6 PPPoA: advanced settings

Common Configuration

General Setup | Advanced Settings | Physical Settings | Firewall Settings

- Bring up on boot ☒
 - 0 Disabled.
 - 1 Enabled.
- Monitor interface state ☐
 - 0 Disabled.
 - 1 Enabled.
- Enable IPv6 negotiation on the PPP link ☐
 - 0 Disabled.
 - 1 Enabled.
- Use default gateway ☒
 - 0 Disabled.
 - 1 Enabled.
- Use gateway metric
 - 0 Disabled.
 - 1 Enabled.
- Use DNS servers advertised by peer ☒
 - 0 Disabled.
 - 1 Enabled.
- LCP echo failure threshold
 - 0 Disabled.
 - 1 Enabled.
- LCP echo interval
 - 0 Disabled.
 - 1 Enabled.
- Inactivity timeout
 - 0 Disabled.
 - 1 Enabled.

Figure 68: The PPPoA advanced settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Bring up on boot UCI: network.[...].auto Opt: auto	Enables the interface to connect automatically on boot up. This option is enabled by default. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Monitor interface state UCI: network.[...].monitored. Opt: monitored	Enabled if status of interface is presented on Monitoring platform. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Enable IPv6 negotiation on the PPP link UCI: network.[...].ipv6 Opt: ipv6	Enable IPv6 negotiation on the PPP. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Use default gateway UCI: network.[...].defaultroute Opt: defaultroute	If disabled, no default route is configured. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Use gateway metric UCI: network.[...].metric Opt: metric	Defines the route metric for this default route. Lower metrics take priority. Option only shown when 'Use default gateway' is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range	
0					
Range					

Web: Use DNS servers advertised by peer UCI: network[..x..].peerdns Opt: peerdns	If disabled, DNS from peer will not be accepted. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: LCP echo failure threshold UCI: network[..x..].keepalive Opt: keepalive	Presume peer to be dead after given amount of LCP echo failures, use 0 to ignore failures. LCP echo failure threshold and LCP echo interval use the same option using a space separator between the values: option keepalive 'threshold interval' Example: option keepalive '5 1'										
Web: LCP echo interval UCI: network[..x..].keepalive Opt: keepalive	Send LCP echo requests at the given interval in seconds, only effective in conjunction with failure threshold. LCP echo failure threshold and LCP echo interval use the same option using a space separator between the values: option keepalive 'threshold interval' Example: option keepalive '5 1'										
Web: Inactivity timeout UCI: network[..x..].demand Opt: demand	Close inactive connection after the given amount of seconds, use 0 to persist connection.										
Web: Dependant Interfaces UCI: network[..x..].dependants Opt: dependants	Lists interfaces that are dependent on this parent interface. Dependant interfaces will go down when parent interface is down and will start or restart when parent interface starts. Separate multiple interfaces by a space when using UCI. Example: option dependants 'PPPADSL MOBILE' This replaces the following previous options in child interfaces. <table> <tr> <td>gre</td><td>option local interface</td></tr> <tr> <td>lt2p</td><td>option src_ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>iot</td><td>option wan1 wan2</td></tr> <tr> <td>6in4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>6to4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> </table>	gre	option local interface	lt2p	option src_ipaddr	iot	option wan1 wan2	6in4	option ipaddr	6to4	option ipaddr
gre	option local interface										
lt2p	option src_ipaddr										
iot	option wan1 wan2										
6in4	option ipaddr										
6to4	option ipaddr										
Web: SNMP Alias ifindex UCI: network[..x..].snmp_alias_ifindex Opt: snmp_alias_ifindex	Defines a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface, that can be polled via the SNMP interface index (snmp_alias_ifindex+1000). See 'Configuring SNMP' section for more information <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>No SNMP interface alias index</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0 - 4294966295</td></tr> </table>	Blank	No SNMP interface alias index	Range	0 - 4294966295						
Blank	No SNMP interface alias index										
Range	0 - 4294966295										

Table 45: Information table for PPPoA advanced settings

13.7 PPPoA: firewall settings

Use this section to select the firewall zone you want to assign to this interface. Select unspecified to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

Figure 69: The PPPoA firewall settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Create/Assign firewall zone UCI: firewall.@zone[2].name Opt: name	Select existing firewall zone or select unspecified –or-create to create new firewall zone.

Table 46: Information table for PPPoADSL interface

13.8 Creating an ADSL PPPoA connection using UCI

The configuration file is stored at:

Network file /etc/config/network

To view the configuration file, enter:

```
uci export network
config adsl-device 'adsl'
    option fwannex 'a'
    option annex 'a'
    option Enabled 'yes'
config interface 'ADSL'
    option proto 'pppoa'
    option encaps 'vc'
    option atmdev '0'
    option vci '35'
    option vpi '0'
    option username 'test5@pppoa.com'
    option password 'test5'
    option metric '1'
```


To view uci commands, enter:

```
uci show network
network.adsl.fwannex=a
network.adsl.annex=a
network.adsl.Enabled=yes
network.ADSL=interface
network.ADSL.proto=pppoa
network.ADSL.encaps=vc
network.ADSL.atmdev=0
network.ADSL.vci=35
network.ADSL.vpi=0
network.ADSL.username=test5@pppoa.com
network.ADSL.password=test5
network.ADSL.metric=1
```

13.9 Creating a new ADSL PPPoEoA connection

From the top menu select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces Overview page appears. Scroll down to the bottom of the page until you see the ATM Bridges section. Click **Add**.

13.9.1 PPPoEoA: general setup

ATM Bridges

ATM bridges expose encapsulated ethernet in AAL5 connections as virtual Linux network interfaces which can be used in conjunction with DHCP or PPP to dial into the provider network.

[Delete](#)

[General Setup](#) [Advanced Settings](#)

ATM Virtual Channel Identifier (VCI)

ATM Virtual Path Identifier (VPI)

Encapsulation mode

[Add](#)

Figure 70: The ATM bridges general setup page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: ATM Virtual Channel Identifier (VCI) UCI: network.@atm-bridge[x].vci Opt: vci	Type the VCI number. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>35</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Range		35	
Range					
35					
Web: ATM Virtual Path Identifier (VPI) UCI: network.@atm-bridge[x].vpi Opt: vpi	Type the VPI number. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>8</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Range		8	
Range					
8					
Web: Encapsulation mode UCI: network.@atm-bridge[x].encaps Opt: encaps	Select either LLC or VC-Mux . <table border="1"> <tr> <td>VC-Mux</td><td>Virtual circuit multiplexing.</td></tr> <tr> <td>LLC</td><td>Logical Link Control.</td></tr> </table>	VC-Mux	Virtual circuit multiplexing.	LLC	Logical Link Control.
VC-Mux	Virtual circuit multiplexing.				
LLC	Logical Link Control.				

Table 47: Information table for ATM bridges

13.9.2 PPPoEoA: advanced settings

Figure 71: The ATM bridges advanced settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: ATM device number UCI: network.@atm-bridge[x].atmdev Opt: atmdev	Leave the default ATM device number set to 0 .				
Web: Bridge unit number UCI: network.@atm-bridge[x].unit Opt: unit	Leave the default Bridge unit number set to 0 .				
Web: Forwarding mode UCI: network.@atm-bridge[0].payload Opt: payload	Select either Bridged or Routed as the forwarding mode. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Bridged</td><td>Select Bridged to allow the router to receive Ethernet packets over the ADSL line and to be configured with an IP address for management.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Routed</td><td>Select Routed to run the PPP over ATM (PPPoA) or over Ethernet (PPPoE).</td></tr> </table>	Bridged	Select Bridged to allow the router to receive Ethernet packets over the ADSL line and to be configured with an IP address for management.	Routed	Select Routed to run the PPP over ATM (PPPoA) or over Ethernet (PPPoE).
Bridged	Select Bridged to allow the router to receive Ethernet packets over the ADSL line and to be configured with an IP address for management.				
Routed	Select Routed to run the PPP over ATM (PPPoA) or over Ethernet (PPPoE).				

Table 48: Information table for the ATM bridges advanced settings page

Click **Save**.

13.9.3 Create a new PPPoEoA interface

Scroll to the top of the page and click **Add new interface....**the Create Interface page appears.

Figure 72: The create interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																										
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: Opt:	Type the name of the new interface. Allowed characters are A-Z, a-z, 0-9 and _																										
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.[...].proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. Select PPPoE . <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6 over IPv4</td><td>IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point to Point Protocol.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>Point to Point Protocol over ATM.</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.	IPv6 over IPv4	IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation.	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.	PPP	Point to Point Protocol.	PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.	PPPoATM	Point to Point Protocol over ATM.	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.																										
IPv6 over IPv4	IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation.																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.																										
PPP	Point to Point Protocol.																										
PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.																										
PPPoATM	Point to Point Protocol over ATM.																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network.[...].ifname Opt: ifname	Select Custom Interface , and then type nas0 .																										

Table 49: Information table for create a new interface section

Click **Submit**. The Interfaces page appears.

The screenshot shows a configuration interface with the following fields:

- Protocol:** A dropdown menu with "PPPoE" selected.
- PAP/CHAP username:** A text input field containing "va5@mpl2tp2.com".
- PAP/CHAP password:** A text input field with masked characters "..." and a green eye icon to toggle visibility.
- Access Concentrator:** A text input field containing "auto", with a help icon and the text "Leave empty to autodetect".
- Service Name:** A text input field containing "auto", with a help icon and the text "Leave empty to autodetect".

Figure 73: The new interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network[..x..].proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. The protocol shows the one selected for this interface.
Web: PAP/CHAP username UCI: network[..x..].username Opt: username	Type the PAP / CHAP username .
Web: PAP/CHAP password UCI: network[..x..].password Opt: password	Type the password .
Web: Access Concentrator UCI: network[..x..].acname Opt: acname	Leave this field empty to autodetect, or type the AC name .
Web: Service name UCI: network[..x..].service Opt: service	Leave this field empty to autodetect, or type the Service name .

Table 50: Information table for the new PPPoEoA interface

13.9.4 PPPoEoA advanced settings

Common Configuration

General Setup | **Advanced Settings** | Physical Settings | Firewall Settings

Bring up on boot ☒

Monitor interface state ☐ ⓘ This interface state would be reported to VA Monitor via keep-alive

Enable IPv6 negotiation on the PPP link ☐

Use default gateway ☒ ⓘ If unchecked, no default route is configured

Use gateway metric

Use DNS servers advertised by peer ☒ ⓘ If unchecked, the advertised DNS server addresses are ignored

LCP echo failure threshold ⓘ Presume peer to be dead after given amount of LCP echo failures, use 0 to ignore failures

LCP echo interval ⓘ Send LCP echo requests at the given interval in seconds, only effective in conjunction with failure threshold

Inactivity timeout ⓘ Close inactive connection after the given amount of seconds, use 0 to persist connection

Figure 74: The PPPoEoA advanced settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Bring up on boot UCI: network.[...].auto Opt: auto	Enables the interface to connect automatically on boot up. This option is enabled by default. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web: Monitor interface state UCI: network.[...].monitored. Opt: monitored	Enabled if status of interface is presented on monitoring platform. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web: Enable IPv6 negotiation on the PPP link UCI: network.[...].ipv6 Opt: ipv6	Enables IPv6 negotiation on the PPP 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web: Use default gateway UCI: network.[...].defaultroute Opt: defaultroute	If unchecked, no default route is configured. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web: Use gateway metric UCI: network.[...].metric Opt: metric	Defines the route metric for this default route. Lower metrics take priority. 0 Range
Web: Use DNS servers advertised by peer UCI: network.[...].peerdns Opt: peerdns	If unchecked, DNS from peer will not be accepted. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web: LCP echo failure threshold UCI: network.[...].keepalive Opt: keepalive	Presume peer to be dead after given amount of LCP echo failures. Use 0 to ignore failures. Range 0
Web: LCP echo interval UCI: network.[...].keepalive Opt: keepalive	Sends LCP echo requests at the given interval in seconds, only effective in conjunction with failure threshold. Range 5

Web: Inactivity timeout UCI: network[..x..].demand Opt: demand	Closes inactive connection after the given amount of seconds. Use 0 to persist connection. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Range		0							
Range											
0											
Web: Dependant Interfaces UCI: network[..x..].dependants Opt: dependants	Lists interfaces that are dependent on this parent interface. Dependant interfaces will go down when parent interface is down and will start or restart when parent interface starts. Separate multiple interfaces by a space when using UCI. Example: option dependants 'PPPADSL MOBILE' This replaces the following previous options in child interfaces. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>gre</td><td>option local_interface</td></tr> <tr> <td>lt2p</td><td>option src_ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>iot</td><td>option wan1 wan2</td></tr> <tr> <td>6in4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>6to4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> </table>	gre	option local_interface	lt2p	option src_ipaddr	iot	option wan1 wan2	6in4	option ipaddr	6to4	option ipaddr
gre	option local_interface										
lt2p	option src_ipaddr										
iot	option wan1 wan2										
6in4	option ipaddr										
6to4	option ipaddr										
Web: SNMP Alias ifindex UCI: network[..x..].snmp_alias_ifindex Opt: snmp_alias_ifindex	Defines a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface, that can be polled via the SNMP interface index (snmp_alias_ifindex+1000). See the 'Configuring SNMP' section for more information. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>No SNMP interface alias index</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0 - 4294966295</td></tr> </table>	Blank	No SNMP interface alias index	Range	0 - 4294966295						
Blank	No SNMP interface alias index										
Range	0 - 4294966295										

Table 51: Information table for PPPoA advanced settings

13.9.5 PPPoEoA: firewall settings

Use this section to select the firewall zone you want to assign to this interface.

Select **unspecified** to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

Click **Save & Apply**.

Interfaces - ADSL

On this page you can configure the network interfaces. You can bridge several interfaces by ticking the "bridge interfaces" field and enter the names of several network interfaces separated by spaces. You can also use VLAN notation `INTERFACE.VLANNR` (e.g.: `eth0.1`).

Common Configuration

General Setup
Advanced Settings
Physical Settings
Firewall Settings

Create / Assign firewall-zone

☐ l2tpun: wan: wan1:

☐ lan: lan:

☒ wan: ADSL:

☐ unspecified -or- create:

Choose the firewall zone you want to assign to this interface. Select unspecified to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

Figure 75: The interfaces page firewall settings tab

13.10 Configuring an ADSL PPPoEoA connection using UCI

The configuration file is stored on: **Network file /etc/config/network**

To view the configuration file, enter:

```
uci export network
config adsl-device 'adsl'
    option fwannex 'a'
    option annex 'a'
    option Enabled 'yes'

config interface 'ADSL'
    option proto 'pppoe'
    option ifname 'nas0'
    option username 'test5@pppoe.com'
    option password 'test5'
    option ac 'test'
    option service 'test'
    option defaultroute '1'
    option metric '1'

config atm-bridge
    option unit '0'
    option atmdev '0'
    option encaps 'llc'
    option payload 'bridged'
    option vci '35'
    option vpi '0'
```

To view uci commands, enter:

```
uci show network
network.adsl=adsl-device
network.adsl.fwannex=a
network.adsl.annex=a
network.adsl.Enabled=yes
network.ADSL=interface
network.ADSL.proto=pppoe
network.ADSL.ifname=nas0
```

```

network.ADSL.username=test5@pppoe.com
network.ADSL.password=test5
network.ADSL.ac=test
network.ADSL.service=test
network.ADSL.defaultroute=1
network.ADSL.metric=1
network.@atm-bridge[0]=atm-bridge
network.@atm-bridge[0].unit=0
network.@atm-bridge[0].atmdev=0
network.@atm-bridge[0].encaps=llc
network.@atm-bridge[0].payload=bridged
network.@atm-bridge[0].vci=35
network.@atm-bridge[0].vpi=0

```

13.11 Configuring an ADSL bridge connection with static IP

13.11.1 Bridged connection with static IP: general setup

From the top menu select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces Overview page appears. Scroll down to the bottom of the page until you see the ATM Bridges section. Click **Add**. The ATM Bridges page appears.

ATM Bridges

ATM bridges expose encapsulated ethernet in AAL5 connections as virtual Linux network interfaces which can be used in conjunction with DHCP or PPP to dial into the provider network.

[Delete](#)

[General Setup](#) [Advanced Settings](#)

ATM Virtual Channel Identifier (VCI)

ATM Virtual Path Identifier (VPI)

Encapsulation mode

[Add](#)

Figure 76: The ATM bridges section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: ATM Virtual Channel Identifier (VCI) UCI: network.@atm-bridge[x].vci Opt: vci	Type the VCI number. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>35</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Range		35	
Range					
35					
Web: ATM Virtual Path Identifier (VPI) UCI: network.@atm-bridge[x].vpi Opt: vpi	Type the VPI number. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Range		8	
Range					
8					
Web: Encapsulation mode UCI: network.@atm-bridge[x].encaps Opt: encaps	Select either LLC or VC-Mux . <table border="1"> <tr><td>VC-Mux</td><td>Virtual Circuit Multiplexing.</td></tr> <tr><td>LLC</td><td>Logical Link Control.</td></tr> </table>	VC-Mux	Virtual Circuit Multiplexing.	LLC	Logical Link Control.
VC-Mux	Virtual Circuit Multiplexing.				
LLC	Logical Link Control.				

Table 52: Information table for ATM bridges

13.11.2 Bridged connection with static IP: advanced settings

Select the **Advanced Settings** tab. The ATM Bridges page appears.

Figure 77: The ATM bridges advanced settings tab

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: ATM device number UCI: network.@atm-bridge[x].atmdev Opt: atmdev	Leave the default ATM device number set to 0 .				
Web: Bridge unit number UCI: network.@atm-bridge[x].unit Opt: unit	Leave the default Bridge unit number set to 0 .				
Web: Forwarding mode UCI: network.@atm-bridge[0].payload Opt: payload	Select Bridged as the forwarding mode. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Bridged</td> <td>Bridged allows the router to receive Ethernet packets over the ADSL line and to be configured with an IP address for management.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Routed</td> <td>Routed allows the router to run PPP over ATM (PPPoA) or over Ethernet (PPPoE).</td> </tr> </table>	Bridged	Bridged allows the router to receive Ethernet packets over the ADSL line and to be configured with an IP address for management.	Routed	Routed allows the router to run PPP over ATM (PPPoA) or over Ethernet (PPPoE).
Bridged	Bridged allows the router to receive Ethernet packets over the ADSL line and to be configured with an IP address for management.				
Routed	Routed allows the router to run PPP over ATM (PPPoA) or over Ethernet (PPPoE).				

Table 53: Information table for the ATM bridges advanced settings page

Click **Save**.

13.11.3 Create a new Static IP interface

Scroll to the top of the page and click **Add new interface...**. The Create Interface page appears.

Figure 78: The create interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																								
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network[..x..] Opt: [...]	Allowed characters are A-Z, a-z, 0-9 and _																								
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network[..x..].proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. Select Static Address . <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>IPv4 tunnels that carries IPv6</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6 over IPv4</td><td>IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation</td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point to Point Protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>Point to Point Protocol over ATM</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	IPv4 tunnels that carries IPv6	IPv6 over IPv4	IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation	L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	PPP	Point to Point Protocol	PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet	PPPoATM	Point to Point Protocol over ATM	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																								
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																								
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																								
Unmanaged	Unspecified																								
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	IPv4 tunnels that carries IPv6																								
IPv6 over IPv4	IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.																								
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation																								
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol																								
PPP	Point to Point Protocol																								
PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet																								
PPPoATM	Point to Point Protocol over ATM																								
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																								
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network[..x..].type Opt: type	Enables a bridge between two interfaces. <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.																				
0	Disabled.																								
1	Enabled.																								
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network[..x..].ifname Opt: ifname	Select interfaces for bridge connection . Select Custom Interface and then type nas0 .																								

Table 54: Information table for creating a static interface

Click **Submit**. The Interfaces page appears.

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring a static network interface. It contains the following fields and values:

- Protocol:** A dropdown menu set to "Static address".
- IPv4 address:** A text input field containing "10.33.4.7".
- IPv4 netmask:** A dropdown menu set to "255.255.255.192".
- IPv4 gateway:** An empty text input field.
- IPv4 broadcast:** An empty text input field.
- Use custom DNS servers:** A text input field with a small icon to the right.

Figure 79: The new static interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.[...].proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. The protocol shows the one selected for this interface.
Web: IPv4 address UCI: network.[...].ipaddrOpt:ipaddr	Type the IP address .
Web: IPv4 netmask UCI: network.[...].netmask Opt: netmask	Type or choose netmask .
Web: IPv4 gateway UCI: network.[...].gateway Opt: gateway	Leave this field empty or type the gateway address .
Web: IPv4 broadcast UCI: network.[...].broadcast Opt: broadcast	Leave this field empty to autodetect, or type broadcast IP address .
Web: Use custom DNS servers UCI: network.[...].dns Opt: dns	Leave this field empty to autodetect, or type DNS IP address .
Web: Accept router advertisements UCI: network.[...].accept_ra Opt: accept_ra	Accept router advertisement for ipv6 addresses. Leave this field empty if ipv6 is not needed.
Web: IPv6 address UCI: network.[...].ip6addr Opt: ip6addr	IPv6 address. Leave this field empty if ipv6 is not needed.
Web: IPv6 gateway UCI: network.[...].ipv6gw Opt: ip6gw	Ipv6 gateway address. Leave this field empty if ipv6 is not needed.
Web: IP-Aliases UCI: network.[...] Opt: [...]	Provide an arbitrary name for alias interface. Leave this field blank if alias interface is not needed.
Web: Setup DHCP Server UCI: N/A Opt: N/A	Leave this field blank if DHCP server is not needed on this interface.

Table 55: Information table for the new static interface

13.11.4 Bridged connection with static IP: advanced settings

Common Configuration

General Setup | **Advanced Settings** | Physical Settings | Firewall Settings

Bring up on boot ☒

Monitor interface state ☐ This interface state would be reported to VA Monitor via keep-alive

Override MAC address

Override MTU

Use gateway metric

Dependant interfaces ☐ BRIDGEDADSL: ☐ MOBILE: ☐ PPPADSL: ☐ PPPoEoA: ☐ WANETH: ☐ lan: ☐ lan1: ☐ loopback: ☐ wlan: (no interfaces attached) ☐ wlan_client:

☒ Check interfaces which should start after this interface is started and stop after this interface is stopped

SNMP Alias ifindex Alias ifindex SNMP agent. Alias indexes are present at 1000 offset. So setting 1 here will create snmp ifTable entry 1001. Useful when interface creates new linux interface on every startup (e.g. ppp interface). With this set the interface could be monitored via constant snmp agent interface table entry

Figure 80: The advanced settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description										
Web: Bring up on boot UCI: network[..x..].auto Opt: auto	Select this option if you want the interface to start after boot up. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: Monitor interface state UCI: network[..x..].monitored Opt: monitored	This interface state will be reported to VA monitor via Keepalive. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: Override MAC address UCI: network[..x..].macaddr Opt: macaddr	Specify the mac address of the interface. Leave this field blank if MAC address of Bridge interface should be copied from Ethernet interface.										
Web: Override MTU UCI: network[..x..].mtu Opt: mtu	Optionally set up MTU size on the segment.										
Web: Dependant Interfaces UCI: network[..x..].dependants Opt: dependants	Lists interfaces that are dependent on this parent interface. Dependant interfaces will go down when parent interface is down and will start or restart when parent interface starts. Separate multiple interfaces by a space when using UCI. Example: option dependants 'PPPADSL MOBILE' This replaces the following previous options in child interfaces. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>gre</td><td>option local interface</td></tr> <tr> <td>lt2p</td><td>option src ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>iot</td><td>option wan1 wan2</td></tr> <tr> <td>6in4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>6to4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> </table>	gre	option local interface	lt2p	option src ipaddr	iot	option wan1 wan2	6in4	option ipaddr	6to4	option ipaddr
gre	option local interface										
lt2p	option src ipaddr										
iot	option wan1 wan2										
6in4	option ipaddr										
6to4	option ipaddr										

Web: SNMP Alias ifindex UCI: network.[...].snmp_alias_ifindex Opt: snmp_alias_ifindex	Defines a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface, that can be polled via the SNMP interface index (snmp_alias_ifindex+1000). See 'Configuring SNMP' section for more information
Blank	No SNMP interface alias index
Range	0 - 4294966295

Table 56: Information table for advanced settings

13.11.5 Bridged connection with static IP: firewall settings

Use this section to select the firewall zone you want to assign to this interface.

Select **unspecified** to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

Click **Save & Apply**.

Figure 81: The interfaces page firewall settings tab

13.11.6 Configuring an ADSL bridge connection with static IP using UCI

The configuration file is stored on: **Network file /etc/config/network**

To view the configuration file, enter:

```
uci export network
config adsl-device 'adsl'
    option fwannex 'a'
    option annex 'a'
    option enabled 'yes'

config atm-bridge
    option unit '0'
    option atmdev '0'
    option payload 'bridged'
    option vpi '8'
    option vci '39'
    option encaps 'llc'
```

```
config interface 'Management'
    option proto 'static'
    option ifname 'nas0'
    option monitored '0'
    option ipaddr '10.33.4.7'
    option netmask '255.255.255.192'
    option metric '2'
```

To view uci commands, enter:

```
uci show network
network.adsl.fwannex=a
network.adsl.annex=a
network.adsl.enabled=yes
network.@atm-bridge[0]=atm-bridge
network.@atm-bridge[0].unit=0
network.@atm-bridge[0].atmdev=0
network.@atm-bridge[0].payload=bridged
network.@atm-bridge[0].vpi=8
network.@atm-bridge[0].vci=39
network.@atm-bridge[0].encaps=llc
network.Management=interface
network.Management.proto=static
network.Management.ifname=nas0
network.Management.monitored=0
network.Management.ipaddr= 10.33.4.7
network.Management.netmask=255.255.255.192
network.Management.metric=2
```

13.12 ADSL diagnostics

13.12.1 ADSL PPPoA connections

To check the status of an ADSL line, in the top menu, select **Status -> ADSL Status**. The ADSL Status page appears.

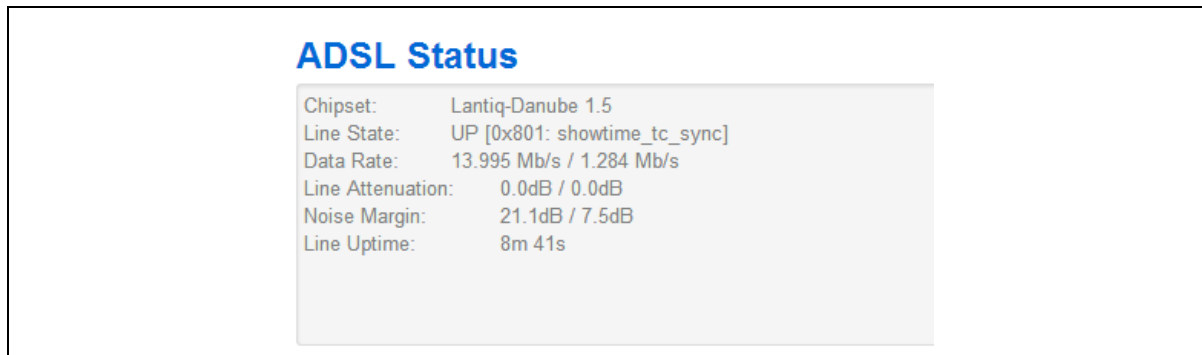


Figure 82: The ADSL status page

To check an IP address, transmit and received counter on an ADSL interface, in the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interface Overview page appears.



Figure 83: The interfaces overview page

13.12.2 ADSL PPPoEoA connections

To check the status of an ADSL line, in the top menu, select **Status -> ADSL Status**. The ADSL Status page appears.

To check an IP address, transmit and received counter on an ADSL interface, in the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interface Overview page appears.

Interfaces		
Interface Overview		
Network	Status	Actions
ADSL  pppoe-ADSL	Uptime: 0h 0m 48s RX: 522.00 B (11 Pkts.) TX: 64.00 B (4 Pkts.) IPv4: 172.22.100.6/32	Connect Stop Edit Delete
LAN  eth0	Uptime: 0h 2m 35s MAC Address: 00:E0:C8:10:11:65 RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) IPv4: 192.168.209.1/32, 192.168.6.1/24	Connect Stop Edit Delete

Figure 84: The interfaces overview page

13.12.3 ADSL bridge connections

To check the status of an ADSL line, in the top menu, select **Status -> ADSL Status**. The ADSL Status page appears.

To check an IP address, transmit and received counter on an ADSL interface, in the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interface Overview page appears.

Interfaces		
Interface Overview		
Network	Status	Actions
MANAGEMENT  nas0	Uptime: 0h 23m 5s MAC Address: 00:E0:C8:12:1F:25 RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) TX: 72.78 KB (1394 Pkts.) IPv4: 10.224.151.34/24	Connect Stop Edit Delete
TRAFFIC  nas1	Uptime: 0h 22m 52s MAC Address: 00:E0:C8:92:1F:25 RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) TX: 604.00 B (7 Pkts.) IPv4: 10.33.4.7/26	Connect Stop Edit Delete

Figure 85: The interfaces overview page

13.12.4 ADSL status using UCI

The ADSL chipset has its own subset of commands.

```
root@VA_router:~# /etc/init.d/dsl_control
Syntax: /etc/init.d/dsl_control [command]
```

Available commands:

```
start    Start the service
stop     Stop the service
restart  Restart the service
reload   Reload configuration files (or restart if that fails)
enable   Enable service autostart
disable  Disable service autostart
```



```
status  Get DSL status information
lucistat  Get status information in lua friendly format
```

To view the current status of the ADSL interface, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# /etc/init.d/dsl_control status
Chipset:                Lantiq-Danube 1.5
Line State:              UP [0x801: showtime_tc_sync]
Data Rate:               2.280 Mb/s / 291 Kb/s
Line Attenuation:        6.3dB / 3.3dB
Noise Margin:            31.1dB / 35.9dB
Line Uptime:             2d 18h 8m 30s
```

To restart the ADSL interface, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# /etc/init.d/dsl_control restart
```

14 Configuring a mobile connection

14.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
network	interface

14.2 Configuring a mobile connection using the web interface

Note: if you are creating multiple mobile interfaces, simply repeat the steps in this chapter for each interface. Multiple interfaces are required for dual SIM or multiple radio module scenarios. Configuring static routes and/or Multi-WAN can be used to manage these interfaces.

In the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces Overview page appears.

14.2.1 Create a new mobile interface

To create a new mobile interface, in the Interface Overview section, click **Add new interface**. The Create Interface page appears. In the examples below, 3G has been used for the interface name.

Figure 86: The create interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																										
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network.3G=interface Opt: interface	Allowed characters are A-Z, a-z, 0-9 and _																										
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.3G.proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. Select LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO . <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4		IPv6-over-IPv4		GRE		IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.	PPP		PPPoE		PPPoATM		LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4																											
IPv6-over-IPv4																											
GRE																											
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.																										
PPP																											
PPPoE																											
PPPoATM																											
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network.3G.type Opt: type	Enables bridge between two interfaces. Not relevant when configuring a mobile interface. <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.																						
0	Disabled.																										
1	Enabled.																										
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network.3G.ifname Opt: ifname	Select interfaces for bridge connection. Not relevant when configuring a mobile interface.																										

Table 57: Information table for the create interface page

Click **Submit**. The Common Configuration page appears. There are three sections in the mobile interface common configurations:

Section	Description
General Setup	Configure the basic interface settings such as protocol, service type, APN information, user name and password.
Advanced Settings	Set up more in-depth features such as initialisation timeout, LCP echo failure thresholds and inactivity timeouts.
Firewall settings	Assign a firewall zone to the connection.

14.2.1.1 Mobile interface: general setup

Figure 87: The common configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description		
Web: Status UCI: n/a Opt: n/a	Shows the current status of the interface.		
Web: Protocol UCI: network.3G.proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. Select LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO .		
	Web	Description	UCI
	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	static
	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	dhcp
	Unmanaged	Unspecified	none
	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.	
	IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.	
	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	gre
	IOT	IOT	iot
	L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	l2tp
	L2TPv3	L2TPv3 Tunnelling Protocol	l2tpv3
	PPP	Point to Point Protocol	ppp
	PPTP	Point to Point Tunnelling Protocol	pptp
	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	pppoe
	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	pppoa
	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.	3g
	PPP(PSTN-Modem)	PPP v90 modem	pppmodem

Web: service Preference UCI: network.3G.service_order Opt: service_order	Defines a space separated list of services, in preferred order. Valid options are gprs, umts, lte, auto. If no valid_service order is defined, then the configured Service Type is used. Example: network.3G.service_order="gprs umts lte auto" <table><tr><td>Blank</td><td>Use configured service type.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>gprs umts lte auto</td></tr></table>	Blank	Use configured service type.	Range	gprs umts lte auto								
Blank	Use configured service type.												
Range	gprs umts lte auto												
Web: Operator PLMN code UCI: network.3G.operator Opt: operator	Specifies an operator PLMN code to force the connection to a particular carrier. The PLMN code is identified as a combination of the MCC and the MNC. Note: the operator option is used in conjunction with the operator format option option_opformat which is used to define how the operator string is parsed. If configuring via the web GUI the op format is automatically set to '2' to indicate it is a PLMN code. See below for alternative options for the operator format option.												
Web: n/a UCI: network.3G.opformat Opt: opformat	Defines the operator format. We recommended you use PLMN code. The operator is case sensitive so if using long or short character format it must match the operator exactly. To see the current operator using SSH enter the command: cat /var/state/mobile or using the web mobile stats page at Status -> Mobile Stats. <table><tr><td>0</td><td>Long character format</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Short character format</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>PLMN code</td></tr></table>	0	Long character format	1	Short character format	2	PLMN code						
0	Long character format												
1	Short character format												
2	PLMN code												
Web: SIM UCI: network.3G.sim Opt: sim	Defines which SIM is used on this interface. <table><tr><th>Web</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>Auto</td><td>automatically detect</td><td>any</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>SIM 1</td><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>SIM 2</td><td>2</td></tr></table>	Web	Description	UCI	Auto	automatically detect	any	1	SIM 1	1	2	SIM 2	2
Web	Description	UCI											
Auto	automatically detect	any											
1	SIM 1	1											
2	SIM 2	2											
Web: APN UCI: network.3G.apn Opt: apn	APN name of Mobile Network Operator.												
Web: APN username UCI: network.3G.username Opt: username	Username used to connect to APN.												
Web: APN password UCI: network.3G.password Opt: password	Password used to connect to APN.												
Web: n/a UCI: network.3G.retry_interval_sec Opt: retry_interval_sec	Allows you to specify exact integer or range that will be used to calculate random number to delay PPP connection. <table><tr><td>0</td><td>PPP will connect immediately, without any delay.</td></tr><tr><td>1-infinite</td><td>PPP will attempt to connect again after specified interval.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>PPP will attempt to connect within specified range. The exact interval is calculated randomly from specified range. retry_interval sec 60 180</td></tr></table>	0	PPP will connect immediately, without any delay.	1-infinite	PPP will attempt to connect again after specified interval.	Range	PPP will attempt to connect within specified range. The exact interval is calculated randomly from specified range. retry_interval sec 60 180						
0	PPP will connect immediately, without any delay.												
1-infinite	PPP will attempt to connect again after specified interval.												
Range	PPP will attempt to connect within specified range. The exact interval is calculated randomly from specified range. retry_interval sec 60 180												

Table 58: Information table for common configuration settings

The Modem Configuration link at the bottom of the page is used for SIM pin code and SMS configuration. For more information, read the chapter 'Configuring mobile manager'.

14.2.1.2 Mobile interface: advanced settings

Common Configuration

General Setup
Advanced Settings
Firewall Settings

Bring up on boot ☒

Monitor interface state ☒ This interface state would be reported to VA Monitor via [keep-alive](#)

Authentication type CHAP Selects APN authentication type

Enable IPv6 negotiation on the PPP link ☐

Modem init timeout 20 Maximum amount of seconds to wait for the modem to become ready

Use default gateway ☒ If unchecked, no default route is configured

Use gateway metric 0

IPv4 Mode DHCP

IPv6 Mode None

Use DNS servers advertised by peer ☒ If unchecked, the advertised DNS server addresses are ignored

LCP echo failure threshold 0 Presume peer to be dead after given amount of LCP echo failures, use 0 to ignore failures

LCP echo interval 5 Send LCP echo requests at the given interval in seconds, only effective in conjunction with failure threshold

Inactivity timeout 0 Close inactive connection after the given amount of seconds, use 0 to persist connection

Select Operator on Every Start ☐ When operator is not enforced use this to make modem select operator every time interface starts

Dependant interfaces ☐ lan

Figure 88: The advanced settings tab

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Bring up on boot UCI: network.3G.auto Opt: auto	Enables the interface to connect automatically on boot up or reconnect automatically when disconnected.	
Web: Monitor interface state UCI: network.3G.monitored Opt: monitored	0	Do not monitor interface.
	1	Monitor interface.
Web: Authentication Type UCI: network.3G.auth Opt: auth	Enabled if status of interface is presented on Monitoring platform.	
	Web	Description
	CHAP	CHAP authentication
	PAP	PAP authentication
Web: Enable IPv6 negotiation on the PPP link UCI: network.3G.ipv6 Opt: ipv6	Enables IPv6 routing on the interface.	
	0	Do not enable IPv6.
	1	Enable IPv6.
Web: Modem int timeout UCI: network.3G.maxwait Opt: maxwait	Maximum amount of seconds to wait for the modem to become ready.	
	20	Seconds
	Range	
Web: Use default gateway UCI: network.3G.defaultroute Opt: defaultroute	Enables this interface as a default route.	
	0	Do not use as a default route.
	1	Use as a default route.

Web: Use gateway metric UCI: network.3G.metric Opt: metric	Defines the metric for the default route. Lower number metrics are used first when route is up. <table><tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	0		Range												
0																
Range																
Web: IPv4 Mode UCI: network.3G.ipv4mode Opt: ipv4mode	Defines the IPv4 address assignment approach for mobile interfaces in Ethernet Mode. Note: by default, mobile interfaces are in Ethernet mode. <table><tr><th>Web</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>None</td><td>No dynamic assignment</td><td>none</td></tr><tr><td>DHCP</td><td>DHCP address assignment</td><td>dhcp</td></tr></table>	Web	Description	UCI	None	No dynamic assignment	none	DHCP	DHCP address assignment	dhcp						
Web	Description	UCI														
None	No dynamic assignment	none														
DHCP	DHCP address assignment	dhcp														
Web: IPv6 Mode UCI: network.3G.ipv6mode Opt: ipv6mode	Defines the IPv6 address assignment approach for mobile interfaces in Ethernet Mode. Note: by default, mobile interfaces are in Ethernet mode. <table><tr><th>Web</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>None</td><td>No dynamic assignment</td><td>none</td></tr><tr><td>DHCPv6</td><td>DHCP address assignment</td><td>dhcp</td></tr><tr><td>RA</td><td>Router Advertisement (RA) assignment</td><td>ra</td></tr><tr><td>DHCPv6 after RA</td><td>Wait for RA, then start DHCP</td><td>ra_then_dhcp</td></tr></table>	Web	Description	UCI	None	No dynamic assignment	none	DHCPv6	DHCP address assignment	dhcp	RA	Router Advertisement (RA) assignment	ra	DHCPv6 after RA	Wait for RA, then start DHCP	ra_then_dhcp
Web	Description	UCI														
None	No dynamic assignment	none														
DHCPv6	DHCP address assignment	dhcp														
RA	Router Advertisement (RA) assignment	ra														
DHCPv6 after RA	Wait for RA, then start DHCP	ra_then_dhcp														
Web: Use DNS servers advertised by peer UCI: network.3G.peerdns Opt: peerdns	If unchecked, the advertised DNS server addresses are ignored. <table><tr><td>0</td><td>Use static DNS.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Use advertised DNS.</td></tr></table>	0	Use static DNS.	1	Use advertised DNS.											
0	Use static DNS.															
1	Use advertised DNS.															
Web: Use custom DNS servers UCI: network.3G.dns Opt: dns	Specifies DNS server. Only available if Use DNS servers advertised by peer is unselected. When multiple DNS servers are required separate using space for UCI or option value. Example: uci set network.3G.dns='1.1.1.1 2.2.2.2'															
Web: LCP echo failure threshold UCI: network.3G.keepalive Opt: keepalive	Presumes peer to be dead after a given amount of LCP echo failures, use 0 to ignore failures. This command is used in conjunction with the LCP echo interval. The syntax is as follows: uci network.3G.keepalive= <echo failure threshold> <echo interval> Example: uci set network.3G.keepalive='15 10' <table><tr><td>5</td><td>PPP peer dead after 5 failures</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	5	PPP peer dead after 5 failures	Range												
5	PPP peer dead after 5 failures															
Range																
Web: LCP echo interval UCI: network.3G.keepalive Opt: keepalive	Send LCP echo requests at the given interval in seconds, only effective in conjunction with failure This command is used in conjunction with the LCP echo failure threshold. The syntax is as follows: uci network.3G.keepalive= <echo failure threshold> <echo interval> Example: uci set network.3G.keepalive='15 10' <table><tr><td>1</td><td>LCP echo request every 1 second</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	1	LCP echo request every 1 second	Range												
1	LCP echo request every 1 second															
Range																
Web: Inactivity timeout UCI: network.3G.demand Opt: demand	Closes an inactive connection after the given amount of seconds. Use 0 to persist connection. <table><tr><td>0</td><td>Do not disconnect on inactivity.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	0	Do not disconnect on inactivity.	Range												
0	Do not disconnect on inactivity.															
Range																
Web: Select Operator on Every Start UCI: network.3G.operator_reselect Opt: operator_reselect	Defines whether to force modem to run operator selection (with AT+COPS=0 command) on every interface restart. <table><tr><td>0</td><td>Operator selection will not happen on interface restart.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Force modem to run operator selection on every interface restart.</td></tr></table>	0	Operator selection will not happen on interface restart.	1	Force modem to run operator selection on every interface restart.											
0	Operator selection will not happen on interface restart.															
1	Force modem to run operator selection on every interface restart.															

Web: Dependant Interfaces UCI: network.3G.dependants Opt: dependants	Lists interfaces that are dependent on this parent interface. Dependant interfaces will go down when the parent interface is down and will start or restart when the parent interface starts. Separate multiple interfaces by a space when using UCI. Example: option dependants 'PPPADSL MOBILE' This replaces the following previous options in child interfaces. <table border="1"> <tr><td>gre</td><td>option local_interface</td></tr> <tr><td>lt2p</td><td>option src_ipaddr</td></tr> <tr><td>iot</td><td>option wan1 wan2</td></tr> <tr><td>6in4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> <tr><td>6to4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> </table>	gre	option local_interface	lt2p	option src_ipaddr	iot	option wan1 wan2	6in4	option ipaddr	6to4	option ipaddr
gre	option local_interface										
lt2p	option src_ipaddr										
iot	option wan1 wan2										
6in4	option ipaddr										
6to4	option ipaddr										
Web: SNMP Alias ifindex UCI: network[..x..].snmp_alias_ifindex Opt: snmp_alias_ifindex	Defines a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface that can be polled via the SNMP interface index. (snmp_alias_ifindex+1000). See 'Configuring SNMP' section for more information. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Blank</td><td>No SNMP interface alias index</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 - 4294966295</td></tr> </table>	Blank	No SNMP interface alias index	Range	0 - 4294966295						
Blank	No SNMP interface alias index										
Range	0 - 4294966295										
Web: VRF UCI: network.3G.vrf Opt: vrf	Defines VRF for this interface. <table border="1"> <tr><td>blank</td><td>No VFR.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	blank	No VFR.	Range							
blank	No VFR.										
Range											

Table 59: Information table for general set up page

14.2.1.3 Mobile interface: firewall settings

Use this section to select the firewall zone you want to assign to the interface.

Select **unspecified** to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

Figure 89: Firewall settings page

14.3 Configuring a mobile connection using CLI

14.3.1 UCI

To establish a basic mobile connection, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network
network.3G=interface
network.3G.proto=3g
network.3G.monitored=0
network.3G.sim=any
```



```
network.3G.auto=1
network.3G.defaultroute=1
network.3G.metric=1
network.3G.service_order=auto lte umts gprs
network.3G.apn=test.apn
network.3G.username=username
network.3G.password=password
network.3G.ipv4mode=dhcp
network.3G.ipv6mode=none
network.3G.keepalive='5 1'
network.3G.operator_reselect=0
network.3G.auth=2
```

14.3.2 Package options

```
root@VA_router:~#
package network

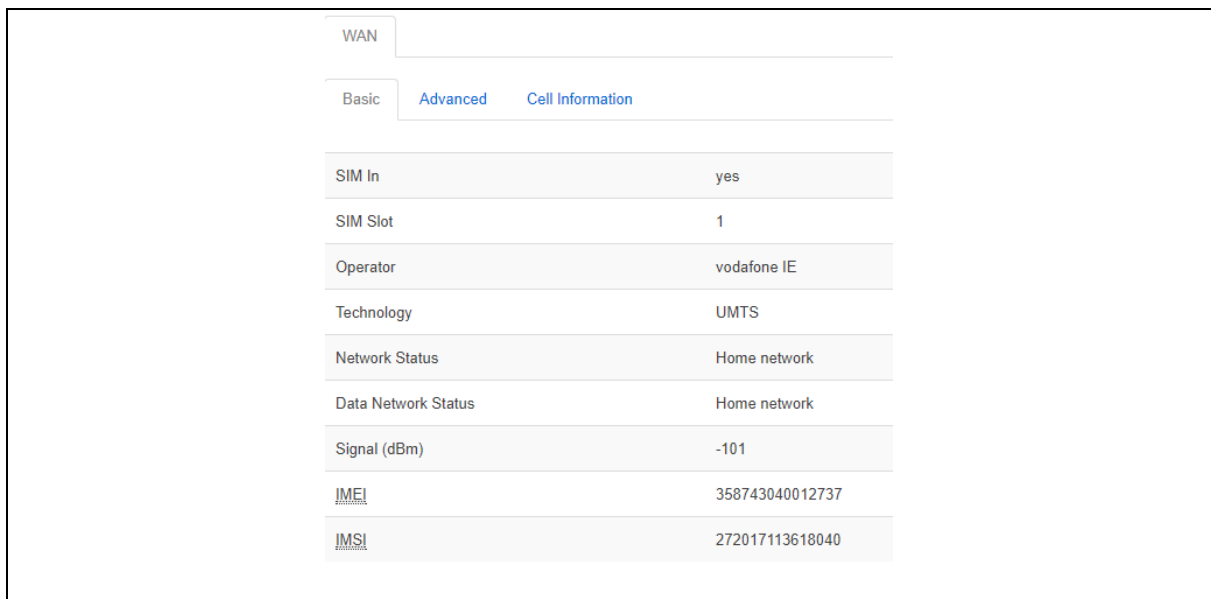
config interface '3G'
    option proto '3g'
    option monitored '0'
    option auto '1'
    option sim 'any'
    option defaultroute '1'
    option metric '1'
    option service_order 'auto lte umts gprs'
    option apn 'test.apn'
    option username 'username'
    option password 'password'
    option ipv4mode 'dhcp'
    option ipv6mode 'none'
    option keepalive '15 10'
    option operator_reselect '0'
    option auth '2'
```

14.4 Diagnostics

Note: the information presented on screen and data output using UCI depends on the actual mobile hardware being used. Therefore, the interfaces or output you see may differ from the samples shown here.

14.4.1 Mobile status via the web

To view mobile connectivity information, in the top menu, select **Status -> Mobile Information**. The Mobile Information page appears. The information presented depends on the actual mobile hardware used; it might therefore differ from the samples shown here.



The screenshot shows a web interface for mobile information. At the top, there are tabs for 'WAN', 'Basic', 'Advanced', and 'Cell Information'. The 'Basic' tab is selected. Below the tabs is a table with the following data:

SIM In	yes
SIM Slot	1
Operator	vodafone IE
Technology	UMTS
Network Status	Home network
Data Network Status	Home network
Signal (dBm)	-101
IMEI	358743040012737
IMSI	272017113618040

Figure 90: The mobile information page

WAN	
Basic Advanced Cell Information	
Network Status	Home network
Data Network Status	Home network
IMEI	358743040012737
IMSI	272017113618040
Operator	vodafone IE
Phone Number	+353874512040
SIM In	yes
SIM Slot	1
SIM1 ICCID	8935301140701270414
Signal (dBm)	-101
Technology	UMTS
Temperature (C)	28
Hardware Revision	R1C08

Figure 91: The advanced information page

WAN	
Basic Advanced Cell Information	
Cell ID	2007516
Location Area Code	3023
Mobile Country Code	272
Mobile Network Code	01

Figure 92: The cell information page

14.4.2 Mobile status using UCI

To display information and status of mobile interfaces such as 3G, 4G or CDMA, enter `mobile_status`:

```
root@VA_router:~# mobile_status

Mobile Interface      : WAN
Status                : idle
SIM In                : yes
SIM Slot              : 1
Operator              : vodafone IE
Technology            : UMTS
CS Network Status     : Home network
PS Network Status     : Home network
Signal (dBm)          : -107
IMEI                  : 358743040012737
IMSI                  : 272017113618040
```

For more advanced information, enter `mobile_status -a`:

```
root@ VA_router:~# mobile_status -a

Mobile Interface      : WAN
Status                : idle
CS Network Status     : Home network
PS Network Status     : Home network
IMEI                  : 358743040012737
IMSI                  : 272017113618040
Operator              : vodafone IE
Phone Number          : +353874512040
SIM In                : yes
SIM Slot              : 1
SIM1 ICCID            : 8935301140701270414
Signal (dBm)          : -107
Technology            : UMTS
Temperature (C)       : 28
Hardware Revision      : R1C0
```

15 Configuring mobile manager

The Mobile Manager feature allows you to configure SIM settings.

15.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
mobile	main
	callers
	roaming_template

15.2 Configuring mobile manager using the web interface

Select **Services -> Mobile Manager**. The Mobile Manager page appears.

There are four sections in the mobile manager page:

Section	Description
Basic	Enable SMS, configure SIM pin code and select roaming SIM.
Advanced	Configure advanced options such as collect ICCIDs and temperature polling interval.
CDMA*	CDMA configuration.
Callers	Configure callers that can use SMS.
Roaming Interface Template	Configure Preferred Roaming List options.
*Option available only for CDMA modules.	

15.2.1 Mobile manager: basic settings

MAIN

Basic Advanced CDMA

SMS Enable ☒

PIN-code for SIM1

PIN-code for SIM2

LTE Bands for SIM1

LTE Bands for SIM2

Figure 93: The mobile manager basic page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: SMS Enable UCI: mobile.main.sms Opt: sms	Enables or disables SMS functionality. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: PIN code for SIM1 UCI: mobile.main.sim1pin Opt: sim1pin	Depending on the SIM card specify the pin code for SIM 1. <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>Depends on the SIM provider.</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	Depends on the SIM provider.
Blank					
Range	Depends on the SIM provider.				
Web: PIN code for SIM2 UCI: mobile.main.sim2pin Opt: sim2pin	Depending on the SIM card specify the pin code for SIM 2. <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>Depends on the SIM provider.</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	Depends on the SIM provider.
Blank					
Range	Depends on the SIM provider.				
Web: LTE bands for SIM1 UCI: mobile.main.sim1_lte_bands Opt: sim1_lte_bands	Depending on the SIM card, specify the LTE bands for SIM 1. Comma delimiter. Example: option sim1_lte_bands '3,20' Limits LTE bands to 3 and 20. Note: currently only supported by Hucom/Wetelcom, SIMCom7100, Cellient MPL200 and Asiatel. <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>LTE bands range from 1 to 70.</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	LTE bands range from 1 to 70.
Blank					
Range	LTE bands range from 1 to 70.				
Web: LTE bands for SIM2 UCI: mobile.main.sim2_lte_bands Opt: sim2_lte_bands	Depending on the SIM card, specify the LTE bands for SIM 2. Comma delimiter. Example: option sim1_lte_bands '3,20' Limits LTE bands to 3 and 20. Note: currently only supported by Hucom/Wetelcom, SIMCom7100, Cellient MPL200 and Asiatel. <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>LTE bands range from 1 to 70.</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	LTE bands range from 1 to 70.
Blank					
Range	LTE bands range from 1 to 70.				

Table 60: Information table for mobile manager basic settings

15.2.2 Mobile manager: advanced settings

MAIN

Basic Advanced CDMA

Collect ICCIDs ☐ ? Collect ICCIDs on startup

Force Mode Automatic ▼ ? Select network interface mode

Temperature Polling Interval (Seconds) 61

Automatic Firmware Selection ☐ ? Select firmware based on network operator - only supported on some radio modules

Allow USB Power Cycle ☒ ? Power cycle usb bus if modem disappeared from the USB bus for more then 40 seconds

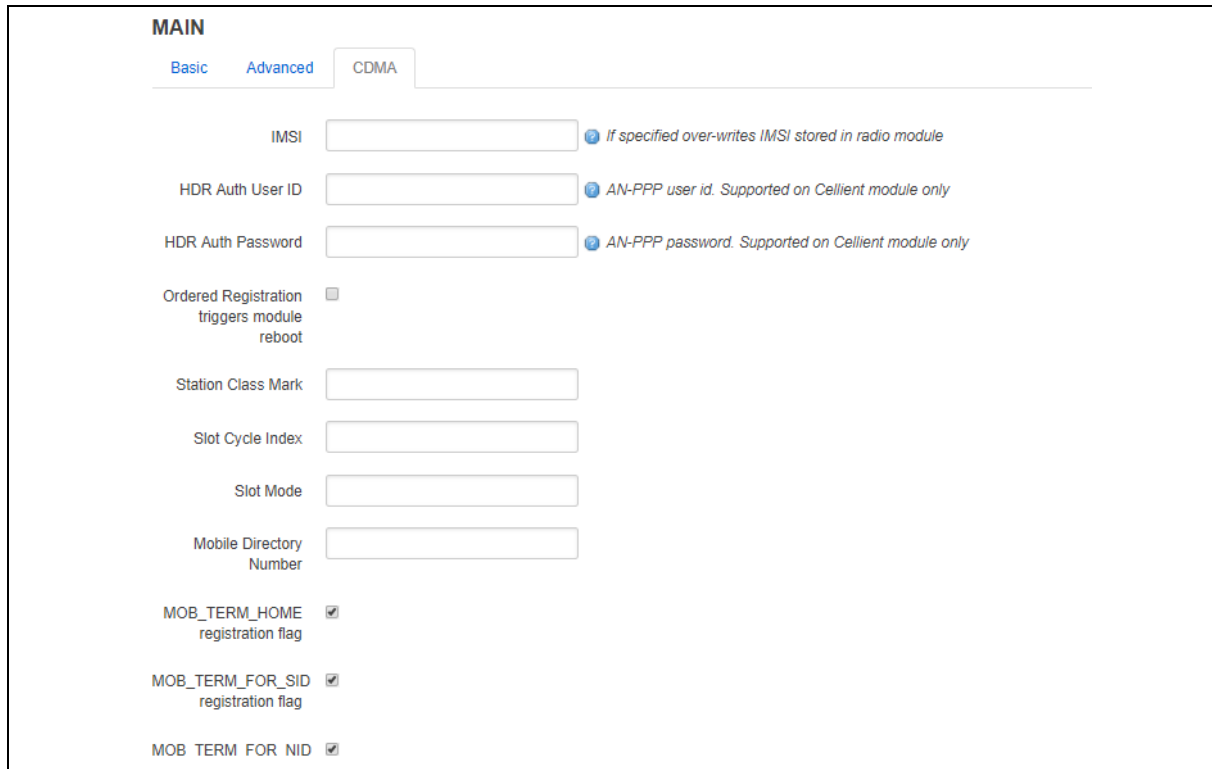
Figure 94: The mobile manager advanced page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Collect ICCIDs UCI: mobile.main.init_get_iccids Opt: init_get_iccids	Enables or disables integrated circuit card identifier ICCIDs collection functionality. If enabled then both SIM 1 and SIM 2 ICCIDs will be collected otherwise it will default to SIM 1. This will be displayed under mobile stats. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Force Mode UCI: mobile.main.force_mode Opt: force_mode	Defines whether to operate mobile modem in PPP or Ethernet mode. The mode will be dependent on the service provided by the mobile provider. In general, this is Ethernet mode (default). <table> <tr> <td>Automatic</td><td>Ethernet mode (option not present).</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Enable PPP mode.</td></tr> </table>	Automatic	Ethernet mode (option not present).	PPP	Enable PPP mode.
Automatic	Ethernet mode (option not present).				
PPP	Enable PPP mode.				
Web: Temperature Polling Interval UCI: mobile.main.temp_poll_interval_sec Opt: temp_poll_interval_sec	Defines the time in seconds to poll the mobile module for temperature. Set to 0 to disable. <table> <tr> <td>61</td><td>61 seconds.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	61	61 seconds.	Range	
61	61 seconds.				
Range					
Web: Automatic Firmware Selection UCI: mobile.main.enable_firmware_autoselect Opt: enable_firmware_autoselect	Enables the selection of an operator-specific firmware in the radio module. The selection is based on the ICCID of the used SIM. At module initialisation the IMSI is checked and if necessary the correct firmware image in the module will be activated. Note: activation of the firmware will lead to delayed startup of the network interface associated with the radio module. Note: this feature is currently only supported for the Telit LE910NA V2 module. Here Verizon-specific firmware will be selected if the ICCID starts with "891480". <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Allow USB Power Cycle UCI: mobile.main.allow_usb_powercycle Opt: allow_usb_powercycle	Defines whether to automatically power cycle the USB modem if mobile module is not detected for 40 seconds. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: mobile.main.disable_time Opt: disable_time	Defines whether to use time obtained from the mobile carrier to update the system clock when NTP is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 61: Information table for mobile manager advanced settings

15.2.3 Mobile manager: CDMA settings

This configuration page is only supported for CDMA modules.



MAIN

Basic Advanced **CDMA**

IMSI 📘 If specified over-writes IMSI stored in radio module

HDR Auth User ID 📘 AN-PPP user id. Supported on Cellient module only

HDR Auth Password 📘 AN-PPP password. Supported on Cellient module only

Ordered Registration triggers module reboot ☐

Station Class Mark

Slot Cycle Index

Slot Mode

Mobile Directory Number

MOB_TERM_HOME registration flag ☒

MOB_TERM_FOR_SID registration flag ☒

MOB_TERM_FOR_NID ☒

Figure 95: The mobile manager CDMA page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: IMSI UCI: mobile.main.imsi Opt: imsi	Allows the IMSI (International Mobile Subscriber Identity) to be changed. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Default</td><td>Programmed in module.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Digits</td><td>Up to 15 digits.</td></tr> </table>	Default	Programmed in module.	Digits	Up to 15 digits.
Default	Programmed in module.				
Digits	Up to 15 digits.				
Web: HDR Auth User ID UCI: mobile.main.hdr_userid Opt: hdr_userid	AN-PPP user ID. Supported on Cellient CDMA modem only. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>Depends on the CDMA provider.</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	Depends on the CDMA provider.
Blank					
Range	Depends on the CDMA provider.				
Web: HDR Auth User Password UCI: mobile.main.hdr_password Opt: hdr_password	AN-PPP password. Supported on Cellient CDMA modem only. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>Depends on the CDMA provider.</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	Depends on the CDMA provider.
Blank					
Range	Depends on the CDMA provider.				
Web: Ordered Registration triggers module reboot UCI: mobile.main.mobile.main.cdma_ordered_registration_reboot_enabled Opt: cdma_ordered_registration_reboot_enabled	Enables or disables rebooting the module after the order registration command is received from a network. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Station Class Mark UCI: mobile.main.cdma_station_class_mark Opt: cdma_station_class_mark	Allows the station class mark for the MS to be changed. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>58</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>0-255</td><td></td></tr> </table>	58		0-255	
58					
0-255					
Web: Slot Cycle Index UCI: mobile.main.cdma_slot_cycle_index Opt: cdma_slot_cycle_index	The desired slot cycle index if different from the default. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>2</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>0-7</td><td></td></tr> </table>	2		0-7	
2					
0-7					

Web: Slot Mode UCI: mobile.main.cdma_slot_mode Opt: cdma_slot_mode	Specifies the slot mode. 0 Default
Web: Mobile Directory Number UCI: mobile.main.cdma_mobile_directory_number Opt: cdma_mobile_directory_number	Allows the mobile directory number (MDN) to be changed. Default Programmed in module. Digits Up to 15 digits.
Web: MOB_TERM_HOME registration flag UCI: mobile.main.cdma_mob_term_home_registration_flag Opt: cdma_mob_term_home_registration_flag	The MOB_TERM_HOME registration flag. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web: MOB_TERM_FOR_SID registration flag UCI: mobile.main.cdma_mob_term_for_sid_registration_flag Opt: cdma_mob_term_for_sid_registration_flag	The MOB_TERM_FOR_SID registration flag. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web: MOB_TERM_FOR_NID registration flag UCI: mobile.main.cdma_mob_term_for_nid_registration_flag Opt: cdma_mob_term_for_nid_registration_flag	The MOB_TERM_FOR_NID registration flag. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web: Access Overload Control UCI: mobile.main.cdma_access_overload_control Opt: cdma_access_overload_control	Allows the access overload class to be changed. Default Programmed into module as part of IMSI. Range 0-7
Web: Preferred Serving System UCI: mobile.main.cdma_preferred_serving_system Opt: cdma_preferred_serving_system	The CDMA Preferred Serving System(A/B). 5
Web: Digital Analog Mode Preference UCI: cdma_digital_analog_mode_preference Opt: cdma_digital_analog_mode_preference	Digital/Analog Mode Preference. 4
Web: Primary Channel A UCI: mobile.main.cdma_primary_channel_a Opt: cdma_primary_channel_a.	Allows the primary channel (A) to be changed. 283 1-2016 Any band class 5 channel number.
Web: Primary Channel B UCI: mobile.main.cdma_primary_channel_b Opt: cdma_primary_channel_b	Allows the primary channel (B) to be changed. 384 1-2016 Any band class 5 channel number.
Web: Secondary Channel A UCI: mobile.main.cdma_secondary_channel_a Opt: cdma_secondary_channel_a	Allows the secondary channel (A) to be changed. 691 1-2016 Any band class 5 channel number.
Web: Secondary Channel B UCI: mobile.main.cdma_secondary_channel_b Opt: cdma_secondary_channel_b	Allows the secondary channel (B) to be changed. 777 1-2016 Any band class 5 channel number.
Web: Preferred Forward & Reverse RC UCI: mobile.main.cdma_preferred_forward_and_reverse_rc Opt:cdma_preferred_forward_and_reverse_rc	The Preferred Forward & Reverse RC value, this takes the form "forward rc,reverse rc" 0,0 Format forward radio channel, reverse radio channel
Web: SID-NID pairs UCI: mobile.main.cdma_sid_nid_pairs Opt:cdma_sid_nid_pairs	Allows specification of SID:NID pairs, this takes the form "SID1,NID1,SID2,NID2, 0,0 Format SID1 (0-65535),NID (0-65535)

Table 62: Information table for mobile manager CDMA settings

15.2.4 Mobile manager: callers

Callers

Configure caller numbers that may use the SMS service.

Name ⓘ *Name of the caller.*

Number ⓘ *Number of the caller. Use * for wildcard matching.*

Enable ☐

Respond ☐

Figure 96: The mobile manager CDMA page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Name UCI: mobile.@caller[0].name Opt:name	Name assigned to the caller.	
	Blank	
	Range	No limit.
Web: Number UCI: mobile.@caller[0].number Opt:number	Number of the caller allowed to SMS the router. Add in specific caller numbers, or use the * wildcard symbol.	
	Blank	
	Range	No limit.
	Characters	Global value (*) is accepted. International value (+) is accepted.
Web: Enable UCI: mobile.@caller[0].enabled Opt:enabled	Enables or disables incoming caller ID.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Respond UCI: mobile.@caller[0].respond Opt: respond	If checked, the router will return an SMS. Select Respond if you want the router to reply.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.

Table 63: Information table for mobile manager callers settings

15.2.5 Mobile manager: roaming interface template

For more information on Roaming Interface Template configuration, read the chapter, 'Automatic Operator Selection'.

15.3 Configuring mobile manager using command line

15.3.1 Mobile manager using UCI

The configuration files for mobile manager are stored on **/etc/config/mobile**

The following example shows how to enable the SMS functionality to receive and respond from certain caller ID numbers.

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show mobile
uci set mobile.main=mobile
```

```
uci set mobile.main.sim1pin=0000
uci set mobile.main.sim2pin=0000
uci set mobile.main.sim1_lte_bands='3,20'
uci set mobile.main.sim2_lte_bands='4,5'
uci set mobile.main.temp_poll_interval_sec=61
uci set mobile.main.enable_firmware_autoselect=0
uci set mobile.main.allow_usb_powercycle=1
uci set mobile.main.roaming_sim=none
uci set mobile.main.sms=1
uci set mobile.main.hdr_password=5678
uci set mobile.main.hdr_userid=1234
uci set mobile.main.init_get_iccids=1
uci set mobile.@caller[0]=caller
uci set mobile.@caller[0].name=user1
uci set mobile.@caller[0].number=3538712345678
uci set mobile.@caller[0].enabled=1
uci set mobile.@caller[0].respond=1
uci set mobile.@caller[1]=caller
uci set mobile.@caller[1].name=user2
uci set mobile.@caller[1].number=3538723456789
uci set mobile.@caller[1].enabled=1
uci set mobile.@caller[1].respond=1
```

15.3.2 Mobile manager using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export mobile
package mobile
config mobile 'main'
    option sim1pin '0000'
    option sim2pin '0000'
    option roaming_sim 'none'
    option sms '1'
    option hdr_password '5678'
    option hdr_userid '1234'
    option init_get_iccids '1'
    option sim1_lte_bands '3,20'
    option sim2_lte_bands '4,5'
```

```

option temp_poll_interval_sec '61'
option enable_firmware_autoselect '0'
option allow_usb_powercycle '1'

config caller
    option name 'vasupport'
    option number '353871234567'
    option enabled '1'
    option respond '1'

config caller
    option name 'vasupport1'
    option number '353872345678'
    option enabled '1'
    option respond '1'

```

15.4 Monitoring SMS

You can monitor inbound SMS messages using the router's web browser or via an SSH session.

To monitor SMS using the web browser, login and select **Status > system log**.

Scroll to the bottom of the log to view the SMS message.

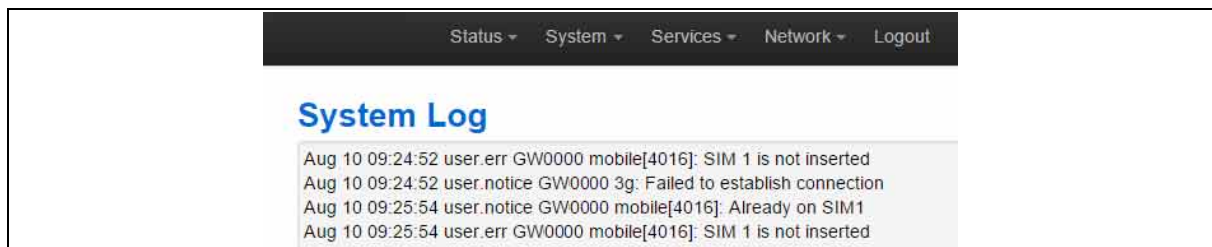


Figure 97: Example of output from system log

To monitor using SSH, login and enter:

```
logread -f &
```

Or, when logging system messages to a flash file at `/root/syslog.messages`

```
tail -f /root/syslog.messages &
```

15.5 Sending SMS from the router

You can send an outgoing message via the command line using the following syntax:

```
sendsms 353879876543 'hello'  
root@VirtualAccess:~# Aug 10 16:29:1 user.notice VirtualAccess  
mobile[1737]: Queue sms to 353879876543 "hello"
```

15.6 Sending SMS to the router

The router can accept UCI show and set commands via SMS if the caller is enabled.

Note: commands are case sensitive.

An example would be to SMS the SIM card number by typing the following command on the phone and checking the SMS received from the router.

```
uci show mobile.@caller[0].number
```

Multiple commands can be sent in a single SMS using a semicolon (;) separator. For example, to set the router to factcory config and then reboot.

```
vacmd set next config factconf;reboot
```

16 Configuring a GRE interface

General Routing Encapsulation (GRE) is a tunnelling protocol used for encapsulation of other communication protocols inside point to point links over IP.

16.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
network	interface

16.2 Creating a GRE connection using the web interface

To create GRE interfaces through the web interface, in the top menu, select **Network - > Interfaces**.

There are three sections in the Interfaces page.

Section	Description
Interface Overview	Shows existing interfaces and their status. You can create new, and edit existing interfaces here.
Port Map	In this section you can map device ports to Ethernet interfaces. Ports are marked with capital letters starting with 'A'. Type in space separated port numbers in the port map fields.
ATM Bridges	ATM bridges expose encapsulated Ethernet in AAL5 connections as virtual Linux network interfaces, which can be used in conjunction with DHCP or PPP to dial into the provider network.

In the Interface Overview section, click **Add new interface**. The Create Interface page appears.

Figure 98: The create interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																										
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network.<if name> Opt: config interface	Assigns a logical name to the GRE tunnel, The network interface section will be assigned this name <if name>. Type the name of the new interface. Allowed characters are A-Z, a-z, 0-9 and _. Must be less than 11 characters.																										
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.<if name>.proto Opt: proto	Specifies what protocol the interface will operate on. Select GRE . <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>Used with tunnel brokers.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td><td>Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point-to-Point protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>PPP over Ethernet</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>PPP over ATM</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.	IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	PPP	Point-to-Point protocol	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.																										
IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol																										
PPP	Point-to-Point protocol																										
PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet																										
PPPoATM	PPP over ATM																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network.<if name> Opt: n/a	Not applicable for GRE.																										
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network.<if name> Opt:n/a	Not applicable for GRE.																										

Table 64: Information table for the create new interface page

Click **Submit**. The Common Configuration page appears. There are three sections in the Common Configurations page.

Section	Description
General Setup	Configure the basic interface settings such as protocol, IP address, mask length, local interface, remote IP address, TTL, tunnel key and MTU.
Advanced Settings	'Bring up on boot' and 'monitor interface state' settings.
Firewall settings	Assign a firewall zone to the connection.

16.2.1 GRE connection: common configuration - general setup

The screenshot shows the 'Common Configuration' page for a GRE interface. The 'General Setup' tab is active. The interface is named 'gre-Tunnel1'. The protocol is set to 'GRE'. The local interface is '3G'. The tunnel IP address, mask length, remote IP address, TTL (128), tunnel key, and MTU (1472) are all empty or default. The status shows 'RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)' and 'TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)'.

Figure 99: The GRE common configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.<if name>.proto Opt: proto	Shows the protocol the interface will operate on. GRE should be currently selected.
Web: Tunnel IP Address UCI: network.<if name>.ipaddr Opt: ipaddr	Configures local IP address of the GRE interface.
Web: Mask Length UCI: network.<if name>.mask_length Opt: mask_length	Subnet mask, in CIDR notation, to be applied to the tunnel. Typically '30' for point-to-point tunnels.
	24
	Range 0 - 30

Web: Local Interface UCI: network.<if name>.local_interface Opt: local_interface	Specifies which interface is going to be linked with the GRE tunnel interface (optional).				
Web: Remote IP address UCI: network.<if name>.remote_ip Opt: remote_ip	For point to point tunnels specifies Remote IP address.				
Web: TTL UCI: network.<if name>.ttl Opt: ttl	Sets Time-To-Live value on the interface. <table border="1"> <tr><td>128</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	128		Range	
128					
Range					
Web: Tunnel key UCI: network.<if name>.key Opt: key	Sets GRE tunnel ID key (optional). Usually an integer.				
Web: MTU UCI: network.<if name>.mtu Opt: mtu	Configures MTU (maximum transmission unit) size of PDUs using this interface. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1472</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	1472		Range	
1472					
Range					

Table 65: Information table for GRE

16.2.2 GRE connection: common configuration-advanced settings

Common Configuration

General Setup Advanced Settings Firewall Settings

Bring up on boot ☒

Monitor interface state ☐ This interface state would be reported to VA Monitor via [keep-alive](#)

Dependant interfaces

- ☐ GRETUNNEL1:
- ☐ MOBILE_amlan:
- ☐ MOBILE_voda:
- ☐ PoAADSL:
- ☐ SUBNET1: (no interfaces attached)
- ☐ SUBNET2:
- ☐ SUBNET3:
- ☐ SUBNET4:
- ☐ loopback:

Check interfaces which should start after this interface is started and stop after this interface is stopped

SNMP Alias ifindex Alias ifindex SNMP agent. Alias indexes are present at 1000 offset. So setting 1 here will create snmp ifTable entry 1001.
Useful when interface creates new linux interface on every startup (e.g. ppp interface). With this set the interface could be monitored via constant snmp agent interface table entry

Figure 100: GRE advanced settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description										
Web: Bring up on boot UCI: network.<if name>.auto Opt: auto	Enables the interface to connect automatically on boot up. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: Monitor interface state UCI: network.<if name>.monitored Opt: monitored	Enabled if status of interface is presented on Monitoring platform. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: Dependant Interfaces UCI: network.[..x..].dependants Opt: dependants	Lists interfaces that are dependent on this parent interface. Dependant interfaces will go down when parent interface is down and will start or restart when parent interface starts. Separate multiple interfaces by a space when using UCI. Example: option dependants 'PPPADSL MOBILE' This replaces the following previous options in child interfaces. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>gre</td><td>option local interface</td></tr> <tr> <td>lt2p</td><td>option src_ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>iot</td><td>option wan1 wan2</td></tr> <tr> <td>6in4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>6to4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> </table>	gre	option local interface	lt2p	option src_ipaddr	iot	option wan1 wan2	6in4	option ipaddr	6to4	option ipaddr
gre	option local interface										
lt2p	option src_ipaddr										
iot	option wan1 wan2										
6in4	option ipaddr										
6to4	option ipaddr										
Web: SNMP Alias ifindex UCI: network.[..x..].snmp_alias_ifindex Opt: snmp_alias_ifindex	Defines a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface, that can be polled via the SNMP interface index (snmp_alias_ifindex+1000). See 'Configuring SNMP' section for more information. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>No SNMP interface alias index</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0 - 4294966295</td></tr> </table>	Blank	No SNMP interface alias index	Range	0 - 4294966295						
Blank	No SNMP interface alias index										
Range	0 - 4294966295										

Table 66: Information table for GRE advanced settings

16.2.3 GRE connection: firewall settings

Use this section to select the firewall zone you want to assign to this interface.

Select **unspecified** to remove the interface from the associated zone or fill out the create field to define a new zone and attach the interface to it.

Figure 101: GRE firewall settings

Click **Save and Apply**. This will save the current settings and return you to the Interface Overview page. To configure further settings on the GRE interface select **EDIT** for the relevant GRE interface.

16.2.4 GRE connection: adding a static route

After you have configured the GRE interface, you must configure a static route to route the desired traffic over the GRE tunnel. To do this, browse to **Network->Static Routes**. For more information, read the chapter 'Configuring Static Routes'.

16.3 GRE configuration using command line

The configuration file is stored on `/etc/config/network`

For the examples below tunnel1 is used as the interface logical name.

16.4 GRE configuration using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network
network.tunnel1=interface
network.tunnel1.proto=gre
network.tunnel1.monitored=0
network.tunnel1.ipaddr=172.255.255.2
network.tunnel1.mask_length=24
network.tunnel1.local_interface=wan
network.tunnel1.remote_ip=172.255.255.100
network.tunnel1.ttl=128
network.tunnel1.key=1234
network.tunnel1.mtu=1472
network.tunnel1.auto=1
```

16.5 GRE configuration using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export network
config interface 'tunnel1'
    option proto 'gre'
    option monitored '0'
    option ipaddr '172.255.255.2'
    option mask_length '24'
    option local_interface 'wan'
    option remote_ip '172.255.255.100'
    option ttl '128'
```

```
option key '1234'
option mtu '1472'
option auto '1'
```

To change any of the above values use `uci set` command.

16.6 GRE diagnostics

16.6.1 GRE interface status

To show the current running interfaces, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# ifconfig
base0      Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 00:00:00:00:01:01
            inet6 addr: fe80::200:ff:fe00:101/64 Scope:Link
            UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1504  Metric:1
            RX packets:39810 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
            TX packets:365 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
            collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
            RX bytes:10889090 (10.3 MiB)  TX bytes:68820 (67.2 KiB)

eth4       Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 00:1E:10:1F:00:00
            inet addr:10.68.66.54  Bcast:10.68.66.55  Mask:255.255.255.252
            inet6 addr: fe80::21e:10ff:fe1f:0/64 Scope:Link
            UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
            RX packets:81 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
            TX packets:127 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
            collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
            RX bytes:8308 (8.1 KiB)  TX bytes:12693 (12.3 KiB)

gre-Tunnel1 Link encap:UNSPEC  HWaddr 0A-44-42-36-DB-B0-00-48-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00
            inet addr:13.13.13.2  Mask:255.255.255.248
            inet6 addr: fe80::5efe:a44:4236/64 Scope:Link
            UP RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1472  Metric:1
            RX packets:7 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
            TX packets:7 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
            collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
            RX bytes:912 (912.0 B)  TX bytes:884 (884.0 B)

lo         Link encap:Local Loopback
            inet addr:127.0.0.1  Mask:255.0.0.0
            inet6 addr: ::1/128 Scope:Host
```

```

UP LOOPBACK RUNNING  MTU:16436  Metric:1
RX packets:1465 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
TX packets:1465 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
RX bytes:166202 (162.3 KiB)  TX bytes:166202 (162.3 KiB)

```

To display a specific GRE interface, enter `ifconfig gre-<if name>`:

```

root@VA_router:~# ifconfig gre-Tunnel1
gre-Tunnel1  Link encap:UNSPEC  HWaddr 0A-44-42-36-00-00-7F-E2-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00
              inet addr:13.13.13.2  Mask:255.255.255.248
              inet6 addr: fe80::5efe:a44:4236/64 Scope:Link
              UP RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1472  Metric:1
              RX packets:7 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
              TX packets:7 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
              collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
              RX bytes:912 (912.0 B)  TX bytes:8
GRE route status

```

To show the current GRE route status, enter:

```

root@VA_router:~# route -n
Kernel IP routing table

```

Destination	Gateway	Genmask	Flags	Metric	Ref	Use
0.0.0.0	10.68.66.53	0.0.0.0	UG	0	0	0 eth4
0.0.0.0	13.13.13.1	0.0.0.0	UG	1	0	0 gre-Tunnel1
10.68.66.52	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.252	U	0	0	0 eth4
13.13.13.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.248	U	0	0	0 gre-Tunnel1
172.19.101.3	13.13.13.1	255.255.255.255	UGH	0	0	0 gre-Tunnel1

Note: a GRE route will only be displayed in the routing table when the interface is up.

17 Dial modem

Virtual Access GW6000V-F Series and GW7630 Series routers are optionally fitted with a dial (V.90) modem.

The table below shows standards that are supported.

Data modem	V.90 V.34 V.32bis V.32 V.29 V.22bis V.22 V.22 Fast Connect V.23 V.21 Bell212a Bell103
Data compression	V.44 V.42bis and MNP5 V.42 LAPM and MNP2-4 error correction

Table 67: Dial modem standards

17.1 V.90 modem scenarios

You can use the V.90 modem in several scenarios. The table below gives a brief description of these scenarios, while the following sections describe how to set up and configure the modem.

Scenario	Description
As a normal WAN interface	Use the V.90 modem in the same way as other WAN interfaces such as DSL and ISDN.
As a backup WAN interface	Set up the V.90 modem to come into operation if the primary WAN interface becomes unusable for some reason.
As an out-of-band management interface	Use the V.90 modem to access the router management functions by dialling into the router, for example, using Virtual Access Router. It is also possible for the router to dial out via the V.90 modem interface under some conditions.

Table 68: V.90 modem scenarios

17.2 Setting up the V.90 physical port connection

To set up the physical modem interface, connect one end of your modem cable to your phone line wall socket and the other end to the RJ-45 dial modem port.



Figure 102: The GW6600V-F Series router showing the V.90 physical port connection

17.3 Configuring the modem as a dial out interface via UCI interface

To allow the router to use the PSTN modem to make outbound calls, you must configure a dial out interface.

The dial out configuration files are stored on **Network files /etc/econf/network**

```
uci export network
config interface 'dialout5'
    option proto 'ppp'
    option auto '0'
    option device '/dev/ttyCX0'
    option noipdefault '1'
    option peerdns '0'
    option nopersist '1'
    option defaultroute '0'
    option pppd_options '19200 lcp-echo-interval 10'
    option username 'test'
    option password 'test1'
    option number '1234'
```

To view UCI commands, use the following commands:

```
uci show network
network.dialout5=interface
network.dialout5.proto=ppp
network.dialout5.auto=0
network.dialout5.device=/dev/ttyCX0
network.dialout5.noipdefault=1
network.dialout5.peerdns=0
network.dialout5.nopersist=1
```

```

network.dialout5.defaultroute=0
network.dialout5.pppd_options=19200 lcp-echo-interval 10
network.dialout5.username=test
network.dialout5.password=test1
network.dialout5.number=1234

```

17.4 Configuring the modem as a dial in interface via UCI

To allow out of band management access to the router using the PSTN modem, you must configure three settings.

- Mgetty: assigns the inbound call to the modem.
- Dial in interface: assigns and establishes a PPP connection.
- Management user: for control of a secure connection.

17.4.1 Mgetty settings

The configuration files are stored on:

Mgetty files /etc/config/mgetty

```

uci export mgetty
config mgetty 'main'
    option enabled 'yes'

config device 'ttyCX0'
    option device '/dev/ttyCX0'
    option ppp_iface 'dialin'
    option login_user 'test'
    option init_chat '"" \d+++ \dAT&F+VCID=1 OK'
    option answer_chat '"" ATA CONNECT 19200'
    option data_only '1'
    option rings '2'
    option speed '19200'
    option debug '9'

```

To view the configuration files, enter:

```

uci show mgetty
mgetty.main=mgetty
mgetty.main.enabled=yes
mgetty.ttyCX0=device

```



```
mgetty.ttyCX0.device=/dev/ttyCX0
mgetty.ttyCX0.ppp_iface=dialin
mgetty.ttyCX0.init_chat="" \d+++ \dAT&F+VCID=1 OK
mgetty.ttyCX0.answer_chat="" ATA CONNECT 19200
mgetty.ttyCX0.data_only=1
mgetty.ttyCX0.rings=2
mgetty.ttyCX0.speed=19200
mgetty.ttyCX0.debug=9
```

17.4.2 Dial in interface settings

The configuration files are stored on Network files /etc/config/network

```
uci export network
config interface 'dialin'
    option proto 'ppp'
    option auto '0'
    option peerdns '1'
    option remote_ipaddr '172.168.101.2'
    option local_ipaddr '172.168.101.1'
    option noipdefault '1'
    option defaultroute '0'
    option remote_auth_options 'require_eap'
```

To view the configuration files, enter:

```
uci show network
network.dialin=interface
network.dialin.proto=ppp
network.dialin.auto=0
network.dialin.peerdns=1
network.dialin.remote_ipaddr=172.168.101.2
network.dialin.local_ipaddr=172.168.101.1
network.dialin.noipdefault=1
network.dialin.defaultroute=0
network.dialin.remote_auth_options=require_eap
```

17.4.3 Management user settings

The configuration files are stored on Management user files
/etc/config/management_user

```
uci export managment_users
config user
    option enabled '1'
    option username 'test'
    option password 'test'
    option srpuser '1'
    option chapuser '0'
    option webuser '0'
    option smsuser '0'
    option linuxuser '0'
```

To view the configuration files, enter:

```
uci show managment_users
managment_users.@user[0]=user
managment_users.@user[0].enabled=1
managment_users.@user[0].username=test
managment_users.@user[0].password=test
managment_users.@user[0].srpuser=1
managment_users.@user[0].chapuser=0
managment_users.@user[0].webuser=0
managment_users.@user[0].smsuser=0
managment_users.@user[0].linuxuser=0
```

18 Configuring static routes

It is possible to define arbitrary IPv4 routes on specific interfaces using route sections. As for aliases, multiple sections can be attached to an interface. These types of routes are most commonly known as static routes.

You can add static routes to the routing table to forward traffic to specific subnets when dynamic routing protocols are not used or they are not configured for such subnets. They can be created based on outgoing interface or next hop IP address.

18.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
network	route

18.2 Configuring static routes using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> Static Routes**. The Routes page appears.

Figure 103: The routes page

In the IPv4 Routes section, click **Add**.

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Interface UCI: network.@route[0].interface Opt: Interface	Specifies the logical interface name of the parent or master interface this route belongs to. It must refer to one of the defined interface sections.
Web: target UCI: network.@route[0].target Opt: target	Specifies the route network IP address.
Web: netmask UCI: network.@route[0].netmask Opt: netmask	Defines the route netmask. If omitted, 255.255.255.255 is assumed, which makes the target a host address.

Web: Gateway UCI: network.@route[0].gateway Opt: Gateway	Network gateway. If omitted, the gateway from the parent interface is taken. If set to 0.0.0.0 no gateway will be specified for the route.				
Web: Metric UCI: network.@route[0].metric Opt: metric	Specifies the route metric to use. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range	
0					
Range					
Web: MTU UCI: network.@route[0].mtu Opt: mtu	Defines a specific MTU for this route. If omitted, the MTU from the parent interface will be taken. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	
Blank					
Range					

Table 69: Information table for IPv4 static routes section

18.3 Configuring IPv6 routes using the web interface

You can also specify IPv6 routes by defining one or more IPv6 routes. In the IPv6 routes section, click **Add**.

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Interface UCI: network.@route[1].interface Opt: interface	Specifies the logical interface name of the parent or master interface this route belongs to. It must refer to one of the defined interface sections.				
Web: target UCI: network.@route[1].target Opt: target	Specifies the route network IP address, or subnet in CIDR notation: Example: 2001:0DB8:100:F00:BA3::1/64				
Web: Gateway UCI: network.@route[1].gateway Opt: Gateway	Network gateway. If omitted, the gateway from the parent interface is taken. If set to 0.0.0.0 no gateway will be specified for the route.				
Web: Metric UCI: network.@route[1].metric Opt: metric	Specifies the route metric to use. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range	
0					
Range					
Web: MTU UCI: network.@route[1].mtu Opt: mtu	Defines a specific MTU for this route. If omitted the MTU from the parent interface will be taken. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Empty</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Empty		Range	
Empty					
Range					

Table 70: Information table for IPv6 routes

When you have made your changes, click **Save & Apply**.

18.4 Configuring routes using command line

By default all routes are named 'route', it is identified by @route then the route's position in the package as a number. For example, for the first route in the package using UCI:

```
network.@route[0]=route
network.@route[0].interface=lan
```

Or using package options:

```
config route
    option 'interface' 'lan'
```

However, you can give a route a name if desired. For example, a route named 'myroute' will be `network.myroute`.

To define a named route using UCI, enter:

```
network.name_your_route=route
network.name_your_route.interface=lan
```

To define a named route using package options, enter:

```
config route 'name_your_route'
    option 'interface' 'lan'
```

18.5 IPv4 routes using UCI

The command line example routes in the subsections below do not have a configured name.

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network
network.@route[0]=route
network.@route[0].interface=lan
network.@route[0].target=3.3.3.10
network.@route[0].netmask=255.255.255.255
network.@route[0].gateway=10.1.1.2
network.@route[0].metric=3
network.@route[0].mtu=1400
```

18.6 IPv4 routes using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export network
package network
...
config route
    option interface 'lan'
    option target '2.2.2.2'
    option netmask '255.255.255.255'
    option gateway '192.168.100.1'
    option metric '1'
    option mtu '1500'
```

18.7 IPv6 routes using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network
network.@route[1]=route
network.@route[1].interface=lan
network.@route[1].target=2001:0DB8:100:F00:BA3::1/64
network.@route[1].gateway=2001:0DB8:99::1
network.@route[1].metric=1
network.@route[1].mtu=1500
```

18.8 IPv6 routes using packages options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export network
package network
...
config route
    option interface 'lan'
    option target '2001:0DB8:100:F00:BA3::1/64'
    option gateway '2001:0DB8:99::1'
    option metric '1'
    option mtu '1500'
```

18.9 Static routes diagnostics

18.9.1 Route status

To show the current routing status, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# route -n
Kernel IP routing table
Destination      Gateway          Genmask          Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
192.168.100.0    *                255.255.255.0    U        0      0      0 eth0
```

Note: a route will only be displayed in the routing table when the interface is up.

19 Configuring BGP (Border Gateway Protocol)

BGP is a protocol for exchanging routing information between gateway hosts, each with its own router, in a network of autonomous systems. BGP is often the protocol used between gateway hosts on the internet. The routing table contains a list of known routers, the addresses they can reach, and a cost metric associated with the path to each router so that the best available route is chosen.

19.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
bgpd	routing
	peer
	routemap

19.2 Configuring BGP using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> BGP**. BGP configuration page appears. The page has three sections: Global Settings, BGP Neighbours and BGP Route Map.

The screenshot shows the BGP configuration page in a web interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links: Status, System, Services, Network, and Logout. The main heading is 'BGP'. Below it, there are three main sections:

- Global Settings:** Contains an 'Add' button.
- BGP Route Map:** Contains a text input field and an 'Add' button. Below this, it says 'This section contains no values yet'.
- BGP Neighbours:** Contains a table with the following headers: IP Address, Autonomous System Number, Route Map, and Route Map Direction. Below the table, it says 'This section contains no values yet' and has an 'Add' button.

At the bottom right of the page, there are three buttons: 'Save & Apply', 'Save', and 'Reset'.

Figure 104: The BGP page

19.2.1 BGP global settings

To configure global BGP settings, click **Add**. The Global Settings page appears.

BGP

Global Settings

BGP Enabled ☐

Router ID

Scan Time The interval in seconds between RIB scans

Autonomous System Number

Log keepalives ☐

Log events ☐

Log filters ☐

Log fsm ☐

Log updates ☐

Network These networks will be announced to neighbours

Figure 105: The BGP global settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: BGP Enabled UCI: bgpd.bgpd.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables BGP protocol.	
	1	Enabled.
	0	Disabled.
Web: Router ID UCI: bgpd.bgpd.router_id Opt: router_id	Sets a Unique Router ID in 4 byte format 0.0.0.0.	
Web: Scan Time UCI: bgpd.bgpd.scan_time Opt: scan_time	Defines the interval in seconds between RIB scans.	
	60	60 seconds
	Range	
Web: Autonomous System Number UCI: bgpd.bgpd.asn Opt: asn	Defines the ASN for the local router. Type in the ASN.	
	Blank	
	Range	
	1-4294967295	
Web: Log keepalives UCI: bgpd.bgpd.debug_keepalive Opt: debug_keepalives	Defines whether to enable BGP keepalives to the system log.	
	1	Enabled.
	0	Disabled.
Web: Log events UCI: bgpd.bgpd.debug_events Opt: debug_events	Defines whether to enable BGP event to the system log.	
	1	Enabled.
	0	Disabled.
Web: Log filters UCI: bgpd.bgpd.debug_filters Opt: debug_filters	Defines whether to enable BGP filter events to the system log.	
	1	Enabled.
	0	Disabled.

Web: Log fsm UCI: bgpd.bgpd.debug_fsm Opt: debug_fsm	Defines whether to enable BGP state changes to the system log. <table> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Log Updates UCI: bgpd.bgpd.debug_updates Opt: debug_updates	Defines whether to enable BGP updates to the system log. <table> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Network UCI: bgpd.bgpd.network Opt: list network	Sets the list of networks that will be advertised to neighbours in prefix format 0.0.0.0/0. Separate multiple networks by a space using UCI. Ensure the network prefix matches the one shown in the routing table. For more information, read the 'Routes' section below.				

Table 71: Information table for BGP global settings

19.2.2 Optionally configure a BGP route map

Route maps provide a means to both filter and/or apply actions to a route. This allows a policy to be applied to routes. Route maps are an ordered list of route map entries each with a set of criteria that must be matched before specific attributes of the route are modified.

Scroll down to the BGP Route Map section.

Type in a name for the BGP route map name and then click **Add**. The BGP Route Map configuration section appears. You can configure multiple route maps. The examples below are for a route map named ROUTEMAP.

ROUTEMAP

Order

Policy Type

Match Type

Match Value
Format depends on Match Type. In case of IP Address and BGP Community value is parsed as list of items to match.
Use ":" prefix to deny match

Set Option

Set Value

Figure 106: The routemap section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Order UCI: bgpd.ROUTEMAP.order Opt: order	Defines the route map order number.	
	Blank	
	Range	1-65535
Web: Policy Type UCI: bgpd.ROUTEMAP.permit Opt: permit	Defines the actions taken if the entry is matched.	
	Deny	Denies the route.
	Permit	Permits the route so process the set actions for this entry.
Web: Match Type UCI: bgpd.ROUTEMAP.match_type Opt: match_type	Defines match type. Available options are as follows:	
	IP address	Matches IP address.
	IP Next Hop	Matches next hop IP address.
	AS-Path	Matches AS-path.
	Route Metric	Matches route metric.
	BGP Community	Matches BGP community.

Web: Match value UCI: bgpd.ROUTEMAP.match Opt: match	Defines the value of the match type. Format depends on the Match Type selected. In the case of IP address and BGP Community values, the match value is parsed as a list of items to match. Enter '-' prefix to deny match.																		
Web: Set Option UCI: bgpd.ROUTEMAP.set_type Opt: set_type	Defines the set option to be processed on a match. Available options are shown below. <table border="1"> <tr><td>None</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>IP Next Hop</td><td>Setting option for IP next hop.</td></tr> <tr><td>Local Preference</td><td>Setting option for Local Preference.</td></tr> <tr><td>Route Weight</td><td>Setting option for Route Weight.</td></tr> <tr><td>BGP MED</td><td>Setting option for BGP multi-exit discriminator (BGP metric).</td></tr> <tr><td>AS Path to Prepend</td><td>Setting option to prepend AS to AS path.</td></tr> <tr><td>BGP Community</td><td>Setting option for BGP community.</td></tr> <tr><td>IPv6 Next Hop Global</td><td>Setting option for IPv6 Next Hop Global.</td></tr> <tr><td>IPv6 Next Hop Local</td><td>Setting option for IPv6 Next Hop Local.</td></tr> </table>	None		IP Next Hop	Setting option for IP next hop.	Local Preference	Setting option for Local Preference.	Route Weight	Setting option for Route Weight.	BGP MED	Setting option for BGP multi-exit discriminator (BGP metric).	AS Path to Prepend	Setting option to prepend AS to AS path.	BGP Community	Setting option for BGP community.	IPv6 Next Hop Global	Setting option for IPv6 Next Hop Global.	IPv6 Next Hop Local	Setting option for IPv6 Next Hop Local.
None																			
IP Next Hop	Setting option for IP next hop.																		
Local Preference	Setting option for Local Preference.																		
Route Weight	Setting option for Route Weight.																		
BGP MED	Setting option for BGP multi-exit discriminator (BGP metric).																		
AS Path to Prepend	Setting option to prepend AS to AS path.																		
BGP Community	Setting option for BGP community.																		
IPv6 Next Hop Global	Setting option for IPv6 Next Hop Global.																		
IPv6 Next Hop Local	Setting option for IPv6 Next Hop Local.																		
Web: Value UCI: bgpd.ROUTEMAP.set Opt: set	Defines the set value when a match occurs. Value format depends on the set option you have selected.																		

Table 72: Information table for routemap

19.2.3 Configure BGP neighbours

To configure BGP neighbours, in the BGP neighbours section, click **Add**. The BGP Neighbours page appears. You can configure Multiple BGP neighbours.

BGP Neighbours

IP Address	Autonomous System Number	Route Map	Route Map Direction	IPv6	Local Peer	Holdtime	Keepalive Interval	Connect Timer
						seconds	seconds	seconds
11.11.11.1	2		In	☐	☐			

Figure 107: The BGP neighbours section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: IP Address UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].ipaddr Opt: ipaddr	Sets the IP address of the neighbour.				
Web: Autonomous System Number UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].asn Opt: asn	Sets the ASN of the remote peer. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>1-4294967295</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	1-4294967295
Blank					
Range	1-4294967295				
Web: Route Map UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].route_map Opt: route_map	Sets route map name to use with this neighbour.				
Web: Route Map Direction UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].route_map_in Opt: route_map_in	Defines what direction to apply to the route map. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td>In</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Out</td></tr> </table>	1	In	0	Out
1	In				
0	Out				

Web: IPv6 UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].ipv6 Opt: ipv6	Defines whether the peer is connected over IPv6. 1 0
Web: Local Peer UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].next_hop_self Opt: next_hop_self	Defines an announced route's next hop as being equivalent to the address of the router if it is learned via eBGP. 1 0
Web: Holdtime UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].holdtime_sec Opt: holdtime_sec	Defines how long to wait for incoming BGP messages before assuming peer is dead. The timer is reset every time a BGP message is received. 0 Range
Web: Keepalive Interval UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].keepalive_sec Opt: keepalive_sec	Defines the interval in seconds for between two successive BGP keep alive messages. 0 Range
Web: Connect Timer UCI: bgpd.@peer[0].connect_sec Opt: connect_sec	Defines how long to wait after interface is up before retrying the connection on it. 0 Range

Table 73: Information table for BGP neighbours

19.3 Configuring BGP using command line

19.3.1 Configuring BGP using UCI

You can also configure BGP using UCI. The configuration file is stored on /etc/config/bgpd

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show bgpd
bgpd.bgpd=routing
bgpd.bgpd.enabled=yes
bgpd.bgpd.router_id=3.3.3.3
bgpd.bgpd.asn=1
bgpd.bgpd.network=11.11.11.0/29 192.168.103.1/32
bgpd.@peer[0]=peer
bgpd.@peer[0].route_map_in=yes
bgpd.@peer[0].ipaddr=11.11.11.1
bgpd.@peer[0].asn=1
bgpd.@peer[0].route_map=ROUTEMAP
bgpd.@peer[0].ipv6=0
bgpd.@peer[0].next_hop_self=0
bgpd.@peer[0].holdtime_sec=0
bgpd.@peer[0].keepalive_sec=0
bgpd.@peer[0].connect_sec=0

```

```
bgpd.ROUTEMAP=routemap
bgpd.ROUTEMAP.order=10
bgpd.ROUTEMAP.permit=yes
bgpd.ROUTEMAP.match_type=ip address
bgpd.ROUTEMAP.match=192.168.101.1/32
bgpd.ROUTEMAP.set_type=ip next-hop
bgpd.ROUTEMAP.set='192.168.101.2/32'
```

To change any of the above values use UCI set command.

19.3.2 Configuring BGP using packages options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export bgpd
package bgpd
config routing 'bgpd'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option router_id '3.3.3.3'
    option asn '1'
    list network '11.11.11.0/29'
    list network '192.168.103.1/32'

config peer
    option route_map_in 'yes'
    option ipaddr '11.11.11.1'
    option asn '1'
    option route_map 'ROUTEMAP'
    option ipv6 '0'
    option next_hop_self '0'
    option holdtime_sec '0'
    option keepalive_sec '0'
    option connect_sec '0'

config routemap 'ROUTEMAP'
    option order '10'
    option permit 'yes'
```


To view routes via the command line, enter:

```
root@support:~# route -n
Kernel IP routing table
Destination      Gateway          Genmask         Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
10.1.0.0         0.0.0.0         255.255.0.0    U        0      0      0 br-lan2
```

20 Configuring OSPF (Open Shortest Path First)

20.1 Introduction

OSPF is a standardised Link State routing protocol, designed to scale efficiently to support larger networks. Link State protocols track the status and connection type of each link and produce a calculated metric based on these and other factors, including some set by the network administrator. Link State protocols will take a path which has more hops, but that uses a faster medium over a path using a slower medium with fewer hops.

OSPF adheres to the following Link State characteristics:

- OSPF employs a hierarchical network design using areas.
- OSPF will form neighbour relationships with adjacent routers in the same area.
- Instead of advertising the distance to connected networks, OSPF advertises the status of directly connected links using Link-State Advertisements (LSAs).
- OSPF sends updates (LSAs) when there is a change to one of its links, and will only send the change in the update. LSAs are additionally refreshed every 30 minutes.
- OSPF traffic is multicast either to address 224.0.0.5 (all OSPF routers) or 224.0.0.6 (all designated routers).
- OSPF uses the Dijkstra Shortest Path First algorithm to determine the shortest path.
- OSPF is a classless protocol, and therefore supports variable Length Subnet Masks (VLSMs).

Other characteristics of OSPF include:

- OSPF supports only IP routing.
- OSPF routes have an administrative distance is 110.
- OSPF uses cost as its metric, which is computed based on the bandwidth of the link. OSPF has no hop-count limit.

The OSPF process builds and maintains three separate tables:

- **A neighbour table** containing a list of all neighbouring routers
- **A topology table** containing a list of all possible routes to all known networks within an area
- **A routing table** containing the best route for each known network

20.1.1 OSPF areas

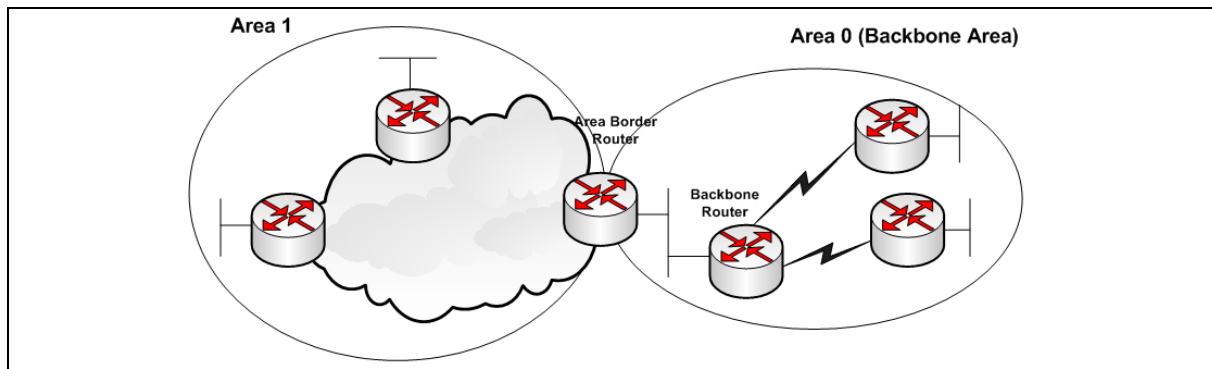


Figure 109: OSPF areas

OSPF has a number of features that allow it to scale well for larger networks. One of these features is OSPF areas. OSPF areas break up the topology so that routers in one area know less topology information about the subnets in the other area, and they do not know anything about the routers in the other area at all. With smaller topology databases, routers consume less memory and take less processing time to run SPF.

The Area Border Router (ABR) is the border between two areas. The ABR does not advertise full topology information about the part of the network in area 0 to routers in area 1. Instead the ABR advertises summary information about the subnets in area 0. Area 1 will just see a number of subnets reachable via area 0.

20.1.2 OSPF neighbours

OSPF forms neighbour relationships, called adjacencies, with other routers in the same Area by exchanging 'Hello' packets to multicast address 224.0.0.5. Only after an adjacency is formed can routers share routing information.

Each OSPF router is identified by a unique router ID. The router ID can be determined in one of three ways:

- The router ID can be manually specified.
- If not manually specified, the highest IP address configured on any Loopback interface on the router will become the router ID.
- If no loopback interface exists, the highest IP address configured on any physical interface will become the router ID.

By default, Hello packets are sent out OSPF-enabled interfaces every 10 seconds for broadcast and point-to-point interfaces, and 30 seconds for non-broadcast and point-to-multipoint interfaces.

OSPF also has a 'Dead Interval', which indicates how long a router will wait without hearing any hellos before announcing a neighbour as 'down'. The default setting for the Dead Interval is 40 seconds for broadcast and point-to-point interfaces, and 120 seconds for non-broadcast and point-to-multipoint interfaces. By default, the Dead Interval timer is four times the Hello interval.

OSPF routers will only become neighbours if the following parameters within a Hello packet are identical on each router:

- Area ID
- Area Type (stub, NSSA, etc.)
- Prefix
- Subnet Mask
- Hello Interval
- Dead Interval
- Network Type (broadcast, point-to-point, etc.)
- Authentication

The Hello packets also serve as keepalives to allow routers to quickly discover if a neighbour is down. Hello packets also contain a neighbour field that lists the router IDs of all neighbours the router is connected to. A neighbour table is constructed from the OSPF Hello packets, which includes the following information:

- The router ID of each neighbouring router
- The current 'state' of each neighbouring router
- The interface directly connecting to each neighbour
- The IP address of the remote interface of each neighbour

20.1.3 OSPF designated routers

In multi-access networks such as Ethernet, there is the possibility of many neighbour relationships on the same physical segment. This leads to a considerable amount of unnecessary Link State Advertisement (LSA) traffic. If a link of a router were to fail, it would flood this information to all neighbours. Each neighbour, in turn, would then flood that same information to all other neighbours. This is a waste of bandwidth and processor load.

To prevent this, OSPF will elect a Designated Router (DR) for each multi-access networks, accessed via multicast address 224.0.0.6. For redundancy purposes, a Backup Designated Router (BDR) is also elected.

OSPF routers will form adjacencies with the DR and BDR. If a change occurs to a link, the update is forwarded only to the DR, which then forwards it to all other routers. This greatly reduces the flooding of LSAs. DR and BDR elections are determined by a router's OSPF priority, which is configured on a per-interface basis (a router can have interfaces in multiple multi-access networks). The router with the highest priority becomes the DR; second highest becomes the BDR. If there is a tie in priority, whichever router has the highest Router ID will become the DR.

20.1.4 OSPF neighbour states

Neighbour adjacencies will progress through several states, described in the table below.

State	Description
Down	Indicates that no Hellos have been heard from the neighbouring router.
Init	Indicates a Hello packet has been heard from the neighbour, but two-way communication has not yet been initialised.
2-Way	Indicates that bidirectional communication has been established. Recall that Hello packets contain a neighbour field. Thus, communication is considered 2-Way once a router sees its own Router ID in its neighbour's Hello Packet. Designated and Backup Designated Routers are elected at this stage.
ExStart	Indicates that the routers are preparing to share link state information. Master/slave relationships are formed between routers to determine who will begin the exchange.
Exchange	Indicates that the routers are exchanging Database Descriptors (DBDs). DBDs contain a description of the router's Topology Database. A router will examine a neighbour's DBD to determine if it has information to share.
Loading	Indicates the routers are finally exchanging Link State Advertisements, containing information about all links connected to each router. Essentially, routers are sharing their topology tables with each other.
Full	Indicates that the routers are fully synchronised. The topology table of all routers in the area should now be identical. Depending on the role of the neighbour, the state may appear as:
	Full/DR Indicating that the neighbour is a Designated Router (DR).
	Full/BDR Indicating that the neighbour is a Backup Designated Router (BDR).
	Full/DROther Indicating that the neighbour is neither the DR nor BDR. On a multi-access network, OSPF routers will only form Full adjacencies with DRs and BDRs. Non-DRs and non-BDRs will still form adjacencies, but will remain in a 2-Way State. This is normal OSPF behaviour.

Table 74: Neighbour adjacency states

20.1.5 OSPF network types

OSPF's functionality is different across several different network topology types.

State	Description
Broadcast Multi-Access	Indicates a topology where broadcast occurs. Examples include Ethernet, Token Ring and ATM. OSPF characteristics are: OSPF will elect DRs and BDRs Traffic to DRs and BDRs is multicast to 224.0.0.6. Traffic from DRs and BDRs to other routers is multicast to 224.0.0.5 Neighbours do not need to be manually specified.
Point-to-Point	Indicates a topology where two routers are directly connected. An example would be a point-to-point T1. OSPF characteristics are: OSPF will not elect DRs and BDRs All OSPF traffic is multicast to 224.0.0.5 Neighbours do not need to be manually specified
Point-to-Multipoint	Indicates a topology where one interface can connect to multiple destinations. Each connection between a source and destination is treated as a point-to-point link. For example, point to Point-to-Multipoint Frame Relay. OSPF characteristics are: OSPF will not elect DRs and BDRs. All OSPF traffic is multicast to 224.0.0.5. Neighbours do not need to be manually specified.

Non-broadcast Multi-access Network (NBMA)	Indicates a topology where one interface can connect to multiple destinations; however, broadcasts cannot be sent across a NBMA network. For example, Frame Relay. OSPF characteristics are: OSPF will elect DRs and BDRs. OSPF neighbours must be manually defined, so all OSPF traffic is unicast instead of multicast. Note: on non-broadcast networks, neighbours must be manually specified, as multicast Hello's are not allowed
---	---

Table 75: OSPF functionality over different topology types

20.1.6 The OSPF hierarchy

OSPF is a hierarchical system that separates an autonomous system into individual areas. OSPF traffic can either be:

- intra-area (within one area),
- inter-area (between separate areas), or
- external (from another AS).

OSPF routers build a topology database of all links within their area, and all routers within an area will have an identical topology database. Routing updates between these routers will only contain information about links local to their area. Limiting the topology database to include only the local area conserves bandwidth and reduces CPU loads.

Area 0 is required for OSPF to function, and is considered the backbone area. As a rule, all other areas must have a connection into area 0, though this rule can be bypassed using virtual links. Area 0 is often referred to as the transit area to connect all other areas.

OSPF routers can belong to multiple areas, and therefore contain separate topology databases for each area. These routers are known as Area Border Routers (ABRs).

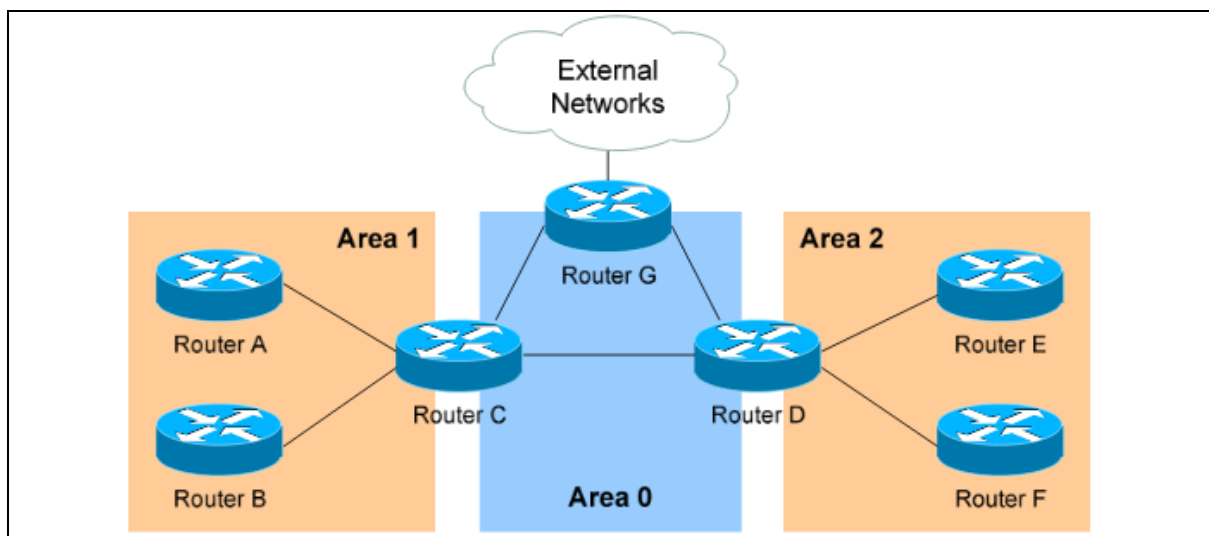


Figure 110: OSPF hierarchy

In the above example three areas exist: Area 0, Area 1, and Area 2.

Area 0 is the backbone area for this autonomous system.

Both Area 1 and Area 2 must directly connect to Area 0. Routers A and B belong fully to Area 1, while Routers E and F belong fully to Area 2. These are known as Internal Routers.

Router C belongs to both Area 0 and Area 1; so it is an ABR. Because it has an interface in Area 0, it can also be considered a Backbone Router (BR). The same can be said for Router D, as it belongs to both Area 0 and Area 2.

Router G also belongs to Area 0 however it also has a connection to the internet, which is outside this autonomous system. This makes Router G an Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR).

A router can become an ASBR in one of two ways:

- By connecting to a separate Autonomous System, such as the internet
- By redistributing another routing protocol into the OSPF process.

ASBRs provide access to external networks. OSPF defines two types of external routes, as shown in the table below.

Type 2 (E2)	Includes only the external cost to the destination network. External cost is the metric being advertised from outside the OSPF domain. This is the default type assigned to external routes.
Type 1 (E1)	Includes both the external cost, and the internal cost to reach the ASBR, to determine the total metric to reach the destination network. Type 1 routes are always preferred over Type 2 routes to the same destination.

Table 76: Types of external routes

20.1.7 OSPF router types

The four separate OSPF router types are shown in the table below.

Route Type	Description
Internal Router	All router interfaces belong to only one area.
Area Border Router (ABR)	Have interfaces in at least two separate areas.
Backbone Router	Have at least one interface in area 0.
Autonomous System Border Router (ASBR)	Have a connection to a separate autonomous system.

20.2 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
ospfd	routing network interface

20.3 Configuring OSPF using the web interface

Select **Network -> OSPF**. The OSPF page appears.

There are three sections in the OSPF page:

Section	Description
Global Settings	Enables OSPF and configures the OSPF routing section containing global configuration parameters. The web automatically names the routing section ospfd
Topology Configuration	Configures the network sections.
Interfaces Configuration	Configures the interface sections. Defines interface configuration for OSPF and interface specific parameters

20.3.1 Global settings

The Global Settings section configures the ospfd routing section. The web automatically names the routing section 'ospfd'.

Figure 111: The OSPF global settings configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: OSPF Enabled UCI: ospfd.ospfd.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables OSPF advertisements on router. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Router ID UCI: ospfd.ospfd.router_id Opt: router_id	This sets the Router ID of the OSPF process. The Router ID may be an IP address of the router, but need not be - it can be any arbitrary 32bit number. However it MUST be unique within the entire OSPF domain to the OSPF speaker. If one is not specified, then ospfd will obtain a router-ID automatically from the zebra daemon. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Empty</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Empty		Range	
Empty					
Range					
Web: Make Default Router UCI: ospfd.ospfd.default_info_originate Opt: default_info_originate	Defines whether to originate an AS-External (type-5) LSA describing a default route into all external-routing capable areas, of the specified metric and metric type. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: ospfd.ospfd.vty_enabled Opt: vty_enabled	Enable vty for OSPFd (telnet to localhost:2604)				

Table 77: Information table for OSPF global settings

20.3.2 Topology configuration

The Topology section configures the ospfd network section. This section specifies the OSPF enabled interface(s). The router can provide network information to the other OSPF routers via this interface.

Note: to advertise OSPF on an interface, the network mask prefix length for the topology configuration statement for the desired interface advertisement must be equal or smaller (IE. larger network) than the network mask prefix length for the interface.

For example, the topology configuration statement in the screenshot below does not enable OSPF on an interface with address 12.1.1.1/23, but it would on an interface with address 12.1.1.129/25.

Network	Mask Length	Area	Stub Area
12.1.1.1	24	0	☒

Only for non-backbone areas

Add

Figure 112: The OSPF topology configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Network UCI: ospfd.@network[0].ip_addr Opt: ip_addr	Specify the IP address for OSPF enabled interface. Format: A.B.C.D				
Web: Mask Length UCI: ospfd.@network[0].mask_length Opt: mask_length	Specify the mask length for OSPF enabled interface. The mask length should be entered in CIDR notation.				
Web: Area UCI: ospfd.@network[0].area Opt: area	Specify the area number for OSPF enabled interface.				
Web: Stub Area UCI: ospfd.@network[0].stub_area Opt: stub_area	Only for non-backbone areas. Configure the area to be a stub area. That is, an area where no router originates routes external to OSPF and hence an area where all external routes are via the ABR(s). ABRs for such an area do not need to pass AS-External LSAs (type-5s) or ASBR-Summary LSAs (type-4) into the area. They need only pass Network-Summary (type-3) LSAs into such an area, along with a default-route summary. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 78: Information table for OSPF topology configuration

20.3.3 Interfaces configuration

The Interfaces section contains settings to configure the OSPF interface. It defines interface configuration for OSPF and interface specific parameters.

OSPFv2 allows packets to be authenticated using either an insecure plain text password, included with the packet, or by a more secure MD5 based HMAC (keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication). Enabling authentication prevents routes being updated by

unauthenticated remote routers, but still can allow routes, that is, the entire OSPF routing table, to be queried remotely, potentially by anyone on the internet, via OSPFv1.

This section defines key_chains to be used for MD5 authentication.

Interfaces Configuration

Interface ☐ PPPoE: 

☐ l2tpun: 

☐ lan: 

☐ lan2: 

☐ lan3: 

☐ lan4: 

☐ lan5: 

☐ lan6: 

☐ lan7: 

☒ lan8: 

☐ loopback: 

☐ vlan100: 

☐ wan: 

Network Type Leave as default if unknown. Default depends on the type of interface

Passive ☒

Hello Interval * Defaults: broadcast/point-to-point 10 secs, non-broadcast/point-to-multipoint 30 secs

Dead Interval * Defaults: broadcast/point-to-point 40 secs, non-broadcast/point-to-multipoint 120 secs

Authentication

Text Auth. Key

Figure 113: The OSPF interfaces configuration section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description										
Web: Interface UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].ospf_interface Opt: ospf_interface	Defines the interface name.										
Web: Network Type UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].network_type Opt: network_type	Defines network type for specified interface. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Default</td><td>Autodetect: it will be broadcast. If broadcast is not supported on that interface then use point-to-point.</td></tr> <tr> <td>broadcast</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>non-broadcast</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>point-to-point</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>point-to-multipoint</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Default	Autodetect: it will be broadcast. If broadcast is not supported on that interface then use point-to-point.	broadcast		non-broadcast		point-to-point		point-to-multipoint	
Default	Autodetect: it will be broadcast. If broadcast is not supported on that interface then use point-to-point.										
broadcast											
non-broadcast											
point-to-point											
point-to-multipoint											
Web: Passive UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].passive Opt: passive	Do not send hello packets on the given interface, but do advertise the interface as a stub link in the router-LSA (Link State Advertisement) for this router. This allows you to advertise addresses on such connected interfaces without having to originate AS-External/Type-5 LSAs, which have global flooding scope, as would occur if connected addresses were redistributed into OSPF. This is the only way to advertise non-OSPF links into stub areas. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										

Web: Hello Interval UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].hello_interval Opt: hello_interval	Defines the number of seconds for the Hello Interval timer value. A Hello packet will be sent every x seconds, where x is the configured Hello Interval value on the specified interface. This value must be the same for all routers attached to a common network. The default is every 10 seconds for broadcast and point-to-point interfaces, and 30 seconds for non-broadcast and point-to-multipoint interfaces. <table> <tr> <td>10</td><td>10 seconds</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	10	10 seconds	Range			
10	10 seconds						
Range							
Web: Dead Interval UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].dead_interval Opt: dead_interval	Defines the number of seconds for the Dead Interval timer value used for Wait Timer and Inactivity Timer. This value must be the same for all routers attached to a common network. The default is 40 seconds for broadcast and point-to-point interfaces, and 120 seconds for non-broadcast and point-to-multipoint interfaces. By default, the Dead Interval timer is four times the Hello interval. <table> <tr> <td>40</td><td>40 seconds</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	40	40 seconds	Range			
40	40 seconds						
Range							
Web: Authentication UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].auth_mode Opt: auth_mode	OSPFv2 (only) allows packets to be authenticated via either an insecure plain text password, included with the packet, or via a more secure MD5 based HMAC (keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication). Enabling authentication prevents routes being updated by unauthenticated remote routers, but still can allow routes, that is, the entire OSPF routing table to be queried remotely, potentially by anyone on the internet, via OSPFv1. <table> <tr> <td>no</td><td>Default value. No authentication.</td></tr> <tr> <td>md5</td><td>Set the interface with OSPF MD5 authentication.</td></tr> <tr> <td>text</td><td>Set the interface with OSPF simple password authentication.</td></tr> </table>	no	Default value. No authentication.	md5	Set the interface with OSPF MD5 authentication.	text	Set the interface with OSPF simple password authentication.
no	Default value. No authentication.						
md5	Set the interface with OSPF MD5 authentication.						
text	Set the interface with OSPF simple password authentication.						
Web: Text Auth. Key UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].text_auth_key Opt: text_auth_key	This command sets authentication string for text authentication. text_auth_key option can have length up to 8 characters. Displayed only when Authentication is set to text.						
Web: Key ID UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].key_id Opt: key_id	Specifies key ID. Must be unique and match at both ends. Displayed only when Authentication is set to MD5.						
Web: MD5 Auth. Key UCI: ospfd.@interface[0].md5_auth_key Opt: md5_auth_key	Specify Keyed MD5 chain. Displayed only when Authentication is set to MD5.						

Table 79: Information table for OSPF interface commands

20.4 Configuring OSPF using the command line

OSPF is configured under the ospfd package /etc/config/ospfd.

There are three config sections: ospfd, interface and network.

You can configure multiple interface and network sections.

By default, all OSPF interface instances are named interface, instances are identified by @interface then the interface position in the package as a number. For example, for the first interface in the package using UCI:

```
ospfd.@interface[0]=interface
ospfd.@interface[0].ospf_interface=lan
```

Or using package options:

```
config interface
    option ospf_interface 'lan'
```

By default, all OSPF network instances are named network, it is identified by @network then the interface position in the package as a number. For example, for the first network in the package using UCI:

```
ospfd.@network[0]=network
ospfd.@network[0].ip_addr=12.1.1.1
```

Or using package options:

```
config network
    option ip_addr '12.1.1.1'
```

20.5 OSPF using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show ospfd
ospfd.ospfd=routing
ospfd.ospfd.enabled=yes
ospfd.ospfd.default_info_originate=yes
ospfd.ospfd.router_id=1.2.3.4
ospfd.@network[0]=network
ospfd.@network[0].ip_addr=12.1.1.1
ospfd.@network[0].mask_length=24
ospfd.@network[0].area=0
ospfd.@network[0].stub_area=yes
ospfd.@interface[0]=interface
ospfd.@interface[0].ospf_interface=lan8
ospfd.@interface[0].hello_interval=10
ospfd.@interface[0].dead_interval=40
ospfd.@interface[0].network_type=broadcast
ospfd.@interface[0].passive=yes
ospfd.@interface[0].auth_mode=text
ospfd.@interface[0].text_auth_key=secret
ospfd.@interface[1]=interface
ospfd.@interface[1].ospf_interface=lan7
ospfd.@interface[1].network_type=point-to-point
```

```
ospfd.@interface[1].passive=no
ospfd.@interface[1].hello_interval=30
ospfd.@interface[1].dead_interval=120
ospfd.@interface[1].auth_mode=md5
ospfd.@interface[1].key_id=1
ospfd.@interface[1].md5_auth_key=test
```

20.6 OSPF using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export ospfd
package ospfd

config routing 'ospfd'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option default_info_originate 'yes'
    option router_id '1.2.3.4'

config network
    option ip_addr '12.1.1.1'
    option mask_length '24'
    option area '0'
    option stub_area 'yes'

config interface
    option ospf_interface 'lan8'
    option hello_interval '10'
    option dead_interval '40'
    option network_type 'broadcast'
    option passive 'yes'
    option auth_mode 'text'
    option text_auth_key 'secret'

config interface
    option ospf_interface 'lan7'
    option network_type 'point-to-point'
    option passive 'no'
    option hello_interval '30'
```

```
option dead_interval '120'
option auth_mode 'md5'
option key_id '1'
option md5_auth_key 'test'
```

20.7 OSPF diagnostics

20.7.1 Route status

To show the current routing status, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# route -n
Kernel IP routing table
```

Destination	Gateway	Genmask	Flags	Metric	Ref	Use	Iface
0.0.0.0	10.206.4.65	0.0.0.0	UG	1	0	0	usb0
10.1.0.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.0.0	U	0	0	0	eth1
10.206.4.64	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.252	U	0	0	0	usb0
11.11.11.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.248	U	0	0	0	gre-
GRE							
89.101.154.151	10.206.4.65	255.255.255.255	UGH	0	0	0	usb0
192.168.100.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U	0	0	0	eth0
192.168.101.1	11.11.11.1	255.255.255.255	UGH	11	0	0	gre-
GRE							
192.168.104.1	11.11.11.4	255.255.255.255	UGH	20	0	0	gre-
GRE							

Note: a route will only be displayed in the routing table when the interface is up.

20.7.2 Tracing OSPF packets

Typically, OSPF uses IP as its transport protocol. The well-known IP protocol type for OSPF traffic is 0x59. To trace OSPF packets on any interface on the router, enter:

```
tcpdump -i any -n proto ospf &
```

```
root@VA_router:~# tcpdump -i any -n proto ospf &
root@VA_router:~# tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for
full protocol decode
listening on any, link-type LINUX_SLL (Linux cooked), capture size 65535
bytes
```

To stop tracing enter fg to bring tracing task to foreground, and then **<CTRL-C>** to stop the trace.

```
root@VA_router:~# fg
tcpdump -i any -n proto ospf
^C
33 packets captured
33 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

20.8 Quagga/Zebra console

Quagga is the routing protocol suite embedded in the router firmware. Quagga is split into different daemons for implementation of each routing protocol. Zebra is a core daemon for Quagga, providing the communication layer to the underlying Linux kernel, and routing updates to the client daemons.

Quagga has a console interface to Zebra for advanced debugging of the routing protocols.

To access, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# telnet localhost zebra

Entering character mode
Escape character is '^['.

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.21).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

User Access Verification

Password:
```

To see OSPF routing from Zebra console, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# sh ip route
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, P - PIM, H - HSLs, o - OLSR,
       b - BATMAN, A - Babel,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route
```

```

K>* 0.0.0.0/0 via 10.206.4.65, usb0
O 10.1.0.0/16 [110/11] via 11.11.11.1, gre-GRE, 02:35:28
C>* 10.1.0.0/16 is directly connected, eth1
C>* 10.206.4.64/30 is directly connected, usb0
O 11.11.11.0/29 [110/10] is directly connected, gre-GRE, 02:35:29
C>* 11.11.11.0/29 is directly connected, gre-GRE
K>* 89.101.154.151/32 via 10.206.4.65, usb0
C>* 127.0.0.0/8 is directly connected, lo
C>* 192.168.100.0/24 is directly connected, eth0
O>* 192.168.101.1/32 [110/11] via 11.11.11.1, gre-GRE, 02:35:28
O>* 192.168.104.1/32 [110/20] via 11.11.11.4, gre-GRE, 02:30:45
O 192.168.105.1/32 [110/10] is directly connected, lo, 02:47:52
C>* 192.168.105.1/32 is directly connected, lo

```

20.8.1 OSPF debug console

When option `tty_enabled` (see Global settings section above) is enabled in the OSPF configuration, OSPF debug console can be accessed for advanced OSPF debugging.

To access OSPF debug console enter: `telnet localhost ospfd` (password `zebra`)

```

root@VA_router:~# telnet localhost ospfd

Entering character mode
Escape character is '^]'.

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.21).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

User Access Verification

Password:

```

To see OSPF routing from OSPF debug console, enter: `sh ip ospf route`

```

UUT> sh ip ospf route

===== OSPF network routing table =====

```

```

N    10.1.0.0/16          [11] area: 0.0.0.0
                             via 11.11.11.1, gre-GRE
N    11.11.11.0/29        [10] area: 0.0.0.0
                             directly attached to gre-GRE
N    192.168.101.1/32     [11] area: 0.0.0.0
                             via 11.11.11.1, gre-GRE
N    192.168.104.1/32     [20] area: 0.0.0.0
                             via 11.11.11.4, gre-GRE
N    192.168.105.1/32     [10] area: 0.0.0.0
                             directly attached to lo

===== OSPF router routing table =====

===== OSPF external routing table =====

```

To see OSPF neighbours from OSPF debug console, enter: `sh ip ospf neighbour`

```

root@VA_router:~# sh ip ospf neighbor

      Neighbor ID Pri State      Dead Time Address      Interface  RXmtL RqstL
DBsmL
1.1.1.1          255 Full/DR   33.961s 11.11.11.1   gre-GRE:11.11.11.5
0      0      0

```

To see OSPF interface details from OSPF debug console, enter: `sh ip ospf interface`

```

root@VA_router:~# sh ip ospf interface
base0 is up
  ifindex 8, MTU 1518 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
  OSPF not enabled on this interface
eth0 is up
  ifindex 9, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
  OSPF not enabled on this interface
eth1 is up
  ifindex 10, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit
<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,PROMISC,MULTICAST>
  OSPF not enabled on this interface
eth2 is down

```

```
ifindex 11, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
OSPF not enabled on this interface
eth3 is down
ifindex 12, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
OSPF not enabled on this interface
eth4 is down
ifindex 13, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
OSPF not enabled on this interface
eth5 is down
ifindex 14, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
OSPF not enabled on this interface
eth6 is down
ifindex 15, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
OSPF not enabled on this interface
eth7 is down
ifindex 16, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
OSPF not enabled on this interface
gre-GRE is up
ifindex 19, MTU 1472 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <UP,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
Internet Address 11.11.11.5/29, Area 0.0.0.0
MTU mismatch detection:enabled
Router ID 192.168.105.1, Network Type BROADCAST, Cost: 10
Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State Backup, Priority 1
Designated Router (ID) 1.1.1.1, Interface Address 11.11.11.1
Backup Designated Router (ID) 192.168.105.1, Interface Address 11.11.11.5
Multicast group memberships: OSPFAllRouters OSPFDesignatedRouters
Timer intervals configured, Hello 10s, Dead 40s, Wait 40s, Retransmit 5
Hello due in 3.334s
Neighbor Count is 1, Adjacent neighbor count is 1
gre0 is down
ifindex 6, MTU 1476 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <NOARP>
OSPF not enabled on this interface
ifb0 is down
ifindex 2, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,NOARP>
OSPF not enabled on this interface
ifb1 is down
ifindex 3, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <BROADCAST,NOARP>
```



```

    OSPF not enabled on this interface
lo is up
    ifindex 1, MTU 16436 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <UP,LOOPBACK,RUNNING>
    Internet Address 192.168.105.1/32, Broadcast 192.168.105.1, Area 0.0.0.0
    MTU mismatch detection:enabled
    Router ID 192.168.105.1, Network Type LOOPBACK, Cost: 10
    Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State Loopback, Priority 1
    No designated router on this network
    No backup designated router on this network
    Multicast group memberships: <None>
    Timer intervals configured, Hello 10s, Dead 40s, Wait 40s, Retransmit 5
    Hello due in inactive
    Neighbor Count is 0, Adjacent neighbor count is 0
sit0 is down
    ifindex 7, MTU 1480 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <NOARP>
    OSPF not enabled on this interface
teql0 is down
    ifindex 4, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <NOARP>
    OSPF not enabled on this interface
tunl0 is down
    ifindex 5, MTU 1480 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <NOARP>
    OSPF not enabled on this interface
usb0 is up
    ifindex 17, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
    OSPF not enabled on this interface

```

To see OSPF database details from OSPF debug console, enter: `sh ip ospf database`

```

root@VA_router:~# sh ip ospf database

    OSPF Router with ID (192.168.105.1)

          Router Link States (Area 0.0.0.0)

Link ID          ADV Router      Age  Seq#           CkSum  Link count
1.1.1.1          1.1.1.1         873  0x800006236  0xd591  3
192.168.104.1    192.168.104.1   596  0x80000000a  0x3a2d  2

```

```
192.168.105.1 192.168.105.1 879 0x80000000b 0x4919 2
```

Net Link States (Area 0.0.0.0)

Link ID	ADV Router	Age	Seq#	CkSum
11.11.11.1	1.1.1.1	595	0x800000004	0x5712

21 Configuring VRRP

21.1 Overview

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) is a networking protocol designed to eliminate the single point of failure inherent in the static default routed environment.

VRRP specifies an election protocol that dynamically assigns responsibility for a virtual router to one of the VRRP routers on a LAN. The VRRP router controlling the IP address(es) associated with a virtual router is called the Master, and forwards packets sent to these IP addresses. The election process provides dynamic failover in the forwarding responsibility from the Master to a backup router should the Master become unavailable. This process allows the virtual router IP address(es) on the LAN to be used as the default first hop router by end hosts. The advantage gained from using VRRP is a higher availability default path without requiring configuration of dynamic routing or router discovery protocols on every end host.

Two or more routers forming the redundancy cluster are configured with the same Router ID and Virtual IP address. A VRRP router group operates within the scope of the single LAN. Additionally, the VRRP routers are configured with its initial role (Master or Backup) and the router priority, which is a factor in the master router election process. You can also configure a password authentication to protect VRRP protocol messages against spoofing.

The VRRP protocol is implemented according to internet standard RFC2338.

21.2 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
vrrp	main vrrp_group

21.3 Configuring VRRP using the web interface

To configure VRRP through the web interface, in the top menu, select **Network -> VRRP**. The VRRP page appears.

There are two sections in the VRRP page:

Section	Description
Global Settings	Enables VRRP
VRRP Group Configuration	Configures the VRRP group settings.

21.3.1 Global settings

The Global Settings section configures vrrp package main section.

To access configuration settings, click **ADD**.



Figure 114: The VRRP global settings configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: VRRP Enabled	Globally enables VRRP on the router.	
UCI: vrrp.main.enabled	0	Disabled.
Opt: Enabled	1	Enabled.

21.3.2 VRRP group configuration settings

The VRRP Group Configuration section configures vrrp package vrrp_group section.

To access configuration settings, click **ADD**.

VRRP Group Configuration

Group enabled ☐

Interface ☐ LAN1: (no interfaces attached)

☐ LAN2:

☐ LAN3:

☐ MOBILE1:

☐ PoADSL:

☐ loopback:

Interface to serve

Current State

Track interfaces ☐ LAN1: (no interfaces attached)

☐ LAN2:

☐ LAN3:

☐ MOBILE1:

☐ PoADSL:

☐ loopback:

Interfaces to monitor

Track IPsec Tunnel ☒ IPsecTunnel1

☒ IPsecTunnel2

IPsec connection(s) to monitor

Track IPsec Fail Time Consider IPsec tunnel failed if tunnel is down for that many seconds

IPsec Connection IPsec connection to bring down/up when VRRP enters BACKUP/MASTER state

Start role

Router ID

Priority

Figure 115: The VRRP group configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Group Enabled UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].enabled Opt: Enabled	Enables a VRRP group on the router. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Interface UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].interface Opt: interface	Sets the local LAN interface name in which the VRRP cluster is to operate. For example, 'lan'. The interface name is taken from the network package and all configured interfaces will be displayed.. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>lan</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	lan		Range	
lan					
Range					

Web: Track Interfaces UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].track_iface Opt: list track_iface	Defines one or more WAN interfaces that VRRP should monitor. If a monitored interface goes down on the Master VRRP router, it goes into 'Fault' state and the Backup VRRP router becomes the Master. Multiple interfaces are entered using uci set and uci add_list commands. Example: <pre>uci set vrrp.@vrrp_group[0].track_iface=wan1 uci add_list vrrp.@vrrp_group[0].track_iface=wan2</pre> or using a list of options via package options <pre>list track_iface 'wan1' list track_iface 'wan2'</pre> <table border="1"> <tr><td>wan</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	wan		Range	
wan					
Range					
Web: Track IPsec Tunnel UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].track_ipsec Opt: list track_ipsec	Defines one or more IPsec tunnels that VRRP should monitor. If a monitored tunnel goes down on the Master VRRP router for the configured Track IPsec Fail Time, it goes into 'Fault' state and the Backup VRRP router becomes the Master. Multiple IPsec connections are entered using uci set and uci add_list commands. Example: <pre>uci set vrrp.@vrrp_group[0].track_ipsec=Tunnel1 uci add_list vrrp.@vrrp_group[0].track_ipsec=Tunnel2</pre> or using a list of options via package options <pre>list track_ipsec 'Tunnel1' list track_ipsec 'Tunnel2'</pre> <table border="1"> <tr><td>Blank</td><td>No IPsec connection to track.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Blank	No IPsec connection to track.	Range	
Blank	No IPsec connection to track.				
Range					
Web: Track IPsec Fail Time UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].track_ipsec_fail_sec Opt: track_ipsec_fail_sec	Defines duration in seconds to determine IPsec tunnel failure <table border="1"> <tr><td>300</td><td>300 seconds</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	300	300 seconds	Range	
300	300 seconds				
Range					
Web: IPsec connection UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].ipsec_connection Opt: ipsec_connection	Sets which IPsec connection to bring up or down when VRRP enters 'Backup/Master' state. Multiple IPsec connections are entered via the package option using a space separator. Example: <pre>option ipsec_connection 'IPsecTunnel1 IPsecTunnel2'</pre> <table border="1"> <tr><td>Blank</td><td>No IPsec connection to toggle.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Blank	No IPsec connection to toggle.	Range	
Blank	No IPsec connection to toggle.				
Range					
Web: Start role UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].init_state Opt: init_state	Sets the initial role in which a VRRP router starts up. In a cluster of VRRP routes, set one as a Master and the others as Backup. <table border="1"> <tr><td>BACKUP</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>MASTER</td><td></td></tr> </table>	BACKUP		MASTER	
BACKUP					
MASTER					
Web: Router ID UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].router_id Opt: router_id	Sets the VRRP router ID (1 to 255). All co-operating VRRP routers serving the same LAN must be configured with the same router ID. <table border="1"> <tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>1-255</td></tr> </table>	1		Range	1-255
1					
Range	1-255				
Web: Priority UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].priority Opt: priority	Sets the VRRP router's priority. Higher values equal higher priority. The VRRP routers must use priority values between 1-254. The Master router uses a higher priority. <table border="1"> <tr><td>100</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0-255</td></tr> </table>	100		Range	0-255
100					
Range	0-255				
Web: Advert intvl UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].advert_int_sec Opt: advert_int_sec	Sets the VRRP hello value in seconds. This value must match the value set on a peer. <table border="1"> <tr><td>120</td><td>120 seconds</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	120	120 seconds	Range	
120	120 seconds				
Range					

Web: Password UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].password Opt: password	Sets the password to use in the VRRP authentication (simple password authentication method). This field may be left blank if no authentication is required.				
Web: Virtual IP UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].virtual_ipaddr Opt: virtual_ipaddr	Sets the virtual IP address and mask in prefix format. For example, '11.1.1.99/24'. All co-operating VRRP routers serving the same LAN must be configured with the same virtual IP address.				
Web: GARP delay UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].garp_delay_sec Opt: garp_delay_sec	Sets the Gratuitous ARP message sending delay in seconds. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>5</td><td>5 seconds</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	5	5 seconds	Range	
5	5 seconds				
Range					
Web: n/a UCI: vrrp.@vrrp_group[X].track_ipsec Opt: list track_ipsec	Sets one or more IPsec connection that VRRP should monitor. If a monitored IPsec connection goes down on the Master VRRP router, it goes into 'Fault' state and the Backup VRRP router becomes the Master. Multiple IPsec connections are entered using uci set and uci add_list commands. Example: uci set vrrp.@vrrp_group[0].track_ipsec=Tunnel1 uci add_list vrrp.@vrrp_group[0].track_ipsec=Tunnel2 or using a list of options via package options list track_ipsec 'Tunnel1' list track_ipsec 'Tunnel2' <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>No IPsec connection to track.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Blank	No IPsec connection to track.	Range	
Blank	No IPsec connection to track.				
Range					

Table 80: Information table for VRRP group settings

21.4 Configuring VRRP using command line

The configuration file is stored on **/etc/config/vrrp**.

There are two config sections – **main** and **vrrp_group**.

Multiple VRRP groups can be configured. By default, all VRRP group instances are named 'vrrp_group'. It is identified by @vrrp_group then the vrrp_group position in the package as a number. For example, for the first vrrp_group in the package using UCI:

```
vrrp.@vrrp_group[0]=vrrp_group
vrrp.@vrrp_group[0].enabled=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config vrrp_group
    option enabled '1'
```

However, to better identify, it is recommended to give the vrrp_group instance a name. For example, to define a vrrp_group instance named 'g1' using UCI, enter:

```
vrrp.g1.vrrp_group
vrrp.g1.enabled=1
```

To define a named keepalive instance using package options, enter:

```
config vrrp_group 'g1'
    option enabled '1'
```

21.4.1 VRRP using UCI

To view the configuration in UCI format, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show vrrp
vrrp.main=vrrp
vrrp.main.enabled=yes
vrrp.g1=vrrp_group
vrrp.g1.enabled=yes
vrrp.g1.interface=lan
vrrp.g1.track_iface=WAN MOBILE
vrrp.g1.init_state=BACKUP
vrrp.g1.router_id=1
vrrp.g1.priority=100
vrrp.g1.advert_int_sec=120
vrrp.g1.password=secret
vrrp.g1.virtual_ipaddr=10.1.10.150/16
vrrp.g1.garp_delay_sec=5
vrrp.g1.ipsec_connection=Test
vrrp.g1.track_ipsec=conn1 conn2
```

21.4.2 VRRP using package options

To view the configuration in package option format, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export vrrp
package vrrp

config vrrp 'main'
    option enabled 'yes'

config vrrp_group 'g1'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option interface 'lan'
    list track_iface 'WAN'
    list track_iface 'MOBILE'
```



```
option init_state 'BACKUP'  
option router_id '1'  
option priority '100'  
option advert_int_sec '120'  
option password 'secret'  
option virtual_ipaddr '10.1.10.150/16'  
option garp_delay_sec '5'  
option ipsec_connection 'Test'  
list track_ipsec 'conn1'  
list track_ipsec 'conn2'
```

22 Configuring Routing Information Protocol (RIP)

22.1 Introduction

RIP is a dynamic routing algorithm used on IP-based internet networks.

A distance-vector routing algorithm is used by RIP to assist in maintaining network convergence. It uses a metric or 'hop' count as the only routing criteria. Each route is advertised with the number of hops a datagram would take to reach the destination network. The maximum metric for RIP is 15. This limits the size of the network that RIP can support. Smaller metrics are more efficient-based on the cost associated with each metric.

RIP protocol is most useful as an Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP). An IGP refers to the routing protocol used within a single autonomous system. There may be a number of autonomous systems, using different routing protocols, combined together to form a large network.

In most networking environments, RIP is not the preferred choice for routing as its time to converge and scalability are poor compared to EIGRP or OSPF.

22.1.1 RIP characteristics

RIP is a standardised distance vector protocol, designed for use on smaller networks. RIP was one of the first true distance vector routing protocols, and is supported on a wide variety of systems.

RIP adheres to the following distance vector characteristics:

- RIP sends out periodic routing updates, every 30 seconds
- RIP sends out the full routing table every periodic update
- RIP uses a form of distance as its metric, in this case, hopcount
- RIP uses the Bellman-Ford distance vector algorithm to determine the best path to a particular destination

Other characteristics of RIP include:

- RIP supports IP and IPX routing
- RIP utilizes UDP port 520
- RIP routes have an administrative distance of 120
- RIP has a maximum hopcount of 15 hops. Any network that is 16 hops away or more is considered unreachable to RIP, thus the maximum diameter of the network is 15 hops. A metric of 16 hops in RIP is considered a poison route or infinity metric.

If multiple paths exist to a particular destination, RIP will load balance between those paths, by default, up to 4, only if the metric (hopcount) is equal. RIP uses a round-robin system of load-balancing between equal metric routes, which can lead to pinhole congestion.

For example, two paths might exist to a particular destination, one going through a 9600 baud link, the other via a T1. If the metric (hopcount) is equal, RIP will load-balance, sending an equal amount of traffic down the 9600 baud link and the T1. This will cause the slower link to become congested.

22.1.2 RIP versions

RIP has two versions, Version 1 (RIPv1) and Version2 (RIPv2).

RIPv1 (RFC 1058) is classful, and therefore does not include the subnet mask with its routing table updates. Because of this, RIPv1 does not support Variable Length Subnet Masks (VLSMs). When using RIPv1, networks must be contiguous, and subnets of a major network must be configured with identical subnet masks. Otherwise, route table inconsistencies or worse will occur.

RIPv1 sends updates as broadcasts to address 255.255.255.255.

RIPv2 (RFC 2453) is classless, and therefore does include the subnet mask with its routing table updates. RIPv2 fully supports VLSMs, allowing discontinuous networks and varying subnet masks to exist.

Other enhancements offered by RIPv2 include:

- Routing updates are sent via multicast, using address 224.0.0.9
- Encrypted authentication can be configured between RIPv2 routers
- Route tagging is supported

RIPv2 can interoperate with RIPv1. By default:

- RIPv1 routers will sent only Version 1 packets
- RIPv1 routers will receive both Version 1 and 2 updates
- RIPv2 routers will both send and receive only Version 2 updates

Virtual Access **ripd** package supports RIP version 2 as described in RFC2453 and RIP version 1 as described in RFC1058. It is part of Quagga suite of applications for routing.

22.2 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
ripd	routing interface key_chain offset

22.3 Configuring RIP using the web interface

To configure RIP using the web interface, select **Network->RIP**. The RIP page appears.

There are four sections in the RIP page.

Section	Description
Global Settings	Enables RIP and configures the RIP routing section containing global configuration parameters. The web automatically names the routing section <code>ripd</code>
Interfaces Configuration	Configures the interface sections. Defines interface configuration for RIP and interface specific parameters.
Offset Configuration	Configures the offset sections for metric manipulation.
MD5 Authentication Key Chains	Configures the key_chain sections. Defines MD5 authentication settings.

22.3.1 Global settings

The web browser automatically names the routing section 'ripd'.

Figure 116: The RIP global settings configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: RIP Enabled UCI: ripd.ripd.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables RIP advertisements on router. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: RIP Version UCI: ripd.ripd.version Opt: version	Specifies the RIP version that will be used. Version 2 is recommended. <table> <tr> <td>1</td><td>RIP version 1</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>RIP version 2</td></tr> </table>	1	RIP version 1	2	RIP version 2
1	RIP version 1				
2	RIP version 2				
Web: Network/Interface UCI: ripd.ripd.network Opt: list network	Defines the list of the interfaces that will be used to advertise RIP packets. Format: A.B.C.D/mask or interface name Multiple RIP interfaces are entered using uci set and uci add_list commands. Example: uci set ripd.ripd.network=lan1 uci add_list ripd.ripd.network=lan2 or using a list of options via package options list network 'lan1' list network 'lan2'				
Web: RIP Neighbor Address UCI: ripd.ripd.neighbor Opt: list neighbor	Specifies the list of RIP neighbours. When a neighbour doesn't understand multicast, this command is used to specify neighbours. In some cases, not all routers will be able to understand multicasting, where packets are sent to a network or a group of addresses. In a situation where a neighbour cannot process multicast packets, it is necessary to establish a direct link between routers. The neighbour command allows the network administrator to specify a router as a RIP neighbour. Multiple RIP neighbours are entered using uci set and uci add_list commands. Example: uci set ripd.ripd.neighbor=1.1.1.1 uci add_list ripd.ripd.neighbor=2.2.2.2 or using a list of options via package options list neighbor '1.1.1.1' list neighbor '2.2.2.2'				
Web: Update Timer UCI: ripd.ripd.tb_update_sec Opt: tb_update_sec	Every update timer seconds, the RIP process is awakened to send an unsolicited response message containing the complete routing table to all neighbouring RIP routers. <table> <tr> <td>30</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	30		Range	
30					
Range					
Web: Timeout Timer UCI: ripd.ripd.tb_timeout_sec Opt: tb_timeout_sec	Defines timeout in seconds. Upon expiration of the timeout, the route is no longer valid; however, it is retained in the routing table for a short time so that neighbours can be notified that the route has been dropped. <table> <tr> <td>180</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	180		Range	
180					
Range					
Web: Garbage Collect Timer UCI: ripd.ripd.tb_garbage_sec Opt: tb_garbage_sec	Upon expiration of the Garbage-Collection timer, the route is finally removed from the routing table. This timer starts when Timeout timer expires or when route is advertised as "unreachable". The reason for using this two-stage removal method (marking-deleting) is to give the router that declared the route no longer reachable a chance to propagate this information to other routers. When the timer expires the route is deleted. If during the garbage collection period a new RIP Response for the route is received, then the deletion process is aborted: the Garbage-Collection timer is cleared, the route is marked as valid again, and a new Timeout timer starts. <table> <tr> <td>120</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	120		Range	
120					
Range					

Web: Make Default Router UCI: ripd.ripd.default_info_originate Opt: default_info_originate	Advertising a default route via RIP.	
	0	Disable.
	1	Enable.
Web: Redistribute Kernel Routes UCI: ripd.ripd.redistribute_kernel_routes Opt: redistribute_kernel_routes	Redistributes routing information from kernel route entries into the RIP tables.	
	0	Disable.
	1	Enable.
Web: n/a UCI: ripd.ripd.vty_enabled Opt: vty_enabled	Enable vty for RIPd (telnet to localhost:2602).	

Table 81: Information table for RIP global settings

22.3.2 Offset configuration

This section is used for RIP metric manipulation. RIP metric is a value for distance in the network. Usually, ripd package increments the metric when the network information is received. Redistributed routes' metric is set to 1.

Offset Configuration

Metric: 1

Match: 1.1.1.0/24

Add Delete

Figure 117: The RIP global settings configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Metric UCI: ripd.@offset[0].metric Opt: metric	Defines the metric offset value. This modifies the default metric value for redistributed and connected routes.
	1
	Range
Web: Match UCI: ripd.@offset[0].match_network Opt: match_network	Defines the prefixes to match. Format: A.B.C.D/mask

Table 82: Information table for RIP offset commands

22.3.3 Interfaces configuration

Interfaces Configuration

Interface	Split Horizon	Poison Reverse	Passive	Authentication	Text Auth. Key	MD5 Key Chain Name
lan	☒	☒	☒	no		
lan2	☒	☐	☐	text	secret	
lan3	☒	☐	☐	md5		chain

Add Delete

Figure 118: The RIP interfaces configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description						
Web: Interface UCI: ripd.@interface[0].rip_interface Opt: rip_interface	Specifies the interface name.						
Web: Split Horizon UCI: ripd.@interface[0].split_horizon Opt: split_horizon	Prohibits the router from advertising a route back onto the interface from which it was learned. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disable.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enable.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disable.	1	Enable.		
0	Disable.						
1	Enable.						
Web: Poison Reverse UCI: ripd.@interface[0].poison_reverse Opt: poison_reverse	Router tells its neighbour gateways that one of the gateways is no longer connected. Notifies the gateway, setting the hop count to the unconnected gateway to 16 which would mean "infinite". <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disable.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enable.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disable.	1	Enable.		
0	Disable.						
1	Enable.						
Web: Passive UCI: ripd.@interface[0].passive Opt: passive	Sets the specified interface to passive mode. On passive mode interface, all receiving packets are processed as normal and ripd does not send either multicast or unicast RIP packets except to RIP neighbour specified with a neighbour command. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disable</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enable</td></tr> </table>	0	Disable	1	Enable		
0	Disable						
1	Enable						
Web: Authentication UCI: ripd.@interface[0].auth_mode Opt: auth_mode	RIPv2 (only) allows packets to be authenticated via either an insecure plain text password, included with the packet, or via a more secure MD5 based HMAC (keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication). Enabling authentication prevents routes being updated by unauthenticated remote routers, but still can allow routes, that is, the entire RIP routing table, to be queried remotely, potentially by anyone on the internet, via RIPv1. <table> <tr> <td>no</td><td>Default value. No authentication.</td></tr> <tr> <td>md5</td><td>Sets the interface with RIPv2 MD5 authentication.</td></tr> <tr> <td>text</td><td>Sets the interface with RIPv2 simple password authentication.</td></tr> </table>	no	Default value. No authentication.	md5	Sets the interface with RIPv2 MD5 authentication.	text	Sets the interface with RIPv2 simple password authentication.
no	Default value. No authentication.						
md5	Sets the interface with RIPv2 MD5 authentication.						
text	Sets the interface with RIPv2 simple password authentication.						
Web: Text Auth. Key UCI: ripd.@interface[0].auth_key Opt: auth_key	This command sets the authentication string for text authentication. The string must be shorter than 16 characters.						
Web: MD5 Key Chain Name UCI: ripd.@interface[0].key_chain Opt: key_chain	Specify Keyed MD5 chain.						

Table 83: Information table for RIP interface configuration

22.3.4 MD5 authentication key chains

RIPv2 (only) allows packets to be authenticated using either an insecure plain text password, included with the packet, or by a more secure MD5 based HMAC (keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication). Enabling authentication prevents routes being updated by unauthenticated remote routers, but still can allow routes, that is, the entire RIP routing table, to be queried remotely, potentially by anyone on the internet, using RIPv1.

This section defines key_chains to be used for MD5 authentication.

Figure 119: The MD5 authentication key chains configuration section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Key Chain Name UCI: ripd.@key_chain[0].key_chain_name Opt: key_chain_name	Specifies chain name
Web: Key ID UCI: ripd.@key_chain[0].key_id Opt: key_id	Specifies key ID. Must be unique and match at both ends.
Web: Authentication key UCI: ripd.@key_chain[0].auth_key Opt: auth_key	Specifiy Keyed MD5 chain.

Table 84: Information table for MD5 authentication key chains commands

22.4 Configuring RIP using command line

RIP is configured under the ripd package **/etc/config/ripd**.

There are four config sections ripd, interface, key_chain and offset.

You can configure multiple interface, key_chain and offset sections.

By default, all RIP interface instances are named interface, it is identified by @interface then the interface position in the package as a number. For example, for the first interface in the package using UCI:

```
ripd.@interface[0]=interface
ripd.@interface[0].rip_interface=lan
```

Or using package options:

```
config interface
    option rip_interface 'lan'
```

By default, all RIP key_chain instances are named key_chain, it is identified by @key_chain then the key_chain position in the package as a number. For example, for the first key_chain in the package using UCI:

```
ripd.@key_chain[0]=key_chain
ripd.@key_chain[0].key_chain_name=Keychain1
```


Or using package options:

```
config key_chain
    option key_chain_name 'Keychain1'
```

By default, all RIP offset instances are named offset, it is identified by @offset then the offset position in the package as a number. For example, for the first offset in the package using UCI:

```
ripd.@offset[0]=offset
ripd.@offset[0].metric=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config offset
    option metric '1'
```

22.4.1 RIP using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show ripd
ripd.ripd=routing
ripd.ripd.version=2
ripd.ripd.enabled=yes
ripd.ripd.network=lan2 gre1
ripd.ripd.neighbor=10.1.1.100 10.1.2.100
ripd.ripd.tb_update_sec=30
ripd.ripd.tb_timeout_sec=180
ripd.ripd.tb_garbage_sec=120
ripd.ripd.default_info_originate=yes
ripd.ripd.redistribute_kernel_routes=yes
ripd.@interface[0]=interface
ripd.@interface[0].rip_interface=lan
ripd.@interface[0].auth_mode=no
ripd.@interface[0].split_horizon=1
ripd.@interface[0].poison_reverse=0
ripd.@interface[0].passive=0
ripd.@interface[1]=interface
ripd.@interface[1].rip_interface=lan2
ripd.@interface[1].split_horizon=1
ripd.@interface[1].poison_reverse=0
ripd.@interface[1].passive=0
```

```

ripd.@interface[1].auth_mode=text
ripd.@interface[1].auth_key=secret
ripd.@interface[2]=interface
ripd.@interface[2].rip_interface=lan3
ripd.@interface[2].split_horizon=1
ripd.@interface[2].poison_reverse=0
ripd.@interface[2].passive=0
ripd.@interface[2].auth_mode=md5
ripd.@interface[2].key_chain=Keychain1
ripd.@key_chain[0]=key_chain
ripd.@key_chain[0].key_chain_name=Keychain1
ripd.@key_chain[0].key_id=1
ripd.@key_chain[0].auth_key=123
ripd.@offset[0]=offset
ripd.@offset[0].metric=1
ripd.@offset[0].match_network=10.1.1.1/24

```

22.4.2 RIP using package options

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export ripd
package ripd

config routing 'ripd'
    option version '2'
    option enabled 'yes'
    list network 'lan2'
    list network 'gre1'
    list neighbor '10.1.1.100'
    list neighbor '10.1.2.100'
    option tb_update_sec '30'
    option tb_timeout_sec '180'
    option tb_garbage_sec '120'
    option default_info_originate 'yes'
    option redistribute_kernel_routes 'yes'

config interface
    option rip_interface 'lan'

```

```
option auth_mode 'no'
option split_horizon '1'
option poison_reverse '0'
option passive '0'

config interface
option rip_interface 'lan2'
option split_horizon '1'
option poison_reverse '0'
option passive '0'
option auth_mode 'text'
option auth_key 'textsecret'

config interface
option rip_interface 'lan3'
option split_horizon '1'
option poison_reverse '0'
option passive '0'
option auth_mode 'md5'
option key_chain 'keychain1'

config key_chain
option key_chain_name 'Keychain1'
option key_id '1'
option auth_key '123'

config offset
option metric '1'
option match_network '10.1.1.1/24'
```

22.5 RIP diagnostics

22.5.1 Route status

To show the current routing status, enter `route -n`:

```
root@VA_router:~#
route -n
Kernel IP routing table
```

Destination	Gateway	Genmask	Flags	Metric	Ref	Use	Iface
0.0.0.0	10.205.154.65	0.0.0.0	UG	1	0	0	usb0
10.1.0.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.0.0	U	0	0	0	eth1
10.205.154.64	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.252	U	0	0	0	usb0
11.11.11.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.248	U	0	0	0	gre-
							GRE
89.101.154.151	10.205.154.65	255.255.255.255	UGH	0	0	0	usb0
192.168.100.0	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.0	U	0	0	0	eth0
192.168.104.1	11.11.11.4	255.255.255.255	UGH	3	0	0	gre-
							GRE
192.168.154.154	11.11.11.1	255.255.255.255	UGH	2	0	0	gre-
							GRE

Note: a route will only be displayed in the routing table when the interface is up.

22.5.2 Tracing RIP packets

RIP uses UDP port 520. To trace RIP packets on any interface on the router, enter:
`tcpdump -i any -n -p port 520 &`

```
root@VA_router:~# tcpdump -i any -n -p port 520 &
tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for full protocol decode
listening on any, link-type LINUX_SLL (Linux cooked), capture size 65535
bytes
```

To stop tracing enter `fg` to bring tracing task to foreground, and then **<CTRL-C>** to stop the trace.

```
root@VA_router:~# fg
tcpdump -i any -n -p port 67
^C
33 packets captured
33 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

22.5.3 Quagga/zebra console

Quagga is the routing protocol suite embedded in the router firmware. Quagga is split into different daemons for implementation of each routing protocol. Zebra is a core daemon for Quagga, providing the communication layer to the underlying Linux kernel, and routing updates to the client daemons.

Quagga has a console interface to Zebra for advanced debugging of the routing protocols.

To access, enter: `telnet localhost zebra (password: zebra)`

```
root@VA_router:~# telnet localhost zebra

Entering character mode
Escape character is '^]'.

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.21).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

User Access Verification

Password:
```

To see RIP routing information from Zebra console, enter: `sh ip route`

```
root@VA_router:~# sh ip route
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, P - PIM, H - HSLs, o - OLSR,
       b - BATMAN, A - Babel,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route

K>* 0.0.0.0/0 via 10.205.154.65, usb0
C>* 10.1.0.0/16 is directly connected, eth1
C>* 10.205.154.64/30 is directly connected, usb0
C>* 11.11.11.0/29 is directly connected, gre-GRE
K>* 89.101.154.151/32 via 10.205.154.65, usb0
C>* 127.0.0.0/8 is directly connected, lo
C>* 192.168.100.0/24 is directly connected, eth0
R>* 192.168.104.1/32 [120/3] via 11.11.11.4, gre-GRE, 15:54:47
```

```
C>* 192.168.105.1/32 is directly connected, lo
R>* 192.168.154.154/32 [120/2] via 11.11.11.1, gre-GRE, 16:09:51
```

22.5.4 RIP debug console

When option **tty_enabled** (see Global settings section above) is enabled in the RIP configuration, RIP debug console can be accessed for advanced RIP debugging.

To access RIP debug console enter: `telnet localhost ripd` (password zebra)

```
root@VA_router:~# telnet localhost ripd

Entering character mode
Escape character is '^]'.

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.21).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

User Access Verification

Password:
```

To see RIP status from RIP debug console, enter: `sh ip rip`

```
root@VA_router:~# show ip rip
Codes: R - RIP, C - connected, S - Static, O - OSPF, B - BGP
Sub-codes:
    (n) - normal, (s) - static, (d) - default, (r) - redistribute,
    (i) - interface
```

	Network	Next Hop	Metric From	Tag Time
C(i)	11.11.11.0/29	0.0.0.0	1 self	0
R(n)	192.168.104.1/32	11.11.11.4	3 11.11.11.1	0 02:48
C(i)	192.168.105.1/32	0.0.0.0	1 self	0
R(n)	192.168.154.154/32	11.11.11.1	2 11.11.11.1	0 02:48

To see RIP status from RIP debug console, enter: `sh ip rip status`

```
root@VA_router:~# sh ip rip status
Routing Protocol is "rip"
  Sending updates every 30 seconds with +/-50%, next due in 17 seconds
  Timeout after 180 seconds, garbage collect after 120 seconds
  Outgoing update filter list for all interface is not set
  Incoming update filter list for all interface is not set
  Default redistribution metric is 1
  Redistributing:
  Default version control: send version 2, receive version 2
    Interface          Send  Recv   Key-chain
    gre-GRE             2     2
    lo                  2     2
  Routing for Networks:
    11.0.0.0/8
    192.168.105.1/32
  Routing Information Sources:
    Gateway           BadPackets  BadRoutes   Distance  Last Update
    11.11.11.1                0           0         120      00:00:20
  Distance: (default is 120)
```

23 Configuring Multi-WAN

Multi-WAN is used for managing WAN interfaces on the router, for example, 3G interfaces to ensure high-availability. You can customise Multi-WAN for various needs, but its main use is to ensure WAN connectivity and provide a failover system in the event of failure or poor coverage.

Multi-WAN periodically does a health check on the interface. A health check comprises of a configurable combination of the following:

- interface state
- pings to an ICMP target
- signal level checks using signal threshold, RSCP threshold and ECIO threshold option values

A fail for any of the above health checks, results in a fail. After a configurable number of health check failures, Multi-WAN will move to the next highest priority interface. Multi-WAN will optionally stop the failed interface and start the new interface, if required.

In some circumstances, particularly in mobile environments, it is desirable for a primary interface to be used whenever possible. In this instance Multi-WAN will perform a health check on the primary interface after a configurable period. If the health checks pass for the configured number of recovery health checks then the primary will be used.

23.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
multiwan	config wan

23.2 Configuring Multi-WAN using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> Multi-Wan**. The Multi-WAN page appears.

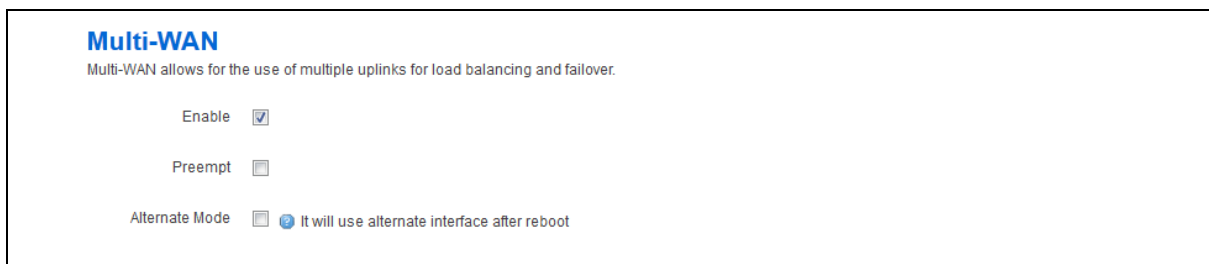


Figure 120: The multi-WAN page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Enable UCI: multiwan.config.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables Multi-WAN.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Preempt UCI: multiwan.config.preempt Opt: preempt	Enables or disables pre-emption for Multi-WAN. If enabled the router will keep trying to connect to a higher priority interface depending on timer set by ifup_retry_sec	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Alternate Mode UCI: multiwan.config.alt_mode Opt: alt_mode	Enables or disables alternate mode for Multi-WAN. If enabled the router will use an alternate interface after reboot.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.

Table 85: Information table for multi-WAN page

When you have enabled Multi-WAN, you can add the interfaces that will be managed by Multi-WAN, for example 3G interfaces.

The name used for Multi-WAN must be identical, including upper and lowercases, to the actual interface name defined in your network configuration. To check the names and settings are correct, select **Network - > Interfaces** and view the Interfaces Overview page.

In the WAN interfaces section, enter the name of the WAN interface to configure, and then click **Add**. The new section for configuring specific parameters appears.

WAN Interfaces

Health Monitor detects and corrects network changes and failed connections.

WAN

Health Monitor Interval	10 sec.	
Health Monitor ICMP Host(s)	DNS Server(s)	
Health Monitor Conntrack Test Host(s)	Default	
Health Monitor ICMP Timeout	3 sec.	
Health Monitor ICMP Interval	1 sec.	
Attempts Before WAN Failover	3	
Attempts Before WAN Recovery	5	
Priority	0	? Higher value is higher priority
Exclusive Group	0	? Only one interface in group could be up in the same time
Manage Interface State (Up/Down)	☒	
Minimum ifup Interval	300 sec.	? Minimum interval between two successive interface start attempts
Interface Start Timeout	40 sec.	? Time for interface to startup
Signal Threshold (dBm)	-115	? Below is a failure
RSCP Threshold for 3G (dBm)	-115	? Below is a failure
ECIO Threshold for 3G (dB)	-115	? Below is a failure
Signal Test		? Free form expression to test signal value

Figure 121: Example interface showing failover traffic destination as the added multi-WAN interface

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description								
Web: Health Monitor Interval UCI: multiwan.wan.health_interval Opt: health_interval	Sets the period to check the health status of the interface. The Health Monitor interval will be used for: - Interface state checks - Ping interval - Signal strength checks								
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Host(s) UCI: multiwan.wan.icmp_hosts Opt: icmp_hosts	Sends health ICMPs to configured value DNS servers by default. Configure to any address. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Disable</td><td>Disables the option.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DNS servers</td><td>DNS IP addresses will be used.</td></tr> <tr> <td>WAN Gateway</td><td>Gateway IP address will be used.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Custom</td><td>Ability to provide IP address. Multiple pings targets can be entered, comma separated. Pings to both must fail for health check to fail. Example: option icmp_hosts '1.1.1.1,2.2.2.2'</td></tr> </table>	Disable	Disables the option.	DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.	WAN Gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.	Custom	Ability to provide IP address. Multiple pings targets can be entered, comma separated. Pings to both must fail for health check to fail. Example: option icmp_hosts '1.1.1.1,2.2.2.2'
Disable	Disables the option.								
DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.								
WAN Gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.								
Custom	Ability to provide IP address. Multiple pings targets can be entered, comma separated. Pings to both must fail for health check to fail. Example: option icmp_hosts '1.1.1.1,2.2.2.2'								
Web: Health Monitor Conntrack Test Host(s) UCI: multiwan.wan.conntrack_hosts Opt: conntrack_hosts	Conntrack is the feature used to track if there is any traffic to and from an IP destination within the health interval. The Conntrack_hosts option defines the IP for conntrack to track, usually the icmp_host IP is used. If traffic to the conntrack_hosts IP is detected then multiwan does not send a ping health check to the icmp_host; otherwise a ping is sent as normal to the icmp_host. By default the conntrack_hosts is checked if the health interval is greater than 5 minutes. This time threshold currently cannot be manipulated. Conntrack is generally used to limit the traffic sent on a GSM network. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Default</td><td>Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Disable</td><td>Conntrack disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Custom</td><td>Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.</td></tr> </table>	Default	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.	Disable	Conntrack disabled.	Custom	Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.		
Default	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.								
Disable	Conntrack disabled.								
Custom	Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.								
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Timeout UCI: multiwan.wan.timeout Opt: timeout	Sets Ping timeout in seconds. Choose the time in seconds that the health monitor ICMP will timeout at. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>3</td><td>Wait 3 seconds for ping reply.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply.	Range					
3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply.								
Range									
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Interval UCI: multiwan.wan.icmp_interval Opt: icmp_interval	Defines the interval between multiple pings sent at each health check <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	1		Range					
1									
Range									
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Count UCI: multiwan.wan.icmp_count Opt: icmp_count	Defines the number of pings to send at each health check. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	1		Range					
1									
Range									
Web: Attempts Before WAN Failover UCI: multiwan.wan.health_fail_retries Opt: health_fail_retries	Sets the amount of health monitor retries before interface is considered a failure. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>3</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	3		Range					
3									
Range									
Web: Attempts Before WAN Recovery UCI: multiwan.wan.health_recovery_retries Opt: health_recovery_retries	Sets the number of health monitor checks before the interface is considered healthy. Only relevant if pre-empt mode is enabled. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>5</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	5		Range					
5									
Range									
Web: Priority UCI: multiwan.wan.priority Opt: priority	Specifies the priority of the interface. The higher the value, the higher the priority. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range					
0									
Range									

Web: Manage Interface State (Up/Down) UCI: multiwan.wan.manage_state Opt: manage_state	Defines whether multi-wan will start and stop the interface. <table> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.												
1	Enabled.																
0	Disabled.																
Web: Exclusive Group UCI: multiwan.wan.exclusive_group Opt: exclusive_group	Defines the group to which the interface belongs; only one interface can be active. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range													
0																	
Range																	
Web: Minimum ifup Interval UCI: multiwan.wan.ifup_retry_sec Opt: ifup_retry_sec	Specifies the interval in seconds before retrying the primary interface when pre-empt mode is enabled. <table> <tr><td>300</td><td>Retry primary interface every 300 seconds.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	300	Retry primary interface every 300 seconds.	Range													
300	Retry primary interface every 300 seconds.																
Range																	
Web: Interface Start Timeout UCI: multiwan.wan.ifup_timeout Opt: ifup_timeout	Specifies the time in seconds for interface to start up. If it is not up after this period, it will be considered a fail. <table> <tr><td>40</td><td>40 seconds.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	40	40 seconds.	Range													
40	40 seconds.																
Range																	
Web: Signal Threshold (dBm) UCI: multiwan.wan.signal_threshold Opt: signal_threshold	Specifies the minimum signal strength in dBm before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for sig_dbm in mobile diagnostics.-115. <table> <tr><td></td><td>Disabled</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>-46 to -115 dBm</td></tr> </table>		Disabled	Range	-46 to -115 dBm												
	Disabled																
Range	-46 to -115 dBm																
Web: RSCP Threshold (dBm) UCI: multiwan.wan.rscp_threshold Opt: rscp_threshold	Specifies the minimum RSCP signal strength in dBm before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for rscp_dbm in mobile diagnostics. <table> <tr><td>-115</td><td>Disabled</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>-46 to -115 dBm</td></tr> </table>	-115	Disabled	Range	-46 to -115 dBm												
-115	Disabled																
Range	-46 to -115 dBm																
Web: ECIO Threshold (dB) UCI: multiwan.wan.ecio_threshold Opt: ecio_threshold	Specifies the minimum ECIO signal strength in dB before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for ecio_db in mobile diagnostics. <table> <tr><td>-115</td><td>Disabled</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>-46 to -115 dB</td></tr> </table>	-115	Disabled	Range	-46 to -115 dB												
-115	Disabled																
Range	-46 to -115 dB																
Web: Signal Test UCI: multiwan.wan.signal_test Opt: signal_test	Defines a script to test various signal characteristics in multiwan signal test. For example: <pre>option signal_test '(tech == 0) then (sig_dbm > -70) else (rscp_dbm > -105 and ecio_db > -15)'</pre> This states that when technology is GSM, a health fail is determined when signal strength is less than -70dBm. When technology is not GSM a health fail occurs when either rscp_dbm falls below -105dBm or ecio_db falls below -15dB Tech values are: <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>GSM</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>GSM Compact</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>UTRAN</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>GSM w/EGPRS</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>UTRAN w/HSPDA</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>UTRAN w/HSUPA</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>UTRAN w/HSUPA and HSDPA</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>E-UTRAN</td></tr> </table>	0	GSM	1	GSM Compact	2	UTRAN	3	GSM w/EGPRS	4	UTRAN w/HSPDA	5	UTRAN w/HSUPA	6	UTRAN w/HSUPA and HSDPA	7	E-UTRAN
0	GSM																
1	GSM Compact																
2	UTRAN																
3	GSM w/EGPRS																
4	UTRAN w/HSPDA																
5	UTRAN w/HSUPA																
6	UTRAN w/HSUPA and HSDPA																
7	E-UTRAN																

Table 86: Information table for multi-WAN interface page

23.3 Configuring Multi-WAN using UCI

Multi-WAN UCI configuration settings are stored on **/etc/config/multiwan**

Run UCI export or show commands to see multiwan UCI configuration settings. A sample is shown below.

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export multiwan

package multiwan

config multiwan 'config'
    option preempt 'yes'
    option alt_mode 'no'
    option enabled 'yes'
config interface 'wan'
    option disabled '0'
    option health_interval '10'          option health_fail_retries '3'
    option health_recovery_retries '5'
    option priority '2'
    option manage_state 'yes'
    option exclusive_group '0'
    option ifup_retry_sec '40'
    option icmp_hosts 'disable'
    option icmp_interval '1'
    option timeout '3'
    option icmp_count '1'
    option conntrack_hosts 'disable'      option signal_threshold '-
111'
    option rscp_threshold '-90'
    option ecio_threshold '-15'
    option ifup_timeout_sec '120'

root@VA_router:~# uci show multiwan
multiwan.config=multiwan
multiwan.config.preempt=yes
multiwan.config.alt_mode=no
multiwan.config.enabled=yes
multiwan.wan=interface
multiwan.wan.disabled=0
multiwan.wan.health_interval=10multiwan.wan.health_fail_retries=3
multiwan.wan.health_recovery_retries=5
multiwan.wan.priority=2
multiwan.wan.manage_state=yes

```

```

multiwan.wan.exclusive_group=0
multiwan.wan.ifup_retry_sec=36000
multiwan.wan.icmp_hosts=disable
multiwan.wan.timeout=3
multiwan.wan.icmp_interval '1'
multiwan.wan.timeout '3'
multiwan.wan.icmp_count '1'
multiwan.wan.conntrack_hosts 'disable'
multiwan.wan.signal_threshold=-111
multiwan.wan.rscp_threshold=-90
multiwan.wan.ecio_threshold=-15

```

23.4 Multi-WAN diagnostics

The multi-WAN package is linked to the network interfaces within `/etc/config/network`.

Note: multi-WAN will not work if the WAN connections are on the same subnet and share the same default gateway.

To view the multi-WAN package, enter:

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export multiwan
package multiwan

config multiwan 'config'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option preempt 'yes'
    option alt_mode 'no'

config interface 'ADSL'
    option health_interval '10'
    option icmp_hosts 'dns'
    option timeout '3'
    option health_fail_retries '3'
    option health_recovery_retries '5'
    option priority '1'
    option manage_state 'yes'
    option exclusive_group '0'
    option ifup_retry_sec '300'
    option ifup_timeout_sec '40'

```

```

config interface 'Ethernet'
    option health_interval '10'
    option icmp_hosts 'dns'
    option timeout '3'
    option health_fail_retries '3'
    option health_recovery_retries '5'
    option priority '2'
    option manage_state 'yes'
    option exclusive_group '0'
    option ifup_retry_sec '300'
    option ifup_timeout_sec '40'

```

The following output shows the multi-WAN standard stop/start commands for troubleshooting.

```

root@VA_router:~# /etc/init.d/multiwan
Syntax: /etc/init.d/multiwan [command]

```

Available commands:

```

start    Start the service
stop     Stop the service
restart  Restart the service
reload   Reload configuration files (or restart if that fails)
enable   Enable service autostart
disable  Disable service autostart

```

When troubleshooting, make sure that the routing table is correct using `route -n`.

Ensure all parameters in the multi-WAN package are correct. The name used for multi-WAN interfaces must be identical, including upper and lowercases, to the interface name defined in the network configuration.

To check the names and settings are correct, browse to **Network - > interfaces** (or alternatively, run: `cat/etc/config/network` through CLI).

Enter the name of the WAN interface to configure, and then click **Add**. The new section for configuring specific parameters will appear.

24 Automatic operator selection

This section describes how to configure and operate the Automatic Operator Selection feature of a Virtual Access router.

When the roaming SIM is connected, the radio module has the ability to scan available networks. The router, using mobile and multi-WAN packages, finds available networks to create and sort interfaces according to their signal strength. These interfaces are used for failover purposes.

24.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
Multiwan	General, interfaces
Mobile	Main, template interface
Network	2G/3G/4G interface

24.2 Configuring automatic operator selection via the web interface

While the router boots up it checks for mobile networks. Based on available networks, the router creates interfaces and the multiwan package is used to run failover between interfaces. Typically these auto-generated interfaces are sorted by signal strength.

Details for these interfaces are provided in the mobile package. When you have created the interfaces, Multi-WAN manages the operation of primary (predefined) and failover (auto created) interfaces.

Multi-WAN periodically does a health check on the active interface. A health check comprises of a configurable combination of the following:

- interface state
- pings to an ICMP target
- signal level checks using signal threshold, RSCP threshold and ECIO threshold option values

A fail for any of the above health checks results in an overall fail. After a configurable number of health check failures, multiwan will move to the next highest priority interface. Multi-WAN will optionally stop the failed interface and start the new interface, if required.

In some circumstances, particularly in mobile environments, it is desirable for a primary interface to be used whenever possible. In this instance, if the active interface is not the primary interface, multiwan will perform a health check on the primary interface after a configurable period. If the health checks pass for the configured number of recovery health checks then the primary interface will be used.

There are typically three scenarios:

- Primary Mobile Provider (PMP) + roaming: pre-empt enabled
- PMP + roaming: pre-empt disabled
- No PMP + roaming

24.2.1 Scenario 1: PMP + roaming: pre-empt enabled

24.2.1.1 Overview

In this scenario, the PMP interface is used whenever possible.

The PMP interface is attempted first. When the health checks fail on the PMP interface, and Multi-WAN moves to an autogenerated interface, a timer is started `multiwan option ifup_retry_sec`. On expiration of this timer, multiwan will disconnect the current interface and retry the PMP interface.

The PMP interface will then be used if the configurable number of health checks pass the checks.

24.2.1.2 Software operation

6. Multiwan first attempts to bring up the PMP interface. If the PMP interface connects within the time set by multiwan option `ifup_timeout` continue to step 2. Otherwise go to step 4.
7. A health check is periodically done on the PMP interface as determined by the multiwan option `health_interval`. If the health check fails for the number of retries (multiwan option `health_fail_retries`), disconnect the PMP interface.
8. Connect the first auto-generated interface.
9. If the interface connects within the time set by multiwan option `ifup_timeout` continue to step 5, otherwise multiwan moves to the next auto-generated interface.
10. Wait until the health check fails on the auto-generated interface, or until the PMP interface is available to connect after it was disconnected in step 2. (multiwan option `ifup_retry_sec`).
11. Disconnect auto-generated interface.
12. If the interface was disconnected due to health check failure then connect the next auto-generated interface and repeat step 4. If the interface was disconnected because `ifup_retry_sec` of PMP interface timed out, then go back to step 1 and repeat the process.

The PMP predefined interface is defined in the network package. Ensure the interface name matches the interface name defined in the multiwan package.

24.2.1.3 Create a primary predefined interface

In the web interface top menu, go to **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces page appears.

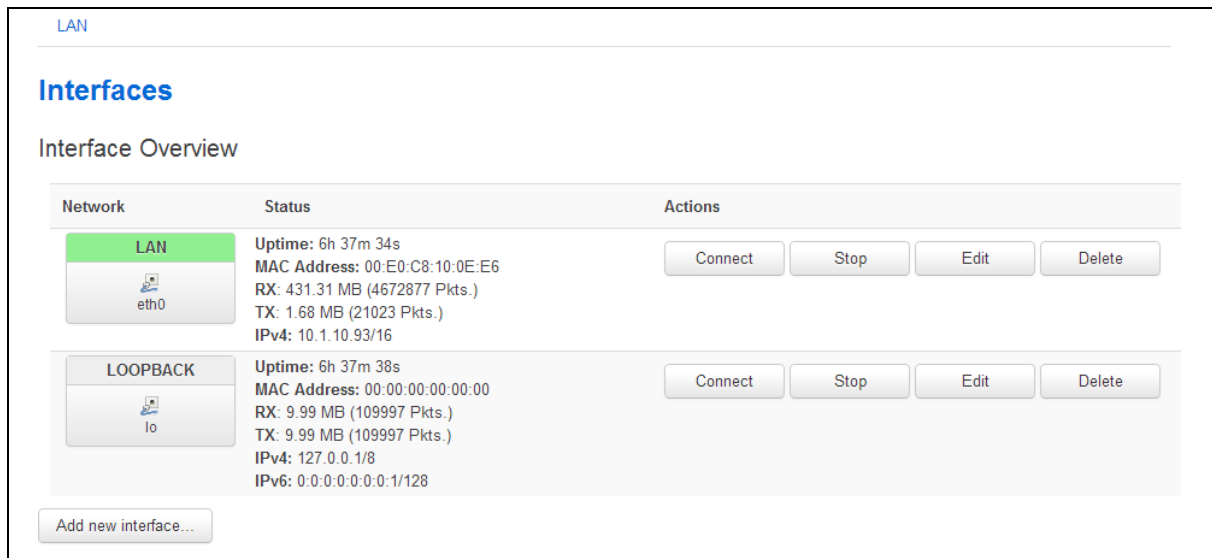


Figure 122: The interface overview page

Click **Add new interface...** The Create Interface page appears.

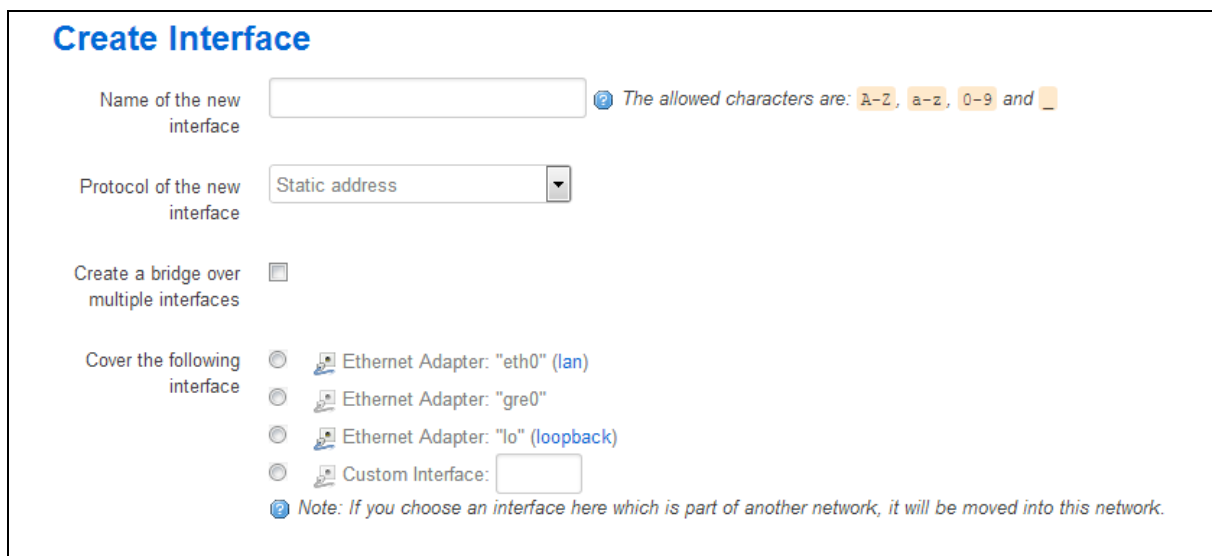


Figure 123: The create interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description								
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network.3g_s<sim-number>_<short-operator-name>. Opt: 3g_s<sim-number>_<short-operator-name>.	Type the name of the new interface. Type the interface name in following format: 3g_s<sim-number>_<short-operator-name>. Where <sim-number> is number of roaming SIM (1 or 2) and <short-operator-name> is first four alphanumeric characters of operator name (as reported by 'AT+COPS=?' command). Type the short operator name in lower case, for example: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Operator name</th><th>First four alphanumeric numbers</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Vodafone UK</td><td>voda</td></tr> <tr> <td>O2 – UK</td><td>o2uk</td></tr> <tr> <td>Orange</td><td>oran</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Operator name	First four alphanumeric numbers	Vodafone UK	voda	O2 – UK	o2uk	Orange	oran
Operator name	First four alphanumeric numbers								
Vodafone UK	voda								
O2 – UK	o2uk								
Orange	oran								

Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.[...].proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. Select LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO .	
	Option	Description
	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.
	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.
	Unmanaged	Unspecified
	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.
	IPv6 over IPv4	IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.
	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation.
	IOT	
	L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.
	PPP	Point to Point Protocol.
	PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.
	PPPoATM	Point to Point Protocol over ATM.
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network.[...].typeOpt: type	Enables bridge between two interfaces.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network.[...].ifname Opt: ifname	Selects interfaces for bridge connection.	

Table 87: Information table for the create interface page

Click **Submit**. The Common Configuration page appears.

Common Configuration

General Setup | Advanced Settings | Physical Settings | Firewall Settings

Status 3g-3g_s2_voda RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)

Protocol

Service Type

SIM

APN

PIN

PAP/CHAP username

PAP/CHAP password

Back to Overview | Save & Apply | Save | Reset

Figure 124: The common configuration page

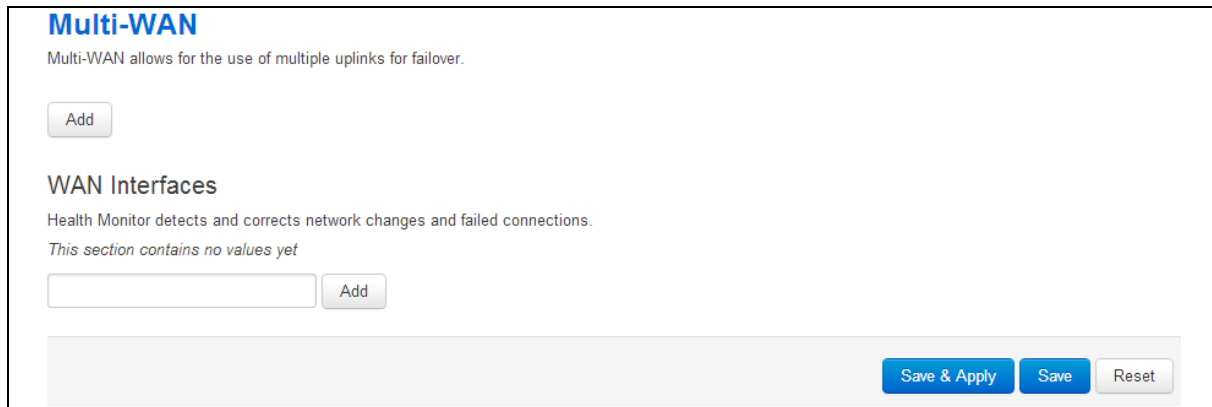
Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																										
Web: Protocol UCI: network[..x..].proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. Select LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO . <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6 over IPv4</td><td>IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point to Point Protocol.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>Point to Point Protocol over ATM.</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.	IPv6 over IPv4	IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation.	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.	PPP	Point to Point Protocol.	PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.	PPPoATM	Point to Point Protocol over ATM.	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	IPv4 tunnels that carry IPv6.																										
IPv6 over IPv4	IPv6 over IPv4 tunnel.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation.																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.																										
PPP	Point to Point Protocol.																										
PPPoE	Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet.																										
PPPoATM	Point to Point Protocol over ATM.																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: Service Type UCI: network[..x..].service Opt: service	Service type that will be used to connect to the network. <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>gprs_only</td><td>Allows GSM module to only connect to GPRS network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>lte_only</td><td>Allows GSM module to only connect to LTE network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>cdma</td><td>Allows GSM module to only connect to CDMA network.</td></tr> <tr> <td>auto</td><td>GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	gprs_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to GPRS network.	lte_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to LTE network.	cdma	Allows GSM module to only connect to CDMA network.	auto	GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.																		
gprs_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to GPRS network.																										
lte_only	Allows GSM module to only connect to LTE network.																										
cdma	Allows GSM module to only connect to CDMA network.																										
auto	GSM module will automatically detect the best available technology code.																										
Web: SIM UCI: network[..x..].sim Opt: sim	Select SIM 1 or SIM 2. <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>auto</td><td>Automatically detects which SIM slot is used.</td></tr> <tr> <td>SIM 1</td><td>Selects SIM from slot 1.</td></tr> <tr> <td>SIM 2</td><td>Selects SIM from slot 2.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	auto	Automatically detects which SIM slot is used.	SIM 1	Selects SIM from slot 1.	SIM 2	Selects SIM from slot 2.																				
auto	Automatically detects which SIM slot is used.																										
SIM 1	Selects SIM from slot 1.																										
SIM 2	Selects SIM from slot 2.																										
Web: APN UCI: network[..x..].apn Opt: apn	APN name of Mobile Network Operator.																										
Web: APN username UCI: network[..x..].username Opt: username	Username used to connect to APN.																										
Web: APN password UCI: network[..x..].password Opt: password	Password used to connect to APN.																										
Web: Modem Configuration UCI: N/A Opt: N/A	Click the link if you need to configure additional options from Mobile Manager.																										

Table 88: Information table for the general set up section

Click **Save & Apply**.

24.2.1.4 Set multi-WAN options for primary predefined interface

On the web interface go to **Network -> Multi-Wan**. The Multi-WAN page appears.



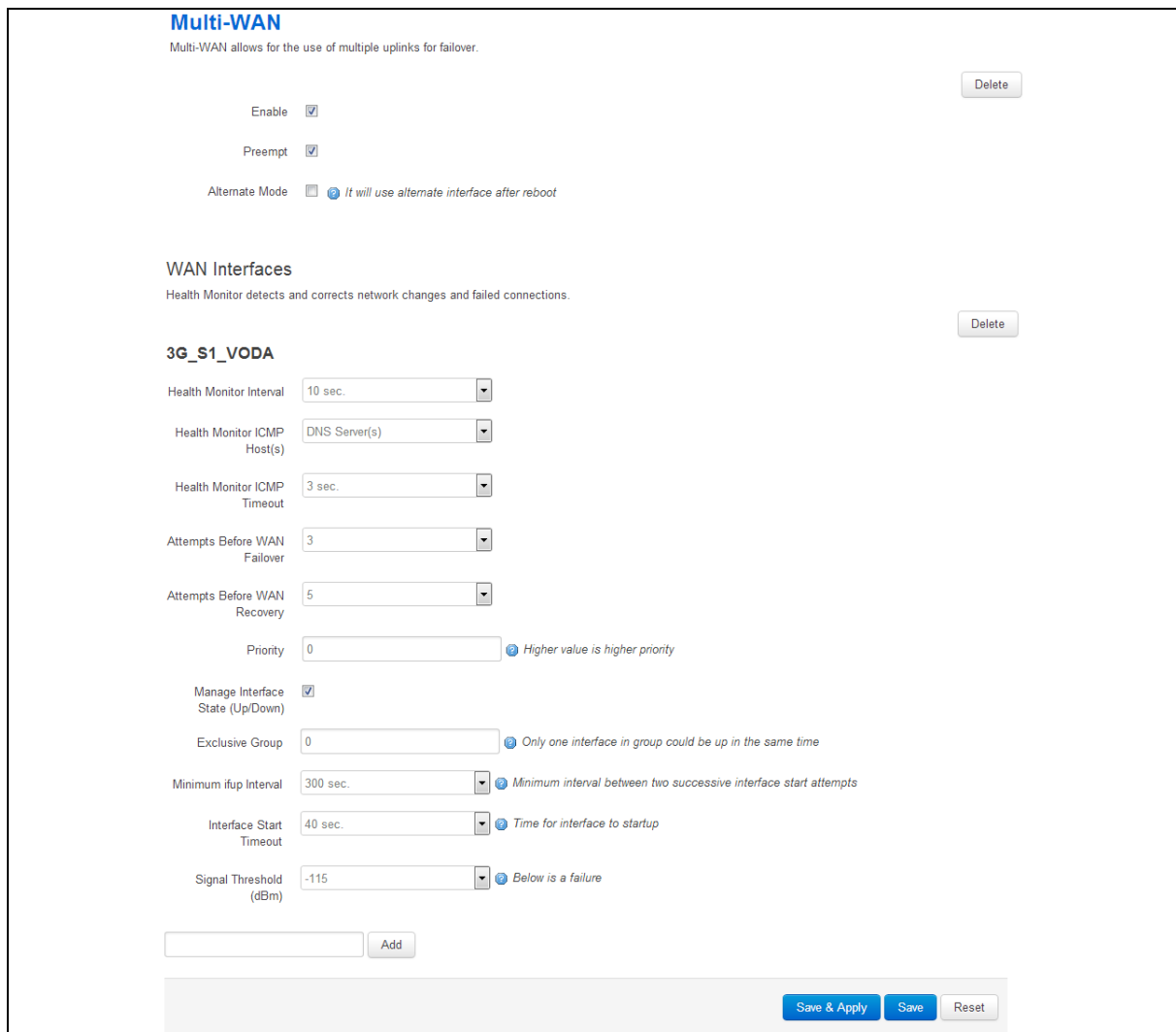
Multi-WAN
Multi-WAN allows for the use of multiple uplinks for failover.

WAN Interfaces
Health Monitor detects and corrects network changes and failed connections.
This section contains no values yet

Figure 125: The multi-WAN page

In the WAN Interfaces section, type in the name of the Multi-WAN interface.

Click **Add**. The Multi-WAN page appears.



Multi-WAN
Multi-WAN allows for the use of multiple uplinks for failover.

Enable ☒

Preempt ☒

Alternate Mode ☐ *It will use alternate interface after reboot*

WAN Interfaces
Health Monitor detects and corrects network changes and failed connections.

3G_S1_VODA

Health Monitor Interval

Health Monitor ICMP Host(s)

Health Monitor ICMP Timeout

Attempts Before WAN Failover

Attempts Before WAN Recovery

Priority *Higher value is higher priority*

Manage Interface State (Up/Down) ☒

Exclusive Group *Only one interface in group could be up in the same time*

Minimum ifup Interval *Minimum interval between two successive interface start attempts*

Interface Start Timeout *Time for interface to startup*

Signal Threshold (dBm) *Below is a failure*

Figure 126: The multi-WAN page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description								
Web: Enable UCI: multiwan.config.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables multiwan. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Preempt UCI: multiwan.config.preempt Opt: preempt	Enables or disables pre-emption for multiwan. If enabled, the router will keep trying to connect to a higher priority interface depending on timer set. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Alternate Mode UCI: multiwan.config.alt Opt: alt	Enables or disables alternate mode for multiwan. If enabled, the router will use an alternate interface after reboot. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: WAN Interfaces UCI: multiwan.3g_s<sim-number>_<short-operator-name> Opt: 3g_s<sim-number>_<short-operator-name>	Provide the same interface name as chosen in multiwan section below and click Add .								
Web: Health Monitor Interval UCI: multiwan[..x..].health_interval Opt: health_interval	Sets the period to check the health status of the interface. The Health Monitor interval will be used for: - Interface state checks - Ping interval - Signal strength checks								
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Host(s) UCI: multiwan[..x..].icmp_hosts Opt: icmp_hosts	Specifies the target IP address for ICMP packets. <table> <tr><td>Disable</td><td>Disables the option.</td></tr> <tr><td>DNS servers</td><td>DNS IP addresses will be used.</td></tr> <tr><td>WAN Gateway</td><td>Gateway IP address will be used.</td></tr> <tr><td>custom</td><td>Ability to provide IP address.</td></tr> </table>	Disable	Disables the option.	DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.	WAN Gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.	custom	Ability to provide IP address.
Disable	Disables the option.								
DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.								
WAN Gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.								
custom	Ability to provide IP address.								
Web: Health Monitor Conntrack Test Host(s) UCI: multiwan.wan.conntrack_hosts Opt: conntrack_hosts	Conntrack is the feature used to track if there is any traffic to and from an IP destination within the health interval. Conntrack_hosts option defines the IP for conntrack to track – usually the icmp_host IP is used. If traffic to the conntrack_hosts IP is detected then multiwan does not send a ping health check to the icmp_host otherwise a ping is sent as normal to the icmp_host. By default the conntrack_hosts is checked if the health interval is greater than 5 minutes. This time threshold currently cannot be manipulated. Conntrack is generally used to limit the traffic sent on a GSM network. <table> <tr><td>Default</td><td>Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.</td></tr> <tr><td>Disable</td><td>Conntrack disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>Custom</td><td>Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.</td></tr> </table>	Default	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.	Disable	Conntrack disabled.	Custom	Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.		
Default	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.								
Disable	Conntrack disabled.								
Custom	Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.								
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Timeout UCI: multiwan[..x..].timeout Opt: timeout	Sets ping timeout in seconds. Choose the time in seconds that the health monitor ICMP will timeout at. <table> <tr><td>3</td><td>Wait 3 seconds for ping reply.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply.	Range					
3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply.								
Range									
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Interval UCI: multiwan.wan.icmp_interval Opt: icmp_interval	Defines the interval between multiple pings sent at each health check. <table> <tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	1		Range					
1									
Range									
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Count UCI: multiwan.wan.icmp_count Opt: icmp_count	Defines the number of pings to send at each health check. <table> <tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	1		Range					
1									
Range									

Web: Attempts Before WAN Failover UCI: multiwan.[...].health_fail_retries Opt: health_fail_retries	Sets the amount of health monitor retries before interface is considered a failure. 3 Range
Web: Attempts Before WAN Recovery UCI: multiwan.[...].health_recovery_retries Opt: health_recovery_retries	Sets the number of health monitor checks before the interface is considered healthy. Only relevant if pre-empt mode is enabled. 5 Range
Web: Priority UCI: multiwan.[...].priority Opt: priority	Specifies the priority of the interface. The higher the value, the higher the priority. This multiwan interface priority must be higher than the one specified in the priority field in the 'Roaming Interface Template' page described in the following section. 0 Range
Web: Exclusive Group UCI: multiwan.[...].exclusive_group Opt: exclusive_group	Defines the group to which the interface belongs; only one interface can be active. 0 Range
Web: Manage Interface State (Up/Down) UCI: multiwan.[...].manage_state Opt: manage_state	Defines whether multi-WAN will start and stop the interface. Select Enabled . 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web: Minimum ifup Interval UCI: multiwan.[...].ifup_retry_sec Opt: ifup_retry_sec	Specifies the interval in seconds before retrying the primary interface when pre-empt mode is enabled.
Web: Interface Start Timeout UCI: multiwan.[...].ifup_timeout Opt: ifup_timeout	Specifies the time in seconds for interface to start up. If it is not up after this period, it will be considered a fail. Choose timer greater than 120 seconds. 40 40 seconds Range
Web: Signal Threshold (dBm) UCI: multiwan.[...].signal_threshold Opt: signal_threshold	Specifies the minimum signal strength in dBm before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for sig_dbm in mobile diagnostics. -115 Disabled. Range -46 to -115 dBm
Web: RSCP Threshold (dBm) UCI: multiwan.[...].rscp_threshold Opt: rscp_threshold	Specifies the minimum RSCP signal strength in dBm before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for rscp_dbm in mobile diagnostics. -115 Disabled. Range -46 to -115 dBm
Web: ECIO Threshold (dB) UCI: multiwan.[...].ecio_threshold Opt: ecio_threshold	Specifies the minimum ECIO signal strength in dB before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for ecio_db in mobile diagnostics. -115 Disabled. Range -46 to -115 dB

Web: Signal Test UCI: multiwan[..x..].signal_test Opt: signal_test	Defines script to test various signal characteristics in multiwan signal test. For example: <pre>option signal_test '(tech == 0) then (sig_dbm > -70) else (rscp_dbm > -105 and ecio_db > -15)'</pre> This states that when technology is GSM a health fail is determined when signal strength is less than -70dBm. When technology is not GSM a health fail occurs when either rscp_dbm falls below -105dBm or ecio_db falls below -15dB. Tech values are: <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>GSM</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>GSM Compact</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>UTRAN</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>GSM w/EGPRS</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>UTRAN w/HSPDA</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>UTRAN w/HSUPA</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>UTRAN w/HSUPA and HSDPA</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>E-UTRAN</td></tr> </table>	0	GSM	1	GSM Compact	2	UTRAN	3	GSM w/EGPRS	4	UTRAN w/HSPDA	5	UTRAN w/HSUPA	6	UTRAN w/HSUPA and HSDPA	7	E-UTRAN
0	GSM																
1	GSM Compact																
2	UTRAN																
3	GSM w/EGPRS																
4	UTRAN w/HSPDA																
5	UTRAN w/HSUPA																
6	UTRAN w/HSUPA and HSDPA																
7	E-UTRAN																

Table 89: Information table for Multi-WAN page

Click **Save**.

24.2.2 Set options for automatically created interfaces (failover)

From the top menu on the web interface page, select **Services -> Mobile Manager**. The Mobile Manager page appears.

There are four sections in the mobile manager page:

Section	Description
Basic settings	Enable SMS, configure SIM pin code, select roaming SIM, collect ICCIDs and set IMSI.
Advanced	Configure advanced options such as collect ICCID's and temperature polling interval
CDMA*	CDMA configuration
Callers	Configure callers that can use SMS.
Roaming Interface Template	Configure Preferred Roaming List options
*Option available only for Telit CE910-SL module.	

24.2.3 Mobile manager: basic settings

MAIN

Basic Advanced CDMA

SMS Enable ☒

PIN-code for SIM1

PIN-code for SIM2

LTE Bands for SIM1

LTE Bands for SIM2

Figure 127: The mobile manager basic page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: SMS Enable UCI: mobile.main.sms Opt: sms	Enables or disables SMS functionality. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: PIN code for SIM1 UCI: mobile.main.sim1pin Opt: sim1pin	Depending on the SIM card specify the pin code for SIM 1. <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>Depends on the SIM provider.</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	Depends on the SIM provider.
Blank					
Range	Depends on the SIM provider.				
Web: PIN code for SIM2 UCI: mobile.main.sim2pin Opt: sim2pin	Depending on the SIM card specify the pin code for SIM 2. <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>Depends on the SIM provider.</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	Depends on the SIM provider.
Blank					
Range	Depends on the SIM provider.				
Web: LTE bands for SIM1 UCI: mobile.main.sim1_lte_bands Opt: sim1_lte_bands	Depending on the SIM card specify the LTE bands for SIM 1. Comma delimiter. Example: option sim1_lte_bands '3,20' Limits LTE bands to 3 and 20. Note: currently only supported by Hucom/Wetelcom, SIMCom7100, Cellient MPL200 and Asiatel. <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>LTE bands range from 1 to 70.</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	LTE bands range from 1 to 70.
Blank					
Range	LTE bands range from 1 to 70.				
Web: LTE bands for SIM2 UCI: mobile.main.sim2_lte_bands Opt:sim2_lte_bands	Depending on the SIM card specify the LTE bands for SIM 2. Comma delimiter. Example: option sim1_lte_bands '3,20' Limits LTE bands to 3 and 20. Note: currently only supported by Hucom/Wetelcom, SIMCom7100, Cellient MPL200 and Asiatel. <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>LTE bands range from 1 to 70.</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	LTE bands range from 1 to 70.
Blank					
Range	LTE bands range from 1 to 70.				

Table 90: Information table for mobile manager basic settings

24.2.4 Mobile manager: advanced settings

MAIN

Basic
Advanced
CDMA

Collect ICCIDs
☐
? Collect ICCIDs on startup

Force Mode
Automatic
? Select network interface mode

Temperature Polling Interval (Seconds)
61

Automatic Firmware Selection
☐
? Select firmware based on network operator - only supported on some radio modules

Allow USB Power Cycle
☒
? Power cycle usb bus if modem disappeared from the USB bus for more then 40 seconds

Figure 128: The mobile manager advanced page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Collect ICCIDs UCI: mobile.main.init_get_iccids Opt: init_get_iccids	Enables or disables integrated circuit card identifier ICCID's collection functionality. If enabled then both SIM 1 and SIM 2 ICCIDs will be collected otherwise it will default to SIM 1. This will be displayed under mobile stats. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Force Mode UCI: mobile.main.force_mode Opt: force_mode	Defines whether to operate mobile modem in PPP or Ethernet mode. The mode will be dependent on the service provided by the mobile provider. In general, this is Ethernet mode (default). <table> <tr> <td>Automatic</td><td>Ethernet mode (option not present).</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Enable PPP mode.</td></tr> </table>	Automatic	Ethernet mode (option not present).	PPP	Enable PPP mode.
Automatic	Ethernet mode (option not present).				
PPP	Enable PPP mode.				
Web: Temperature Polling Interval UCI: mobile.main.temp_poll_interval_sec Opt: temp_poll_interval_sec	Defines the time in seconds to poll the mobile module for temperature. Set to 0 to disable. <table> <tr> <td>61</td><td>61 seconds.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	61	61 seconds.	Range	
61	61 seconds.				
Range					
Web: Automatic Firmware Selection UCI: mobile.main.enable_firmware_autoselect Opt: enable_firmware_autoselect	Defines whether to use time obtained from the mobile carrier to update the system clock when NTP is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Allow USB Power Cycle UCI: mobile.main.allow_usb_powercycle Opt: allow_usb_powercycle	Enables the selection of an operator-specific firmware in the radio module. The selection is based on the ICCID of the used SIM. At module initialisation the IMSI is checked and if necessary the correct firmware image in the module will be activated. Note: activation of the firmware will lead to delayed startup of the network interface associated with the radio module. Note: this feature is currently only supported for the Telit LE910NA V2 module. Here a Verizon-specific firmware will be selected if the ICCID starts with "891480". <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: mobile.main.disable_time Opt: disable_time	Defines whether to use time obtained from the mobile carrier to update the system clock when NTP is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 91: Information table for mobile manager advanced settings

24.2.5 Mobile manager: CDMA settings

This configuration page is only supported for the Telit CE910-SL CDMA module.

MAIN

Basic
Advanced
CDMA

IMSI
If specified over-writes IMSI stored in radio module

HDR Auth User ID
AN-PPP user id. Supported on Cellient module only

HDR Auth Password
AN-PPP password. Supported on Cellient module only

Ordered Registration triggers module reboot
☐

Station Class Mark

Slot Cycle Index

Slot Mode

Mobile Directory Number

MOB_TERM_HOME registration flag
☒

MOB_TERM_FOR_SID registration flag
☒

MOB_TERM_FOR_NID
☒

Figure 129: The mobile manager CDMA page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: IMSI UCI: mobile.main.imsi Opt: imsi	Allows the IMSI (International Mobile Subscriber Identity) to be changed. <table> <tr> <td>Default</td><td>Programmed in module.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Digits</td><td>Up to 15 digits.</td></tr> </table>	Default	Programmed in module.	Digits	Up to 15 digits.
Default	Programmed in module.				
Digits	Up to 15 digits.				
Web: HDR Auth User ID UCI: mobile.main.hdr_userid Opt: hdr_userid	AN-PPP user ID. Supported on Cellient (CDMA) modem only. <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>Depends on the CDMA provider.</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	Depends on the CDMA provider.
Blank					
Range	Depends on the CDMA provider.				
Web: HDR Auth User Password UCI: mobile.main.hdr_password Opt: hdr_password	AN-PPP password. Supported on Cellient (CDMA) modem only. <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>Depends on the CDMA provider.</td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	Depends on the CDMA provider.
Blank					
Range	Depends on the CDMA provider.				
Web: Ordered Registration triggers module reboot UCI: mobile.main. mobile.main.cdma_ordered_registration_reboot_enabled Opt: cdma_ordered_registration_reboot_enabled	Enables or disables rebooting the module after Order Registration command is received from a network. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Web: Station Class Mark UCI: mobile.main.cdma_station_class_mark Opt: cdma_station_class_mark	Allows the station class mark for the MS to be changed.	
	58	
	0-255	
Web: Slot Cycle Index UCI: mobile.main.cdma_slot_cycle_index Opt: cdma_slot_cycle_index	The desired slot cycle index if different from the default.	
	2	
	0-7	
Web: Slot Mode UCI: mobile.main.cdma_slot_mode Opt: cdma_slot_mode	Specifies the slot mode.	
	0	
Web: Mobile Directory Number UCI: mobile.main.cdma_mobile_directory_number Opt: cdma_mobile_directory_number	Allows the mobile directory number (MDN) to be changed.	
	Default	Programmed in module.
	Digits	Up to 15 digits.
Web: MOB_TERM_HOME registration flag UCI: mobile.main.cdma_mob_term_home_registration_flag Opt: cdma_mob_term_home_registration_flag	The MOB_TERM_HOME registration flag.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: MOB_TERM_FOR_SID registration flag UCI: mobile.main.cdma_mob_term_for_sid_registration_flag Opt: cdma_mob_term_for_sid_registration_flag	The MOB_TERM_FOR_SID registration flag.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: MOB_TERM_FOR_NID registration flag UCI: mobile.main.cdma_mob_term_for_nid_registration_flag Opt: cdma_mob_term_for_nid_registration_flag	The MOB_TERM_FOR_NID registration flag	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Access Overload Control UCI: mobile.main.cdma_access_overload_control Opt: cdma_access_overload_control	Allows the access overload class to be changed.	
	Default	Programmed into module as part of IMSI.
	Range	0-7
Web: Preferred Serving System UCI: mobile.main.cdma_preferred_serving_system Opt: cdma_preferred_serving_system	The CDMA Preferred Serving System(A/B).	
	5	
Web: Digital Analog Mode Preference UCI: cdma_digital_analog_mode_preference Opt: cdma_digital_analog_mode_preference	Digital/Analog Mode Preference.	
	4	
Web: Primary Channel A UCI: mobile.main.cdma_primary_channel_a Opt: cdma_primary_channel_a.	Allows the primary channel (A) to be changed.	
	283	
	1-2016	Any band class 5 channel number.
Web: Primary Channel B UCI: mobile.main.cdma_primary_channel_b Opt: cdma_primary_channel_b	Allows the primary channel (B) to be changed.	
	384	
	1-2016	Any band class 5 channel number
Web: Secondary Channel A UCI: mobile.main.cdma_secondary_channel_a Opt: cdma_secondary_channel_a	Allows the secondary channel (A) to be changed.	
	691	
	1-2016	Any band class 5 channel number.
Web: Secondary Channel B UCI: mobile.main.cdma_secondary_channel_b Opt: cdma_secondary_channel_b	Allows the secondary channel (B) to be changed.	
	777	
	1-2016	Any band class 5 channel number.

Web: Preferred Forward & Reverse RC UCI: mobile.main.cdma_preferred_forward_and_reverse_rc Opt:cdma_preferred_forward_and_reverse_rc	The Preferred Forward & Reverse RC value, this takes the form "forward_rc,reverse_rc" Format: forward radio channel, reverse radio channel Default: 0,0
Web: SID-NID pairs UCI: mobile.main.cdma_sid_nid_pairs Opt:cdma_sid_nid_pairs	Allows specification of SID:NID pairs, this takes the form "SID1,NID1,SID2,NID2, ..." Format: SID1 (0-65535),NID (0-65535) Default: 0,65535

Table 92: Information table for mobile manager CDMA settings

24.2.6 Mobile manager: callers

Callers

Configure caller numbers that may use the SMS service.

Name
Name of the caller.

Number
*Number of the caller. Use * for wildcard matching.*

Enable
☐

Respond
☐

Figure 130: The mobile manager CDMA page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Name UCI: mobile.@caller[0].name Opt:name	Name assigned to the caller.	
	Blank	
	Range	No limit
Web: Number UCI: mobile.@caller[0].number Opt:number	Number of the caller allowed to SMS the router. Add in specific caller numbers, or use the * wildcard symbol.	
	Blank	
	Range	No limit
	Characters	Global value (*) is accepted. International value (+) is accepted.
Web: Enable UCI: mobile.@caller[0].enabled Opt:enabled	Enables or disables incoming caller ID.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Respond UCI: mobile.@caller[0].respond Opt: respond	If checked, the router will return an SMS. Select Respond if you want the router to reply.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.

Table 93: Information table for mobile manager callers settings

24.2.7 Roaming interface template

Roaming Interface Template
Common config values for interfaces created by Automatic Operator Selection

[Delete](#)

Interface Signal Sort ☐ ☒ Sort interfaces by signal strength so those having better signal strength at the startup would be tried first

Roaming SIM In which slot roaming sim-card is inserted

Firewall Zone ☐ lan: lan: ☐ lan1: wlan: wlan1: ☐ wan: wan: ☐ unspecified -or- create:

☒ Append all the generated interfaces to this zone

APN

PIN

PAP/CHAP username

PAP/CHAP password

Service Preference
UMTS
GPRS
CDMA/EV-DO
Auto Order of service preference for the generated interfaces (Use Control button to select multiple)

Health Monitor Interval

Health Monitor ICMP Host(s)

Health Monitor Conntrack Test Host(s)

Health Monitor ICMP Timeout

Health Monitor ICMP Interval

Attempts Before WAN Failover

Attempts Before WAN Recovery

Figure 131: The roaming interface template page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Interface Signal Sort UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].sort_sig_strength Opt: sort_sig_strength	Sorts interfaces by signal strength priority, so those that have a better signal strength will be tried first. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Roaming SIM UCI: mobile.main.roaming_sim Opt: roaming_sim	Sets in which slot to insert roaming SIM card. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>SIM slot 1.</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>SIM slot 2.</td></tr> </table>	1	SIM slot 1.	2	SIM slot 2.
1	SIM slot 1.				
2	SIM slot 2.				
Web: Firewall Zone UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].firewall_zone Opt: firewall_zone	Adds all generated interfaces to this zone. Select existing zone or click unspecified or create to create new zone.				
Web: APN UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].apn Opt: apn	APN name of Mobile Network Operator.				

Web: PIN UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].pincode Opt: pincode	SIM card's PIN number.		
Web: PAP/CHAP username UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].username Opt: username	Username used to connect to APN.		
Web: PAP/CHAP password UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].password Opt: password	Password used to connect to APN.		
Web: Service Order UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].service_order Opt: service_order	Defines a space separated list of services, in preferred order. Valid options are gprs, umts, lte, auto.		
	If no valid_service order is defined, then the configured Service Type is used. Example: mobile.@roaming_template[0].service_order="gprs umts lte auto"		
	Blank	Automatically detect best service,	
	Range	gprs umts lte auto	
Web: Health Monitor Interval UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_interval Opt: health_interval	Sets the period, in seconds, to check the health status of the interface. The Health Monitor interval will be used for:		
	Interface state checks		
	Ping interval		
	Signal strength checks		
	10	health check every 10 seconds,	
	Range		
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Host(s) UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].icmp_hosts Opt: icmp_hosts	Specifies target IP address for ICMP packets.		
	Web	Description	UCI
	Disable	Disables the option.	disable
	DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.	dns
	WAN gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.	gateway
	custom	Ability to provide IP address. Multiple pings targets can be entered, comma separated. Pings to both must fail for health check to fail. Example: option icmp hosts '1.1.1.1,2.2.2.2'	

Web: Health Monitor Conntrack Test Host(s) UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].conntrack_hosts Opt: conntrack_hosts	Conntrack is the feature used to track if there is any traffic to and from an IP destination within the health interval. The Conntrack_hosts option defines the IP for conntrack to track, usually the icmp_host IP is used. If traffic to the conntrack_hosts IP is detected then multiwan does not send a ping health check to the icmp_host; otherwise a ping is sent as normal to the icmp_host. By default the conntrack_hosts is checked if the health interval is greater than 5 minutes. This time threshold currently cannot be manipulated. Conntrack is generally used to limit the traffic sent on a GSM network. <table><tr><th>Web</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>Default</td><td>Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Disable</td><td>Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.</td><td>disable</td></tr><tr><td>custom</td><td>Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.</td><td></td></tr></table>	Web	Description	UCI	Default	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.		Disable	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.	disable	custom	Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.	
Web	Description	UCI											
Default	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.												
Disable	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.	disable											
custom	Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.												
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Timeout UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].timeout Opt: timeout	Specifies the time in seconds that Health Monitor ICMP will timeout at. Sets ping timeout in seconds. Choose the time in seconds that the health monitor ICMP will timeout at. <table><tr><td>3</td><td>Wait 3 seconds for ping reply.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply.	Range									
3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply.												
Range													
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Interval UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].interval Opt: icmp_interval	Defines the interval, in seconds, between multiple pings sent at each health check. <table><tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	1		Range									
1													
Range													
Web: Attempts Before WAN Failover UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[1].health_fail_retries Opt: health fail retries	Defines the number of health check failures before interface is disconnected. <table><tr><td>3</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	3		Range									
3													
Range													
Web: Attempts Before WAN Recovery UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_recovery_retries Opt: health_recovery_retries	Sets the number of health check passes before the interface is considered healthy. This field is not used for a roaming template. <table><tr><td>5</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	5		Range									
5													
Range													
Web: Priority UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].priority Opt: priority	Type the priority number. The higher the value, the higher the priority. This multi-WAN interface priority must be lower than the one specified in the priority field for the PMP interface. <table><tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	0		Range									
0													
Range													
Web: Minimum ifup interval UCI: multiwan.wan.ifup_retry_sec Opt: ifup_retry_sec	Not used for a roaming interface. <table><tr><td>300</td><td>Retry primary interface every 300 seconds.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	300	Retry primary interface every 300 seconds.	Range									
300	Retry primary interface every 300 seconds.												
Range													
Web: Interface Start Timeout UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_timeout_sec Opt: ifup_timeout	Specifies the time in seconds for interface to start up. If it is not up after this period, it will be considered a fail. <table><tr><td>40</td><td>40 seconds</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	40	40 seconds	Range									
40	40 seconds												
Range													

Web: Signal Threshold (dBm) UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].signal_threshold Opt: signal_threshold	Specifies the minimum RSCP signal strength in dBm before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for rscp_dbm in mobile_diagnostics.	
	Range	-46 to -115 dBm
	-115dBm	

Table 94: Information table for roaming interface template

When you have configured your settings, click **Save & Apply**.

In the top menu, select **System -> Reboot**. The System page appears.

Figure 132: The reboot page

Check the **Reboot now** check box and then click **Reboot**.

24.2.8 Scenario 2: PMP + roaming: pre-empt disabled

As in the previous section, multi-WAN connects the PMP interface and uses auto created interfaces for failover.

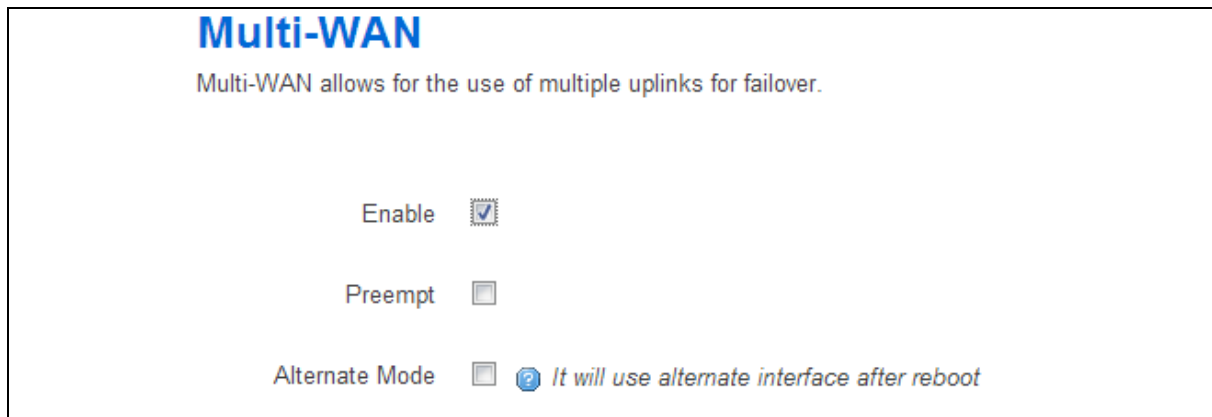
However, in this scenario, the auto-created interface will not be disconnected as soon as the `ifup_retry_sec` expires for the PMP interface. The primary interface will be reconnected when the current auto-created interface fails multiwan health checks after expiration of the `ifup_retry_sec` timer.

Follow the instructions in the section above for creation of the PMP interface, multi-WAN and Mobile Manager roaming interfaces. The only change in configuration compared to the PMP + roaming: pre-empt enabled scenario is that you must disable the pre-empt option in the multi-WAN package.

24.2.8.1 Set multi-WAN options for pre-empt disabled

To disable PMP + roaming pre-empt, in the top menu, select **Network -> Multi-Wan**.

In the Multi-WAN page, ensure Preempt is not selected.



Multi-WAN

Multi-WAN allows for the use of multiple uplinks for failover.

Enable ☒

Preempt ☐

Alternate Mode ☐ ? It will use alternate interface after reboot

Figure 133: The multi-wan page, pre-empt not selected

Click **Save & Apply**.

In the top menu, select **System -> Reboot**. The System Reboot page appears.



System

Reboot

Reboots the operating system of your device

Reboot now ☒

Reboot on 1970 - January - 1 00 : 00 **Reboot**

Powered by LuCI Trunk (trunk+svn8382) 15.00.32 image1 config2

Figure 134: The system reboot page

Check the **Reboot now** check box and then click **Reboot**.

24.2.9 Scenario 3: No PMP + roaming

In this scenario there is no PMP interface that can be used for a connection. The router scans the available mobile networks at boot and sorts the networks according to signal strength.

The network that offers the best signal strength will be the first to connect. Multi-WAN then controls the failover between the available networks.

Multiwan periodically does a health check on the interface. A health check comprises of a configurable combination of the following:

- Interface state
- Pings to an ICMP target
- Signal level checks using signal threshold, RSCP threshold and ECIO threshold option values

A fail for any of the above health checks results in a fail. After a configurable number of health check failures, Multi-WAN will disconnect the failed interface and attempt to connect to the next best roaming interface.

24.2.10 Set options for automatically created interfaces (failover)

In the top menu on the web interface page, select **Services -> Mobile Manager**. The Mobile Manager page appears.

There are three sections:

Basic settings	Configure SMS, select roaming SIM and collect ICCIDs.
Callers	Configure callers that can use SMS.
Roaming Interface Template	Configure common values for interface created by Automatic Operator Selection.

24.2.10.1 Basic settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: SMS Enable UCI: mobile.main.sms Opt: sms	Enables SMS. no Disabled. yes Enabled.
Web: Collect ICCIDs UCI: mobile.main.init_get_iccids Opt: init_get_iccids	Enables or disables integrated circuit card identifier ICCID's collection functionality. If enabled then both SIM 1 and SIM 2 ICCID's will be collected otherwise it will default to SIM 1. This will be display under mobile stats. no Disabled. yes Enabled.
Web: PIN code for SIM1 UCI: mobile.main.sim2pin Opt: sim2pin	Depending on the SIM card specify the pin code for SIM 1. Blank range
Web: PIN code for SIM2 UCI: mobile.main.sim2pin Opt: sim2pin	Depending on the SIM card specify the pin code for SIM 2. Blank Range
Web: HDR Auto User ID UCI: mobile.main.hdr_userid Opt: hdr_userid	AN-PPP user ID. Supported on Cellient (CDMA) modem only. Blank Range

Table 95: Information table for mobile manager basic settings

24.2.10.2 Caller settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Name UCI: mobile.@caller[0].name Opt: name	Name assigned to the caller. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	
Blank					
Range					
Web: Number UCI: mobile.@caller[0].number Opt: number	Number of the caller allowed to SMS the router. Add in specific caller numbers, or use the wildcard symbol. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Blank		Range	
Blank					
Range					
Web: Enable UCI: mobile.@caller[0].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables incoming caller ID. <table border="1"> <tr><td>no</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>yes</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	no	Disabled.	yes	Enabled.
no	Disabled.				
yes	Enabled.				
Web: Respond UCI: mobile.@caller[0].respond Opt: respond	If checked, the router will return an SMS. Select Respond if you want the router to reply. <table border="1"> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 96: Information table for mobile manager caller settings

24.2.11 Roaming interface template

Roaming Interface Template

Common config values for interfaces created by Automatic Operator Selection

[Delete](#)

Interface Signal Sort ☐ ☒ Sort interfaces by signal strength so those having better signal strength at the startup would be tried first

Roaming SIM 1

Firewall Zone ☐ lan: lan: lan1: wlan: wlan1: ☐ wan: wan: ☐ unspecified -or- create:

☒ Append all the generated interfaces to this zone

APN

PIN

PAP/CHAP username

PAP/CHAP password

Service Preference LTE UMTS GPRS CDMA/EV-DO Auto

Health Monitor Interval 10 sec.

Health Monitor ICMP Host(s) DNS Server(s)

Health Monitor Conntrack Test Host(s) Default

Health Monitor ICMP Timeout 3 sec.

Health Monitor ICMP Interval 1 sec.

Attempts Before WAN Failover 3

Attempts Before WAN Recovery 5

Figure 135: The roaming interface template page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																
Web: Interface Signal Sort UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].sort_sig_strength Opt: sort_sig_strength	Sorts interfaces by signal strength priority so those that have a better signal strength will be tried first.																
Web: Roaming SIM UCI: mobile.main.roaming_sim Opt: roaming_sim	Sets which slot to insert roaming SIM card. <table><tr><td>1</td><td>SIM slot 1.</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>SIM slot 2.</td></tr></table>		1	SIM slot 1.	2	SIM slot 2.											
1	SIM slot 1.																
2	SIM slot 2.																
Web: Firewall Zone UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].firewall_zone Opt: firewall_zone	Adds all generated interfaces to this zone. Select existing zone or click unspecified or create to create a new zone.																
Web: APN UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].apn Opt: apn	APN name of Mobile Network Operator.																
Web: PIN UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].pincode Opt: pincode	SIM card's PIN number.																
Web: PAP/CHAP username UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].username Opt: username	Username used to connect to APN.																
Web: PAP/CHAP password UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].password Opt: password	Password used to connect to APN.																
Web: Service Order UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].service_order Opt: service_order	Defines a space separated list of services, in preferred order. Valid options are gprs, umts, lte, auto. If no valid_service order is defined, then the configured Service Type is used. Example: mobile.@roaming_template[0].service_order="gprs umts lte auto" <table><tr><td>Blank</td><td>Automatically detect best service</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>gprs umts lte auto</td></tr></table>		Blank	Automatically detect best service	Range	gprs umts lte auto											
Blank	Automatically detect best service																
Range	gprs umts lte auto																
Web: Health Monitor Interval UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_interval Opt: health_interval	Sets the period to check the health status of the interface. The Health Monitor interval will be used for: - Interface state checks - Ping interval - Signal strength checks <table><tr><td>10</td><td>health check every 10 seconds</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>		10	health check every 10 seconds	Range												
10	health check every 10 seconds																
Range																	
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Host(s) UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].icmp_hosts Opt: icmp_hosts	Specifies target IP address for ICMP packets. <table><tr><th>Web</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>Disable</td><td>Disables the option.</td><td>disable</td></tr><tr><td>DNS servers</td><td>DNS IP addresses will be used.</td><td>dns</td></tr><tr><td>WAN gateway</td><td>Gateway IP address will be used.</td><td>gateway</td></tr><tr><td>custom</td><td>Ability to provide IP address. Multiple pings targets can be entered, comma separated. Pings to both must fail for health check to fail. Example: option icmp hosts '1.1.1.1,2.2.2.2'</td><td></td></tr></table>		Web	Description	UCI	Disable	Disables the option.	disable	DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.	dns	WAN gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.	gateway	custom	Ability to provide IP address. Multiple pings targets can be entered, comma separated. Pings to both must fail for health check to fail. Example: option icmp hosts '1.1.1.1,2.2.2.2'	
Web	Description	UCI															
Disable	Disables the option.	disable															
DNS servers	DNS IP addresses will be used.	dns															
WAN gateway	Gateway IP address will be used.	gateway															
custom	Ability to provide IP address. Multiple pings targets can be entered, comma separated. Pings to both must fail for health check to fail. Example: option icmp hosts '1.1.1.1,2.2.2.2'																

Web: Health Monitor Conntrack Test Host(s) UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].conntrack_hosts Opt: conntrack_hosts	Conntrack is the feature used to track if there is any traffic to and from an IP destination within the health interval. The Conntrack_hosts option defines the IP for conntrack to track, usually the icmp_host IP is used. If traffic to the conntrack_hosts IP is detected then multiwan does not send a ping health check to the icmp_host; otherwise a ping is sent as normal to the icmp_host. By default the conntrack_hosts is checked if the health interval is greater than 5 minutes. This time threshold currently cannot be manipulated. Conntrack is generally used to limit the traffic sent on a GSM network. <table><tr><th>Web</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>Default</td><td>Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Disable</td><td>Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.</td><td>disable</td></tr><tr><td>custom</td><td>Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.</td><td></td></tr></table>	Web	Description	UCI	Default	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.		Disable	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.	disable	custom	Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.	
Web	Description	UCI											
Default	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.												
Disable	Conntrack checks for traffic from icmp_host IP when health_interval is greater than 5 minutes.	disable											
custom	Specifies an IP other than the icmp_host for conntrack to track.												
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Timeout UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].timeout Opt: timeout	Sets ping timeout in seconds. Choose the time in seconds that the health monitor ICMP will timeout at. <table><tr><td>3</td><td>Wait 3 seconds for ping reply.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply.	Range									
3	Wait 3 seconds for ping reply.												
Range													
Web: Health Monitor ICMP Interval UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].interval Opt: icmp_interval	Defines the interval, in seconds, between multiple pings sent at each health check <table><tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	1		Range									
1													
Range													
Web: Attempts Before WAN Failover UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[1].health_fail_retries Opt: health_fail_retries	Defines the number of health check failures before interface is disconnected. <table><tr><td>3</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	3		Range									
3													
Range													
Web: Attempts Before WAN Recovery UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_recovery_retries Opt: health_recovery_retries	Sets the number of health check passes before the interface is considered healthy. This field is not used for a roaming template.												
Web: Priority UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].priority Opt: priority	Type the priority number. The higher the value, the higher the priority. <table><tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	0		Range									
0													
Range													
Web: Minimum ifup interval UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_retry_sec Opt: ifup_retry_sec	Specifies the interval in seconds before retrying the primary interface when pre-empt mode is enabled. <table><tr><td>300</td><td>Retry primary interface every 300 seconds.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	300	Retry primary interface every 300 seconds.	Range									
300	Retry primary interface every 300 seconds.												
Range													
Web: Interface Start Timeout UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_timeout_sec Opt: ifup_timeout	Specifies the time in seconds for interface to start up. If it is not up after this period, it will be considered a fail It is recommended to configure a value greater than 120 seconds. <table><tr><td>40</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	40		Range									
40													
Range													
Web: Signal Threshold (dBm) UCI: mobile.@roaming_template[0].signal_threshold Opt: signal_threshold	Specifies the minimum signal strength in dBm before considering if the interface fails signal health check. Uses the value stored for sig_dbm in mobile diagnostics.-115 dBm. <table><tr><td></td><td>Disabled</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>-46 to -115 dBm</td></tr></table>		Disabled	Range	-46 to -115 dBm								
	Disabled												
Range	-46 to -115 dBm												

Table 97: Information table for roaming interface template

When you have configured your settings, click **Save & Apply**.

24.2.11.1 Set multi-WAN operation

From the top menu, select **Network -> Multi-Wan**. The Multi-WAN page appears.

Figure 136: The multi-WAN page

In the Multi-WAN section click **Add**.

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Enable UCI: multiwan.config.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables multiwan. Select this option. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Preempt UCI: multiwan.config.preempt Opt: pre-empt	Enables or disables pre-emption for multiwan. If enabled the router will keep trying to connect to a higher priority interface depending on timer set by ifup_retry_sec. Leave this option unselected. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Alternate Mode UCI: multiwan.config.alt Opt: alt	Enables or disables alternate mode for multiwan. If enabled the router will use an alternate interface after reboot. Leave this option unselected. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 98: Information table for multi-WAN operation

24.3 Configuring via UCI

24.3.1 PMP + roaming: pre-empt enabled & disabled via UCI

24.3.1.1 PMP interface configuration

The PMP interface is configured in the network package `/etc/config/network`. To view the network configuration file, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export network
package network

config interface 'loopback'
```

```

    option ifname 'lo'
    option proto 'static'
    option ipaddr '127.0.0.1'
    option netmask '255.0.0.0'

config interface 'lan'
    option ifname 'eth0'
    option proto 'static'
    option ipaddr '192.168.100.1'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'

config interface '3g_s1_voda'
    option auto '0'
    option proto '3g'
    option service_order 'auto lte umts gprs'
    option apn 'testIE'
    option username 'test'
    option password 'test'
    option sim '1'          option operator 'vodafone IE'

```

To view uci commands, enter:

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show network
network.loopback=interface
network.loopback.ifname=lo
network.loopback.proto=static
network.loopback.ipaddr=127.0.0.1
network.loopback.netmask=255.0.0.0
network.lan=interface
network.lan.ifname=eth0
network.lan.proto=static
network.lan.ipaddr=192.168.100.1
network.lan.netmask=255.255.255.0
network.3g_s1_voda=interface
network. 3g_s1_voda.auto=0
network. 3g_s1_voda.proto=3g
network. 3g_s1_voda.service_order='auto lte umts gprs'
network. 3g_s1_voda.apn=test IE

```



```

network. 3g_s1_voda.username=test
network. 3g_s1_voda.password=test
network. 3g_s1_voda.sim=1
network. 3g_s1_voda.operator=vodafone IE

```

24.3.1.2 Roaming interface configuration

The roaming interface configurations are stored in the mobile package /etc/config/mobile.

To view the mobile configuration file, enter: root@VA_router:~# uci export mobile

```

config mobile 'main'
    option sms 'yes'
    option roaming_sim '1'
    option init_get_iccids 'no'
config caller
    option name 'Test'
    option number '*'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option respond 'yes'
config roaming_template
    option roaming_sim '1'
    option firewall_zone 'wan'
    option apn 'test IE'
    option username 'test'
    option password 'test'
    option service 'umts'
    option health_interval '4'
    option icmp_hosts 'disable'
    option timeout 'disable'
    option health_fail_retries '3'
    option signal_threshold '-95'
    option priority '5'
    option ifup_retry_sec '120'
    option ifup_timeout_sec '180'
    option defaultroute 'yes'
    option sort_sig_strength 'yes'

```

To view the uci command of package mobile, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~#uci show mobile
mobile.main=mobile
mobile.main.sms=yes
mobile.main.roaming_sim=1
mobile.main.init_get_iccids=no
mobile.@caller[0]=caller
mobile.@caller[0].name=Test
mobile.@caller[0].number=*
mobile.@caller[0].enabled=yes
mobile.@caller[0].respond=yes
mobile.@roaming_template[0]=roaming_template
mobile.@roaming_template[0].roaming_sim=1
mobile.@roaming_template[0].firewall_zone=wan
mobile.@roaming_template[0].apn=test IE
mobile.@roaming_template[0].username=test
mobile.@roaming_template[0].password=test
mobile.@roaming_template[0].service=umts
mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_interval=4
mobile.@roaming_template[0].icmp_hosts=disable
mobile.@roaming_template[0].timeout=disable
mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_fail_retries=3
mobile.@roaming_template[0].signal_threshold=-95
mobile.@roaming_template[0].priority=5
mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_retry_sec=120
mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_timeout_sec=180
mobile.@roaming_template[0].defaultroute=yes
mobile.@roaming_template[0].sort_sig_strength=yes
```

24.3.1.3 Multi-WAN configuration using UCI

The configuration file for package multiwan is stored on **/etc/config/multiwan**

To see configuration file of mobile package, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cat /etc/config/multiwan
config multiwan 'config'
    option enabled '1'
    option preempt '1'
```

```

config interface '3g_s1_voda'
    option health_fail_retries '3'
    option health_interval '3'
    option timeout '1'
    option icmp_hosts 'disable'
    option priority '10'
    option exclusive_group '3g'
    option signal_threshold '-95'
    option ifup_retry_sec '350'
    option ifup_timeout_sec '180'
    option manage_state '1'

```

To view the uci command of package multiwan, enter:

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show multiwan
multiwan.config=multiwan
multiwan.config.enabled=1
multiwan.config.preempt=1
multiwan.main_voda=interface
multiwan.main_voda.health_fail_retries=3
multiwan.main_voda.health_interval=3
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.timeout=1
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.icmp_hosts=disable
multiwan.3g_s1_main _voda.priority=10
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.exclusive_group=3g
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.signal_threshold=-95
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.ifup_retry_sec=350
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.ifup_timeout_sec=180
multiwan.3g_s1_voda.manage_state=1

```

The difference between PMP + roaming: pre-empt enabled and disabled is setting one option parameter. To disable pre-empt, enter:

```

uci set multiwan.config.preempt=0
uci commit

```

Note: available values are:

0	Disabled
1	Enabled

24.4 Configuring no PMP + roaming using UCI

The roaming interface configuration file is stored in the mobile package **/etc/config/mobile**. To view the mobile package, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export mobile

package mobile
config mobile 'main'
    option sms 'yes'
    option roaming_sim '1'
    option debug '1'

config caller
    option name 'Eval'
    option number '*'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option respond 'yes'

config roaming_template
    option roaming_sim '1'
    option firewall_zone 'wan'
    option apn 'test IE'
    option username 'test'
    option password 'test'
    option service 'umts'
    option health_fail_retries '2'
    option signal_threshold '-100'
    option priority '5'
    option ifup_timeout_sec '180'
    option defaultroute 'yes'
    option sort_sig_strength 'yes'
    option ifup_retry_sec '200'
    option health_interval '120'
    option icmp_hosts '172.31.4.129'
    option timeout '3'
    option health_recovery_retries '3'
```

To view the mobile package via uci commands, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show mobile
mobile.main=mobile
mobile.main.sms=yes
mobile.main.roaming_sim=1
mobile.main.debug=1
mobile.@caller[0]=caller
mobile.@caller[0].name=Eval
mobile.@caller[0].number=*
mobile.@caller[0].enabled=yes
mobile.@caller[0].respond=yes
mobile.@roaming_template[0]=roaming_template
mobile.@roaming_template[0].roaming_sim=1
mobile.@roaming_template[0].firewall_zone=wan
mobile.@roaming_template[0].apn=stream.co.uk
mobile.@roaming_template[0].username=default
mobile.@roaming_template[0].password=void
mobile.@roaming_template[0].service=umts
mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_fail_retries=2
mobile.@roaming_template[0].signal_threshold=-100
mobile.@roaming_template[0].priority=5
mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_timeout_sec=180
mobile.@roaming_template[0].defaultroute=yes
mobile.@roaming_template[0].sort_sig_strength=yes
mobile.@roaming_template[0].ifup_retry_sec=200
mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_interval=120
mobile.@roaming_template[0].icmp_hosts=172.31.4.129
mobile.@roaming_template[0].timeout=3
mobile.@roaming_template[0].health_recovery_retries=3
```

The multiwan package is stored on **/etc/config/multiwan**. To view the multiwan package, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export multiwan
package multiwan

config multiwan 'config'
    option enabled 'yes'
```

```

option preempt 'no'
option alt_mode 'no'
To see multiwan package via uci, enter:
root@VA_router:~# uci show multiwan
multiwan.config=multiwan
multiwan.config.enabled=yes
multiwan.config.preempt=no
multiwan.config.alt_mode=no

```

24.5 Automatic operator selection diagnostics via the web interface

24.5.1 Checking the status of the Multi-WAN package

When interfaces are auto-created they are presented in the network and in the Multi-WAN package.

To check interfaces created in the Multi-WAN package, from the top menu, select **Network -> Multi-WAN**.

To check interfaces that have been created in the network package, from the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**.

Interface Overview		
Network	Status	Actions
3G_S1_O2IR 3g-3g_s1_o2ir	RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)	Connect Stop Edit Delete
3G_S1_VODA 3g-3g_s1_voda	Uptime: 7h 31m 26s RX: 62.00 B (8 Pkts.) TX: 23.44 KB (329 Pkts.) IPv4: 10.140.1.23/32	Connect Stop Edit Delete
WCLIENT Client "0"	MAC Address: 00:00:00:00:00:00 RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.) TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)	Connect Stop Edit Delete
LAN eth0	Uptime: 7h 35m 24s MAC Address: 00:E0:C8:10:1A:82 RX: 67.25 KB (502 Pkts.) TX: 132.29 KB (157 Pkts.) IPv4: 10.1.1.9/29	Connect Stop Edit Delete
LOOPBACK lo	Uptime: 7h 35m 30s MAC Address: 00:00:00:00:00:00 RX: 41.72 KB (516 Pkts.) TX: 41.72 KB (516 Pkts.) IPv4: 127.0.0.1/8 IPv6: 0:0:0:0:0:0:1/128	Connect Stop Edit Delete

Figure 137: The interface overview page

To check the status of the interface you are currently using, in the top menu, click **Status**. The Interface Status page appears.

Scroll down to the bottom of the page to view Multi-WAN Stats.

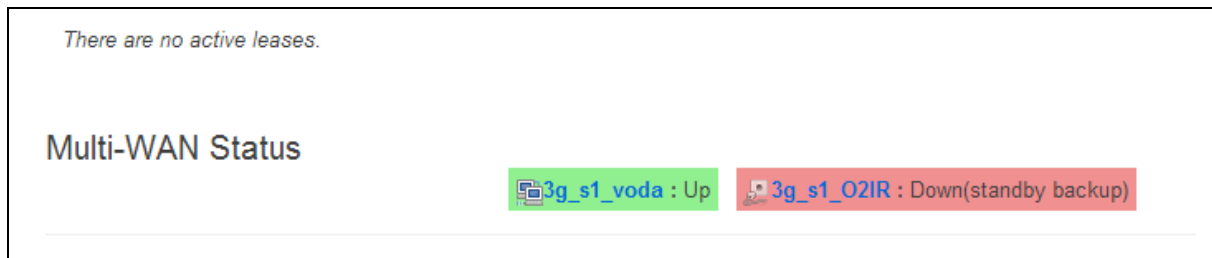


Figure 138: The status page: multi-WAN status section page

24.6 Automatic operator selection diagnostics via UCI

24.6.1 Check roaming interfaces discovered

Roaming interfaces discovered during roaming search are stored at **/var/const_state/roaming**. This file contains a section for each discovered operator/service combination, along with signal strength, if tested. Time taken to scan is also available along with the time of scan and number of services found.

To check roaming interfaces discovered, enter

```
root@VA_router:~# cat /var/const_state/roaming
roaming.main2_voda_lte=service
roaming.main2_voda_lte.name=vodafone IE
roaming.main2_voda_lte.shortname=voda IE
roaming.main2_voda_lte.opnum=27201
roaming.main2_voda_lte.interface=main2_voda
roaming.main2_voda_lte.servicetype=7
roaming.main2_voda_lte.sim=2
roaming.main2_voda_lte.tested=0
roaming.main2_voda_lte.signalstrength=0
roaming.main2_voda_ums=service
roaming.main2_voda_ums.name=vodafone IE
roaming.main2_voda_ums.shortname=voda IE
roaming.main2_voda_ums.opnum=27201
roaming.main2_voda_ums.interface=main2_voda
roaming.main2_voda_ums.servicetype=2
roaming.main2_voda_ums.sim=2
roaming.main2_voda_ums.tested=1
roaming.main2_voda_ums.signalstrength=-79
roaming.main2_voda_gprs=service
roaming.main2_voda_gprs.name=vodafone IE
roaming.main2_voda_gprs.shortname=voda IE
```

```
roaming.main2_voda_gprs.opnum=27201
roaming.main2_voda_gprs.interface=main2_voda
roaming.main2_voda_gprs.servicetype=0
roaming.main2_voda_gprs.sim=2
roaming.main2_voda_gprs.tested=0
roaming.main2_voda_gprs.signalstrength=0
roaming.main2_o2IR_ums.service
roaming.main2_o2IR_ums.name=o2 IRL
roaming.main2_o2IR_ums.shortname=o2 - IRL
roaming.main2_o2IR_ums.opnum=27202
roaming.main2_o2IR_ums.interface=main2_o2IR
roaming.main2_o2IR_ums.servicetype=2
roaming.main2_o2IR_ums.sim=2
roaming.main2_o2IR_ums.tested=1
roaming.main2_o2IR_ums.signalstrength=-85
roaming.main2_o2IR_gprs.service
roaming.main2_o2IR_gprs.name=o2 IRL
roaming.main2_o2IR_gprs.shortname=o2 - IRL
roaming.main2_o2IR_gprs.opnum=27202
roaming.main2_o2IR_gprs.interface=main2_o2IR
roaming.main2_o2IR_gprs.servicetype=0
roaming.main2_o2IR_gprs.sim=2
roaming.main2_o2IR_gprs.tested=0
roaming.main2_o2IR_gprs.signalstrength=0
roaming.status=status
roaming.status.num_services=5
roaming.status.scan_update_time=Thu Feb 22 05:02:38 2018
roaming.status.scan_duration=185
```

Roaming operators are also stored in MIB **vaModemRoaming.mib**.

24.6.2 Check interfaces created in multiwan

To check interfaces created in the multi-WAN package, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cat /var/const_state/multiwan
multiwan.main2_3IRL=interface
multiwan.main2_3IRL.timeout=disable
multiwan.main2_3IRL.health_recovery_retries=5
multiwan.main2_3IRL.exclusive_group=3g
multiwan.main2_3IRL.manage_state=yes
multiwan.main2_3IRL.signal_threshold=-80
multiwan.main2_3IRL.ifup_timeout_sec=150
multiwan.main2_3IRL.icmp_hosts=disable
multiwan.main2_3IRL.health_interval=4
multiwan.main2_3IRL.priority=5
multiwan.main2_3IRL.ifup_retry_sec=120
multiwan.main2_3IRL.health_fail_retries=3
multiwan.main2_o2IR=interface
multiwan.main2_o2IR.timeout=disable
multiwan.main2_o2IR.health_recovery_retries=5
multiwan.main2_o2IR.exclusive_group=3g
multiwan.main2_o2IR.manage_state=yes
multiwan.main2_o2IR.signal_threshold=-80
multiwan.main2_o2IR.ifup_timeout_sec=150
multiwan.main2_o2IR.icmp_hosts=disable
multiwan.main2_o2IR.health_interval=4
multiwan.main2_o2IR.priority=5
multiwan.main2_o2IR.ifup_retry_sec=120
multiwan.main2_o2IR.health_fail_retries=3
```

24.6.3 Check interfaces created in network

To check interfaces created in the network package, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cat /var/const_state/network
network.main2_3IRL=interface
network.main2_3IRL.snmp_alias_ifindex=3
network.main2_3IRL.sim=2
network.main2_3IRL.defaultroute=yes
network.main2_3IRL.username=campen1
```

```
network.main2_3IRL.apn=vpn.amylan.co.uk
network.main2_3IRL.opformat=2
network.main2_3IRL.phy=1-1
network.main2_3IRL.roaming_sim=2
network.main2_3IRL.operator=27205
network.main2_3IRL.password=campen1
network.main2_3IRL.auto=no
network.main2_3IRL.service_order=auto
network.main2_3IRL.proto=3g
network.main2_o2IR=interface
network.main2_o2IR.snmp_alias_ifindex=3
network.main2_o2IR.sim=2
network.main2_o2IR.defaultroute=yes
network.main2_o2IR.username=campen1
network.main2_o2IR.apn=vpn.amylan.co.uk
network.main2_o2IR.opformat=2
network.main2_o2IR.phy=1-1
network.main2_o2IR.roaming_sim=2
network.main2_o2IR.operator=27202
network.main2_o2IR.password=campen1
network.main2_o2IR.auto=no
network.main2_o2IR.service_order=auto
network.main2_o2IR.proto=3g
```

24.6.4 Check current interface

To check the SIM status of the interface you are currently using, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cat /var/const_state/mobile
mobile.3g_1_1=status
mobile.3g_1_1.sim2_iccid=89314404000075920976
mobile.3g_1_1.imei=866802020194140
mobile.3g_1_1.hw_rev=4534B04SIM7100E
mobile.3g_1_1.sim_select=yes
```

To check mobile status of the interface you are currently using, enter

```
root@VA_router:~# cat /var/state/mobile
mobile.3g_1_1=status
mobile.3g_1_1.auto_info=/tmp/3g_1-1.auto
mobile.3g_1_1.scan_update_time=Thu Feb 22 05:02:38 2018
mobile.3g_1_1.imsi=204043726930595
mobile.3g_1_1.imsi2=204043726930595
mobile.3g_1_1.lte_band=3
mobile.3g_1_1.last_error=no network service
mobile.3g_1_1.mcc=272
mobile.3g_1_1.last_error_time=2018-02-22 10:41:27
mobile.3g_1_1.lac=11
mobile.3g_1_1.cell=46542698
mobile.3g_1_1.mnc=05
mobile.3g_1_1.operator_code=27205
mobile.3g_1_1.operator_name=3 IRL DATA ONLY
mobile.3g_1_1.rscp_dbm=-86
mobile.3g_1_1.ecio_db=-8.5
mobile.3g_1_1.sig_dbm=-51
mobile.3g_1_1.temperature=37
mobile.3g_1_1.vam_state=connecting
mobile.3g_1_1.sim_slot=2
mobile.3g_1_1.sim_in=yes
mobile.3g_1_1.technology=UMTS
mobile.3g_1_1.registered=Roaming
mobile.3g_1_1.reg_code=5
mobile.3g_1_1.registered_pkt=Searching
mobile.3g_1_1.reg_code_pkt=2
```

25 Configuring Connection Watch (cwatch)

Connection Watch is a recovery feature to enable dynamic recovery of an interface. You can configure multiple instances of Connection Watch.

Connection Watch consists of the following configurable instances:

- Interface(s) to be monitored
- Failure periods
- Recovery actions

If no data is received over the monitored interface during the configured duration, then the recovery action is performed. If more than one interface is specified under a single Connection Watch, the recovery action will be performed only if no data is received on **both** of the interfaces for the defined period.

Currently three configurable periods and associated recovery actions can be defined.

25.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
cwatch	watch

25.2 Configuring Connection Watch using the web interface

To configure Connection Watch using the web interface, select **Services->Connection Watch**. The Connection Watch page appears.

If no Connection Watch configuration exists in the configuration file, first enter a name for the Connection Watch instance and select **Add**.

Figure 139: The add connection watch configuration page

Connection Watch

Configuration of Connection Watch.

Watch

WATCH_MOBILE

Enabled ☐

Status unknown

Interfaces

☐ LAN1: (no interfaces attached)
 ☐ LAN2:
☐ LAN3:
☒ MOBILE1:
☐ PoAADS1:
☐ loopback:

Failure Time for Action 1

Failure Action 1

Failure Time for Action 2

Failure Action 2

Failure Time for Action 3

Failure Action 3

Figure 140: The connection watch configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Enabled UCI: cwatch.@watch[0].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables a cwatch instance. <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%; text-align: center;">0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Interfaces UCI: cwatch.@watch[0].test_ifaces Opt: test_ifaces	Defines the interface name(s) to monitor. Multiple interfaces are delimited by space separator. Example: option test_ifaces 'WANADSL WANMOBILE` If multiple interfaces are defined the failure action will only be triggered if no traffic is received on all interfaces for the defined period.				
Web: Failure Time for Action 1 UCI: cwatch.@watch[0].failure_time_1 Opt: failure_time_1	Defines a duration to monitor an interface for receive traffic. Duration can be specified in seconds, minutes, hours, days. <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%; text-align: center;">1h</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">Range</td><td>s; m; h; d;</td></tr> </table>	1h		Range	s; m; h; d;
1h					
Range	s; m; h; d;				
Web: Failure Action 1 UCI: cwatch.@watch[0].failure_action_1 Opt: failure_action_1	Defines the failure action associated with failure_time_1. Example to force up interface: option failure_action_1 'ifup wan' <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%; text-align: center;">blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	blank		Range	
blank					
Range					

Web: Failure Time for Action 2 UCI: cwatch.@watch[0].failure_time_2 Opt: failure_time_2	Defines a second duration to monitor an interface for receive traffic. Duration can be specified in seconds, minutes, hours, days. <table border="1"> <tr><td>10h</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>s; m; h; d;</td></tr> </table>	10h		Range	s; m; h; d;
10h					
Range	s; m; h; d;				
Web: Failure Action 2 UCI: cwatch.@watch[0].failure_action_2 Opt: failure_action_2	Defines the failure action associated with failure_time_2. Example to reset usb: option failure_action_1 '/etc/init.d/usb_startup restart' <table border="1"> <tr><td>blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	blank		Range	
blank					
Range					
Web: Failure Time for Action 3 UCI: cwatch.@watch[0].failure_time_3 Opt: failure_time_3	Defines a third duration to monitor an interface for receive traffic. Duration can be specified in seconds, minutes, hours, days. <table border="1"> <tr><td>24h</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>s; m; h; d;</td></tr> </table>	24h		Range	s; m; h; d;
24h					
Range	s; m; h; d;				
Web: Failure Action 3 UCI: cwatch.@watch[0].failure_action_3 Opt: failure_action_3	Defines the failure action associated with failure_time_3. Example to reset usb: option failure_action_3 'reboot' <table border="1"> <tr><td>blank</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	blank		Range	
blank					
Range					

Table 99: Information table for cwatch section

25.3 Configuring cwatch using command line

By default, all cwatch instances are named 'watch', the cwatch instance is identified by @watch then the watch position in the package as a number. For example, for the first route in the package using UCI:

```
cwatch.@watch[0]=watch
cwatch.@watch[0].enabled=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config watch
    option enabled '1'
```

However, to better identify it, we recommend giving the cwatch instance a name. For example, a watch named 'WATCH_MOBILE' will be cwatch.WATCH_MOBILE.

To define a named cwatch instance using UCI, enter:

```
cwatch.WATCH_MOBILE=watch
cwatch.WATCH_MOBILE.enabled=1
```

To define a named cwatch instance using package options, enter:

```
config watch 'WATCH_MOBILE'
    option 'enabled' '1'
```

25.3.1 cwatch using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show cwatch
cwatch.WATCH_MOBILE=watch
cwatch.WATCH_MOBILE.enabled=1
cwatch.WATCH_MOBILE.test_ifaces=wan
cwatch.WATCH_MOBILE.failure_time_1=1h
cwatch.WATCH_MOBILE.failure_action_1=ifup wan
cwatch.WATCH_MOBILE.failure_time_2=10h
cwatch.WATCH_MOBILE.failure_action_2=/etc/init.d/usb_startup restart
cwatch.WATCH_MOBILE.failure_time_3=24h
cwatch.WATCH_MOBILE.failure_action_3=reboot
```

25.3.2 cwatch using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export cwatch
package cwatch

config watch 'WATCH_MOBILE'
    option enabled '1'
    option test_ifaces wan
    option failure_time_1 '1h'
    option failure_action_1 'ifup wan'
    option failure_time_2 '10h'
    option failure_action_2 '/etc/init.d/usb_startup restart'
    option failure_time_3 '24h'
    option failure_action_3 'reboot'
```

25.4 cwatch diagnostics

25.4.1 Syslog

A syslog message will be generated when cwatch starts:

```
cwatch[x]: cwatch configuration OK. Entering main loop...
```

Syslog messages will be generated when the failure action is triggered:

```
cwatch[x]: Watch WATCH_MOBILE executed action 1
cwatch[x]: Watch WATCH_MOBILE executed action 2
cwatch[x]: Watch WATCH_MOBILE executed action 3
```

26 Configuring DHCP server and DNS (Dnsmasq)

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server is responsible for assigning IP addresses to hosts. IP addresses can be given out on different interfaces and different subnets. You can manually configure lease time as well as setting static IP to host mappings.

Domain Name Server (DNS) is responsible for resolution of IP addresses to domain names on the internet.

Dnsmasq is the application which controls DHCP and DNS services. Dnsmasq has two sections; one to specify general DHCP and DNS settings and one or more DHCP pools to define DHCP operation on the desired network interface.

26.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
dhcp	dnsmasq
	dhcp
	host

26.2 Configuring DHCP and DNS using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> DHCP and DNS**. The DHCP and DNS page appears. There are three sections: Server Settings, Active Leases, and Static Leases.

Status ▾ System ▾ Services ▾ Network ▾ Logout

AUTO REFRESH ON

DHCP and DNS

Dnsmasq is a combined DHCP-Server and DNS-Forwarder for NAT firewalls

Server Settings

General Settings
Resolve and Hosts Files
TFTP Settings
Advanced Settings

Domain required ☐ [Don't forward DNS-Requests without DNS-Name](#)

Authoritative ☐ [This is the only DHCP in the local network](#)

Interfaces ☐ [lan](#) ☐ [lan2](#) ☐ [loopback](#) ☐ [wan](#) ☐ [wan1](#)

[Select interfaces to be served by dnsmasq. If none selected dnsmasq will serve on all interfaces](#)

Local server [Local domain specification. Names matching this domain are never forwarded and resolved from DHCP or hosts files only](#)

Local domain [Local domain suffix appended to DHCP names and hosts file entries](#)

Log queries ☐ [Write received DNS requests to syslog](#)

DNS forwardings [List of DNS servers to forward requests to. To forward only specific domain requests use '/' syntax](#)

Rebind protection ☒ [Discard upstream RFC1918 responses](#)

Allow localhost ☒ [Allow upstream responses in the 127.0.0.0/8 range, e.g. for RBL services](#)

Domain whitelist [List of domains to allow RFC1918 responses for](#)

Active Leases

Hostname	IPv4-Address	MAC-Address	Leasetime remaining
There are no active leases.			

Static Leases

Static leases are used to assign fixed IP addresses and symbolic hostnames to DHCP clients. They are also required for non-dynamic interface configurations where only hosts with a corresponding lease are served. Use the Add Button to add a new lease entry. The MAC-Address identifies the host, the IPv4-Address specifies to the fixed address to use and the Hostname is assigned as symbolic name to the requesting host.

Hostname	MAC-Address	IPv4-Address
This section contains no values yet		

Add

Save & Apply
Save
Reset

Figure 141: The DHCP and DNS page

26.2.1 Dnsmasq: general settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Domain required UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].domainneeded Opt: domainneeded	Defines whether to forward DNS requests without a DNS name. Dnsmasq will never forward queries for plain names, without dots or domain parts, to upstream nameservers. If the name is not known from /etc/hosts or DHCP then a "not found" answer is returned. <table> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Authoritative UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].authoritative Opt: authoritative	Forces authoritative mode. This speeds up DHCP leasing. Used if this is the only server in the network. <table> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Interfaces UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].interface Opt: list interface	Defines the list of interfaces to be served by dnsmasq. If you do not select a specific interface, dnsmasq will serve on all interfaces. Configured interfaces are shown via the web GUI. <table> <tr> <td>Lan</td><td>Serve only on LAN interface.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Lan	Serve only on LAN interface.	Range	
Lan	Serve only on LAN interface.				
Range					
Web: Local Server UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].local Opt: local	Specifies the local domain. Names matching this domain are never forwarded and are resolved from DHCP or host files only. <table> <tr> <td>/lan/</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/lan/		Range	
/lan/					
Range					
Web: Local Domain UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].domain Opt: domain	Specifies local domain suffix appended to DHCP names and hosts file entries. <table> <tr> <td>lan</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	lan		Range	
lan					
Range					
Web: Log Queries UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].logqueries Opt: logqueries	Writes received DNS requests to syslog. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: DNS Forwardings UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].server Opt: list server	List of DNS servers to forward requests to. To forward specific domain requests only, use // syntax. When using UCI, enter multiple servers with a space between them. <table> <tr> <td></td><td>No DNS server configured.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>		No DNS server configured.	Range	
	No DNS server configured.				
Range					
Web: Rebind Protection UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].rebind_protection Opt: rebind_protection	Enables DNS rebind attack protection by discarding upstream RFC1918 responses. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Allow Localhost UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].rebind_localhost Opt: rebind_localhost	Defines whether to allow upstream responses in the 127.0.0.0/8 range. This is required for DNS-based blacklist services. Only takes effect if rebind protection is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Domain Whitelist UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].rebind_domain Opt: list rebind_domain	Defines the list of domains to allow RFC1918 responses to. Only takes effect if rebind protection is enabled. When using UCI multiple servers, enter the domains with a space between them. <table> <tr> <td></td><td>No list configured.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>		No list configured.	Range	
	No list configured.				
Range					

Table 100: Information table for general server settings

26.2.2 Dnsmasq: resolv and host files

DHCP and DNS
Dnsmasq is a combined DHCP-Server and DNS-Forwarder for NAT firewalls

Server Settings

[General Settings](#) [Resolv and Hosts Files](#) [TFTP Settings](#) [Advanced Settings](#)

Use `/etc/ethers` ☒ [Read /etc/ethers](#) to configure the DHCP-Server

Leasefile: [file where given DHCP-leases will be stored](#)

Ignore resolve file: ☐

Resolve file: [local DNS file](#)

Ignore Hosts files: ☐

Additional Hosts files:

Figure 142: The resolv and host files section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Use <code>/etc/ethers</code> UCI: <code>dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].readethers</code> Opt: <code>readethers</code>	Defines whether static lease entries are read from <code>/etc/ethers</code> . <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Leasefile UCI: <code>dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].leasefile</code> Opt: <code>leasefile</code>	Defines the file where given DHCP leases will be stored. The DHCP lease file allows leases to be picked up again if dnsmasq is restarted. <table border="1"> <tr> <td><code>/tmp/dhcp.leases</code></td><td>Store DHCP leases in this file.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	<code>/tmp/dhcp.leases</code>	Store DHCP leases in this file.	Range	
<code>/tmp/dhcp.leases</code>	Store DHCP leases in this file.				
Range					
Web: Ignore resolve file UCI: <code>dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].noresolv</code> Opt: <code>noresolv</code>	Defines whether to use the local DNS file for resolving DNS. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Use local DNS file.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Ignore local DNS file.</td></tr> </table>	0	Use local DNS file.	1	Ignore local DNS file.
0	Use local DNS file.				
1	Ignore local DNS file.				
Web: Resolve file UCI: <code>dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].resolvefile</code> Opt: <code>resolvefile</code>	Defines the local DNS file. <table border="1"> <tr> <td><code>/tmp/resolv.conf.auto</code></td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	<code>/tmp/resolv.conf.auto</code>		Range	
<code>/tmp/resolv.conf.auto</code>					
Range					
Web: Ignore Hosts files UCI: <code>dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].nohosts</code> Opt: <code>nohosts</code>	Defines whether to use local host's files for resolving DNS. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Use local hosts file.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Ignore local hosts file.</td></tr> </table>	0	Use local hosts file.	1	Ignore local hosts file.
0	Use local hosts file.				
1	Ignore local hosts file.				
Web: Additional Hosts files UCI: <code>dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].addnhosts</code> Opt: <code>list addnhosts</code>	Defines local host's files. When using UCI multiple servers should be entered with a space between them.				

Table 101: Information table for resolv and host files section

26.2.3 Dnsmasq: TFTP settings

The screenshot shows the 'DHCP and DNS' configuration page. At the top is a navigation bar with links: Status, System, Services, Network, and Logout. Below this is the title 'DHCP and DNS' and a subtitle 'Dnsmasq is a combined DHCP-Server and DNS-Forwarder for NAT firewalls'. The 'Server Settings' section is active, with tabs for 'General Settings', 'Resolv and Hosts Files', 'TFTP Settings', and 'Advanced Settings'. Under 'TFTP Settings', there are three options: 'Enable TFTP server' (checked), 'TFTP server root' (set to '/'), and 'Network boot image' (set to 'pxelinux.0'). Each input field has a help icon and a description: 'Root directory for files served via TFTP' and 'Filename of the boot image advertised to clients'.

Figure 143: The TFTP settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Enable TFTP server UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].enable_tftp Opt: enable_tftp	Enables the TFTP server. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: TFTP server Root UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].tftp_root Opt: tftp_root	Defines root directory for file served by TFTP.				
Web: Network boot image UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].dhcp_boot Opt: dhcp_boot	Defines the filename of the boot image advertised to clients. This specifies BOOTP options, in most cases just the file name.				

Table 102: Information table for TFTP settings

26.2.4 Dnsmasq: advanced settings

Status ▾ System ▾ Services ▾ Network ▾ Logout

DHCP and DNS

Dnsmasq is a combined DHCP-Server and DNS-Forwarder for NAT firewalls

Server Settings

General Settings
Resolv and Hosts Files
TFTP Settings
Advanced Settings

Filter private ☒ [Do not forward reverse lookups for local networks](#)

Filter useless ☐ [Do not forward requests that cannot be answered by public name servers](#)

Localise queries ☒ [Localise hostname depending on the requesting subnet if multiple IPs are available](#)

Expand hosts ☒ [Add local domain suffix to names served from hosts files](#)

No negative cache ☐ [Do not cache negative replies, e.g. for not existing domains](#)

Strict order ☐ [DNS servers will be queried in the order of the resolvfile](#)

Bogus NX Domain Override
[List of hosts that supply bogus NX domain results](#)

DNS server port [Listening port for inbound DNS queries](#)

DNS query port [Fixed source port for outbound DNS queries](#)

Max. DHCP leases [Maximum allowed number of active DHCP leases](#)

Max. EDNS0 packet size [Maximum allowed size of EDNS.0 UDP packets](#)

Max. concurrent queries [Maximum allowed number of concurrent DNS queries](#)

Figure 144: The advanced settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Filter private UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0]. Opt: boguspriv	Enables disallow option for forwarding reverse lookups for local networks. This rejects reverse lookups to private IP ranges where no corresponding entry exists in /etc/hosts. <table> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Filter useless UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].filterwin2k Opt: filterwin2k	Enables disallow option for forwarding requests that cannot be answered by public name servers. Normally enabled for dial on demand interfaces. <table> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				

Web: Localise queries UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].localise_queries Opt: localise_queries	Defines whether to use an IP address to match the incoming interface if multiple addresses are assigned to a host name in /etc/hosts. <table> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Expand hosts UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].expandhosts Opt: expandhosts	Adds a local domain suffix to names served from host files. <table> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: No negative cache UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].nonegcache Opt: nonegcache	Enable this to stop caching of negative replies. For example, non-existing domains. <table> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Strict order UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].strictorder Opt: strictorder	Enable this to query DNS servers in the order of the resolve file. <table> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Bogus NX Domain override UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].bogusnxdomain Opt: list bogusnxdomain	A list of hosts that supply bogus NX domain results. When using UCI multiple servers, enter the server names with a space between them. <table> <tr><td>Empty list</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Empty list		Range	
Empty list					
Range					
Web: DNS server port UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].port Opt: port	Listening port for inbound DNS queries. <table> <tr><td>53</td><td>Set to 0 to disable DNS functionality.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 - 65535</td></tr> </table>	53	Set to 0 to disable DNS functionality.	Range	0 - 65535
53	Set to 0 to disable DNS functionality.				
Range	0 - 65535				
Web: DNS query port UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].queryport Opt: queryport	Defines fixed source port for outbound DNS queries. <table> <tr><td>any</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>any; 0 - 65535</td></tr> </table>	any		Range	any; 0 - 65535
any					
Range	any; 0 - 65535				
Web: Max DHCP leases UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].dhcpleasemax Opt: dhcpleasemax	Defines the maximum allowed number of active DHCP leases. <table> <tr><td>unlimited</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	unlimited		Range	
unlimited					
Range					
Web: Max EDNS0 packet size UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].ednspacket_max Opt: ednspacket_max	Defines the maximum allowed size of EDNS.0 UDP packets in bytes. <table> <tr><td>1280</td><td>1280 bytes</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	1280	1280 bytes	Range	
1280	1280 bytes				
Range					
Web: Max concurrent queries UCI: dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].dnsforwardmax Opt: dnsforwardmax	Maximum allowed number of concurrent DNS queries. <table> <tr><td>150</td><td>1280 bytes</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	150	1280 bytes	Range	
150	1280 bytes				
Range					

Table 103: Information table for advanced settings

26.2.5 Active leases

This section displays all currently active leases.

Active Leases			
Active Leases			
Hostname	IPv4-Address	MAC-Address	Leasetime remaining
There are no active leases.			

Figure 145: The active leases section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Hostname UCI: n/a Opt: n/a	Displays the hostname of the client.
Web: IPv4 Address UCI: n/a Opt: n/a	Displays the IP address of the client.
Web: MAC Address UCI: n/a Opt: n/a	Displays the MAC address of the client.
Web: Lease time remaining UCI: n/a Opt: n/a	Displays the remaining lease time.

Table 104: Information table for active leases section

26.2.6 Static leases

Use static leases to assign fixed IP addresses and symbolic hostnames to DHCP clients. Static leases are also required for non-dynamic interface configurations where only hosts with a corresponding lease are served. Click **Add** to add a new lease entry.

Figure 146: The static leases section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Hostname UCI: dhcp.@host[0].name Opt: name	Defines the optional symbolic name to assign to this static DHCP entry. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: MAC Address UCI: dhcp.@host[0].mac Opt: mac	Defines the hardware address that identifies the host.				
Web: IPv4 Address UCI: dhcp.@host[0].ip Opt: ip	The IPv4 address specifies the fixed address to use for this host.				

Table 105: Information table for static leases

26.2.7 Configuring DHCP pools using the web

DHCP pools are configured via the interface configuration.

Select **Network -> Interfaces**. Choose the interface you want to add the DHCP pool to and select **Edit**. Scroll to **DHCP Server** section.

Note: this section is only available for interfaces with a static IP address.

To assign a DHCP Server to the interface, click **Setup DHCP Server**.



Figure 147: The DHCP Server settings section

The DHCP Server configuration options will appear. The DHCP Server is divided into two sub sections: General Setup and Advanced Settings.

26.2.7.1 DHCP server: general setup

Figure 148: The DHCP server general setup section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Ignore interface UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].ignore Opt: ignore	Defines whether the DHCP pool should be enabled for this interface. If not specified for the DHCP pool then the default is disabled i.e. dhcp pool enabled.				
	<table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Web: Mode UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].mode Opt: mode	Defines whether the DHCP pool should be enabled for this interface. If not specified for the DHCP pool then the default is disabled i.e. dhcp pool enabled. <table><tr><th>Web</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>DHCPv4</td><td>DHCP for IPv4</td><td>ipv4</td></tr><tr><td>DHCPv6</td><td>DHCP for IPv6</td><td>ipv6_dhcp</td></tr><tr><td>IPv6 Router Advertisements</td><td>IPv6 RA</td><td>ipv6_ra</td></tr><tr><td>DHCPv6 Prefix Delegation</td><td>DHCPv6 prefix delegation</td><td>ipv6_pd</td></tr></table>	Web	Description	UCI	DHCPv4	DHCP for IPv4	ipv4	DHCPv6	DHCP for IPv6	ipv6_dhcp	IPv6 Router Advertisements	IPv6 RA	ipv6_ra	DHCPv6 Prefix Delegation	DHCPv6 prefix delegation	ipv6_pd
Web	Description	UCI														
DHCPv4	DHCP for IPv4	ipv4														
DHCPv6	DHCP for IPv6	ipv6_dhcp														
IPv6 Router Advertisements	IPv6 RA	ipv6_ra														
DHCPv6 Prefix Delegation	DHCPv6 prefix delegation	ipv6_pd														
Web: Start UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].start Opt: start	Defines the offset from the network address for the start of the DHCP pool. Example: for network address 192.168.100.10/24, start=100, DHCP allocation pool will start at 192.168.100.100. For subnets greater than /24, it may be greater than 255 to span subnets. Alternatively, specify in IP address notation using the wildcard '0' where the octet is required to inherit bits from the interface IP address. Example: to define a DHCP scope starting from 10.1.20.0 on an interface with 10.1.0.0/16 address, set start to 0.0.20.1 <table><tr><td>100</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	100		Range												
100																
Range																
Web: Limit UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].limit Opt: limit	Defines the size of the address pool. Example: For network address 192.168.100.10/24, start=100, limit=150, DHCP allocation pool will be .100 to .249 <table><tr><td>150</td><td>Limits DHCP allocation pool to 150 available address.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>0 – 255</td></tr></table>	150	Limits DHCP allocation pool to 150 available address.	Range	0 – 255											
150	Limits DHCP allocation pool to 150 available address.															
Range	0 – 255															
Web: Leasetime UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].leasetime Opt: leasetime	Defines the lease time of addresses handed out to clients, for example 12h or 30m. <table><tr><td>12h</td><td>12 hours</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr></table>	12h	12 hours	Range												
12h	12 hours															
Range																
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].interface Opt: interface	Defines the interface that is served by this DHCP pool. This must be one of the configured interfaces. When configured through the web UI this will be automatically populated with the interface name.															

Table 106: Information table for DHCP server general setup page

26.2.7.2 DHCP server: advanced settings

DHCP Server

General Setup

Advanced Settings

Dynamic DHCP

☒

Dynamically allocate DHCP addresses for clients. If disabled, only clients having static leases will be served.

Force

☐

Force DHCP on this network even if another server is detected.

IPv4-Netmask

Override the netmask sent to clients. Normally it is calculated from the subnet that is served.

DHCP-Options

Define additional DHCP options, for example "6,192.168.2.1,192.168.2.2" which advertises different DNS servers to clients.

Figure 149: The DHCP server advanced settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Dynamic DHCP UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].dynamicdhcp Opt: dynamicdhcp	Defines whether to dynamically allocate DHCP leases.	
	1	Dynamically allocate leases.
	0	Use /etc/ethers file for serving DHCP leases.
Web: Force UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].force Opt: force	Forces DHCP serving on the specified interface even if another DHCP server is detected on the same network segment.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: IPv4-Netmask UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].netmask Opt: netmask	Defines a netmask sent to clients that overrides the netmask as calculated from the interface subnet.	
		Use netmask from interface subnet.
	Range	
Web: DHCP-Options UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].dhcp_option Opt: list dhcp_option	Defines additional options to be added for this dhcp pool. For example, with 'list dhcp_option 26,1470' or 'list dhcp_option mtu, 1470' you can assign a specific MTU per DHCP pool. Your client must accept the MTU option for this to work. Options that contain multiple values should be separated by a comma. Example: list dhcp_option 6,192.168.2.1,192.168.2.2	
		No options defined.
	Syntax	Option_number, option_value
Web: n/a UCI: dhcp.@dhcp[x].networkid Opt: networkid	Assigns a network-id to all clients that obtain an IP address from this pool.	
		Use network from interface subnet.
	Range	

Table 107: Information table for DHCP advanced settings page

26.3 Configuring DHCP and DNS using command line

Possible section types of the DHCP configuration file include Common Options (dnsmasq), DHCP Pools (dhcp) and Static Leases (host). Not all types may appear in the file and most of them are only needed for special configurations.

26.3.1 Dnsmasq using command line

The configuration section type **dnsmasq** determines values and options relevant to the overall operation of dnsmasq and the DHCP options on all interfaces served.

26.3.1.1 Dnsmasq using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show dhcp
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0]=dnsmasq
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].domainneeded=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].boguspriv=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].filterwin2k=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].localise_queries=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].logqueries=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].rebind_protection=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].rebind_localhost=1
```

```

dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].local=/lan/
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].domain=lan
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].expandhosts=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].nonegcache=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].authoritative=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].readethers=1
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].leasefile=/tmp/dhcp.leases
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].noresolve=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].resolvfile=/tmp/resolv.conf.auto
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].nohosts=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].addnhosts=hostfile1 hostfile2
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].interface=lan
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].server=1.1.1.1 2.2.2.2
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].rebind domain=tes.domain
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].enable_tftp=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].tftp_root=/tmp/tftp
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].dhcp_boot=boot.image
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].nonegcache=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].strictorder=0
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].bogusnxdomain=1.1.1.1 2.2.2.2
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].port=53
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].dhcp_lease_max=150
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].edns_packet_max=1280
dhcp.@dnsmasq[0].dns_forward_max=150

```

26.3.1.2 Dnsmasq using package options

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show dhcp
config 'dnsmasq'
    option domainneeded '1'
        option rebind_protection '1'
        option rebind_localhost '1'
    option local '/lan/'
    option domain 'lan'
    option authoritative '1'
    option readethers '1'
    option leasefile '/tmp/dhcp.leases'
    list interface 'lan'

```

```

list server '1.2.3.4'
list server '4.5.6.7'
list rebind_domain 'test1.domain'
list rebind_domain 'tes2.domain'
option logqueries '1'
option resolvfile '/tmp/resolv1.conf.auto'
list addnhosts 'hosts1'
list addnhosts 'hosts2'
option enable_tftp '1'
option tftp_root '/tmp/tftp'
option dhcp_boot 'boot.image'
option filterwin2k '1'
option nonegcache '1'
option strictorder '1'
list bogusnxdomain '1.1.1.1 '
list bogusnxdomain '2.2.2.2'
option port '53'
option dhcp_leasemax '150'
option edns_packet_max '1280'
option dns_forward_max '150'

```

Options `local` and `domain` enable dnsmasq to serve entries in `/etc/hosts` as well as the DHCP client's names as if they were entered into the LAN DNS domain.

For options `domainneeded`, `boguspriv`, `localise_queries`, and `expandhosts` make sure that requests for these local host names (and the reverse lookup) never get forwarded to the upstream DNS servers.

26.3.2 Configuring static leases using command line

Static leases are configured under the **dhcp** package, stored at **/etc/config/dhcp**.

By default, all static leases instances are named **host**. The static lease is identified by `@host` then the static lease position in the package as a number. For example, for the first static lease in the package using UCI:

```

dhcp.@host[0]=dhcp
dhcp.@host[0].name=mypc

```

Or using package options:

```

config host
    option name 'mypc'

```

However, to better identify, it is recommended to give the static lease instance a name. For example, to create a static instance named mypc.

To define a named static lease instance using UCI, enter:

```
dhcp.mypc=host
dhcp.mypc.name=mypc
```

To define a named static lease instance using package options, enter:

```
config dhcp 'mypc'
    option name 'mypc'
```

The following example adds the fixed IP address 192.168.1.2 and the name "mypc" for a machine with the (Ethernet) hardware address 00:11:22:33:44:55.

26.3.2.1 Static leases using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show dhcp.mypc
dhcp.mypc=host
dhcp.mypc.ip=192.168.1.2
dhcp.mypc.mac=00:11:22:33:44:55
dhcp.mypc.name=mypc
```

26.3.2.2 Static leases using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export dhcp
package dhcp
.....
config host 'mypc'
    option ip          '192.168.1.2'
    option mac         '00:11:22:33:44:55'
    option name        'mypc'
```

26.3.3 Configuring DHCP pools using command line

DHCP pools are configured under the dhcp package, stored at **/etc/config/dhcp**.

Sections of the type **dhcp** specify per interface lease pools and settings. Typically, there is at least one section of this type present in the **/etc/config/dhcp** file to cover the LAN interface.

You can disable a lease pool for a specific interface by specifying the ignore option in the corresponding section.

You can configure multiple dhcp pools.

By default, all dhcp pool instances are named 'dhcp', it is identified by @dhcp then the dhcp pool position in the package as a number. For example, for the first dhcp pool in the package using UCI:

```
dhcp.@dhcp[0]=dhcp
dhcp.@dhcp[0].interface=LAN
```

Or using package options:

```
config dhcp
    option interface 'LAN'
```

However, to better identify, it is recommended to give the dhcp pool instance a name. For example, to create a dhcp pool instance named LAN.

To define a named dhcp pool instance using UCI, enter:

```
dhcp.LAN=dhcp
dhcp.LAN.interface=LAN
```

To define a named dhcp pool instance using package options, enter:

```
config dhcp 'LAN'
    option interface 'LAN'
```

26.3.3.1 Configuring DHCP pools using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show dhcp.LAN
dhcp.LAN=dhcp
dhcp.LAN.interface=lan
dhcp.LAN.start=100
dhcp.LAN.limit=150
dhcp.LAN.leasetime=12h
dhcp.LAN.ignore=0
```

26.3.3.2 Configuring DHCP pools using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export dhcp
package dhcp
....
config 'dhcp' 'LAN'
    option 'interface'    'LAN'
    option 'start'        '100'
    option 'limit'        '150'
    option 'leasetime'    '12h'
    option ignore         0
```

27 Configuring DHCP client

This section describes how to configure an interface as a DHCP client. This section will only detail the configuration for DHCP client. For information on how to configure other interface options such as firewall zone, mapping of switch ports, etc, refer to standard interface configuration document.

27.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
network	interface

27.2 Configuring DHCP client using the web interface

DHCP client is configured under the interface configuration by setting the interface protocol to DHCP Client. To create and edit interfaces via the web interface, in the top menu, click **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces overview page appears.

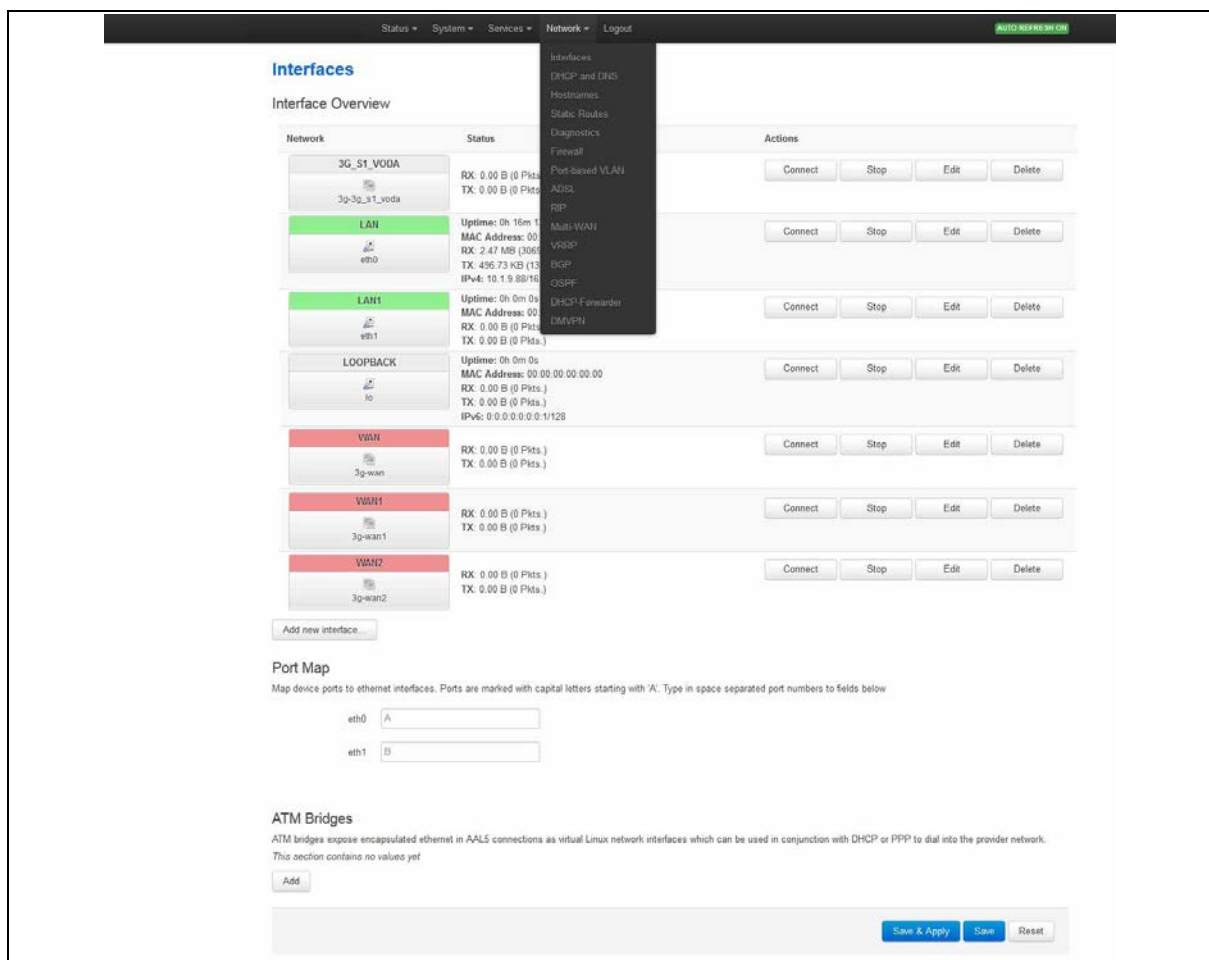


Figure 150: The interfaces overview page

There are three sections in the Interfaces page.

Section	Description
Interface Overview	Shows existing interfaces and their status. You can create new, and edit existing interfaces here.
Port Map	In this section you can map device ports to Ethernet interfaces. Ports are marked with capital letters starting with 'A'. Type in space-separated port character in the port map fields.
ATM Bridges	ATM bridges expose encapsulated Ethernet in AAL5 connections as virtual Linux network interfaces, which can be used in conjunction with DHCP or PPP to dial into the provider network.

27.2.1 Editing an existing interface for DHCP client

To edit an existing interface, from the interface tabs at the top of the page, select the interface you wish to configure. Alternatively, click **Edit** in the interface's row.

27.2.2 Creating a new interface for DHCP client

To create a new interface, in the Interface Overview section, click **Add new interface**. The Create Interface page appears.

Figure 151: The create interface page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description		
Web: Name of the new interface UCI: network.<if name> Opt: config interface	Assigns a logical name to the interface. The network interface section will assign this name (<if name>). Type the name of the new interface. Allowed characters are A-Z, a-z, 0-9 and _		
Web: Protocol of the new interface UCI: network.<if name>.proto Opt: proto	Specifies what protocol the interface will operate on. Select DHCP Client .		
	Option	Description	UCI
	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	Static
	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	dhcp
	Unmanaged	Unspecified	Empty
	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.	
	IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.	
	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	
	IOT		
	L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol	
	PPP	Point to Point Protocol	
	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	
	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	
	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.	
Web: Create a bridge over multiple interfaces UCI: network.<if name>.type Opt: type	If you select this option, then the new logical interface created will act as a bridging interface between the chosen existing physical interfaces.		
	Empty		
	Bridge	Configures a bridge over multiple interfaces.	
Web: Cover the following interface UCI: network.<if name>.ifname Opt: ifname	Physical interface name to assign to this logical interface. If creating a bridge over multiple interfaces select two interfaces to bridge. When using UCI, the interface names should be separated by a space e.g. option ifname 'eth2 eth3'.		

Table 108: Information table for the create new interface page

Click **Submit**. The Interface configuration page appears. There are three sections:

Section	Description
Common Configuration	Configure the interface settings such as protocol, IP address, gateway, netmask, custom DNS servers, MTU and firewall configuration.
IP-Aliases	Assign multiple IP addresses to the interface.
DHCP Server	Configure DHCP server settings for this interface.

27.2.3 Common configuration

The common configuration section has four sub sections.

Section	Description
General Setup	Configure the basic interface settings such as protocol, IP address, gateway, netmask, custom DNS servers.
Advanced Settings	'Bring up on boot', 'Monitor interface state', Override MAC address, Override MTU and 'Use gateway metric'.
Physical Settings	Bridge interfaces, VLAN PCP to SKB priority mapping.
Firewall settings	Assign a firewall zone to the interface.

Only **General setup** and **Advanced Settings** have DHCP client option configuration options

27.2.3.1 Common configuration – general setup

Common Configuration

General Setup | Advanced Settings | Physical Settings | Firewall Settings

Status

eth3 **MAC Address:** 00:E0:C8:D3:18:20
RX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)
TX: 0.00 B (0 Pkts.)

Protocol DHCP client ▼

Hostname to send when requesting DHCP VA_router

Accept router advertisements ☐

Send router solicitations ☐

Figure 152: The interface general setup configuration page for DHCP client protocol

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																										
Web: Status	Shows the current status of the interface.																										
Web: Protocol UCI: network.<if name>.proto Opt: proto	Protocol type. The interface protocol may be one of the options shown below. The protocol selected in the previous step will be displayed as default but can be changed if required. Select DHCP Client. <table> <tr> <th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>Static</td><td>Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DHCP Client</td><td>Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Unmanaged</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)</td><td>Used with tunnel brokers.</td></tr> <tr> <td>IPv6-over-IPv4</td><td>Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.</td></tr> <tr> <td>GRE</td><td>Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>IOT</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>L2TP</td><td>Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPP</td><td>Point-to-Point protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoE</td><td>PPP over Ethernet</td></tr> <tr> <td>PPPoATM</td><td>PPP over ATM</td></tr> <tr> <td>LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO</td><td>CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.</td></tr> </table>	Option	Description	Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.	DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.	Unmanaged	Unspecified	IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.	IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.	GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol	IOT		L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.	PPP	Point-to-Point protocol	PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet	PPPoATM	PPP over ATM	LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.
Option	Description																										
Static	Static configuration with fixed address and netmask.																										
DHCP Client	Address and netmask are assigned by DHCP.																										
Unmanaged	Unspecified																										
IPv6-in-IPv4 (RFC4213)	Used with tunnel brokers.																										
IPv6-over-IPv4	Stateless IPv6 over IPv4 transport.																										
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation protocol																										
IOT																											
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol.																										
PPP	Point-to-Point protocol																										
PPPoE	PPP over Ethernet																										
PPPoATM	PPP over ATM																										
LTE/UMTS/GPRS/EV-DO	CDMA, UMTS or GPRS connection using an AT-style 3G modem.																										
Web: Hostname to send when requesting DHCP UCI: network.<if name>.hostname Opt: hostname	Defines the hostname to include in DHCP requests																										
Web: Accept router advertisements UCI: network.<if name>.accept_ra Opt: accept_ra	Specifies whether to accept IPv6 Router Advertisements on this interface (optional). Note: default is 1 if protocol is set to DHCP, otherwise the setting defaults to 0. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Does not accept IPv6 router advertisements.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Accept IPv6 router advertisements.</td></tr> </table>	0	Does not accept IPv6 router advertisements.	1	Accept IPv6 router advertisements.																						
0	Does not accept IPv6 router advertisements.																										
1	Accept IPv6 router advertisements.																										
Web: Send router solicitations UCI: network.<if name>.send_rs Opt: send_rs	Specifies whether to send router Solicitations on this interface (optional). Note: defaults to 1 for Static protocol, otherwise the setting defaults to 0. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Do not send router solicitations</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Send router solicitations</td></tr> </table>	0	Do not send router solicitations	1	Send router solicitations																						
0	Do not send router solicitations																										
1	Send router solicitations																										

Table 109: Information table for general setup configuration settings for DHCP client protocol

27.2.3.2 Common configuration: advanced settings

Common Configuration

[General Setup](#) [Advanced Settings](#) [Physical Settings](#) [Firewall Settings](#)

Bring up on boot ☒

Monitor interface state ☐ ⓘ This interface state would be reported to VA Monitor via [keep-alive](#)

Use broadcast flag ☐ ⓘ Required for certain ISPs, e.g. Charter with DOCSIS 3

Use default gateway ☒ ⓘ If unchecked, no default route is configured

Use DNS servers advertised by peer ☒ ⓘ If unchecked, the advertised DNS server addresses are ignored

Use gateway metric

Client ID to send when requesting DHCP

Vendor Class to send when requesting DHCP

Override MAC address

Override MTU

Dependant interfaces ☐ ADSL: ☐ LAN3:

Figure 153: The interface advanced settings page for DHCP client protocol

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Bring up on boot UCI: network.<if name>.auto Opt: auto	Enables the interface to connect automatically on boot up. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Monitor interface state UCI: network.<if name>.monitored Opt: monitored	Enabled if status of interface is presented on Monitoring platform. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Use broadcast flag UCI: network.<if name>.broadcast Opt: broadcast	Enables the broadcast flag in DHCP requests (required for certain ISPs). <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Use default gateway UCI: network.<if name>.gateway Opt: gateway	Defines whether to suppress the DHCP assigned default gateway. When disabled via web option gateway is set to 0.0.0.0. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled (option gateway set to 0.0.0.0)</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled (option gateway set to 0.0.0.0)	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled (option gateway set to 0.0.0.0)				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Use DNS servers advertised by peer UCI: n/a Opt: n/a	Defines whether to override DHCP assigned DNS servers with configured list of DNS servers. When unchecked allows configuration of custom DNS servers via web. There is no uci option set when checking or unchecking this option.				

Web: Use custom DNS servers UCI: network.<if name>.dns Opt: dns	Defines whether to override DHCP assigned DNS servers with configured list of DNS servers. Multiple DNS Servers are separated by a space if using UCI. Example: option dns '1.1.1.1 2.2.2.2' <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled (option gateway set to 0.0.0.0)</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled (option gateway set to 0.0.0.0)	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled (option gateway set to 0.0.0.0)										
1	Enabled.										
Web: Use gateway metric UCI: network.<if name>.metric Opt: metric	Specifies the default route metric to use for this interface. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	Range							
0	Disabled.										
Range											
Web: Client ID to send when requesting DHCP UCI: network.<if name>.clientid Opt: clientid	Defines whether to override the client identifier in DHCP requests. <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>Do not override.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>Override.</td></tr> </table>	Blank	Do not override.	Range	Override.						
Blank	Do not override.										
Range	Override.										
Web: Vendor Class to send when requesting DHCP UCI: network.<if name>.vendorid Opt: vendorid	Defines whether to override the vendor class in DHCP requests. <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>Do not override.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>Override.</td></tr> </table>	Blank	Do not override.	Range	Override.						
Blank	Do not override.										
Range	Override.										
Web: Override MAC address UCI: network.<if name>.macaddr Opt: macaddr	Override the MAC address assigned to this interface. Must be in the form: hh:hh:hh:hh:hh:hh, where h is a hexadecimal number.										
Web: Override MTU UCI: network.<if name>.mtu Opt: mtu	Defines the value to override the default MTU on this interface. <table> <tr> <td>1500</td><td>1500 bytes</td></tr> </table>	1500	1500 bytes								
1500	1500 bytes										
Web: Dependant Interfaces UCI: network.[if_name].dependants Opt: dependants	Lists interfaces that are dependent on this parent interface. Dependant interfaces will go down when parent interface is down and will start or restart when parent interface starts. Separate multiple interfaces by a space when using UCI. Example: option dependants 'PPPADSL MOBILE' This replaces the following previous options in child interfaces. <table> <tr> <td>gre</td><td>option local_interface</td></tr> <tr> <td>lt2p</td><td>option src_ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>iot</td><td>option wan1 wan2</td></tr> <tr> <td>6in4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> <tr> <td>6to4</td><td>option ipaddr</td></tr> </table>	gre	option local_interface	lt2p	option src_ipaddr	iot	option wan1 wan2	6in4	option ipaddr	6to4	option ipaddr
gre	option local_interface										
lt2p	option src_ipaddr										
iot	option wan1 wan2										
6in4	option ipaddr										
6to4	option ipaddr										
Web: SNMP Alias ifIndex UCI: network.@interface[X].snmp_alias_ifindex Opt: snmp_alias_ifindex	Defines a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface, that can be polled using via the SNMP interface index (snmp_alias_ifindex+1000) <table> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>No SNMP interface alias index</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0 - 4294966295</td></tr> </table>	Blank	No SNMP interface alias index	Range	0 - 4294966295						
Blank	No SNMP interface alias index										
Range	0 - 4294966295										

Table 110: Information table for advanced settings for DHCP client protocol

27.3 Configuring DHCP client using command line

The configuration files for DHCP client are stored on **/etc/config/network**

27.3.1 DHCP client using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network
...
network.DHCPCLIENTLAN=interface
network.DHCPCLIENTLAN.proto=dhcp
```

```

network.DHCPCLIENTLAN.ifname=eth3
network.DHCPCLIENTLAN.monitored=0
network.DHCPCLIENTLAN.broadcast=0
network.DHCPCLIENTLAN.accept_ra=1
network.DHCPCLIENTLAN.send_rs=0
network.DHCPCLIENTLAN.metric=1

```

27.3.2 DHCP client using package options

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export network
package network
.....
config interface 'DHCPCLIENTLAN'
    option proto 'dhcp'
    option ifname 'eth3'
    option monitored '0'
    option broadcast '0'
    option accept_ra '1'
    option send_rs '0'
    option metric '1'

```

27.4 DHCP client diagnostics

27.4.1 Interface status

To see IP address of DHCP client interface, enter **ifconfig**:

```

root@VA_router:~# ifconfig
3g-CDMA  Link encap:Point-to-Point Protocol
    inet addr:10.33.152.100  P-t-P:178.72.0.237  Mask:255.255.255.255
    UP POINTOPOINT RUNNING NOARP MULTICAST  MTU:1400  Metric:1
    RX packets:6 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
    TX packets:23 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
    collisions:0 txqueuelen:3
    RX bytes:428 (428.0 B)  TX bytes:2986 (2.9 KiB)

eth0      Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 00:E0:C8:12:12:15
    inet addr:192.168.100.1  Bcast:192.168.100.255
    Mask:255.255.255.0
    inet6 addr: fe80::2e0:c8ff:fe12:1215/64 Scope:Link

```

```

UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
RX packets:6645 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
TX packets:523 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
RX bytes:569453 (556.1 KiB)  TX bytes:77306 (75.4 KiB)

lo        Link encap:Local Loopback
          inet addr:127.0.0.1  Mask:255.0.0.0
          inet6 addr: ::1/128 Scope:Host
          UP LOOPBACK RUNNING  MTU:16436  Metric:1
          RX packets:385585 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:385585 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:0
          RX bytes:43205140 (41.2 MiB)  TX bytes:43205140 (41.2 MiB)

```

To display a specific interface, enter:

```

root@VA_router:~# ifconfig eth0
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 00:E0:C8:12:12:15
          inet addr:192.168.100.1  Bcast:192.168.100.255
Mask:255.255.255.0
          inet6 addr: fe80::2e0:c8ff:fe12:1215/64 Scope:Link
          UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
          RX packets:7710 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:535 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
          RX bytes:647933 (632.7 KiB)  TX bytes:80978 (79.0 KiB)

```

27.4.2 ARP table status

To show the current ARP table of the router, enter:

```

root@GW7314:~# arp
? (10.67.253.141) at 30:30:41:30:43:36 [ether]  on eth8
? (10.47.48.1) at 0a:44:b2:06 [ether]  on gre-gre1

```

27.4.3 Route status

To show the current routing status, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# route -n
Kernel IP routing table
Destination      Gateway          Genmask          Flags Metric Ref    Use Iface
192.168.100.0    *                255.255.255.0    U        0      0        0 eth0
```

Note: a route will only be displayed in the routing table when the interface is up.

28 Configuring DHCP forwarding

This section describes how to configure the router to forward DHCP requests from an interface to a network DHCP server.

28.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
dhcp_fwd	dhcpcwd

28.2 Configuring DHCP forwarding using the web interface

To configure DHCP forwarding using the web interface, in the top menu, click **Network - > DHCP-Forwarder**.

The DHCP forwarder page appears. The web GUI creates a dhcpcwd section called main so this will be used in the uci examples below.

Figure 154: The DHCP forwarder configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Enabled UCI: dhcp_fwd.main.enabled Opt: enabled	Defines whether DHCP forwarding is enabled or disabled. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Do not send router solicitations.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Send router solicitations.</td></tr> </table>	0	Do not send router solicitations.	1	Send router solicitations.
0	Do not send router solicitations.				
1	Send router solicitations.				
Web: Interfaces UCI: dhcp_fwd.main.listen_interface Opt: list listen_interface	Defines a list of the source interface name(s) to forward DHCP messages from. Multiple interface_name(s) are entered using uci set and uci add_list commands. Example: uci set dhcp_fwd.main.listen_interface=LAN1 uci add_list dhcp_fwd.main.listen_interface=LAN2 or using a list of options via package options list listen_interface 'LAN1' list listen_interface 'LAN2'				
Web: DHCP Servers UCI: dhcp_fwd.main.server Opt: list server	Defines a list of the network DHCP servers to forward DHCP messages to. Multiple interface_name(s) are entered using uci set and uci add_list commands. Example: uci set dhcp_fwd.main.server=1.1.1.1 uci add_list dhcp_fwd.main.main.server=2.2.2.2 or using a list of options via package options list server '1.1.1.1' list server '2.2.2.2'				

Table 111: Information table for the DHCP forwarder section

28.3 Configuring DHCP forwarding using command line

The configuration files for DHCP client are stored in `/etc/config/dhcp_fwd`

28.3.1 DHCP forwarding using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show dhcp_fwd
dhcp_fwd.main=dhcpfwd
dhcp_fwd.main.enabled=1
dhcp_fwd.main.listen_interface=LAN3 lan2
dhcp_fwd.main.server=1.1.1.1
```

28.3.2 DHCP forwarding using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export dhcp_fwd
package dhcp_fwd

config dhcpfwd 'main'
    option enabled '1'
    list listen_interface 'LAN3'
    list listen_interface 'lan2'
    list server '1.1.1.1'
```

28.4 DHCP forwarding over IPsec

DHCP messages are forwarded over the WAN interface using the IP address of the WAN interface as the source IP for the transmitted packet. This means that when forwarding over an IPsec tunnel a source NAT firewall rule is required to change the source IP to match an IPsec connection rule.

28.4.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
firewall	redirect

28.4.2 Configuring source NAT for DHCP forwarding over IPsec

To enter a source NAT rule, browse to **Network -> Firewall**. Select **Traffic Rules** tab. The Firewall - Traffic Rules page appears. Configure a source NAT rule that changes the source IP for UDP destination port 67 from the required LAN.

For more information on configuring a source NAT rule, read the 'Configuring Firewall' section of the User Manual.

Source NAT
Source NAT is a specific form of masquerading which allows fine grained control over the source IP used for outgoing traffic, for example to map multiple WAN addresses to internal subnets.

Name	Protocol	Source	Destination	SNAT	Enable	Sort
This section contains no values yet						

New source NAT:

Name	Source zone	Destination zone	To source IP	To source port
DHCPMessages	lan	wan	192.168.100.1	Do not rewrite

Buttons: Save & Apply, Save, Reset

Figure 155: The firewall – traffic rules configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Name UCI: firewall.@redirect[X].name Opt: name	Defines a name for the source NAT rule.
Web: Source Zone UCI: firewall.@redirect[X].src Opt: src	Defines the source interface for the source NAT rule. Select the interface where the DHCP requests are originating.
Web: Destination Zone UCI: firewall.@redirect[X].dest Opt: dest	Defines destination interface for the source NAT rule. Select the interface where the DHCP requests are intended to be transmitted.
Web: To source IP UCI: firewall.@redirect[X].src_dip Opt: src_dip	Defines the IP address to rewrite matched traffic source IP. Select the source IP address to match the required IPsec rule.
Web: To source port UCI: firewall.@redirect[X].src_dport Opt: src_dport	Defines the port number to rewrite matched traffic source port number. Leave empty.

Table 112: Information table for the source NAT configuration

Firewall - Traffic Rules - SNAT DHCPMessages

This page allows you to change advanced properties of the traffic rule entry, such as matched source and destination hosts.

Rule is enabled

Name

Protocol You may specify multiple by selecting "-- custom --" and then entering protocols separated by space.

Source zone ☒ lan: ☐ wan:

Source MAC address

Source IP address

Source port Match incoming traffic originating from the given source port or port range on the client host.

Destination zone ☐ lan: ☒ wan:

Destination IP address

Destination port Match forwarded traffic to the given destination port or port range.

SNAT IP address Rewrite matched traffic to the given address.

SNAT port Rewrite matched traffic to the given source port. May be left empty to only rewrite the IP address.

Extra arguments Passes additional arguments to iptables. Use with care!

Figure 156: The firewall – traffic rules – SNAT configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																					
Web: Rule is enabled UCI: firewall.@redirect[X].enabled Opt: enabled	Defines whether source NAT rule is enabled. <table><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled	1	Enabled																	
0	Disabled																					
1	Enabled																					
Web: Name UCI: firewall.@redirect[X].name Opt: name	Defines a name for the source NAT rule.																					
Web: Protocol UCI: firewall.@redirect[X].proto Opt: proto	Defines the protocol for the source NAT rule to match. Select UDP . <table><tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>All protocols</td><td>Match all protocols</td><td>all</td></tr><tr><td>TCP+UDP</td><td>Match TCP and UDP protocols</td><td>tcp udp</td></tr><tr><td>TCP</td><td>Match TCP protocol</td><td>tcp</td></tr><tr><td>UDP</td><td>Match UDP protocol</td><td>udp</td></tr><tr><td>ICMP</td><td>Match ICMP protocol</td><td>icmp</td></tr><tr><td>Custom</td><td>Enter custom protocol</td><td></td></tr></table>	Option	Description	UCI	All protocols	Match all protocols	all	TCP+UDP	Match TCP and UDP protocols	tcp udp	TCP	Match TCP protocol	tcp	UDP	Match UDP protocol	udp	ICMP	Match ICMP protocol	icmp	Custom	Enter custom protocol	
Option	Description	UCI																				
All protocols	Match all protocols	all																				
TCP+UDP	Match TCP and UDP protocols	tcp udp																				
TCP	Match TCP protocol	tcp																				
UDP	Match UDP protocol	udp																				
ICMP	Match ICMP protocol	icmp																				
Custom	Enter custom protocol																					
Web: Source Zone UCI: firewall.@redirect[X].src Opt: src	Defines the source interface for the source NAT rule. Select the interface where the DHCP requests are originating .																					
Web: Destination Zone UCI: firewall.@redirect[X].dest Opt: dest	Defines destination interface for the source NAT rule. Select the interface where the DHCP requests are intended to be transmitted .																					
Web: Destination port UCI: firewall.@redirect[X].port Opt: port	Defines the destination port number to match. Select 67 .																					
Web: SNAT IP address UCI: firewall.@redirect[X].src_dip Opt: src dip	Defines the IP address to rewrite matched traffic. Select the source IP address to match the required IPSec rule .																					

Table 113: Information table for the advanced source NAT configuration

28.4.3 Configuring source NAT for DHCP forwarding over IPsec using command line

28.4.3.1 Source NAT for DHCP forwarding over IPsec using UCI

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show firewall
.....
firewall.@redirect[0]=redirect
firewall.@redirect[0].target=SNAT
firewall.@redirect[0].src=lan
firewall.@redirect[0].dest=wan
firewall.@redirect[0].src_dip=192.168.100.1
firewall.@redirect[0].name=DHCPMessages
firewall.@redirect[0].proto=udp
firewall.@redirect[0].dest_port=67

```

28.4.3.2 Source NAT for DHCP forwarding over IPsec using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export firewall
package firewall
.....
config redirect
    option target 'SNAT'
    option src 'lan'
    option dest 'wan'
    option src_dip '192.168.100.1'
    option name 'DHCPMessages'
    option proto 'udp'
    option dest_port '67'
```

28.5 DHCP forwarding diagnostics

28.5.1 Tracing DHCP packets

To trace DHCP packets on any interface on the router, enter **tcpdump -i any -n -p port 67 &**

```
root@VA_router:~# tcpdump -i any -n -p port 67 &
root@VA_router:~# tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for
full protocol decode
listening on any, link-type LINUX_SLL (Linux cooked), capture size 65535
bytes
16:39:20.666070 IP 0.0.0.0.68 > 255.255.255.255.67: BOOTP/DHCP, Request
from 00:e0:c8:13:02:3d, length 360
16:39:20.666166 IP 0.0.0.0.68 > 255.255.255.255.67: BOOTP/DHCP, Request
from 00:e0:c8:13:02:3d, length 360
```

To trace stop tracing enter **fg** (to bring tracing task to foreground), and then **<CTRL-C>** to stop the trace.

```
root@VA_router:~# fg
tcpdump -i any -n -p port 67
^C
33 packets captured
33 packets received by filter
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

```
16:39:20.666166 IP 0.0.0.0.68 > 255.255.255.255.67: BOOTP/DHCP, Request  
from 00:e0:c8:13:02:3d, length 360
```

28.5.2 ARP table status

To show the current ARP table of the router, enter **arp**

```
root@VA_router:~# arp  
? (10.67.253.141) at 30:30:41:30:43:36 [ether] on eth8  
? (10.47.48.1) at 0a:44:b2:06 [ether] on gre-gre1
```

29 Configuring Dynamic DNS

29.1 Overview

Dynamic DNS (DDNS) functionality on a Virtual Access router will dynamically perform DDNS updates to a server so it can associate an IP address with a correctly associated DNS name. Users can then contact a machine, router, device and so on with a DNS name rather than a dynamic IP address.

An account is required with the provider, and one or more domain names are associated with that account. A dynamic DNS client on the router monitors the public IP address associated with an interface and whenever the IP address changes, the client notifies the DNS provider to update the corresponding domain name.

When the DNS provider responds to queries for the domain name, it sets a low lifetime, typically a minute or two at most, on the response so that it is not cached. Updates to the domain name are thus visible throughout the whole Internet with little delay.

Note: most providers impose restrictions on how updates are handled: updating when no change of address occurred is considered abusive and may result in an account being blocked. Sometimes, addresses must be refreshed periodically, for example, once a month, to show that they are still in active use.

29.2 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
ddns	service

29.3 Configuring Dynamic DNS using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Services -> Dynamic DNS**. The Dynamic DNS Configuration page appears.

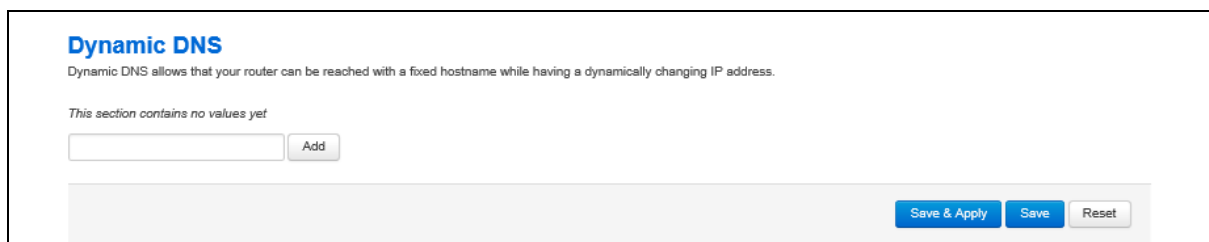


Figure 157: The Dynamic DNS configuration page

Enter a text name that will be used for the dynamic DNS section in the configuration. Select **Add**. The Dynamic DNS configuration options appear.

29.3.1 Dynamic DNS settings

Dynamic DNS

Dynamic DNS allows that your router can be reached with a fixed hostname while having a dynamically changing IP address.

DDNS1

Enable ☐

Service -- custom --

Custom update-URL

Hostname

Username

Password

Source of IP address network

Network lan

Check for changed IP every

Check-time unit min

Force update every

Force-time unit h

Listen on ☐ dialin: 

Figure 158: The dynamic DNS main settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Enable UCI: ddns.<name>.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables a Dynamic DNS entry on the router.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled
Web: Service UCI: ddns.<name>.service_name Opt: service_name	Defines the Dynamic DNS provider.	
Web: Customer update-URL UCI: ddns.<name>.update_url Opt: update_url	Defines the customer DNS provider. Displayed when the service is set to custom in the web interface.	
Web: Hostname UCI: ddns.<name>.domain Opt: domain	Defines the fully qualified domain name associated with this entry. This is the name to update with the new IP address as needed.	
Web: Username UCI: ddns.<name>.username Opt: username	Defines the user name to use for authenticating domain updates with the selected provider.	
Web: Password UCI: ddns.<name>.password Opt: password	Defines the password to use for authenticating domain name updates with the selected provider.	
Web: Source of IP address UCI: ddns.<name>.ip_source Opt: ip_source	Defines the type of interface whose IP needs to be updated.	
	network	IP is associated with a network configuration.
	interface	IP is associated with an interface.
	web	IP is associated with a URL.

Web: Network UCI: ddns.<name>.ip_network Opt: ip_network	Defines the network whose IP needs to be updated. Displayed when the Source of IP address option is set to network. All the configured network interfaces will be shown.				
Web: Interface UCI: ddns.<name>.ip_interface Opt: ip_interface	Defines the interface whose IP needs to be updated. Displayed when the Source of IP address option is set to interface. All the configured interfaces will be shown.				
Web: URL UCI: ddns.<name>.ip_url Opt: ip_url	Defines the URL where the IP downloaded from. Displayed when the Source of IP address option is set to URL.				
Web: Check for changed IP every UCI: ddns.<name>.check_interval Opt: check_interval	Defines how often to check for an IP change. Used in conjunction with check_unit. <table border="1"> <tr><td>10</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	10		Range	
10					
Range					
Web: Check-time unit UCI: ddns.<name>.check_unit Opt: check_unit	Defines the time unit to use for check for an IP change. Used in conjunction with check_interval. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Minutes</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>hours</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Minutes		hours	
Minutes					
hours					
Web: Force update every UCI: ddns.<name>.force_interval Opt: force_interval	Defines how often to force an IP update to the provider. Used in conjunction with force_unit. <table border="1"> <tr><td>72</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>Enabled</td></tr> </table>	72	Disabled.	Range	Enabled
72	Disabled.				
Range	Enabled				
Web: Force-time unit UCI: ddns.<name>.force_unit Opt: force_unit	Defines the time unit to use for check for an IP change. Used in conjunction with force_interval. <table border="1"> <tr><td>Minutes</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Hours</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Minutes		Hours	
Minutes					
Hours					
Web: Listen on UCI: ddns.<name>.interface Opt: interface	Defines the interface for ddns monitoring. Typically this will be the same as the interface whose IP is being updated – as defined ip_network or ip_interface. All configured interfaces will be displayed.				

Table 114: Information table for dynamic DNS settings

29.4 Dynamic DNS using UCI

Dynamic DNS uses the ddns package **/etc/config/ddns**

29.4.1 UCI commands for DDNS

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show ddns
ddns.ddns1=service
ddns.ddns1.enabled=1
ddns.ddns1.service_name=dyndns.org
ddns.ddns1.domain=fqdn_of_interface
ddns.ddns1.username=testusername
ddns.ddns1.password=testpassword
ddns.ddns1.ip_source=network
ddns.ddns1.ip_network=dsl0
ddns.ddns1.check_interval=10
```

```
ddns.ddns1.check_unit=minutes
ddns.ddns1.force_interval=72
ddns.ddns1.force_unit=hours
ddns.ddns1.interface=dsl0
Package options for DDNS
root@VA_router:~# uci export ddns
package ddns

config service 'ddns1'
    option enabled '1'
    option service_name 'dyndns.org'
    option domain 'fqdn_of_interface'
    option username 'test'
    option password 'test'
    option ip_source 'network'
    option ip_network 'dsl0'
    option check_interval '10'
    option check_unit 'minutes'
    option force_interval '72'
    option force_unit 'hours'
    option interface 'dsl0'
```

30 Configuring hostnames

30.1 Overview

Hostnames are human-readable names that identify a device connected to a network. There are several different ways in which hostnames can be configured and used on the router.

- Local host file records
- PTR records
- Static DHCP leases

30.2 Local host file records

The hosts file is an operating system file that maps hostnames to IP addresses. It is used preferentially to other name resolution methods such as DNS.

The hosts file contains lines of text consisting of an IP address in the first text field followed by one or more host names. Each field is separated by white space – tabs are often preferred for historical reasons, but spaces are also used. Comment lines may be included; they are indicated by an octothorpe (#) in the first position of such lines. Entirely blank lines in the file are ignored.

By default, the routers local host file contains:

```
127.0.0.1 localhost
::1 ip6-localhost ip6-loopback
```

The local host file is stored at **/etc/hosts**

30.2.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
network	host

30.2.2 Configuring local host files entries using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> Interfaces**. The Interfaces configuration page appears.

Browse to **Host Records** section at the bottom of the page.

Figure 159: The host records add page

Select **Add**. Enter a hostname and IP address and select **Save & Apply**.

Figure 160: The host records configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Hostname UCI: network.host.hostname Opt: hostname	Defines the hostname.
Web: IP-Address UCI: network.host.addr Opt: addr	Defines the IP address associated with the hostname.

Table 115: Information table for host records settings

30.2.3 Local host records using command line

Local host records are configured in the host section of the network package **/etc/config/network**.

Multiple hosts can be configured.

By default, all host instances are named host and are identified by @host then the host position in the package as a number. For example, for the first host in the package using UCI:

```
network.@host[0]=host
network.@host[0].hostname=Device1
```

Or using package options:

```
config host
    option hostname 'Device1'
```

30.2.3.1 Local host records using uci

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network
.....
network.@host[0]=host
network.@host[0].hostname=Device1
network.@host[0].addr=1.1.1.1
```

30.2.3.2 Local host records using package option

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export network
package network
.....
config host
    option hostname 'Device1'
    option addr '1.1.1.1'
```

30.2.4 Local host records diagnostics

30.2.4.1 Hosts file

Local host records are written to the local hosts file stored at **/etc/hosts**. To view the local hosts file, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cat /etc/hosts
127.0.0.1 localhost
::1 ip6-localhost ip6-loopback
1.1.1.1 Device1
```

30.3 PTR records

PTR records are used for reverse DNS.

The primary purpose for DNS is to map domains to IP addresses. A pointer record works in the opposite way; it associates an IP address with a domain name.

30.3.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
dhcp	domain

30.3.2 Configuring PTR records using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> Hostnames**. The Hostnames configuration page appears.

Figure 161: The hostnames add page

Select **Add**. Enter a hostname and IP address for the PTR record and select **Save & Apply**.

Figure 162: The hostnames configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Hostname UCI: dhcp.domain.name Opt: name	Defines the domain name for the PTR record.
Web: IP-Address UCI: dhcp.domain.ip Opt: ip	Defines the IP address associated with the domain name.

Table 116: Information table for hostnames settings

30.3.3 PTR records using command line

PTR records are configured in the **domain** section of the dhcp package.
/etc/config/dhcp.

Multiple **domains** can be configured.

By default, all domain instances are named domain and are identified by @domain then the domain position in the package as a number. For example, for the first domain in the package using UCI:

```
dhcp.@domain[0]=domain
dhcp.@domain[0].name=Domain1
```

Or using package options:

```
config domain
    option name 'Domain1'
```

30.3.3.1 PTR records using uci

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show dhcp
.....
dhcp.@domain[0]=domain
dhcp.@domain[0].name=Domain1
dhcp.@domain[0].ip=2.2.2.2
```

30.3.3.2 PTR records using package option

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export dhcp
package dhcp
.....
config domain
    option name 'Domain1'
    option ip '2.2.2.2'
```

30.3.4 PTR records diagnostics

30.3.4.1 PTR records table

To view PTR records, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# pgrep -fl dnsmasq
4724 /usr/sbin/dnsmasq -K -D -y -Z -b -E -s lan -S /lan/ -l
/tmp/dhcp.leases -r /tmp/resolv.conf.auto --stop-dns-rebind --rebind-
localhost-ok -A /Device1.lan/1.1.1.1 --ptr-record=1.1.1.1.in-
addr.arpa,Device1.lan -A /Device2.lan/2.2.2.2 --ptr-record=2.2.2.2.in-
addr.arpa,Device2.lan
```

30.4 Static leases

Static leases are used to assign fixed IP addresses and symbolic hostnames to DHCP clients based on their MAC (hardware) address.

They are also required for non-dynamic interface configurations where only hosts with a corresponding lease are served.

30.4.1 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
dhcp	host

30.4.2 Configuring static leases using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> DHCP and DNS**. The DHCP and DNS configuration page appears.

Browse to **Static leases** section.

Figure 163: The static leases add page

Select **Add**. Enter a hostname, MAC address and IP address for the static lease. Select **Save & Apply**.

Figure 164: The static leases configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Hostname UCI: dhcp.host.name Opt: name	Defines the symbolic hostname to assign.
Web: MAC-Address UCI: dhcp.host.mac Opt: mac	Defines the MAC address for this host. MAC addresses should be entered in the format aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff
Web: IPv4-Address UCI: dhcp.host.ip Opt: ip	Defines the IP address to be used for this host.

Table 117: Information table for static leases settings

30.4.3 Static leases using command line

Static leases are configured in the **host** section of the dhcp package **/etc/config/dhcp**.

Multiple **hosts** can be configured.

By default, all dhcp host instances are named host. It is identified by @host then the host position in the package as a number. For example, for the first host in the package using UCI:

```
dhcp.@host[0]=host
dhcp.@host[0].name=Host1
```

Or using package options:

```
config host
    option name 'Host1'
```

30.4.3.1 Static leases using uci

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show dhcp
.....
dhcp.@host[0]=host
dhcp.@host[0].name=Host1
dhcp.@host[0].mac=aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff
dhcp.@host[0].ip=4.4.4.4
```

30.4.3.2 Static leases using package option

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export dhcp
package dhcp
.....
config host
    option name 'Host1'
    option mac 'aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff'
    option ip '4.4.4.4'
```

31 Configuring firewall

The firewall itself is not required. It is a set of scripts which configure Netfilter. If preferred, you can use Netfilter directly to achieve the desired firewall behaviour.

Note: the UCI firewall exists to simplify the configuration of Netfilter for many scenarios, without requiring the knowledge to deal with the complexity of Netfilter.

The firewall configuration consists of several zones covering one or more interfaces. Permitted traffic flow between the zones is controlled by forwardings. Each zone can include multiple rules and redirects (port forwarding rules).

The Netfilter system is a chained processing filter where packets pass through various rules. The first rule that matches is executed often leading to another rule-chain until a packet hits either ACCEPT or DROP/REJECT.

Accepted packets pass through the firewall. Dropped packets are prohibited from passing. Rejected packets are also prohibited but an ICMP message is returned to the source host.

A minimal firewall configuration for a router usually consists of one 'defaults' section, at least two 'zones' (LAN and WAN) and one forwarding to allow traffic from LAN to WAN. Other sections that exist are 'redirects', 'rules' and 'includes'.

31.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
firewall	

31.2 Configuring firewall using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Network -> Firewall**. The Firewall page appears. It is divided into four sections:

Section	Description
General Zone Settings	Defines the firewall zones, both global and specific.
Port Forwards	Port Forwards are also known as Redirects. This section creates the redirects using DNAT (Destination Network Address Translation) with Netfilter.
Traffic Rules	Defines rules to allow or restrict access to specific ports, hosts or protocols.

31.2.1 Firewall: zone settings

The Zone settings section is divided into two:

Section	Description
General Settings	Defines the global firewall settings that do not belong to any specific zones.
Zones	The zones section groups one or more interfaces and serves as a source or destination for forwardings, rules and redirects. Masquerading (NAT) of outgoing traffic is controlled on a per-zone basis.

31.2.1.1 Firewall general settings

The General Settings page, or defaults section declares global firewall settings that do not belong to any specific zones. These default rules take effect last and more specific rules take effect first.

Figure 165: The firewall zone general settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Enable SYN-flood protection UCI: firewall.defaults.syn_flood Opt: syn_flood	Enables SYN flood protection.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Drop invalid packets UCI: firewall.defaults.drop_invalid Opt: drop_invalid	Drops packets not matching any active connection.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Input UCI: firewall.defaults.input Opt: input	Default policy for the Input chain.	
	Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.
	Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.
	Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.
Web: Output UCI: firewall.defaults.output Opt: output	Default policy for the Output chain.	
	Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.
	Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.
	Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.
Web: Forward UCI: firewall.defaults.forward Opt: forward	Default policy for the Forward chain.	
	Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.
	Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.
	Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.

Table 118: Information table for general zone general settings page

31.2.1.2 Firewall zones

The Zones section groups one or more interfaces and serves as a source or destination for forwardings, rules and redirects. Masquerading (NAT) of outgoing traffic is controlled on a per-zone basis. To view a zone's settings, click **Edit**.

The number of concurrent dynamic/static NAT entries of any kind (NAT/PAT/DNAT/SNAT) is not limited in any way by software; the only hardware limitation is the amount of RAM installed on the device.

31.2.1.3 Firewall zone: general settings

The screenshot displays the 'Firewall - Zone Settings - Zone "lan"' configuration interface. It features three tabs: 'General Settings' (selected), 'Port Forwards', and 'Traffic Rules'. Below the tabs, a descriptive paragraph explains the purpose of the zone settings. The 'General Settings' section includes input fields for 'Name' (set to 'lan'), 'Input' (set to 'accept'), 'Output' (set to 'accept'), and 'Forward' (set to 'accept'). There are also checkboxes for 'Masquerading', 'MSS clamping', and 'Covered networks'. Under 'Covered networks', several network types are listed: LAN1 (checked, with a note '(no interfaces attached)'), LAN2 (checked), LAN3 (checked), MOBILE1 (unchecked), PoA ADSL (unchecked), and loopback (unchecked).

Figure 166: The firewall zone general settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description						
Web: name UCI: firewall.<zone label>.name Opt: name	Sets the unique zone name. Maximum of 11 characters allowed. Note: the zone label is obtained by using the 'uci show firewall' command and is of the format '@zone[x]' where x is an integer starting at 0.						
Web: Input UCI: firewall.<zone label>.input Opt: input	Default policy for incoming zone traffic. Incoming traffic is traffic entering the router through an interface selected in the 'Covered Networks' option for this zone. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Accept</td><td>Accepted packets pass through the firewall.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Reject</td><td>Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Drop</td><td>Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.</td></tr> </table>	Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.	Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.	Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.
Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.						
Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.						
Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.						

Web: Output UCI: firewall.<zone label>.output Opt: output	Default policy for outgoing zone traffic. Outgoing traffic is traffic leaving the router through an interface selected in the 'Covered Networks' option for this zone. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Accept</td><td>Accepted packets pass through the firewall.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Reject</td><td>Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Drop</td><td>Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.</td></tr> </table>	Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.	Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.	Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.
Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.						
Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.						
Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.						
Web: Forward UCI: firewall.<zone label>.forward Opt: forward	Default policy for internal zone traffic between interfaces. Forward rules for a zone describe what happens to traffic passing between different interfaces within that zone. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Accept</td><td>Accepted packets pass through the firewall.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Reject</td><td>Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Drop</td><td>Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.</td></tr> </table>	Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.	Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.	Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.
Accept	Accepted packets pass through the firewall.						
Reject	Rejected packets are blocked by the firewall and ICMP message is returned to the source host.						
Drop	Dropped packets are blocked by the firewall.						
Web: Masquerading UCI: firewall.<zone label>.masq Opt: masq	Specifies whether outgoing zone traffic should be masqueraded (NATTED). This is typically enabled on the wan zone.						
Web: MSS Clamping UCI: firewall.<zone label>.mtu_fix Opt: mtu_fix	Enables MSS clamping for outgoing zone traffic. Subnets are allowed. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.		
0	Disabled.						
1	Enabled.						
Web: Covered networks UCI: firewall.<zone label>.network Opt: network	Defines a list of interfaces attached to this zone, if omitted, the value of name is used by default. Note: use the uci list syntax to edit this setting through UCI.						

Table 119: Information table for firewall zone general settings

31.2.1.4 Firewall zone: advanced settings

Firewall - Zone Settings - Zone "lan"

Zone "lan"

This section defines common properties of "lan". The *input* and *output* options set the default policies for traffic entering and leaving this zone while the *forward* option describes the policy for forwarded traffic between different networks within the zone. *Covered networks* specifies which available networks are member of this zone.

General Settings | **Advanced Settings**

Restrict to address family: IPv4 and IPv6

Restrict Masquerading to given source subnets: 0.0.0.0/0

Restrict Masquerading to given destination subnets: 0.0.0.0/0

Force connection tracking: ☐

Enable logging on this zone: ☐

Allow NAT Reflections: ☒

Figure 167: Firewall zone advanced settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description		
Web: Restrict to address family UCI: firewall.<zone label>.family Opt: family	Restricts zone to IPv4, IPv6 or both IPv4 and IPv6.		
	Option	Description	UCI
	IPv4 and IPv6	Any address family	any
	IPv4 only	IPv4 only	ipv4
	IPv6 only	IPv6 only	ipv6
Web: Restrict Masquerading to given source subnets. UCI: firewall.<zone label>.masq_src Opt: masq_src	Limits masquerading to the given source subnets. Negation is possible by prefixing the subnet with '!'. Multiple subnets are allowed.		
Web: Restrict Masquerading to given destination subnets. UCI: firewall.<zone label>.masq_dest Opt: masq_dest	Limits masquerading to the given destination subnets. Negation is possible by prefixing the subnet with '!'. Multiple subnets are allowed. Multiple IP addresses/subnets should be separated by a space, for example: option masq_dest '1.1.1.1 2.2.2.0/24'.		
Web: Force connection tracking UCI: firewall.<zone label>.conntrack Opt: conntrack	Forces connection tracking for this zone.		
	0	Disabled.	
	1	If masquerading is used. Otherwise, default is 0.	
Web: Enable logging on this zone UCI: firewall.<zone label>.log Opt: log	Creates log rules for rejected and dropped traffic in this zone.		
Web: Allow NAT reflections UCI: firewall.<zone label>.reflection Opt: reflection	Enable/disable all NAT reflections for this zone.		
	Note: For configs with a large number of firewall rules, disabling NAT reflection will speed up load of firewall rules on interface start.		
	0	Disable reflection.	
	1	Enable reflection.	

Web: n/a UCI: firewall.<zone label>.log_limit Opt: log_limit	Limits the amount of log messages per interval.
--	---

Table 120: Information table for firewall zone advanced settings

31.2.1.5 Inter-zone forwarding

This section controls the traffic flow between zones. Selecting a source or destination zone generates a forwarding rule. Only one direction is covered by any forwarding rule. Hence for bidirectional traffic flow between two zones then two rules are required, with source and destination alternated.

Inter-Zone Forwarding

The options below control the forwarding policies between this zone (lan) and other zones. *Destination zones* cover forwarded traffic originating from "lan". *Source zones* match forwarded traffic from other zones targeted at "lan". The forwarding rule is *unidirectional*, e.g. a forward from lan to wan does *not* imply a permission to forward from wan to lan as well.

Allow forward to destination zones: ☒ wan: MOBILE1: PoA ADSL:

Allow forward from source zones: ☒ wan: MOBILE1: PoA ADSL:

Figure 168: The inter-zone forwarding section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Allow forward to destination zones UCI: firewall.<forwarding label>.dest Opt: dest	Allows forward to other zones. Enter the current zone as the source. Enabling this option puts two entries into the firewall file: destination and source.
UCI firewall.<forwarding label>.src Opt: src	
Web: Allow forward from source zones UCI: firewall.<forwarding label>.dest Opt: dest	Allows forward from other zones. Enter the current zone as the destination. Enabling this option puts two entries into the firewall file: destination and source.
UCI: firewall.<forwarding label>.src Opt: src	

Table 121: Information table for inter-zone forwarding settings

Note: the rules generated for forwarding traffic between zones relay connection tracking to be enabled on at least one of the source or destination zones. This can be enabled through the conntrack option or through masq.

31.2.2 Firewall port forwards

Port forwards are also known as redirects. This section creates the redirects using DNAT (Destination Network Address Translation) with Netfilter. The redirects are from the firewall zone labelled as wan to the firewall zone labelled as lan. These zones can refer to multiple external and internal interfaces as defined in the Firewall Zone settings.

To edit an existing port forward select **edit**.

To add a new port forward select **add**.

Firewall - Port Forwards

Port forwarding allows remote computers on the Internet to connect to a specific computer or service within the private LAN.

Port Forwards

Name	Protocol	Source	Via	Destination	Enable	Sort
HTTPS	TCP	From <i>any host in wan</i>	To <i>any router IP</i> at port 443	Forward to IP 192.168.100.100, port 443 in <i>lan</i>	☒	Edit Delete

New port forward:

Name	Protocol	External port	Internal IP address	Internal port
New port forward	TCP+UDP ▼			

Figure 169: The firewall port forward page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description												
Web: name UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.name Opt: name	Sets the port forwarding name. For Web UI generated redirects the <redirect label> takes the form of @redirect[x], where x is an integer starting from 0.												
Web: Protocol UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.proto Opt: proto	Defines layer 4 protocol to match incoming traffic. <table><tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>tcp+udp</td><td>Match either TCP or UDP packets.</td><td>tcp udp</td></tr><tr><td>tcp</td><td>Match TCP packets only.</td><td>tcp</td></tr><tr><td>udp</td><td>Match UDP packets only.</td><td>udp</td></tr></table>	Option	Description	UCI	tcp+udp	Match either TCP or UDP packets.	tcp udp	tcp	Match TCP packets only.	tcp	udp	Match UDP packets only.	udp
Option	Description	UCI											
tcp+udp	Match either TCP or UDP packets.	tcp udp											
tcp	Match TCP packets only.	tcp											
udp	Match UDP packets only.	udp											
Web: External port UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.src_dport Opt: src_dport	Specifies the incoming TCP/UDP port or port range to match. This is the incoming destination port specified by the external host. Port ranges specified as start:stop, for example, 2001:2020. <table><tr><td>Blank</td><td>Match traffic to any port.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td>1 - 65535</td></tr></table>	Blank	Match traffic to any port.	Range	1 - 65535								
Blank	Match traffic to any port.												
Range	1 - 65535												
Web: Internal IP address UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.dest_ip Opt: dest_ip	Specifies the internal (LAN) IP address for the traffic to be redirected to.												
Web: Internal port UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.dest_port Opt: dest_port	Specifies the destination tcp/udp port for the redirect traffic.												

Table 122: Information table for firewall port forward settings

The defined redirects can be sorted into a specific order to be applied. More specific rules should be placed first.

After the redirect is created and saved, to make changes, click **Edit**. This will provide further options to change the source/destination zones; specify source mac addresses and enable NAT loopback (reflection).

General Settings
Port Forwards
Traffic Rules

Firewall - Port Forwards - (Unnamed Entry)

This page allows you to change advanced properties of the port forwarding entry. In most cases there is no need to modify those settings.

Rule is enabled

Name

Protocol

Source zone ☐ lan: LAN1: LAN2: LAN3: ☐ wan: MOBILE1: PoAADSLS:

Source MAC address Only match incoming traffic from these MACs.

Source IP address Only match incoming traffic from this IP or range.

Source port Only match incoming traffic originating from the given source port or port range on the client host

External IP address Only match incoming traffic directed at the given IP address.

External port Match incoming traffic directed at the given destination port or port range on this host

Internal zone ☐ lan: LAN1: LAN2: LAN3: ☐ wan: MOBILE1: PoAADSLS:

Internal IP address Redirect matched incoming traffic to the specified internal host

Internal port Redirect matched incoming traffic to the given port on the internal host

Enable NAT Loopback ☒

Extra arguments Passes additional arguments to iptables. Use with care!

Figure 170: The firewall port forwards edits page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description														
Web: Rule is enabled UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.enabled Opt: enabled	Specifies if this redirect should be enabled or disabled. <table><tr><td>0</td><td colspan="2">Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Enabled.</td></tr></table>			0	Disabled.		1	Enabled.							
0	Disabled.														
1	Enabled.														
Web: name UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.name Opt: name	Sets the port forwarding name. For Web UI generated redirects the <redirect label> takes the form of @redirect[x], where x is an integer starting from 0.														
Web: Protocol UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.proto Opt: proto	Defines layer 4 protocol to match incoming traffic. <table><tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>tcp+udp</td><td>Match either TCP or UDP packets.</td><td>tcp udp</td></tr><tr><td>tcp</td><td>Match TCP packets only.</td><td>tcp</td></tr><tr><td>udp</td><td>Match UDP packets only.</td><td>udp</td></tr></table>			Option	Description	UCI	tcp+udp	Match either TCP or UDP packets.	tcp udp	tcp	Match TCP packets only.	tcp	udp	Match UDP packets only.	udp
Option	Description	UCI													
tcp+udp	Match either TCP or UDP packets.	tcp udp													
tcp	Match TCP packets only.	tcp													
udp	Match UDP packets only.	udp													
Web: Source zone UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.src Opt: src	Specifies the traffic source zone. It must refer to one of the defined zone names. When using the web interface, this is set to WAN initially.														

Web: Source MAC address UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.src_mac Opt: list src_mac	Defines the list of source MAC addresses that this redirect will match. Format: aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff Multiple RIP interfaces are entered using uci set and uci add_list commands. Example: uci set firewall.@redirect[0].src_mac=aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff uci add_list firewall.@redirect[0].src_mac=12:34:56:78:90:12 or using a list of options via package options list network 'aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff' list network '12:34:56:78:90:12'				
Web: Source IP address UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.src_ip Opt: src_ip	Defines a source IP address that this redirect will match. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>Match traffic from any source IP.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>A.B.C.D/mask.</td></tr> </table>	Blank	Match traffic from any source IP.	Range	A.B.C.D/mask.
Blank	Match traffic from any source IP.				
Range	A.B.C.D/mask.				
Web: Source port UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.src_port Opt: src_port	Defines a source IP port that this redirect will match. You can enter multiple ports, using a space separator. For example: option src_port '22 23' *see note below on use with options src_dport and dest_port <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>Match traffic from any source port.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>1 - 65535</td></tr> </table>	Blank	Match traffic from any source port.	Range	1 - 65535
Blank	Match traffic from any source port.				
Range	1 - 65535				
Web: External port UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.src_dport Opt: src_dport	Specifies the incoming TCP/UDP port or port range to match. This is the incoming destination port specified by the external host. Port ranges specified in format start:stop, for example, 2001:2020. You can enter multiple ports, using a space separator. For example: option src_dport '22 23' *see note below on use with options src_port and dest_port <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>Match traffic to any port.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>1 – 65535</td></tr> </table>	Blank	Match traffic to any port.	Range	1 – 65535
Blank	Match traffic to any port.				
Range	1 – 65535				
Web: Internal zone UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.dest Opt: dest	Specifies the traffic destination zone, must refer to one of the defined zone names.				
Web: Internal IP address UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.dest_ip Opt: dest_ip	Specifies the internal (LAN) IP address for the traffic to be redirected to.				
Web: Internal port UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.dest_port Opt: dest_port	Specifies the destination tcp/udp port for the redirect traffic. You can enter multiple ports, using a space separator. *For example: option dest_port '22 23' *See note below table on use with options src_port and src_dport.				
Web: Enable NAT Loopback UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.reflection Opt: reflection	Enable or disable NAT reflection for this redirect. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Reflection disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Reflection enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Reflection disabled.	1	Reflection enabled.
0	Reflection disabled.				
1	Reflection enabled.				
Web: Extra arguments UCI: firewall.<redirect label>.extra Opt: extra	Passes extra arguments to IP tables. This is useful to specify additional match options, like -m policy --dir in for IPsec. The arguments are entered as text strings.				

Table 123: Information table for port forward edits fields

***Note:** redirect rule options `src_port` and `src_dport/dest_port` accept space-separated lists of ports. If `src_port` is a list, then `src_dport/dst_port` cannot be, to avoid ambiguity.

If `src_dport/dest_port` are lists of different lengths, then the missing values of the shorter list default to the corresponding port in the other list. For example, if configuration file is:

```
option src_dport '21 22 23'
option dest_port '21 22 23 24'
```

then the firmware will interpret the values as:

```
option src_dport '21 22 23 24'
option dest_port '21 22 23 24'
```

31.2.3 Firewall traffic rules

Rules can be defined to allow or restrict access to specific ports, hosts or protocols.

The screenshot shows the 'Firewall - Traffic Rules - (Unnamed Rule)' configuration page. The page has tabs for 'General Settings', 'Port Forwards', and 'Traffic Rules'. The 'Traffic Rules' tab is active. The page content includes:

- Rule is enabled:** A 'Disable' button.
- Name:** A text field with a hyphen.
- Restrict to address family:** A dropdown menu set to 'IPv4 and IPv6'.
- Protocol:** A dropdown menu set to 'TCP+UDP'.
- Match ICMP type:** A dropdown menu set to 'any'.
- Source zone:** Radio buttons for 'Any zone', 'lan: LAN1: LAN2: LAN3:', and 'wan: MOBILE1: PoAADSL:'. The 'lan' option is selected.
- Source MAC address:** A text field set to 'any'.
- Source address:** A text field set to 'any'.
- Source port:** A text field set to 'any'.
- Destination zone:** Radio buttons for 'Device (input)', 'Any zone (forward)', 'lan: LAN1: LAN2: LAN3:', and 'wan: MOBILE1: PoAADSL:'. The 'lan' option is selected.
- Destination address:** A text field set to 'any'.
- Destination port:** A text field set to 'any'.
- Action:** A dropdown menu set to 'accept'.
- Extra arguments:** A text field with a note: 'Passes additional arguments to iptables. Use with care!'.

Figure 171: The firewall traffic rules page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																				
Web: Rule is enabled UCI: firewall.<rule label>.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables traffic rule. <table><tr><td>0</td><td colspan="2">Rule is disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Rule is enabled.</td></tr></table>			0	Rule is disabled.		1	Rule is enabled.													
0	Rule is disabled.																				
1	Rule is enabled.																				
Web: Name UCI: firewall.<rule label>.name Opt: name	Select a descriptive name limited to less than 11 characters. No spaces are allowed in the naming convention.																				
Web: Restrict to address family UCI: firewall.<rule label>.family Opt: family	Restrict to protocol family. <table><tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>IPv4 and IPv6</td><td>Traffic rule applies to any address family</td><td>any</td></tr><tr><td>IPv4 only</td><td>IPv4 only</td><td>ipv4</td></tr><tr><td>IPv6 only</td><td>IPv6 only</td><td>ipv6</td></tr></table>			Option	Description	UCI	IPv4 and IPv6	Traffic rule applies to any address family	any	IPv4 only	IPv4 only	ipv4	IPv6 only	IPv6 only	ipv6						
Option	Description	UCI																			
IPv4 and IPv6	Traffic rule applies to any address family	any																			
IPv4 only	IPv4 only	ipv4																			
IPv6 only	IPv6 only	ipv6																			
Web: Protocol UCI: firewall.<rule label>.proto Opt: proto	Matches incoming traffic using the given protocol. <table><tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>TCP+UDP</td><td>Applies rule to TCP and UDP only</td><td>tcp udp</td></tr><tr><td>TCP</td><td>Applies rule to TCP only</td><td>tcp</td></tr><tr><td>UDP</td><td>Applies rule to UDP only</td><td>udp</td></tr><tr><td>ICMP</td><td>Applies rule to ICMP only</td><td>icmp</td></tr><tr><td>custom</td><td>Specify protocol from /etc/protocols</td><td></td></tr></table>			Option	Description	UCI	TCP+UDP	Applies rule to TCP and UDP only	tcp udp	TCP	Applies rule to TCP only	tcp	UDP	Applies rule to UDP only	udp	ICMP	Applies rule to ICMP only	icmp	custom	Specify protocol from /etc/protocols	
Option	Description	UCI																			
TCP+UDP	Applies rule to TCP and UDP only	tcp udp																			
TCP	Applies rule to TCP only	tcp																			
UDP	Applies rule to UDP only	udp																			
ICMP	Applies rule to ICMP only	icmp																			
custom	Specify protocol from /etc/protocols																				
Web: Match ICMP type UCI: firewall.<rule label>.icmp_type Opt: icmp_type	Match specific icmp types. This option is only valid when ICMP is selected as the protocol. ICMP types can be listed as either type names or type numbers. Note: for a full list of valid ICMP type names, see the ICMP Options table below.																				
Web: Source zone UCI: firewall.<rule label>.src Opt: src	Specifies the traffic source zone, must refer to one of the defined zone names. For typical port forwards, this is usually WAN.																				
Web: Source MAC address UCI: firewall.<rule label>.src_mac Opt: src_mac	Matches incoming traffic from the specified MAC address. The MAC address must be entered in the following format: aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff: To only match the first portion of the MAC address append /prefix to the option value, where prefix defines the bits from the start of the MAC to match on. Example: option src_mac 00:E0:C8:12:34:56/24 will match on all packets with prefix 00:E0:C8.																				
Web: Source address UCI: firewall.<rule label>.src_ip Opt: src_ip	Matches incoming traffic from the specified source IP address.																				
Web: Source port UCI: firewall.<rule label>.src_port Opt: src_port	Matches incoming traffic originating from the given source port or port range on the client host.																				
Web: Destination zone UCI: firewall.<rule label>.dest Opt: dest	Specifies the traffic destination zone. Must refer to one of the defined zone names.																				
Web: Destination address UCI: firewall.<rule label>.dest_ip Opt: dest ip	For DNAT, redirects matched incoming traffic to the specified internal host. For SNAT, matches traffic directed at the given address.																				

Web: Destination port UCI: firewall.<rule label>.dest_port Opt: dest_port	For DNAT, redirects matched incoming traffic to the given port on the internal host. For SNAT, matches traffic directed at the given ports.		
Web: Action UCI: firewall.<rule label>.target Opt: target	Action to take when rule is matched.		
	Option	Description	UCI
	drop	Drop matching traffic	DROP
	accept	Allow matching traffic	ACCEPT
	reject	Reject matching traffic	REJECT
	don't track	Disable connection tracking for the rule. See the 'Connection tracking' section below for more information.	NOTRACK
Web: Extra arguments UCI: firewall.<rule label>.extra Opt: extra	Passes extra arguments to IP tables. This is useful to specify additional match options, like -m policy --dir in for IPSec.		
Web: n/a UCI: firewall.<rule label>.reflection Opt: reflection	Disables NAT reflection for this redirect if set to 0. Applicable to DNAT targets.		
Web: n/a UCI: firewall.<rule label>.limit Opt: limit	Sets maximum average matching rate; specified as a number, with an optional /second, /minute, /hour or /day suffix. Example: 3/hour.		
Web: n/a UCI: firewall.<rule label>.limit_burst Opt: limit_burst	Sets maximum initial number of packets to match. This number gets recharged by one every time the limit specified above is not reached, up to this number.		
Web: n/a UCI: firewall.<rule label>.recent Opt: recent	Sets number of allowed connections within specified time. This command takes two values e.g. recent=2 120 will allow 2 connections within 120 seconds.		

Table 124: Information table for firewall traffic rules

ICMP Options	ICMP Options	ICMP Options	ICMP Options
address-mask-reply	host-redirect	pong	time-exceeded
address-mask-request	host-unknown	port-unreachable	timestamp-reply
any	host-unreachable	precedence-cutoff	timestamp-request
communication-prohibited	ip-header-bad	protocol-unreachable	TOS-host-redirect
destination-unreachable	network-prohibited	redirect	TOS-host-unreachable
echo-reply	network-redirect	required-option-missing	TOS-network-redirect
echo-request	network-unknown	router-advertisement	TOS-network-unreachable
fragmentation-needed	network-unreachable	router-solicitation	ttl-exceeded
host-precedence-violation	parameter-problem	source-quench	ttl-zero-during-reassembly
host-prohibited	ping	source-route-failed	ttl-zero-during-transit

Table 125: Information table for match ICMP type drop-down menu

31.3 Configuring firewall using UCI

Firewall is configured under the firewall package `/etc/config/firewall`.

There are three config sections: defaults, zone, forwarding, redirect, rule and include.

You can configure multiple zone, forwarding and redirect sections.

31.3.1 Firewall general settings

To set general (default) settings, enter:

```
uci add firewall defaults
uci set firewall.@defaults[0].syn_flood=1
uci set firewall.@defaults[0].drop_invalid=1
uci set firewall.@defaults[0].input=ACCEPT
uci set firewall.@defaults[0].output=ACCEPT
uci set firewall.@defaults[0].forward=ACCEPT
```

Note: this command is only required if there is no defaults section.

31.3.2 Firewall zone settings

By default, all firewall zone instances are named zone, instances are identified by @zone then the zone position in the package as a number. For example, for the first zone in the package using UCI:

```
firewall.@zone[0]=zone
firewall.@zone[0].name=lan
```

Or using package options:

```
config zone
    option name 'lan'
```

To set up a firewall zone, enter:

```
uci add firewall zone
uci set firewall.@zone[1].name=lan
uci set firewall.@zone[1].input=ACCEPT
uci set firewall.@zone[1].output=ACCEPT
uci set firewall.@zone[1].forward=ACCEPT
uci set firewall.@zone[1].network=lan1 wifi_client
uci set firewall.@zone[1].family=any
uci set firewall.@zone[1].masq_src=10.0.0.0/24
uci set firewall.@zone[1].masq_dest=20.0.0.0/24
uci set firewall.@zone[1].conntrack=1
```

```
uci set firewall.@zone[1].masq=1
uci set firewall.@zone[1].mtu_fix=1
uci set firewall.@zone[1].log=1
uci set firewall.@zone[1].log_limit=5
```

31.3.3 Inter-zone forwarding

By default, all inter-zone instances are named 'forwarding'; instances are identified by @forwarding then the forwarding position in the package as a number. For example, for the first forwarding in the package using UCI:

```
firewall.@forwarding[0]=forwarding
firewall.@forwarding[0].src=lan
```

Or using package options:

```
config forwarding
    option src 'lan'
```

To enable forwarding of traffic from WAN to LAN, enter:

```
uci add firewall forwarding
uci set firewall.@forwarding[1].dest=wan
uci set firewall.@forwarding[1].src=lan
```

31.3.4 Firewall port forwards

By default, all port forward instances are named 'redirect'; instances are identified by @redirect then the redirect position in the package as a number. For example, for the first redirect in the package using UCI:

```
firewall.@redirect[0]=redirect
firewall.@redirect[0].name=Forward
```

Or using package options:

```
config redirect
    option name 'Forward'
```

To set port forwarding rules, enter:

```
uci add firewall redirect
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].name=Forward
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].proto=tcp
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].src=wan # <- zone names
```



```
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].dest=lan    # <- zone names
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].src_dport=2001
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].dest_ip=192.168.0.100
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].dest_port=2005
uci set firewall.@redirect[1].enabled=1
```

31.3.5 Firewall traffic rules

By default, all traffic rule instances are named rule, instances are identified by @rule then the rule position in the package as a number. For example, for the first rule in the package using UCI:

```
firewall.@rule[0]=rule
firewall.@rule[0].enabled=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config rule
    option enabled '1'
```

To set traffic rules, enter:

```
uci add firewall rule
uci set firewall.@rule[1].enabled=1
uci set firewall.@rule[1].name=Allow_ICMP
uci set firewall.@rule[1].family=any
uci set firewall.@rule[1].proto=ICMP
uci set firewall.@rule[1].icmp_type=any
uci set firewall.@rule[1].src=wan
uci set firewall.@rule[1].src_mac=ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
uci set firewall.@rule[1].src_port=
uci set firewall.@rule[1].dest=lan
uci set firewall.@rule[1].dest_port=
uci set firewall.@rule[1].dest_ip=192.168.100.1
uci set firewall.@rule[1].target=ACCEPT
uci set firewall.@rule[1].extra=
uci set firewall.@rule[1].src_ip=8.8.8.8
uci set firewall.@rule[1].src_dip=9.9.9.9
uci set firewall.@rule[1].src_dport=68
uci set firewall.@rule[1].reflection=1
uci set firewall.@rule[1].limit=3/second
uci set firewall.@rule[1].limit_burst=30
```

31.3.5.1 Custom firewall scripts: includes

It is possible to include custom firewall scripts by specifying one or more include sections in the firewall configuration.

There is only one possible parameter for includes:

Parameter	Description
path	Specifies a shell script to execute on boot or firewall restarts.

Custom scripts are executed as shell scripts and are expected to contain iptables commands.

31.4 IPv6 notes

As described above, the option family is used for distinguishing between IPv4, IPv6 and both protocols. However, the family is inferred automatically if a specific IP address family is used. For example; if IPv6 addresses are used then the rule is automatically treated as IPv6 only rule.

```
config rule
    option src wan
    option src_ip fdca:f00:ba3::/64
    option target ACCEPT
```

Similarly, the following rule is automatically treated as IPv4 only.

```
config rule
    option src wan
    option dest_ip 88.77.66.55
    option target REJECT
```

Rules without IP addresses are automatically added to iptables and ip6tables, unless overridden by the family option. Redirect rules (port forwards) are always IPv4 since there is no IPv6 DNAT support at present.

31.5 Implications of DROP vs. REJECT

The decision whether to drop or to reject traffic should be done on a case-by-case basis. Many people see dropping traffic as a security advantage over rejecting it because it exposes less information to a hypothetical attacker. While dropping slightly increases security, it can also complicate the debugging of network issues or cause unwanted side-effects on client programs.

If traffic is rejected, the router will respond with an icmp error message ("destination port unreachable") causing the connection attempt to fail immediately. This also means that for each connection attempt a certain amount of response traffic is generated. This can actually harm if the firewall is attacked with many simultaneous connection attempts, the resulting backfire of icmp responses can clog up all available upload and make the connection unusable (DoS).

When connection attempts are dropped the client is not aware of the blocking and will continue to re-transmit its packets until the connection eventually times out. Depending on the way the client software is implemented, this could result in frozen or hanging programs that need to wait until a timeout occurs before they're able to continue.

DROP

- less information is exposed
- less attack surface
- client software may not cope well with it (hangs until connection times out)
- may complicate network debugging (where was traffic dropped and why)

REJECT

- may expose information (like the IP at which traffic was actually blocked)
- client software can recover faster from rejected connection attempts
- network debugging easier (routing and firewall issues clearly distinguishable)

31.6 Connection tracking

By default, the firewall will disable connection tracking for a zone if no masquerading is enabled. This is achieved by generating NOTRACK firewall rules matching all traffic passing via interfaces referenced by the firewall zone. The purpose of NOTRACK is to speed up routing and save memory by circumventing resource intensive connection tracking in cases where it is not needed. You can check if connection tracking is disabled by issuing `iptables -t raw -S`, it will list all rules, check for NOTRACK target.

NOTRACK will render certain iptables extensions unusable, for example the MASQUERADE target or the state match will not work.

If connection tracking is required, for example by custom rules in `/etc/firewall.user`, the `conntrack` option must be enabled in the corresponding zone to disable NOTRACK. It should appear as option `'conntrack' '1'` in the right zone in `/etc/config/firewall`.

31.7 Firewall examples

31.7.1 Opening ports

The default configuration accepts all LAN traffic, but blocks all incoming WAN traffic on ports not currently used for connections or NAT. To open a port for a service, add a rule section:

```
config rule
    option src          wan
    option dest_port    22
    option target       ACCEPT
    option proto        tcp
```

This example enables machines on the internet to use SSH to access your router.

31.7.2 Forwarding ports (destination NAT/DNAT)

This example forwards http, but not HTTPS, traffic to the web server running on 192.168.1.10:

```
config redirect
    option src      wan
    option src_dport 80
    option proto     tcp
    option dest_ip   192.168.1.10
```

The next example forwards one arbitrary port that you define to a box running SSH behind the firewall in a more secure manner because it is not using default port 22.

```
config 'redirect'
    option 'name' 'ssh'
    option 'src' 'wan'
    option 'proto' 'tcpudp'
    option 'src_dport' '5555'
    option 'dest_ip' '192.168.1.100'
    option 'dest_port' '22'
    option 'target' 'DNAT'
    option 'dest' 'lan'
```

31.7.3 Source NAT (SNAT)

Source NAT changes an outgoing packet destined for the system so that it looks as though the system is the source of the packet.

Define source NAT for UDP and TCP traffic directed to port 123 originating from the host with the IP address 10.55.34.85. The source address is rewritten to 63.240.161.99.

```
config redirect
    option src      lan
    option dest      wan
    option src_ip    10.55.34.85
    option src_dip   63.240.161.99
    option dest_port 123
    option target     SNAT
```

When used alone, Source NAT is used to restrict a computer's access to the internet, but allows it to access a few services by manually forwarding what appear to be a few local

services; for example, NTP to the Internet. While DNAT hides the local network from the Internet, SNAT hides the Internet from the local network.

Source NAT and destination NAT are combined and used dynamically in IP masquerading to make computers with private (192.168.x.x, etc.) IP addresses appear on the internet with the system's public WAN IP address.

31.7.4 True destination port forwarding

This usage is similar to SNAT, but as the destination IP address is not changed, machines on the destination network need to be aware that they'll receive and answer requests from a public IP address that is not necessarily theirs. Port forwarding in this fashion is typically used for load balancing.

```
config redirect
    option src          wan
    option src_dport    80
    option dest         lan
    option dest_port    80
    option proto        tcp
```

31.7.5 Block access to a specific host

The following rule blocks all connection attempts to the specified host address.

```
config rule
    option src          lan
    option dest         wan
    option dest_ip      123.45.67.89
    option target        REJECT
```

31.7.6 Block access to the internet using MAC

The following rule blocks all connection attempts from the client to the internet.

```
config rule
    option src          lan
    option dest         wan
    option src_mac      00:00:00:00:00:00
    option target        REJECT
```

31.7.7 Block access to the internet for specific IP on certain times

The following rule blocks all connection attempts to the internet from 192.168.1.27 on weekdays between 21:00pm and 09:00am.

```
config rule
    option src          lan
    option dest          wan
    option src_ip        192.168.1.27
    option extra          '-m time --weekdays Mon,Tue,Wed,Thu,Fri --
timestart 21:00 --timestop 09:00'
    option target        REJECT
```

31.7.8 Restricted forwarding rule

The example below creates a forward rule rejecting traffic from LAN to WAN on the ports 1000-1100.

```
config rule
    option src          lan
    option dest          wan
    option dest_port     1000-1100
    option proto         tcpudp
    option target        REJECT
```

31.7.9 Denial of service protection rule

The example below shows a sample configuration of SSH DoS attack where if more than two SSH connections are attempted within 120 seconds, every further connection will be dropped. You can configure this for any port number.

```
config rule 'sshattack'
    option src 'lan'
    option dest_port '22'
    option proto 'tcp'
    option recent '2 120'
    option target 'DROP'
```

31.7.10 IP spoofing prevention mechanism

Configure IP spoofing protection on a per interface basis in the `/etc/config/network` configuration file. The example below shows the `ipv4_rp_filter` option enabled on the `Vlan12` interface in the network file. When reverse path filtering mechanism is enabled, the router will check whether a receiving packet source address is routable.

If it is routable through the interface from which it came, then the machine will accept the packet

If it is not routable through the interface from which it came, then the machine will drop that packet.

```
config interface 'Vlan12'
    option type 'bridge'
    option proto 'static'
    option monitored '0'
    option ipaddr '10.1.28.122'
    option netmask '255.255.0.0'
    option ifname 'eth1 eth3.12'
    option ipv4_rp_filter '1'
```

31.7.11 Simple DMZ rule

The following rule redirects all WAN ports for all protocols to the internal host 192.168.1.2.

```
config redirect
    option src          wan
    option proto        all
    option dest_ip      192.168.1.2
```

31.7.12 Transparent proxy rule (external)

The following rule redirects all outgoing HTTP traffic from LAN through an external proxy at 192.168.1.100 listening on port 3128. It assumes the router LAN address to be 192.168.1.1 - this is needed to masquerade redirected traffic towards the proxy.

```
config redirect
    option src          lan
    option proto        tcp
    option src_ip       !192.168.1.100
    option src_dport    80
    option dest_ip      192.168.1.100
    option dest_port    3128
    option target        DNAT

config redirect
    option dest          lan
    option proto         tcp
```

```

option src_dip      192.168.1.1
option dest_ip      192.168.1.100
option dest_port    3128
option target       SNAT

```

31.7.13 Transparent proxy rule (same host)

The rule below redirects all outgoing HTTP traffic from LAN through a proxy server listening at port 3128 on the router itself.

```

config redirect
    option src      lan
    option proto     tcp
    option src_dport 80
    option dest_port 3128

```

31.7.14 IPSec passthrough

This example enables proper forwarding of IPSec traffic through the WAN.

```

# AH protocol
config rule
    option src      wan
    option dest      lan
    option proto     ah
    option target    ACCEPT

# ESP protocol
config rule
    option src      wan
    option dest      lan
    option proto     esp
    option target    ACCEPT

```

For some configurations you also have to open port 500/UDP.

```

# ISAKMP protocol
config rule
    option src      wan
    option dest      lan
    option proto     udp
    option src_port  500

```


option dest_port	500
option target	ACCEPT

31.7.15 Manual iptables rules

You can specify traditional iptables rules, in the standard iptables UNIX command form, in an external file and included in the firewall config file. It is possible to use this process to include multiple files.

```
config include
    option path /etc/firewall.user

config include
    option path /etc/firewall.vpn
```

The syntax for the includes is Linux standard and therefore different from UCIs.

31.7.16 Firewall management

After a configuration change, to rebuild firewall rules, enter:

```
root@VA_router:/# /etc/init.d/firewall restart
```

Executing the following command will flush all rules and set the policies to ACCEPT on all standard chains:

```
root@VA_router:/# /etc/init.d/firewall stop
```

To manually start the firewall, enter:

```
root@VA_router:/# /etc/init.d/firewall start
```

To permanently disable the firewall, enter:

```
root@VA_router:/# /etc/init.d/firewall disable
```

Note: disable does not flush the rules, so you might be required to issue a stop before.

To enable the firewall again, enter:

```
root@VA_router:/# /etc/init.d/firewall enable
```

31.7.17 Debug generated rule set

It is possible to observe the iptables commands generated by the firewall programme. This is useful to track down iptables errors during firewall restarts or to verify the outcome of certain UCI rules.

To see the rules as they are executed, run the fw command with the FW_TRACE environment variable set to **1**:

```
root@VA_router:/# FW_TRACE=1 fw reload
```

To direct the output to a file for later inspection, enter:

```
root@VA_router:/# FW_TRACE=1 fw reload 2>/tmp/iptables.lo
```

32 Configuring IPsec

Internet Protocol Security (IPsec) is a protocol suite used to secure communications at IP level. Use IPsec to secure communications between two hosts or between two networks. Virtual Access routers implement IPsec using strongSwan software.

If you need to create an IPsec template for DMVPN, read the chapter 'Dynamic Multipoint Virtual Private Network (DMVPN)'.

The number of IPsec tunnels supported by Virtual Access' routers is not limited in any way by software; the only hardware limitation is the amount of RAM installed on the device.

32.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
strongswan	general connection secret

32.2 Configuring IPsec using the web interface

To configure IPsec using the web interface, in the top menu, select **Services -> IPsec**. The strongSwan IPsec VPN page appears. There are three sections:

Common Settings	Control the overall behaviour of strongSwan. This behaviour is common across all tunnels.
Connection Settings	Together, these sections define the required parameters for a two-way IKEv1 tunnel.
Secret Settings	

32.2.1 Configure common settings

The screenshot shows the 'strongSwan IPsec VPN' configuration page. The title is 'strongSwan IPsec VPN' with a subtitle 'Configuration of the strongSwan IPsec VPN system.' There is a 'Delete' button in the top right corner. The 'Enable StrongSwan IPsec' checkbox is checked. The 'Strict CRL Policy' dropdown is set to 'no', with a tooltip explaining it defines if a fresh CRL must be available for peer authentication based on RSA signatures to succeed. The 'Unique IDs' dropdown is set to 'yes', with a tooltip explaining whether a particular participant ID should be kept unique. The 'Cache CRLs' checkbox is unchecked, with a tooltip stating CRLs fetched via HTTP or LDAP will be cached. The 'Disable Revocation (CRL and OCSP)' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Send INITIAL CONTACT by default' checkbox is checked, with a tooltip stating it sends INITIAL CONTACT notification when first connection attempt for all connections. The 'Debug' dropdown is set to 'none'.

Figure 172: The common settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description								
Web: Enable strongswan UCI: strongswan.general.enable Opt: enabled	Enables or disables IPsec. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Strict CRL Policy UCI: strongswan.general.strictcrlpolicy Opt: strictcrlpolicy	Defines if a fresh CRL must be available for the peer authentication based on RSA signatures to succeed. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>ifuri</td><td>The IKEv2 application additionally recognizes the "ifuri" option which reverts to 'yes' if at least one CRL URI is defined and to 'no' if no URI is known.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.	ifuri	The IKEv2 application additionally recognizes the "ifuri" option which reverts to 'yes' if at least one CRL URI is defined and to 'no' if no URI is known.		
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
ifuri	The IKEv2 application additionally recognizes the "ifuri" option which reverts to 'yes' if at least one CRL URI is defined and to 'no' if no URI is known.								
Web: Unique IDs UCI: strongswan.general.uniqueids Opt: uniqueids	Defines whether a particular participant ID should be kept unique, with any new (automatically keyed) connection using an ID from a different IP address deemed to replace all old ones using that ID. Participant IDs normally are unique, so a new (automatically-keyed) connection using the same ID is almost invariably intended to replace an old one. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>replace</td><td>Identical to Yes.</td></tr> <tr><td>keep</td><td>Rejects new IKE SA and keep the duplicate established earlier</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.	replace	Identical to Yes.	keep	Rejects new IKE SA and keep the duplicate established earlier
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
replace	Identical to Yes.								
keep	Rejects new IKE SA and keep the duplicate established earlier								
Web: Cache CRLs UCI: strongswan.general.cachecrls Opt: cachecrls	Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) fetched via HTTP or LDAP will be cached in /etc/ipsec.d/crls/ under a unique file name derived from the certification authority's public key. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Disable Revocation UCI: strongswan.general.revocation_disabled Opt: revocation_disabled	Defines whether disable CRL and OCSP checking for revoked certificates. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Send INITIAL CONTACT by default UCI: strongswan.general.initial_contact Opt: initial_contact	Defines whether the first attempt to contact a remote peer by this strongswan instance sets the initial_contact flag, which should cause compliant peers to automatically bring down any previous sessions. This can also be enabled/disabled per connection. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Does not set initial contact flag.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Sets initial contact flag on first attempt.</td></tr> </table>	0	Does not set initial contact flag.	1	Sets initial contact flag on first attempt.				
0	Does not set initial contact flag.								
1	Sets initial contact flag on first attempt.								
Web: Debug UCI: strongswan.general.debug Opt: debug	Enables debugging. This option is used for trouble shooting issues. It is not suitable for a production environment. <table> <tr><td>None</td><td>Debug disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>Control</td><td>Debug enabled. Shows generic control flow with errors and very basic auditing logs.</td></tr> <tr><td>All</td><td>Debug enabled. Most verbose logging also includes sensitive information such as keys.</td></tr> </table>	None	Debug disabled.	Control	Debug enabled. Shows generic control flow with errors and very basic auditing logs.	All	Debug enabled. Most verbose logging also includes sensitive information such as keys.		
None	Debug disabled.								
Control	Debug enabled. Shows generic control flow with errors and very basic auditing logs.								
All	Debug enabled. Most verbose logging also includes sensitive information such as keys.								

Table 126: Information table for IPsec common settings

32.2.2 Common settings: configure connection

Connections

Enabled ☒

Aggressive Mode ☐

Name

Autostart Action Operation on startup. **add** loads a connection without starting it. **route** loads a connection and installs kernel traps. If traffic is detected between localian and remotelan, a connection is established. **start** loads a connection and brings it up immediately. **ignore** do nothing

Connection Type

Delete

Figure 173: The configuring IPsec settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description										
Web: Enabled UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].enabled Opt: enable	Enables or disables IPsec connection. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: Aggressive UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].aggressive Opt: aggressive	Enables or disables IKE aggressive mode. Note: using aggressive mode along with PSK authentication is less secure method than main mode and should be avoided. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: Name UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].name Opt: name	Specifies a name for the tunnel.										
Web: Autostart Action UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].auto Opt: auto	Specifies when the tunnel is initiated. <table> <tr> <td>start</td><td>On start up.</td></tr> <tr> <td>route</td><td>When traffic routes this way.</td></tr> <tr> <td>add</td><td>Loads a connection without starting it.</td></tr> <tr> <td>ignore</td><td>Ignores the connection.</td></tr> <tr> <td>always</td><td>Actively retries to establish the tunnel if it went down.</td></tr> </table>	start	On start up.	route	When traffic routes this way.	add	Loads a connection without starting it.	ignore	Ignores the connection.	always	Actively retries to establish the tunnel if it went down.
start	On start up.										
route	When traffic routes this way.										
add	Loads a connection without starting it.										
ignore	Ignores the connection.										
always	Actively retries to establish the tunnel if it went down.										
Web: Connection Type UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].type Opt: type	Defines the type of IPsec connection. <table> <tr> <td>tunnel</td><td>Connection uses tunnel mode.</td></tr> <tr> <td>transport</td><td>Connection uses transport mode.</td></tr> <tr> <td>pass</td><td>Connection does not perform any IPsec processing.</td></tr> <tr> <td>drop</td><td>Connection drops all the packets.</td></tr> </table>	tunnel	Connection uses tunnel mode.	transport	Connection uses transport mode.	pass	Connection does not perform any IPsec processing.	drop	Connection drops all the packets.		
tunnel	Connection uses tunnel mode.										
transport	Connection uses transport mode.										
pass	Connection does not perform any IPsec processing.										
drop	Connection drops all the packets.										

Table 127: Information table for connection settings

32.2.3 Common settings: IP addressing

The screenshot shows the 'IPsec' configuration page with the 'Connection Type' set to 'tunnel'. The settings are as follows:

- Remote GW Address:** 89.501.154.151 (Help: Could be IP address or FQDN or "%any")
- Local Id:** 182.162.206.1 (Help: Leave blank to use default (local interface IP address))
- Remote Id:** 89.501.154.151 (Help: Leave blank to use default (remote gateway IP address))
- Local LAN IP Address:** 192.156.206.1
- Local LAN IP Address Mask:** 258.258.255.255
- Remote LAN IP Address:** 172.255.255.255
- Remote LAN IP Address Mask:** (empty)
- Local Protocol:** (empty) (Help: Restrict the traffic selector to a single protocol on the local side)
- Local Port:** (empty) (Help: Restrict the traffic selector to a single UDP/TCP port on the local side)
- Remote Protocol:** (empty) (Help: Restrict the traffic selector to a single protocol on the remote side)
- Remote Port:** (empty) (Help: Restrict the traffic selector to a single UDP/TCP port on the remote side)
- Authby:** psk (Help: How the two security gateways should authenticate each other.)
- XAuth identity:** (empty) (Help: Defines the identity/username the client uses to reply to an XAuth request. If not defined, the IKEv1 identity will be used as XAuth identity.)

At the top right, there is a status bar indicating 'UNSAVED CHANGES: 19', '08:50:12ZC09', 'VIE-15.00.55', and 'image2/config2'.

Figure 174: The IP addressing settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Remote GW Address UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteaddress Opt: remoteaddress	Sets the public IP address of the remote peer.
Web: Local ID UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].localid Opt: localid	Defines the local peer identifier.
Web: Remote ID UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteid Opt: remoteid	Defines the remote peer identifier.
Web: Local LAN IP Address UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].locallan Opt: locallan	Defines the local IP of LAN.
Web: Local LAN IP Address Mask UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].locallanmask Opt: locallanmask	Defines the subnet of local LAN.
Web: Remote LAN IP Address UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remotelan Opt: remotelan	Defines the IP address of LAN serviced by remote peer.
Web: Remote LAN IP Address Mask UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remotelanmask Opt: remotelanmask	Defines the Subnet of remote LAN.

Web: Local Protocol UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].localproto Opt: localproto	Restricts the connection to a single protocol on the local side.
Web: Local Port UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].localport Opt: localport	Restricts the connection to a single port on the local side.
Web: Remote Protocol UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteproto Opt: remoteproto	Restricts the connection to a single protocol on the remote side.
Web: Remote Port UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteport Opt: remoteport	Restricts the connection to a single port on the remote side.
Web: Authby UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].authby Opt: authby	Defines how the two secure gateways should authenticate. Note: using aggressive mode along with PSK authentication is unsecure and should be avoided.
	Pubkey For public key signatures.
	Rsasig For RSA digital signatures.
	ecdsasig For Elliptic Curve DSA signatures.
	Psk Using a preshared key.
	xauthrsasig Enables eXtended Authentication (XAuth) with addition to RSA signatures.
	xauthpsk Using extended authentication and preshared key.
	never Can be used if negotiation is never to be attempted or accepted (shunt connections).

Table 128: Information table for IP addressing settings

32.2.4 Common settings: IPsec settings

The screenshot shows the 'VA_router' web interface with the 'Network' tab selected. The 'IPsec connections' settings page is displayed, showing various configuration options for an IPsec connection. The settings include:

- XAuth identity:** A text input field with a help icon. Description: Defines the identity/username the client uses to reply to an XAuth request. If not defined, the IKEv1 identity will be used as XAuth identity.
- Reauthenticate:** A checkbox with a help icon. Description: Reauthenticate the peer at every rekeying of the IKE_SA.
- IKE algorithm:** A dropdown menu showing 'aes256-sha1-modp1024'.
- ESP algorithm:** A dropdown menu showing '3des-sha1-modp1024'.
- WAN Interface:** A dropdown menu showing 'wan'.
- IKE life time:** A text input field showing '900s'. Description: How long the keying channel of a connection should last before being renegotiated.
- Key life:** A text input field showing '500s'. Description: Synonym for lifetime. How long a particular instance of a connection (a set of encryption/authentication keys for user packets) should last, from successful negotiation to expiry.
- Rekey margin:** A text input field showing '30s'. Description: Synonym for margintime. How long before connection expiry or keying-channel expiry should attempts to negotiate a replacement begin.
- Keying tries:** A text input field showing '%forever'. Description: How many attempts (a positive integer or %forever) should be made to negotiate a connection, or a replacement for one, before giving up (default 3). The value %forever means 'never give up'.
- Restart delay:** A text input field showing '0s'. Description: Delay termination of previous IKE SA and start of the next IKE SA of automatic connection. If 0 then random delay in the range of 1 to Rekey margin is used.
- DPD Action:** A dropdown menu showing 'restart'. Description: Controls the use of the DPD protocol where R_U_THERE notification messages (IKEv1) or empty INFORMATIONAL messages (IKEv2) are periodically sent in order to check the liveliness of the IPsec peer. If no activity is detected, all connections with a dead peer are stopped and unrouted (clear), put in the hold state (hold) or restarted (restart). The default is none which disables the active sending of DPD messages.
- DPD Delay:** A text input field showing '30s'. Description: Defines the period time interval with which R_U_THERE messages/INFORMATIONAL exchanges are sent to the peer.
- DPD Timeout:** A text input field showing '150s'. Description: Defines the timeout interval, after which all connections to a peer are deleted in case of inactivity.
- Inherit CHILD SA:** A checkbox with a help icon. Description: Inherit CHILD SA when IKE SA is rekeyed.
- Send INITIAL CONTACT:** A checkbox with a help icon. Description: Send INITIAL CONTACT notification when first connection attempt.

Figure 175: The IPsec connections settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: XAuth Identity UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].xauth_identity Opt: xauth_identity	Defines Xauth ID.
Web: IKE Algorithm UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].ike Opt: ike	Specifies the IKE algorithm to use. The format is: encAlgo authAlgo DHGroup encAlgo: 3des aes128 aes256 serpent twofish blowfish authAlgo: md5 sha sha2 DHGroup: modp1024 modp1536 modp2048 modp3072 modp4096 modp6144 modp8192 For example, a valid IKE algorithm is aes128-sha-modp1536.

Web: ESP algorithm UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].esp Opt: esp	Specifies the esp algorithm to use. The format is: encAlgo authAlgo DHGroup encAlgo: 3des aes128 aes256 serpent twofish blowfish authAlgo: md5 sha sha2 DHGroup: modp1024 modp1536 modp2048 modp3072 modp4096 modp6144 modp8192 For example, a valid encryption algorithm is: aes128-sha-modp1536. If no DH group is defined then PFS is disabled.				
Web: WAN Interface UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].waniface Opt: waniface	This is a space-separated list of the WAN interfaces the router will use to establish a tunnel with the secure gateway. On the web, a list of the interface names is automatically generated. If you want to specify more than one interface use the "custom" value. Example: if you have a 3G WAN interface called 'wan' and a WAN ADSL interface called 'dsl' and wanted to use one of these interfaces for this IPSec connection, you would use: 'wan dsl'.				
Web: IKE Life Time UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].ikelifetime Opt: ikelifetime	Specifies how long the keyring channel of a connection (ISAKMP or IKE SA) should last before being renegotiated. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>3h</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 3h, 25m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	3h		Timespec	1d, 3h, 25m, 10s.
3h					
Timespec	1d, 3h, 25m, 10s.				
Web: Key Life UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].keylife Opt: keylife	Specifies how long a particular instance of a connection (a set of encryption/authentication keys for user packets) should last, from successful negotiation to expiry. Normally, the connection is renegotiated (via the keyring channel) before it expires (see rekeymargin). <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1h</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 1h, 25m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	1h		Timespec	1d, 1h, 25m, 10s.
1h					
Timespec	1d, 1h, 25m, 10s.				
Web: Rekey Margin UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].rekeymargin Opt: rekeymargin	Specifies how long before connection expiry or keyring-channel expiry should attempt to negotiate a replacement begin. Relevant only locally, other end need not agree on it. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>9m</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	9m		Timespec	1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.
9m					
Timespec	1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.				

Web: Restart Delay UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].restartdelay Opt: restartdelay	Defines specific delay when re-establishing a connection. Previously if close_action=restart, then new option restartdelay controls how many seconds it waits before attempting to re-establish the tunnel (to allow head-end some time to tidy up). If not set, it defaults to zero, which means that the previous behaviour of choosing a random time interval in the range 0..RekeyMargin seconds takes effect. Relevant only locally, other end need not agree on it. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	0		Timespec	1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.				
0									
Timespec	1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.								
Web: Keying Tries UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].keyringtries Opt: keyringtries	Specifies how many attempts (a positive integer or %forever) should be made to negotiate a connection, or a replacement for one, before giving up. The value %forever means 'never give up'. Relevant only locally, other end need not agree on it.								
Web: DPD Action UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpdaction Opt: dpdaction	Defines DPD (Dead Peer Detection) action. <table> <tr> <td>None</td><td>Disables DPD.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Clear</td><td>Clear down the tunnel if peer does not respond. Reconnect when traffic brings the tunnel up.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Hold</td><td>Clear down the tunnel and bring up as soon as the peer is available.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Restart</td><td>Restarts DPD when no activity is detected.</td></tr> </table>	None	Disables DPD.	Clear	Clear down the tunnel if peer does not respond. Reconnect when traffic brings the tunnel up.	Hold	Clear down the tunnel and bring up as soon as the peer is available.	Restart	Restarts DPD when no activity is detected.
None	Disables DPD.								
Clear	Clear down the tunnel if peer does not respond. Reconnect when traffic brings the tunnel up.								
Hold	Clear down the tunnel and bring up as soon as the peer is available.								
Restart	Restarts DPD when no activity is detected.								
Web: DPD Delay UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpddelay Opt: dpddelay	Defines the period time interval with which R_U_THERE messages and INFORMATIONAL exchanges are sent to the peer. These are only sent if no other traffic is received. <table> <tr> <td>30s</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	30s		Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.				
30s									
Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.								
Web: DPD Timeout UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpdtimeout Opt: dpdtimeout	Defines the timeout interval, after which all connections to a peer are deleted in case of inactivity. <table> <tr> <td>150s</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	150s		Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.				
150s									
Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.								
Web: Inherit CHILD SA UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].inherit_child Opt: inherit_child	Defines whether the existing phase two IPSEC SA is maintained through IKE rekey for this tunnel. This is normally set to match the behaviour on the IPSEC headend. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Delete the existing IPSEC SA on IKE rekey</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Maintain the existing IPSEC SA on IKE rekey</td></tr> </table>	0	Delete the existing IPSEC SA on IKE rekey	1	Maintain the existing IPSEC SA on IKE rekey				
0	Delete the existing IPSEC SA on IKE rekey								
1	Maintain the existing IPSEC SA on IKE rekey								
Web: Send INITIAL CONTACT UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].initial_contact Opt: initial_contact	Defines whether the first attempt to contact a remote peer by this strongswan instance sets the initial_contact flag which should cause compliant peers to automatically bring down any previous sessions. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Do not set initial contact flag</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Set initial contact flag on first attempt</td></tr> </table>	0	Do not set initial contact flag	1	Set initial contact flag on first attempt				
0	Do not set initial contact flag								
1	Set initial contact flag on first attempt								

Table 129: Information table for IPSec connections settings

32.2.5 Configure secret settings

Each tunnel requires settings to configure how the local end point of the tunnel proves its identity to the remote end point.

Figure 176: IPSec secrets settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description										
Web: Enabled UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].enabled Opt: enabled	Defines whether this set of credentials is to be used or not. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.						
0	Disabled.										
1	Enabled.										
Web: ID selector UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].idtype Opt: idtype	Defines whether IP address or userfqdn is used.										
Web: ID selector UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].localaddress Opt: localaddress	Defines the local address this secret applies to.										
Web: ID selector UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].remoteaddress Opt: remoteaddress	Defines the remote address this secret applies to.										
Web: N/A UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].userfqdn Opt: userfqdn	FQDN or Xauth name used of Extended Authentication. This must match xauth_identity from the configuration connection section.										
Web: Secret Type UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].secrettype Opt: secrettype	Specifies the authentication mechanism to be used by the two peers. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Psk</td><td>Preshared secret</td></tr> <tr> <td>Pubkey</td><td>Public key signatures</td></tr> <tr> <td>Rsasig</td><td>RSA digital signatures</td></tr> <tr> <td>Ecdsasig</td><td>Elliptic Curve DSA signatures</td></tr> <tr> <td>Xauth</td><td>Extended authentication</td></tr> </table>	Psk	Preshared secret	Pubkey	Public key signatures	Rsasig	RSA digital signatures	Ecdsasig	Elliptic Curve DSA signatures	Xauth	Extended authentication
Psk	Preshared secret										
Pubkey	Public key signatures										
Rsasig	RSA digital signatures										
Ecdsasig	Elliptic Curve DSA signatures										
Xauth	Extended authentication										
Web: Secret UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].secret Opt: secret	Defines the secret.										

Table 130: Information table for IPSec secrets settings

32.3 Configuring IPsec using UCI

32.3.1 Common settings

```
# Commands
touch /etc/config/strongswan
uci set strongswan.general=general
uci set strongswan.general.enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.general.strictcrpolicy=no
uci set strongswan.general.uniqueids=yes
uci set strongswan.general.cachecrls=no
uci set strongswan.general.debug=none
uci set strongswan.general.initial_contact=0
uci commit
```

This will create the following output:

```
config general 'general'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option strictcrpolicy 'no'
    option uniqueids 'yes'
    option cachecrls 'no'
    option debug 'none'
    option initial_contact '0'
```

32.3.2 Connection settings

```
touch /etc/config/strongswan
uci add strongswan connection
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].ikelifetime=3h
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].keylife=1h
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].rekeymargin=9m
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].keyingtries=3
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].restartdelay=0
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].dpdaction=none
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].dpddelay=30s
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].dpdtimeout=150s
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].name=3G_Backup
```

```
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].auto=start
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].type=tunnel
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].remoteaddress=100.100.100.100
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].localid=192.168.209.1
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].remoteid=100.100.100.100
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].locallan=192.168.209.1
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].locallanmask=255.255.255.255
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].remotelan=172.19.101.3
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].remotelanmask=255.255.255.255
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].authby=xauthpsk
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].xauth_identity=testxauth
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].ike=3des-md5-modp1024
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].esp=3des-md5
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].waniface=wan
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].inherit_child=0
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].initial_contact=0
uci commit
```

This will create the following output:

```
config connection
    option ikelifetime '3h'
    option keylife '1h'
    option rekeymargin '9m'
    option keyingtries '3'
    option restartdelay '0'
    option dpdaction 'none'
    option dpddelay '30s'
    option dpdtimeout '150s'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option name '3G_Backup'
    option auto 'start'
    option type 'tunnel'
    option remoteaddress '100.100.100.100 '
    option localid '192.168.209.1'
    option remoteid '100.100.100.100 '
    option locallan '192.168.209.1'
    option locallanmask '255.255.255.255'
```

```

option remotelan '172.19.101.3'
option remotelanmask '255.255.255.255'
option authby 'xauthpsk'
option xauth_identity 'testxauth'
option ike '3des-md5-modp1024'
option esp '3des-md5'
option waniface 'wan'
option inherit_child '0'
option initial_contact '0'

```

32.3.3 Shunt connection

If the remote LAN network is 0.0.0.0/0 then all traffic generated on the local LAN will be sent via the IPSec tunnel. This includes the traffic destined to the router's IP address. To avoid this situation you must include an additional config connection section.

```

# Commands
touch /etc/config/strongswan
uci add strongswan connection
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].name=local
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].locallan=10.1.1.1
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].locallanmask=255.255.255.255
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].remotelan=10.1.1.0
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].remotelanmask=255.255.255.0
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].type=pass
uci set strongswan.@connection[1].auto=route
uci commit

```

This will create the following output:

```

config connection
    option name 'local'
    option enabled 'yes'
    option locallan '10.1.1.1'
    option locallanmask '255.255.255.255'
    option remotelan '10.1.1.0'
    option remotelanmask '255.255.255.0'
    option type 'pass'
    option auto 'route'

```

Traffic originated on remotelan and destined to locallan address is excluded from VPN IPSec policy.

32.3.4 Secret settings

Each tunnel also requires settings for how the local end point of the tunnel proves its identity to the remote end point.

A sample secret section, which could be used with the connection section in 'Connection Settings', is shown below.

```
# Commands to add a secret for psk auth
touch /etc/config/strongswan
uci add strongswan secret
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].localaddress=192.168.209.1
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].remoteaddress= 100.100.100.100
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].secrettype=psk
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].secret=secret
uci commit
```

This will create the following output:

```
config secret
    option enabled 'yes'
    option localaddress '192.168.209.1'
    option remoteaddress '100.100.100.100 '
    option secrettype 'psk'
    option secret 'secret'
```

If xauth is defined as the authentication method then you must include an additional config secret section, as shown in the example below.

```
# Commands to add a secret for xauth auth
touch /etc/config/strongswan
uci add strongswan secret
uci set strongswan.@secret[1].enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.@secret[1].idtype=userfqdn
uci set strongswan.@secret[1].userfqdn=testxauth
uci set strongswan.@secret[1].remoteaddress=100.100.100.100
uci set strongswan.@secret[1].secret=xauth
uci set strongswan.@secret[1].secrettype=XAUTH
uci commit
```

This will create the following output:

```
config secret
    option enabled 'yes'
    option idtype 'userfqdn'
    option userfqdn 'testxauth'
    option remoteaddress '100.100.100.100'
    option secret 'xauth'
    option secrettype 'XAUTH'
```

32.4 Configuring an IPsec template for DMVPN via the web interface

To configure IPsec using the web interface, in the top menu, select **Services -> IPsec**. The strongSwan IPsec VPN page appears. There are three sections:

Common Settings	Control the overall behaviour of strongSwan. This behaviour is common across all tunnels.
Connection Settings	Together, these sections define the required parameters for a two-way IKEv1 tunnel.
Secret Settings	

32.4.1 Configure common settings

The screenshot shows the 'strongSwan IPsec VPN' configuration page. At the top, there are navigation links for 'Services', 'Network', and 'Logout', along with a 'UNSAVED CHANGES' button. The main heading is 'strongSwan IPsec VPN' with a subtitle 'Configuration of the strongSwan IPsec VPN system.' and a 'Delete' button. The 'Common Settings' section includes:

- 'Enable StrongSwan IPsec' with a checked checkbox.
- 'Strict CRL Policy' set to 'no', with a tooltip explaining it defines if a fresh CRL must be available for peer authentication based on RSA signatures to succeed.
- 'Unique IDs' set to 'yes', with a tooltip explaining whether a particular participant ID should be kept unique.
- 'Cache CRLs' with a checked checkbox and a tooltip stating CRLs fetched via HTTP or LDAP will be cached.
- 'Debug' set to 'none'.

Figure 177: The common settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description								
Web: Enable strongswan UCI: strongswan.general.enable Opt: enabled	Enables or disables IPsec. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Strict CRL Policy UCI: strongswan.general.strictcrlpolicy Opt: strictcrlpolicy	Defines if a fresh CRL must be available for the peer authentication based on RSA signatures to succeed. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>ifuri</td><td>The IKEv2 application additionally recognizes the "ifuri" option which reverts to 'yes' if at least one CRL URI is defined and to 'no' if no URI is known.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.	ifuri	The IKEv2 application additionally recognizes the "ifuri" option which reverts to 'yes' if at least one CRL URI is defined and to 'no' if no URI is known.		
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
ifuri	The IKEv2 application additionally recognizes the "ifuri" option which reverts to 'yes' if at least one CRL URI is defined and to 'no' if no URI is known.								
Web: Unique IDs UCI: strongswan.general.uniqueids Opt: uniqueids	Defines whether a particular participant ID should be kept unique, with any new (automatically keyed) connection using an ID from a different IP address deemed to replace all old ones using that ID. Participant IDs normally are unique, so a new (automatically-keyed) connection using the same ID is almost invariably intended to replace an old one. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>replace</td><td>Identical to Yes</td></tr> <tr><td>keep</td><td>Rejects new IKE SA and keep the duplicate established earlier</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.	replace	Identical to Yes	keep	Rejects new IKE SA and keep the duplicate established earlier
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
replace	Identical to Yes								
keep	Rejects new IKE SA and keep the duplicate established earlier								
Web: Cache CRLs UCI: strongswan.general.cachecrls Opt: cachecrls	Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) fetched via HTTP or LDAP will be cached in /etc/ipsec.d/crls/ under a unique file name derived from the certification authority's public key. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Debug UCI: strongswan.general.debug Opt: debug	Enable debugging. This option is used for trouble shooting issues. It is not suitable for a production environment. <table> <tr><td>None</td><td>Debug disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>Control</td><td>Debug enabled. Shows generic control flow with errors and very basic auditing logs.</td></tr> <tr><td>All</td><td>Debug enabled. Most verbose logging also includes sensitive information such as keys.</td></tr> </table>	None	Debug disabled.	Control	Debug enabled. Shows generic control flow with errors and very basic auditing logs.	All	Debug enabled. Most verbose logging also includes sensitive information such as keys.		
None	Debug disabled.								
Control	Debug enabled. Shows generic control flow with errors and very basic auditing logs.								
All	Debug enabled. Most verbose logging also includes sensitive information such as keys.								

Table 131: Information table for IPsec common settings

32.4.2 Configure connection settings

Scroll down to view the connection settings section.

If you want to create a DMVPN, you do not need to configure all settings as the DMVPN will automatically create them using the template. Leave the following sections blank:

- Remote GW Address
- Local ID
- Remote Id
- Local LAN IP Address
- Local LAN IP Address Mask
- Remote LAN IP Address
- Remote LAN IP Address Mask

Enabled	☒	
Aggressive Mode	☒	
Name	DMVPN_VDF	
Autostart Action	ignore	Operation on startup. add loads a connection without starting it. route loads a connection and installs kernel traps. If traffic is detected between locallan and remotelan, a connection is established. start loads a connection and brings it up immediately. ignore do nothing
Connection Type	transport	
Remote GW Address		Could be IP address or FQDN or '%any'
Local Id		Leave blank to use default (local interface IP address)
Remote Id		Leave blank to use default (remote gateway IP address)
Local LAN IP Address		
Local LAN IP Address Mask		
Remote LAN IP Address		
Remote LAN IP Address Mask		
Local Protocol	gre	Restrict the traffic selector to a single protocol on the local side
Local Port		Restrict the traffic selector to a single UDP/TCP port on the local side
Remote Protocol	gre	Restrict the traffic selector to a single protocol on the remote side
Remote Port		Restrict the traffic selector to a single UDP/TCP port on the remote side
Authby	psk	How the two security gateways should authenticate each other.
XAuth identity		Defines the identity/username the client uses to reply to an XAuth request. If not defined, the IKEv1 identity will be used as XAuth identity.
IKE algorithm	aes128-sha1-modp1024	
ESP algorithm	3des-md5	
WAN Interface	3GVDF	
IKE life time	3h	How long the keying channel of a connection should last before being renegotiated.
Key life	1h	Synonym for lifetime. How long a particular instance of a connection (a set of encryption/authentication keys for user packets) should last, from successful negotiation to expiry.
Rekey margin	9m	Synonym for margintime. How long before connection expiry or keying-channel expiry should attempts to negotiate a replacement begin.
Keyring tries	3	How many attempts (a positive integer or %forever) should be made to negotiate a connection, or a replacement for one, before giving up (default 3). The value %forever means 'never give up'.
DPD Action	none	Controls the use of the DPD protocol where R_U_THERE notification messages (IKEv1) or empty INFORMATIONAL messages (IKEv2) are periodically sent in order to check the liveness of the IPsec peer. If no activity is detected, all connections with a dead peer are stopped and unrouted (clear), put in the hold state (hold) or restarted (restart). The default is none which disables the active sending of DPD messages.
DPD Delay	30s	Defines the period time interval with which R_U_THERE messages/INFORMATIONAL exchanges are sent to the peer.
DPD Timeout	30s	Defines the timeout interval, after which all connections to a peer are deleted in case of inactivity.

Figure 178: The connections settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Enabled UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].enabled Opt: enable	Enables or disables IPsec connection.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Aggressive UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].aggressive Opt: aggressive	Enables or disables IKE aggressive mode. Note: using aggressive mode along with PSK authentication is less secure method than main mode and should be avoided.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Name UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].name Opt: name	Specifies a name for the tunnel.	
Web: Autostart Action UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].auto Opt: auto	Specifies when the tunnel is initiated.	
	start	On start up.
	route	When traffic routes this way.
	add	Loads a connection without starting it.
	ignore	Ignores the connection.
	always	Actively retries to establish the tunnel if it went down.
Web: Connection Type UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].type Opt: type	Defines the type of IPsec connection.	
	tunnel	Connection uses tunnel mode.
	transport	Connection uses transport mode.
	pass	Connection does not perform any IPsec processing.
	drop	Connection drops all the packets.
Web: Remote GW Address UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteaddress Opt: remoteaddress	Sets the public IP address of the remote peer. Leave blank for DMVPN.	
Web: Local ID UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].localid Opt: localid	Defines the local peer identifier. Leave blank for DMVPN.	
Web: Remote ID UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteid Opt: remoteid	Defines the remote peer identifier. Leave blank for DMVPN.	
Web: Local LAN IP Address UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].locallan Opt: locallan	Defines the local IP of LAN. Leave blank for DMVPN.	
Web: Local LAN IP Address Mask UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].locallanmask Opt: locallanmask	Defines the subnet of local LAN. Leave blank for DMVPN.	
Web: Remote LAN IP Address UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remotelan Opt: remotelan	Defines the IP address of LAN serviced by remote peer. Leave blank for DMVPN.	
Web: Remote LAN IP Address Mask UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remotelanmask Opt: remotelanmask	Defines the Subnet of remote LAN. Leave blank for DMVPN.	
Web: Local Protocol UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].localproto Opt: localproto	Restricts the connection to a single protocol on the local side.	

Web: Local Port UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].localport Opt: localport	Restricts the connection to a single port on the local side.														
Web: Remote Protocol UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteproto Opt: remoteproto	Restricts the connection to a single protocol on the remote side.														
Web: Remote Port UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].remoteport Opt: remoteport	Restricts the connection to a single port on the remote side.														
Web: Authby UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].authby Opt: authby	Defines how the two secure gateways should authenticate. Note: using aggressive mode along with PSK authentication is unsecure and should be avoided. <table> <tr> <td>Pubkey</td><td>For public key signatures.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Rsasig</td><td>For RSA digital signatures.</td></tr> <tr> <td>ecdsasig</td><td>For Elliptic Curve DSA signatures.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Psk</td><td>Using a preshared key.</td></tr> <tr> <td>xauthrsasig</td><td>Enables eXtended Authentication (XAuth) with addition to RSA signatures.</td></tr> <tr> <td>xauthpsk</td><td>Using extended authentication and preshared key.</td></tr> <tr> <td>never</td><td>Can be used if negotiation is never to be attempted or accepted (shunt connections).</td></tr> </table>	Pubkey	For public key signatures.	Rsasig	For RSA digital signatures.	ecdsasig	For Elliptic Curve DSA signatures.	Psk	Using a preshared key.	xauthrsasig	Enables eXtended Authentication (XAuth) with addition to RSA signatures.	xauthpsk	Using extended authentication and preshared key.	never	Can be used if negotiation is never to be attempted or accepted (shunt connections).
Pubkey	For public key signatures.														
Rsasig	For RSA digital signatures.														
ecdsasig	For Elliptic Curve DSA signatures.														
Psk	Using a preshared key.														
xauthrsasig	Enables eXtended Authentication (XAuth) with addition to RSA signatures.														
xauthpsk	Using extended authentication and preshared key.														
never	Can be used if negotiation is never to be attempted or accepted (shunt connections).														
Web: XAuth Identity UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].xauth_identity Opt: xauth_identity	Defines Xauth ID.														
Web: IKE Algorithm UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].ike Opt: ike	Specifies the IKE algorithm to use. The format is: encAlgo authAlgo DHGroup: encAlgo: 3des aes128 aes256 serpent twofish blowfish authAlgo: md5 sha sha2 DHGroup: modp1024 modp1536 modp2048 modp3072 modp4096 modp6144 modp8192 For example, a valid IKE algorithm is: aes128-sha-modp1536.														

Web: ESP algorithm UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].esp Opt: esp	Specifies the esp algorithm to use. The format is: encAlgo authAlgo DHGroup encAlgo: 3des aes128 aes256 serpent twofish blowfish authAlgo: md5 sha sha2 DHGroup: modp1024 modp1536 modp2048 modp3072 modp4096 modp6144 modp8192 For example, a valid encryption algorithm is: aes128-sha-modp1536. If no DH group is defined then PFS is disabled.				
Web: WAN Interface UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].waniface Opt: waniface	This is a space separated list of the WAN interfaces the router will use to establish a tunnel with the secure gateway. On the web, a list of the interface names is automatically generated. If you want to specify more than one interface use the "custom" value. Example: If you have a 3G WAN interface called 'wan' and a WAN ADSL interface called 'dsl' and wanted to use one of these interfaces for this IPsec connection, you would use: 'wan dsl'.				
Web: IKE Life Time UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].ikelifetime Opt: ikelifetime	Specifies how long the keyring channel of a connection (ISAKMP or IKE SA) should last before being renegotiated. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>3h</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 3h, 25m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	3h		Timespec	1d, 3h, 25m, 10s.
3h					
Timespec	1d, 3h, 25m, 10s.				
Web: Key Life UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].keylife Opt: keylife	Specifies how long a particular instance of a connection (a set of encryption/authentication keys for user packets) should last, from successful negotiation to expiry. Normally, the connection is renegotiated (via the keyring channel) before it expires (see rekeymargin). <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1h</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 1h, 25m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	1h		Timespec	1d, 1h, 25m, 10s.
1h					
Timespec	1d, 1h, 25m, 10s.				
Web: Rekey Margin UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].rekeymargin Opt: rekeymargin	Specifies how long before connection expiry or keyring-channel expiry should attempt to negotiate a replacement begin. Relevant only locally, other end need not agree on it. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>9m</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	9m		Timespec	1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.
9m					
Timespec	1d, 2h, 9m, 10s.				
Web: Keyring Tries UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].keyringtries Opt: keyringtries	Specifies how many attempts (a positive integer or %forever) should be made to negotiate a connection, or a replacement for one, before giving up. The value %forever means 'never give up'. Relevant only locally, other end need not agree on it.				

Web: DPD Action UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpdaction Opt: dpdaction	Defines DPD (Dead Peer Detection) action. <table> <tr> <td>None</td><td>Disables DPD.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Clear</td><td>Clear down the tunnel if peer does not respond. Reconnect when traffic brings the tunnel up.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Hold</td><td>Clear down the tunnel and bring up as soon as the peer is available.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Restart</td><td>Restarts DPD when no activity is detected.</td></tr> </table>	None	Disables DPD.	Clear	Clear down the tunnel if peer does not respond. Reconnect when traffic brings the tunnel up.	Hold	Clear down the tunnel and bring up as soon as the peer is available.	Restart	Restarts DPD when no activity is detected.
None	Disables DPD.								
Clear	Clear down the tunnel if peer does not respond. Reconnect when traffic brings the tunnel up.								
Hold	Clear down the tunnel and bring up as soon as the peer is available.								
Restart	Restarts DPD when no activity is detected.								
Web: DPD Delay UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpddelay Opt: dpddelay	Defines the period time interval with which R_U_THERE messages and INFORMATIONAL exchanges are sent to the peer. These are only sent if no other traffic is received. <table> <tr> <td>30s</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	30s		Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.				
30s									
Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.								
Web: DPD Timeout UCI: strongswan.@connection[X].dpdtimeout Opt: dpdtimeout	Defines the timeout interval, after which all connections to a peer are deleted in case of inactivity. <table> <tr> <td>150s</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Timespec</td><td>1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.</td></tr> </table>	150s		Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.				
150s									
Timespec	1d, 2h, 25m, 10s.								

Table 132: Information table for IPSec connections settings

32.4.3 Configure secret settings

Each tunnel requires settings to configure how the local end point of the tunnel proves its identity to the remote end point.

Figure 179: IPSec secrets settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Enabled UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].enabled Opt: enabled	Defines whether this set of credentials is to be used or not. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: ID selector UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].idtype Opt: idtype	Defines whether IP address or userfqdn is used.				
Web: ID selector UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].localaddress Opt: localaddress	Defines the local address this secret applies to.				
Web: ID selector UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].remoteaddress Opt: remoteaddress	Defines the remote address this secret applies to.				

Web: N/A UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].userfqnd Opt: userfqnd	FQDN or Xauth name used of Extended Authentication. This must match xauth_identity from the configuration connection section.										
Web: Secret Type UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].secrettype Opt: secrettype	Specifies the authentication mechanism to be used by the two peers. <table> <tr> <td>Psk</td><td>Preshared secret</td></tr> <tr> <td>Pubkey</td><td>Public key signatures</td></tr> <tr> <td>Rsasig</td><td>RSA digital signatures</td></tr> <tr> <td>Ecdsasig</td><td>Elliptic Curve DSA signatures</td></tr> <tr> <td>Xauth</td><td>Extended authentication</td></tr> </table>	Psk	Preshared secret	Pubkey	Public key signatures	Rsasig	RSA digital signatures	Ecdsasig	Elliptic Curve DSA signatures	Xauth	Extended authentication
Psk	Preshared secret										
Pubkey	Public key signatures										
Rsasig	RSA digital signatures										
Ecdsasig	Elliptic Curve DSA signatures										
Xauth	Extended authentication										
Web: Secret UCI: strongswan.@secret[X].secret Opt: secret	Defines the secret.										

Table 133: Information table for IPsec secret settings

32.5 Configuring an IPsec template to use with DMVPN

The following example shows how to configure an IPsec connection template to use with DMVPN.

```
# Commands
touch /etc/config/strongswan
uci set strongswan.general=general
uci set strongswan.general.enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.general.strictcrpolicy=no
uci set strongswan.general.uniqueids=yes
uci set strongswan.general.cachecrls=yes
uci set strongswan.general.nat traversal=yes
uci add strongswan connection
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].name=dmvpn
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].type=transport
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].localproto=gre
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].remoteproto=gre
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].ike=aes-sha1-modp1024
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].esp=aes128-sha1
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].waniface=lan4
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].auto=ignore
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].ikelifetime=28800s
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].keylife=300s
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].rekeymargin=30s
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].keyingtries=%forever
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].dpdaction=hold
```

```
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].dpddelay=30s
uci set strongswan.@connection[0].dpdtimeout=150s
uci add strongswan secret
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].enabled=yes
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].secrettype=psk
uci set strongswan.@secret[0].secret=secret
```

This will create package strongswan.

```
config general 'general'
option enabled 'yes'
option strictcrlpolicy 'no'
option uniqueids 'yes'
option cachecrls 'yes'
option natTraversal 'yes'
  config connection
option enabled 'yes'
option name 'dmvpn'
option type 'transport'
option localproto 'gre'
option remoteproto 'gre'
option ike 'aes-sha1-modp1024'
option esp 'aes128-sha1'
option waniface 'lan4'
option auto 'ignore'
option ikelifetime '28800s'
option keylife '300s'
option rekeymargin '30s'
option keyingtries '%forever'
option dpdaction 'hold'
option dpddelay '30s'
option dpdtimeout '150s'
config secret
option enabled 'yes'
option secrettype 'psk'
option secret 'secret'
```


32.6 IPsec diagnostics using the web interface

32.6.1 IPsec status

In the top menu, click **Status -> IPsec**. The IPsec Connections page appears.

IPsec Connections									
Name	IKE					SA			
	Status	Remote	Established	Encryption	Integrity	Status	Policy	Data In/Out	Rekey in
dmvpn_213_233_148_2	ESTABLISHED	213.233.148.2	2 hours ago	3DES_CBC	HMAC_MD5_96	INSTALLED			
dmvpn_89_101_154_151	ESTABLISHED	89.101.154.151	2 hours ago	3DES_CBC	HMAC_MD5_96	INSTALLED			

Figure 180: The IPsec connections page

In the Name column, the syntax contains the IPsec Name defined in package dmvpn and the remote IP address of the hub, or the spoke separated by an underscore; for example, dmvpn_213.233.148.2.

32.7 IPsec diagnostics using UCI

32.7.1 IPsec configuration

To view IPsec configuration via UCI, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export strongswan
```

To restart strongSwan, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# /etc/init.d/strongswan restart
```

32.7.2 IPsec status

32.7.3 To view IPsec status, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# ipsec statusall
Security Associations (1 up, 0 connecting):
dmvpn_89_101_154_151[1]: ESTABLISHED 2 hours ago,
10.68.234.133[10.68.234.133]...89.101.154.151[89.101.154.151]
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}: REKEYING, TRANSPORT, expires in 55 seconds
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}: 10.68.234.133/32[gre] === 192.168./32[gre]
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}: INSTALLED, TRANSPORT, ESP in UDP SPIs: cca7b970_i
d874dc90_o
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}: 10.68.234.133/32[gre] === 89.101.154.151/32[gre]
```

To view a list of IPsec commands, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# ipsec -help
```

33 Dynamic Multipoint Virtual Private Network (DMVPN)

Dynamic Multipoint Virtual Private Network (DMVPN) is a scalable method of creating VPN IPsec Networks. DMVPN is a suite of three protocols: NHRP, GRE and IPsec, used to dynamically create VPN tunnels between different endpoints in the network without having to pre-configure each device with VPN details of the rest of endpoints in the network.

33.1 Prerequisites for configuring DMVPN

Before configuring DMVPN, you must first configure:

- A GRE interface; the previous chapter, 'Configuring GRE interfaces'
- An IPsec connection to use as a template; read the chapter, 'Configuring IPsec'.

33.2 Advantages of using DMVPN

Using DMVPN eliminates the need of IPsec configuration to the physical interface. This reduces the number of lines of configuration required for a VPN development. For example, for a 1000-site deployment, DMVPN reduces the configuration effort at the hub from 3900 lines to 13.

- Adding new peers (spokes) to the VPN requires no changes at the hub.
- Better scalability of the network.
- Dynamic IP addresses can be used at the peers' site.
- Spokes can be connected in private or public network.
- NHRP NAT extension allows spoke-to-spoke tunnels to be built, even if one or more spokes is behind a Network Address Translation (NAT) device.
- New hubs can be added to the network to improve the performances and reliability.
- Ability to carry multicast and main routing protocols traffic (RIP, OSPF, BGP).
- DMVPN can be deployed using Activator, the Virtual Access automated provisioning system.
- Simplifies branch communications by enabling direct branch to branch connectivity.
- Simplifies configuration on the spoke routers. The same IPsec template configuration is used to create spoke-to-hub and spoke-to-spoke VPN IPsec tunnel.
- Improves business resiliency by preventing disruption of business-critical applications and services by incorporating routing with standards-based IPsec technology.

33.3 DMVPN scenarios

33.3.1 Scenario 1

Spoke1, spoke2 and a hub are in the same public or private network.

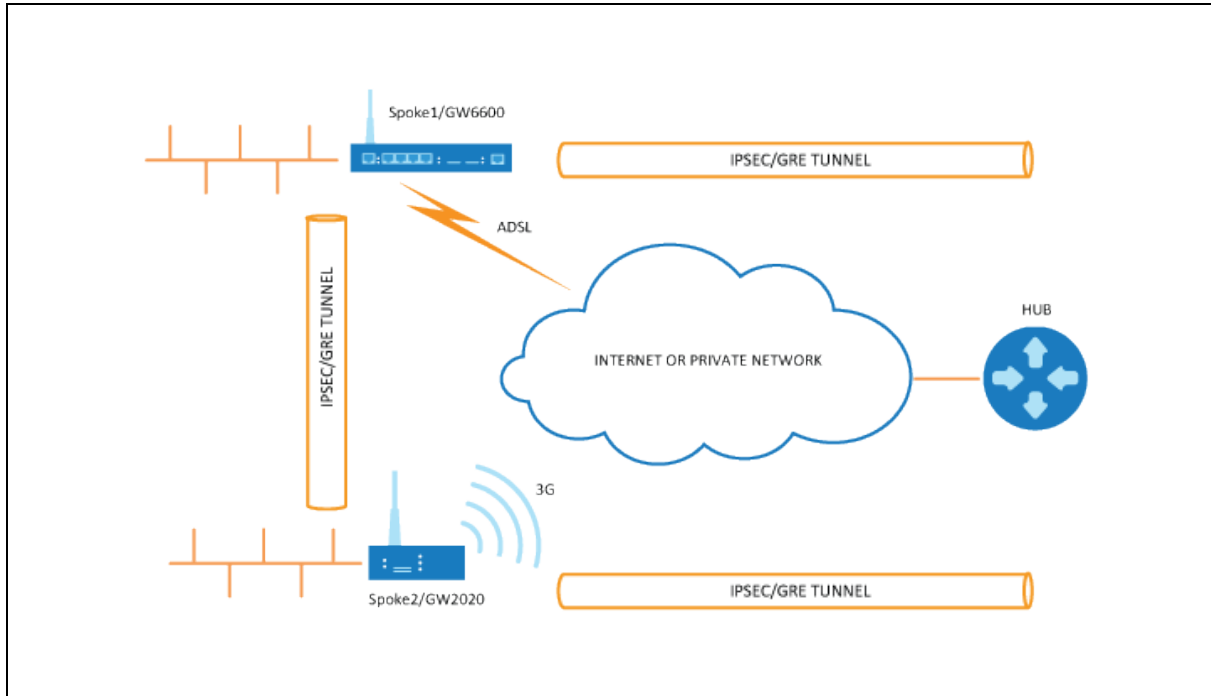


Figure 181: Network diagram for DMVPN spoke to spoke

- Spoke1 and spoke2 connect on their WAN interface: ADSL, 3G and initiate main mode IPsec in transport mode to the hub.
- After an IPsec tunnel is established, spokes register their NHRP membership with the hub.
- GRE tunnels come up.
- Hub caches the GRE tunnel and real IP addresses of each spoke.
- When spoke1 wants to talk to spoke2, it sends an NHRP resolution request to the hub.
- The hub checks its cache table and forwards that request to spoke2.
- Spoke2 caches spoke1's GRE and real IP address and sends an NHRP resolution reply via the hub.
- Spoke1 receives an NHRP resolution reply and updates its NHRP table with spoke2 information. Then it initiates VPN IPsec connection to spoke2.
- When an IPsec tunnel is established, spoke1 and spoke2 can send traffic directly to each other.

33.3.2 Scenario 2

Spoke1 is in a private (NAT-ed) network, spoke2 and hub are in public network.

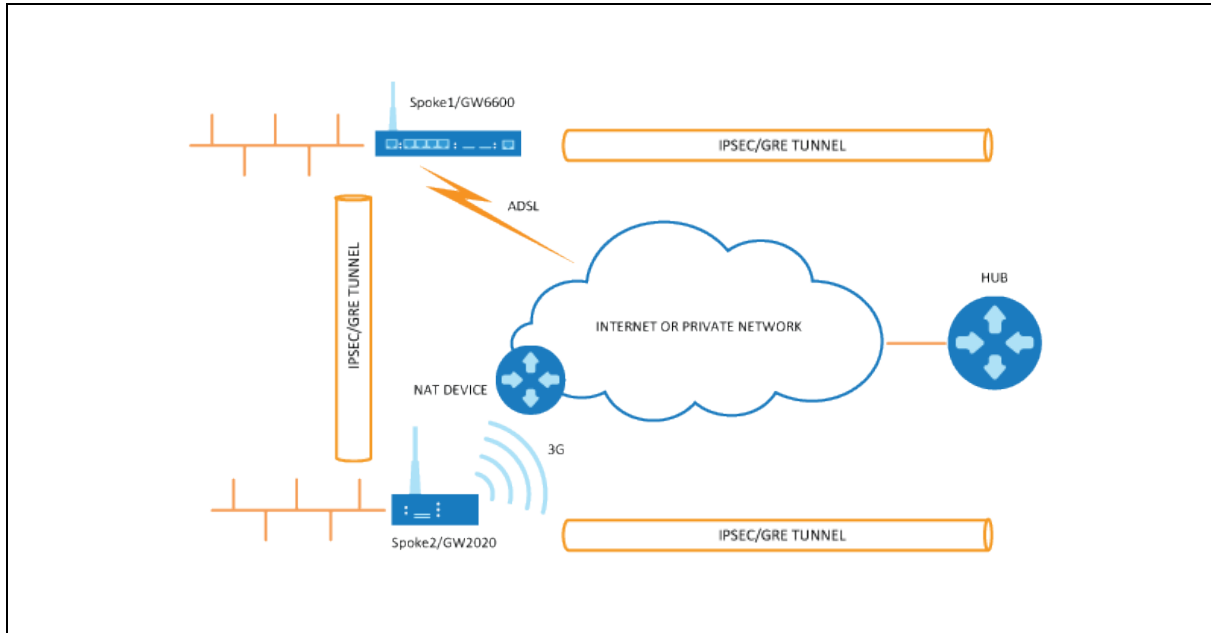


Figure 182: Network diagram for DMVPN spoke behind NAT

- Spoke1 sends an NHRP registration request to the hub.
- Hub receives this request and compares the source tunnel address of the spoke with the source of the packet.
- Hub sends an NHRP registration reply with a NAT extension to spoke1.
- The NAT extension informs spoke1 that it is behind the NAT-ed device.
- Spoke1 registers its pre- and post-NAT address.
- When spoke1 wants to talk to spoke2, it sends an NHRP resolution request to the hub.
- Hub checks its cache table and forwards that request to spoke2.
- Spoke2 caches spoke1's GRE pre- and post-NAT IP address and sends an NHRP resolution reply via the hub.
- Spoke1 receives the NHRP resolution reply and updates its NHRP table with spoke2 information. It initiates a VPN IPsec connection to spoke2.
- When the IPsec tunnel is established, spoke1 and spoke2 can send traffic directly to each other.

Note: if an IPsec tunnel fails to be established between the spokes then packets between the spokes are sent via the hub.

33.4 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
network	For configuring the GRE tunnels.
strongswan	For enabling and configuring the IPsec connection template
dmvpn	

33.5 Configuring DMVPN using the web interface

The DMVPN section contains fields required to configure the parameters relative to the DMVPN Hub. These are used for DMVPN tunnels, such as GRE tunnels, GRE tunnel remote IP, DMVPN Hub IP and password.

33.5.1 DMVPN general settings

In the top menu, select **Network -> DMVPN**. The DMVPN page appears. There are two sections: General and DMVPN Hub Settings.

Figure 183: The DMVPN general section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Enable DMVPN UCI: dmvpn.common.enabled Opt: enable	Enables DMVPN. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: IPsec template connection UCI: dmvpn.common.ipsec_template_name Opt: ipsec_template_name	Selects the IPsec connection, defined in strongSwan, to be used as a template.				

Table 134: Information table for DMVPN general settings

33.5.2 DMVPN hub settings

DMVPN Hub Settings

GRE Interface	GRE Remote Endpoint IP Address	GRE Remote Endpoint Mask Length	DMVPN Hub IP Address	NHRP Authentication	NHRP Holding Time	Use as Default Route	Default Route Metric	LED state indication
gre1	10.2.5.6		192.168.15.2		600	☒	1	vpn1

Add

Save & Apply Save Reset

Figure 184: The DMVPN hub settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: GRE Interface UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].gre_interface Opt: gre_interface	Specifies which GRE interface will be used with this DMVPN configuration.				
Web: GRE Remote Endpoint IP Address UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].gre_endpoint_ip Opt: gre_endpoint_ip	Configures the GRE IP address of the hub.				
Web: GRE Remote Endpoint Mask Length UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].gre_endpoint_mask_length Opt: gre_endpoint_mask_length	Configures the length of the mask of the GRE interface on the hub. For example if the mask is 255.255.0.0 the length will be 16.				
Web: DMVPN Hub IP Address UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].nhs_ip Opt: nhs_ip	Configures the physical IP address for the DMVPN hub.				
Web: NHRP Authentication UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].cisco_auth Opt: cisco_auth	Enables authentication on NHRP. The password will be applied in plaintext to the outgoing NHRP packets. Maximum length is 8 characters.				
Web: NHRP Holding Time UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].holding_time Opt: holding_time	Timeout for cached NHRP requests.				
Web: Use As Default Route UCI : dmvpn.@interface[X].defaultroute Opt: defaultroute	Adds a default route into tunnel interface. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Default Route Metric UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].defaultroutemetric Opt: defaultroutemetric	Metric to use for the default route.				
Web: LED state indication UCI: dmvpn.@interface[X].led Opt: led	LED to use for indicating if the VPN is up.				

Table 135: Information table for DMVPN hub settings

33.5.3 Configuring an IPSec template for DMVPN using the web interface

Configuring an IPSec template is covered in the chapter 'Configuring IPSec'.

33.6 DMVPN diagnostics

In the top menu, click **Status -> IPSec**. The IPSec Connections page appears.

IPsec Connections									
Name	IKE					SA			
	Status	Remote	Established	Encryption	Integrity	Status	Policy	Data In/Out	Rekey in
dmvpn_213_233_148_2	ESTABLISHED	213.233.148.2	2 hours ago	3DES_CBC	HMAC_MD5_96	INSTALLED			
dmvpn_89_101_154_151	ESTABLISHED	89.101.154.151	2 hours ago	3DES_CBC	HMAC_MD5_96	INSTALLED			

Figure 185: The IPSec connections page

In the Name column, the syntax contains the IPSec name defined in package dmvpn and the remote IP address of the hub, or the spoke separated by an underscore; for example, dmvpn_213.233.148.2.

To check the status of DMVPN, in the top menu, click **Status -> DMVPN**.

NBMA peers			
NBMA Address	Interface	Address	Type
213.233.148.2	GRE	11.11.11.3/32	spoke
89.101.154.151	GRE	11.11.11.1/29	hub

Powered by LuCI Trunk (trunk+svn8382) VIE-16.00.28 image1 config2

Figure 186: The NBMA peers page

To check DMVPN status, enter:

```
:~# opennhrpctl show
Status: ok
Interface: gre-GRE
Type: local
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.7/32
Alias-Address: 11.11.11.3
Flags: up
Interface: gre-GRE
Type: local
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.3/32
Flags: up
Interface: gre-GRE
Type: cached
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.2/32
NBMA-Address: 178.237.115.129
NBMA-NAT-OA-Address: 172.20.38.129
```

Flags: used up

Expires-In: 0:18

Interface: gre-GRE

Type: static

Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.1/29

NBMA-Address: 89.101.154.151

Flags: up

Interface	Description	
Type	incomplete	Resolution request sent.
	negative	Negative cached.
	cached	Received/relayed resolution reply.
	shortcut_route	Received/relayed resolution for route.
	dynamic	NHC resolution.
	dynamic_nhs	Dynamic NHS from dns-map.
	static	Static mapping from config file.
	dynamic_map	Static dns-map from config file.
	local_route	Non-local destination, with local route.
	local_addr	Local destination (IP or off-NBMA subnet).
Protocol Address	Tunnel IP address	
NBMA-Address	Pre-NAT IP address if NBMA-NAT-OA-Address is present or real address if NAT is not present.	
NBMA-NAT-OA-Address	Post NAT IP address. This field is present when Address is translated in the network.	
Flags	up	Can send all packets (registration ok).
	unique	Peer is unique.
	used	Peer is kernel ARP table.
	lower-up	openhrp script executed successfully.
Expires-In	Expiration time.	

Table 136: Information table for DMVPN status

You can check IPsec status using UCI commands.

```

root@VA-router:~# ipsec status
Security Associations (1 up, 0 connecting):
dmvpn_89_101_154_151[1]: ESTABLISHED 2 hours ago,
10.68.234.133[10.68.234.133]...89.101.154.151[89.101.154.151]
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}: REKEYING, TRANSPORT, expires in 55 seconds
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}: 10.68.234.133/32[gre] === 192.168./32[gre]
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}: INSTALLED, TRANSPORT, ESP in UDP SPIs: cca7b970_i
d874dc90_o
dmvpn_89_101_154_151{1}: 10.68.234.133/32[gre] === 89.101.154.151/32[gre]
```


You can check DMVPN status using UCI commands.

```
:~# opennhrpctl show
Status: ok

Interface: gre-GRE
Type: local
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.7/32
Alias-Address: 11.11.11.3
Flags: up

Interface: gre-GRE
Type: local
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.3/32
Flags: up
Interface: gre-GRE
Type: cached
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.2/32
NBMA-Address: 178.237.115.129
NBMA-NAT-OA-Address: 172.20.38.129
Flags: used up
Expires-In: 0:18
Interface: gre-GRE
Type: static
Protocol-Address: 11.11.11.1/29

NBMA-Address: 89.101.154.151
Flags: up
```

34 Configuring multicasting using PIM and IGMP interfaces

34.1 Overview

IP multicast is a bandwidth-conserving technology that reduces traffic by simultaneously delivering a single stream of information to potentially thousands of corporate recipients. Applications that take advantage of multicast include video conferencing and corporate communications.

IP multicast delivers application source traffic to multiple receivers without burdening the source or the receivers while using a minimum of network bandwidth.

PIM (Protocol Independent Multicast) and IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) are protocols used to create multicasting networks within a regular IP network.

A multicast group is an arbitrary group of receivers that expresses an interest in receiving a particular data stream. The receivers (the designated multicast group) are interested in receiving a data stream from the source. They indicate this by sending an Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) host report to their closest router in the network. The routers are then responsible for delivering the data from the source to the receivers. The routers use Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) between themselves to dynamically create a multicast distribution tree. The data stream will then be delivered only to the network segments that are in the path between the source and the receivers.

To summarize: PIM is used between routers while IGMP is used between a receiver and its router only. As a result, PIM must be enabled on all the interfaces on the route from the multicast source to the multicast client while IGMP must be enabled on the interface to the multicast client only.

34.2 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
pimd	pimd interface

34.3 Configuring PIM and IGMP using the web interface

To configure PIM through the web interface, in the top menu, select **Network -> PIM**. The PIM page appears. To access the Global settings, click **Add**.



Figure 187: The global settings interface

34.3.1 Global settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: PIM Enabled UCI: pimd.pimd.enabled Opt: enabled	Globally enables PIM on the router. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: SSM Ping Enabled UCI: pimd.pimd.ssm pingd Opt: ssm pingd	Enables answers to SSM pings. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 137: Information table for PIM global settings

34.3.2 Interfaces configuration

Interfaces Configuration

Enabled	Interface	Enable IGMP	Enable SSM	
☒	gre1	☐	☒	Delete
☒	wan_ap	☒	☒	Delete

Add

Figure 188: The interfaces configuration section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Enabled UCI: pimd.interface[x].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables multicast management of the given interface by the PIM application. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Interface UCI: pimd.interface[x].interface Opt: interface	Selects the interface to apply PIM settings to.				
Web: Enable IGMP UCI: pimd.interface[x].igmp Opt: igmp	Enable IGMP on given interface. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table> Note: you must enable PIM SSM and/or IGMP depending on your requirements. ICMP must be enabled on the interface to the multicast client only.	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Enable SSM UCI: pimd.interface[x].ssm Opt: ssm	Enable SSM on given interface. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 138: Information table for interface settings

To save your configuration updates, click **Save & Apply**.

34.4 Configuring PIM and IGMP using UCI

You can configure PIM and IGMP through CLI using UCI.

The configuration file is stored on **/etc/config/pimd**

To view the configuration file, enter:

```
uci export pimd
root@VA_router:/etc/config1# uci export pimd
package pimd
config routing 'pimd'
    option enabled 'yes'

config interface
    option enabled 'yes'
    option interface 'lan'
    option ssm 'yes'
    option igmp 'yes'

config interface
    option enabled 'yes'
    option interface 'wan'
    option ssm 'yes'
    option igmp 'no'
```

Alternatively, enter:

```
uci show pimd
root@VA_router:/etc/config1# uci show pimd
pimd.pimd=routing
pimd.pimd.enabled=yes
pimd.@interface[0]=interface
pimd.@interface[0].enabled=yes
pimd.@interface[0].interface=lan
pimd.@interface[0].ssm=yes
pimd.@interface[0].igmp=yes
pimd.@interface[1]=interface
pimd.@interface[1].enabled=yes
pimd.@interface[1].interface=wan
```

```
pimd.@interface[1].ssm=yes  
pimd.@interface[1].igmp=no
```

To change any of the above values use `uci set` command.

35 QoS: VLAN 802.1Q PCP tagging

35.1 Configuring VLAN PCP tagging

Virtual Access routers have the capability to respect and set PCP priority values inside 802.1Q VLAN tagged frames. The following partial export of network configuration shows how to configure VLAN priorities for specific interfaces (VLANs).

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export network package network
```

```
config va_switch
```

```
    option eth0 'A E'
```

```
    option eth1 'B F'
```

```
    option eth2 'C G'
```

```
    option eth3 'D'
```

```
    option eth4 'H'
```

```
config interface 'VLAN_1'
```

```
    option type 'bridge'
```

```
    option proto 'static'
```

```
    option ipaddr '10.1.28.99'
```

```
    option netmask '255.255.0.0'
```

```
    option ifname 'eth0 eth4'
```

```
config interface 'VLAN_2'
```

```
    option type 'bridge'
```

```
    option proto 'static'
```

```
    option ipaddr '192.168.2.1'
```

```
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
```

```
    option ifname 'eth1 eth4.2'
```

```
    option vlan_qos_map_ingress '1:1'
```

```
    option vlan_qos_map_egress '0:1'
```

```
config interface 'VLAN_3'
```

```
    option ifname 'eth2 eth4.3'
```

```
    option type 'bridge'
```

```
    option proto 'static'
```

```
    option ipaddr '192.168.3.1'
```

```
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
```

```

option vlan_qos_map_ingress '3:3'
option vlan_qos_map_egress '0:3'

config interface 'VLAN_4'
    option ifname 'eth3 eth4.4'
    option type 'bridge'
    option proto 'static'
    option ipaddr '192.168.3.1'
    option netmask '255.255.255.0'
    option vlan_qos_map_ingress '5:5'
    option vlan_qos_map_egress '0:5'

```

UCI / Package Option	Description
UCI: network.<if name>.vlan_qos_map_ingress Opt: list vlan_qos_map_ingress	VLAN priority code point to socket buffer mapping. Example: network.<if name>. vlan_qos_map_ingress =1:1
UCI: network.<if name>.vlan_qos_map_egress Opt: list vlan_qos_map_egress	Socket buffer to VLAN priority code point mapping. Example: network.<if name>. vlan_qos_map_egress =0:1

The above sample configuration specifies that any frames on VLAN2, VLAN3 and VLAN4 will be processed or have their PCP value adjusted according to QoS values set.

VLAN1

- VLAN1 is an untagged VLAN so there are no 802.1Q tags on the frames.

VLAN2

- Any frames received on VLAN2 destined to VLAN2 with PCP priority of 1 will be forwarded without altering the priority; it will be still set to 1.
- Any frames received on VLAN2 destined to VLAN2 with a PCP priority set to 0 will have a priority of 1 set as they leave the router on VLAN2.

VLAN3

- Any frames received on VLAN3 destined to VLAN3 with a PCP priority of 3 will be forwarded without altering the priority; it will be still set to 3.
- Any frames received on VLAN3 destined to VLAN2 with PCP priority set to 0 will have a priority of 3 set as they leave the router on VLAN3.

VLAN4

- Any frames received on VLAN4 destined to VLAN2 with PCP priority of 5 will be forwarded without altering the priority; it will be still set to 5.
- Any frames received on VLAN4 destined to VLAN2 with PCP priority set to 0 will have a priority of 5 set as they leave the router on VLAN4.

Four queues are supported and are structured as follows:

- Queue 1: PCP values 0 and 1 - Default
- Queue 2: PCP values 2 and 3 - Normal
- Queue 3: PCP values 4 and 5 - High
- Queue 4: PCP values 6 and 7 - Express

Value 7 is the highest priority and 0 is the lowest. These queues prioritise 802.1Q tagged frames as they are received on the port, these are hardware defined.

When 802.1Q frames are received on the port they are processed according to the above queues on arrival (even if not defined in the configuration). Then if value 'vlan_qos_map_ingress' is configured you can modify the PCP priority for egress if the frame was to be forwarded on another tagged interface.

When frames are received on an untagged VLAN interface configured with 'vlan_qos_map_egress' and are destined to tagged interface, 802.1Q tag will be created with a default priority of 0 and then the priority will be set according to the PCP value specified as the frames leave port.

36 QoS: type of service

Virtual Access routers are capable of implementing quality of service configurations on a per interface basis, which allows traffic prioritisation based on type of service criteria parameters.

36.1 QoS configuration overview

A minimal QoS configuration usually consists of:

- One interface section
- Some rules allocating packets to at least two buckets
- Configuration of the buckets

36.2 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
qos	interface
	classgroup
	class
	classify

36.3 Configuring QoS using the web interface

Browse to the router's IP address and login.

Select **Network tab -> QoS**. The QoS page appears. From this page you can configure interfaces that QoS is applied to as well as classification rules.

Figure 189: The quality of service page

To configure an interface, enter a relevant interface name and click **Add**. The Quality of Service page for that interface appears.

Quality of Service

With QoS you can prioritize network traffic selected by addresses, ports or services.

Interfaces

WAN

Enable ☒

Classification group default

Calculate overhead ☒

Half-duplex ☒

Download speed (kbit/s) 8000

Upload speed (kbit/s) 1000

Add

Figure 190: The quality of service page for WAN interface

The following parameters can be configured for the interface you have chosen. The name of the interfaces should match with the logical name given to the interface in the network configuration.

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Enabled UCI: qos.[interface].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables QoS interface.	
	1	Enabled.
	0	Disabled.
Web: Classification group UCI: qos. [interface].classgroup Opt: classgroup	Creates a mapping before previously created classgroup and interface to which it should be assigned to.	
Web: Calculate overhead UCI: qos. [interface].overhead Opt: overhead	Decreases upload and download ratio to prevent link saturation.	
Web: Half-duplex UCI: qos [interface].halfduplex Opt: halfduplex	Enables or disables half-duplex operation.	
	1	Enabled.
	0	Disabled.
Web: Download speed UCI: qos.[interface].download Opt: download	Download speed limit in kbits/sec.	
Web: Upload speed UCI: qos.[interface].upload=2000 Opt:upload	Upload speed limit in kbits/sec.	

Table 139: Information table for QoS page

To add classification rules, click **Add**. The Classification Rules section appears.

Configure each classification rule with the following parameters.

Classification Rules

Target	Source host	Destination host	Service	Protocol	Ports	Number of bytes	Sort
priority	192.168.100.100	all	all	all	all		Delete
normal	192.168.100.100	all	bittorrent	UDP	all		Delete

Add

Save & Apply

Save

Reset

Figure 191: Parameters for classification rules

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description								
Web: Target UCI: Opt:	Creates and configures selected target bucket. <table><tr><td>Normal</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Priority</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Low</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Express</td><td></td></tr></table>	Normal		Priority		Low		Express	
Normal									
Priority									
Low									
Express									
Web: Source host UCI: Opt:	Source host.								
Web: Destination host UCI: Opt:	Destination host.								
Web: Service UCI: Opt:	Selectable service.								
Web: Protocol UCI: Opt:	Protocol to classify.								
Web: Ports UCI: Opt:	Upload speed kbits/sec.								
Web: Number of bytes UCI: Opt:	Number of bytes for bucket.								

Table 140: Information table for classification rules

36.4 Configuring QoS using UCI

You can also configure QoS using UCI. The configuration file is stored on:

```
/etc/config/qos
```

36.4.1 Interface

Defines the interface on which configured QoS settings will take place.

Each interface can have its own buffer. The interface section declares global characteristics of the connection on which the specified interface is communicating. The following options are defined within this section:

```

config interface 'ADSL'
    option classgroup 'Default'
    option enabled '1'
    option overhead '1'
    option halfduplex '0'
    option download '900'
    option upload '245'

```

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Enabled UCI: qos.[interface].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables or disables QoS interface. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Classification group UCI: qos. [interface].classgroup Opt: classgroup	Creates a mapping before previously created classgroup and interface to which it should be assigned to.				
Web: Calculate overhead UCI: qos. [interface].overhead Opt: overhead	Decrease upload and download ratio to prevent link saturation.				
Web: Half-duplex UCI: qos [interface].halfduplex Opt: halfduplex	Enables or disables half-duplex operation. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Download speed UCI: qos.[interface].download Opt: download	Download speed limit in kbits/sec.				
Web: Upload speed UCI: qos.[interface].upload=2000 Opt:upload	Upload speed limit in kbits/sec.				

36.4.2 Classgroup

As there is more than one interface you can have more than one classgroup.

```

config classgroup 'Default'
    option classes 'Express Normal'
    option default 'Normal'

```

UCI / Package Option	Description
UCI: qos.Default=classgroup Opt: Default	Specifies name of classgroup.
UCI: qos.Default.classes=Express Normal Opt: classes	Specifies the list of names of classes which should be part of classgroup.
qos.Default.default=Normal Opt: default	Defines which class is considered default.

36.4.3 Classes

Each bucket has its own configuration.

```
config class 'Normal'
    option packetsize '1500'
    option avgrate '30'
    option priority '5'

config class 'Express'
    option packetsize '1000'
    option maxsize '800'
    option avgrate '50'
    option priority '10'
    option limitrate '10'
```

UCI / Package Option	Description
UCI: qos.Normal=class Opt: Normal	Specifies class name.
UCI: qos.Normal.packetsize=1500 Opt: packetsize	Specifies packet size for the class in bytes.
UCI: qos.Normal.avgrate=30 Opt: avgrate	Average rate for this class, value in % of bandwidth in %.
UCI: qos.Normal.priority=5 Opt: priority	Specifies priority for the class in %.
UCI: qos.Express=class Opt: Express	Specifies class name.
UCI: qos.Express.packetsize=1000 Opt: packetsize	Specifies packet size for the class in bytes.
UCI: qos.Express.maxsize=800 Opt: maxsize	Specify max packet size in bytes.
UCI: qos.Express.avgrate=50 Opt: avgrate	Average rate for this class, value in % of bandwidth in %.
UCI: qos.Express.priority=10 Opt: priority	Specifies priority for the class in %.
UCI: qos.Express.limitrate=10 Opt: limitrate	Defines to how many % of the available bandwidth this class is capped to.

36.4.4 Classify

Classifiers match the traffic for desired class.

```
config classify
    option target 'Express'
    option proto 'udp'
```

UCI / Package Option	Description
UCI: qos.@classify[0]=classify Opt: classify	Part of classify rule.
UCI: qos.@classify[0].target=Express Opt: target	Specifies target class.
UCI: qos.@classify[0].proto=udp Opt: proto	Specifies protocol.

36.5 Example QoS configurations

```

config interface 'ADSL'
    option classgroup 'Default'
    option enabled '1'
    option overhead '1'
    option download '900'
    option upload '245'

config classgroup 'Default'
    option classes 'Express Normal'
    option default 'Normal'

config class 'Normal'
    option packetsize '1500'
    option avgrate '30'
    option priority '5'

config class 'Express'
    option packetsize '1000'
    option maxsize '800'
    option avgrate '50'
    option priority '10'
    option limitrate '10'

config classify
    option target 'Express'
    option proto 'udp'

```

37 Management configuration settings

This chapter contains the configuration sections and parameters required to manage and monitor your device using Activator and Monitor.

37.1 Activator

Activator is a Virtual Access proprietary provisioning system, where specific router configurations and firmware can be stored to allow central management and provisioning. Activator has two distinct roles in provisioning firmware and configuration files to a router.

- Autoload activation of firmware and configuration files on router boot up:
 - o Autoload is generally used for router installation. In this scenario the router will initiate the request for firmware and configuration files when it boots up. The router is installed with a factory config that will allow it to contact Activator. The autoload feature controls the behaviour of the router in requesting firmware and configuration files; this includes when to start the Activation process and the specific files requested. The HTTP Client (uhttpd) contains information about the Activator server and the protocol used for activation.
- Deployment of firmware to routers after installation:
 - o In this scenario, Activator initiates the process. This process, known as Active Updates, allows for central automatic deployment of firmware and configuration files. It is used when configuration or firmware changes need to be pushed to live routers.

37.2 Monitor

Monitor is a Virtual Access proprietary tool, based on SNMP protocol, to monitor wide networks of deployed routers. The router will be configured to send information to Monitor, which is then stored and viewed centrally via the Monitor application. This includes features such as traffic light availability status, syslog and SLA monitoring.

37.3 Configuration packages used

Package	Sections
autoload	main
httpclient	default
management_users	user

37.4 Autoload: boot up activation

Autoload configurations specify how the device should behave with respect to activation when it boots up. Autoload entries contain information about the specific files to be downloaded and the destination for the downloaded file. Standard autoload entry configurations to download are:

- A firmware file (\$\$.img)
- A configuration file (\$\$.ini)
- A .vas file (\$\$.vas). This file signals the end of the autolaod sequence to Activator

Activator identifies the device using the serial number of the router. \$\$ syntax is used to denote the serial number of the router when requesting a file. The requested files are written to the alternate image or config segment.

You can change the settings either directly in the configuration file or via appropriate UCI set commands. It is normal procedure for autoload to be enabled in the router's factory settings and disabled in running configurations (config 1 and 2).

Autoload may already have been set at factory config level. If you wish to enable autoload services, proceed through the following steps.

37.5 Autoload packages

Package	Sections
autoload	main

37.5.1 Create a configuration file

In the top menu, select **Services -> Autoload**. The Autoload page has two sections: Basic Settings and Entries. Click **Add** to access configuration settings for each section.

Status ▾ System ▾ Services ▾ Network ▾ Logout

Autoload

Configuration of the VA Autoload Service.

Basic Settings

Basic settings should be checked according to your network.

☐ Enabled
Delete

Start Timer: 10

Retry Timer: 30

Boot Using Config: altconfig ▾

Boot Using Image: altimage ▾

Entries

Configured	Segment Name	Remote Filename	
	Download destination	Use \$\$ for the serial number.	
☒	altconfig ▾	\$\$.ini	Delete
☒	altimage ▾	\$\$.img	Delete
☒	config1 ▾	\$\$.vas	Delete

Add

Save & Apply Save Reset

Figure 192: The autoload settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Basic settings					
Web: Enabled UCI: autoload.main.enabled Opt: Enabled	Enables activation at system boot. <table> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Start Timer UCI: autoload.main.StartTimer Opt: StartTimer	Defines how long to wait after the boot up completes before starting activation. <table> <tr> <td>10</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0-300 secs</td></tr> </table>	10		Range	0-300 secs
10					
Range	0-300 secs				
Web: Retry Timer UCI: autoload.main.RetryTimer Opt: RetryTimer	Defines how many seconds to wait between retries if a download of a particular autoload entry fails. <table> <tr> <td>30</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0-300 secs</td></tr> </table>	30		Range	0-300 secs
30					
Range	0-300 secs				
Web: N/A UCI: autoload.main.NumberOfRetries Opt: Numberofretries	Defines how many retries to attempt before failing the overall activation sequence, backing off and trying the whole activation sequence again. <table> <tr> <td>5</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	5		Range	
5					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: autoload.main.BackoffTimer Opt: Backofftimer	Defines how many minutes to back off for if a download and all retries fail. After the backoff period, the entire autoload sequence will start again. <table> <tr> <td>15</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	15		Range	
15					
Range					

Web: Boot Using Config UCI: autoload.main.BootUsingConfig Opt: BootUsingConfig	Specifies which configuration to boot up with after the activation sequence. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Altconfig</td><td>Alternative configuration</td></tr> <tr> <td>Config1</td><td>Configuration 1</td></tr> <tr> <td>Config2</td><td>Configuration 2</td></tr> <tr> <td>Factconf</td><td>Factory configuration</td></tr> </table>	Altconfig	Alternative configuration	Config1	Configuration 1	Config2	Configuration 2	Factconf	Factory configuration
Altconfig	Alternative configuration								
Config1	Configuration 1								
Config2	Configuration 2								
Factconf	Factory configuration								
Web: Boot Using Image UCI: autoload.main.BootUsingImage Opt: BootUsingImage	Specifies which image to boot up with after the activation sequence completes successfully. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Altimage</td><td>Alternative image</td></tr> <tr> <td>Image 1</td><td>image 1</td></tr> <tr> <td>Image 2</td><td>image 2</td></tr> </table>	Altimage	Alternative image	Image 1	image 1	Image 2	image 2		
Altimage	Alternative image								
Image 1	image 1								
Image 2	image 2								
Entries									
Web: Configured UCI: autoload.@entry[x].Configured Opt: Configured	Enables the autoload sequence to process this entry. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.								
0	Disabled.								
Web: Segment Name UCI: autoload.@entry[x].SegmentName Opt: SegmentName	Defines where the downloaded file should be stored: (config1 config2 altconfig image1 image2 altimage). Typically only altconfig and altimage are used.								
Web: RemoteFilename UCI: autoload.@entry[x].RemoteFilename Opt: RemoteFilename	Defines the name of the file to be downloaded from Activator. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>\$\$.vas</td><td>Notifies activator sequence is complete.</td></tr> <tr> <td>\$\$ ini</td><td>Request configuration</td></tr> <tr> <td>\$\$ img</td><td>Request firmware</td></tr> </table> Note: \$\$.vas should always be requested last.	\$\$.vas	Notifies activator sequence is complete.	\$\$ ini	Request configuration	\$\$ img	Request firmware		
\$\$.vas	Notifies activator sequence is complete.								
\$\$ ini	Request configuration								
\$\$ img	Request firmware								

Table 141: Information table for autoload

37.6 Autoload using UCI

```
root@VA_router:/# uci show autoload
autoload.main=core
autoload.main.Enabled=yes
autoload.main.StartTimer=10
autoload.main.RetryTimer=30
autoload.main.NumberOfRetries=5
autoload.main.BackoffTimer=15
autoload.main.BootUsingConfig=altconfig
autoload.main.BootUsingImage=altimage
autoload.@entry[0]=entry
autoload.@entry[0].Configured=yes
autoload.@entry[0].SegmentName=altconfig
autoload.@entry[0].RemoteFilename=$$.ini
autoload.@entry[1]=entry
autoload.@entry[1].Configured=yes
autoload.@entry[1].SegmentName=altimage
autoload.@entry[1].RemoteFilename=$$.img
autoload.@entry[2]=entry
autoload.@entry[2].Configured=yes
autoload.@entry[2].SegmentName=config1
autoload.@entry[2].RemoteFilename=$$.vas
Autoload using package options
root@VA_router:/# uci export autoload
package 'autoload'

config 'core' 'main'
    option 'Enabled' "yes"
    option 'StartTimer' "10"
    option 'RetryTimer' "30"
    option 'NumberOfRetries' "5"
    option 'BackoffTimer' "15"
    option 'BootUsingConfig' "altconfig"
    option 'BootUsingImage' "altimage"

config 'entry'
```

```

option 'Configured' "yes"
option 'SegmentName' "altconfig"
option 'RemoteFilename' "\\$\\$.ini"

config 'entry'
option 'Configured' "yes"
option 'SegmentName' "altimage"
option 'RemoteFilename' "\\$\\$.img"

config 'entry'
option 'Configured' "yes"
option 'SegmentName' "config1"
option 'RemoteFilename' "\\$\\$.vas"

```

37.7 HTTP Client: configuring activation using the web interface

This section contains the settings for the HTTP Client used during activation and active updates of the device.

The httpclient core section configures the basic functionality of the module used for retrieving files from Activator during the activation process.

37.7.1 HTTP Client configuraton packages

Package	Sections
Httpclient	default

37.7.2 Web configuration

To configure HTTP Client for Activator, in the top menu, click **Services -> HTTP Client**. The HTTP Client page has two sections: Basic Settings and Advanced Settings.

Status
System
Services
Network
Logout

Http Client

Configuration of the Http Client used for management of the device. These settings are used to specify the interaction between this device and the Activator management system.

Basic Settings

Basic settings for the Activator client, check that these are correct according to your network.

Enabled ☒

Server IP Address

Secure Server IP Address

Secure Download ☐

Advanced Settings

Usually unnecessary to change these settings.

Activator Download Path

Check Server Certificate ☐

Present Client Certificate to Server ☐

Certificate File Format

Certificate File Path

Certificate Key File Path

Save & Apply
Save
Reset

Figure 193: The HTTP client page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Basic settings		
Web: Enabled	Enables the HTTP client.	
UCI: httpclient.default.enabled	1	Enabled.
Opt: Enabled	0	Disabled.
Web: Server IP Address	Specifies the address of Activator that uses http port 80. This can be an IP address or FQDN. The syntax should be x.x.x.x:80 or FQDN:80. Multiple servers should be separated by a space using UCI.	
UCI: httpclient.default.Fileserver		
Opt: list Fileserver		
Web: Secure Server IP Address	Specifies the address of Secure Activator that uses port 443. This can be an IP address or FQDN. The syntax should be x.x.x.x:443 or FQDN:443. Multiple servers should be separated by a space using UCI.	
UCI: httpclient.default.SecureFileServer		
Opt: list SecureFileServer		
Web: Secure Download	Enables Secure Download (port 443).	
UCI: httpclient.default.SecureDownload	1	Enabled.
Opt: SecureDownload	0	Disabled.
Advanced settings		
Web: ActivatorDownloadPath	Specifies the URL on Activator to which the client should send requests.	
UCI: httpclient.default.ActivatorDownloadPath	/Activator/Sessionless/Httpserver.asp	
Opt: ActivatorDownloadPath	Range	

Web: Check Server Certificate UCI: httpclient.default.ValidateServerCertificate Enabled Opt: ValidateServerCertificateEnabled	Checks for the certificates presence and validity. <table> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: Present Client Certificate to Server UCI: httpclient.default.PresentCertificateEnabled Opt: PresentCertificateEnabled	Specifies if the client presents its certificate to the server to identify itself. <table> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
Web: CertificateFile Format UCI: httpclient.default.CertificateFormat Opt: CertificateFormat	Specifies the value the client expects to see in the specified field in the server certificate. <table> <tr> <td>PEM</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>DER</td><td></td></tr> </table>	PEM		DER	
PEM					
DER					
Web: Certificate File Path UCI: httpclient.default.CertificateFile Opt: CertificateFile	Defines the directory/location of the certificate. <table> <tr> <td>/etc/httpclient.crt</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/etc/httpclient.crt		Range	
/etc/httpclient.crt					
Range					
Web: Certificate Key File Path UCI: httpclient.default.CertificateKey Opt: CertificateKey	Specifies the directory/location of the certificate key. <table> <tr> <td>/etc/httpclient.key</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	/etc/httpclient.key		Range	
/etc/httpclient.key					
Range					
Web: N/A UCI: httpclient.default.ActivatorChunkyDownloadPath Opt: ActivatorChunkyDownloadPath	Enables partial download activations and active updates. The default value is httpclient.default.ActivatorChunkyDownloadPath=/activator/partial/download The url (on activator) to which the client should send requests for chunky image download.				
Web: N/A UCI: httpclient.default.ChunkSize Opt: ChunkSize	Specifies the size of each packet payload <table> <tr> <td>100k</td><td>100K Bytes</td></tr> <tr> <td>1-infinite</td><td>Available values</td></tr> </table>	100k	100K Bytes	1-infinite	Available values
100k	100K Bytes				
1-infinite	Available values				
Web: N/A UCI: httpclient.default.RateLimit Opt: RateLimit	Throttle activation/active updates traffic received by device to specified limit <table> <tr> <td>None</td><td>By default there is no limit</td></tr> <tr> <td>1-infinite</td><td>Available values in kbps</td></tr> </table>	None	By default there is no limit	1-infinite	Available values in kbps
None	By default there is no limit				
1-infinite	Available values in kbps				
Web: N/A UCI: httpclient.default.CAFile Opt: CAFile	Defines path to the certificate authority file stored on the router				
Web: N/A UCI: httpclient.default.IgnoreServerCertificateStatus Opt: IgnoreServerCertificateStatus	Defines whether to skip the status check on the server certificate. <table> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				

Table 142: Information table for HTTP client

37.8 Httpclient: Activator configuration using UCI

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show httpclient
httpclient.default=core
httpclient.default.Enabled=yes
httpclient.default.FileServer=10.1.83.36:80 10.1.83.37:80
httpclient.default.SecureFileServer=10.1.83.36:443 10.1.83.37:443
httpclient.default.ActivatorDownloadPath=/Activator/Sessionless/Httpserver.asp

```

```

httpclient.default.SecureDownload=no
httpclient.default.PresentCertificateEnabled=no
httpclient.default.ValidateServerCertificateEnabled=no
httpclient.default.CertificateFile=/etc/httpclient.crt
httpclient.default.CertificateFormat=PEM
httpclient.default.CertificateKey=/etc/httpclient.key
httpclient.default.ActivatorChunkyDownloadPath=/activator/partial/download
httpclient.default.ChunkSize=100k
httpclient.default.RateLimit=2
httpclient.default.CAFile=''
httpclient.default.IgnoreServerCertificateStatus=0

```

37.9 Httpclient: Activator configuration using package options

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export httpclient
package httpclient

config core 'default'
    option Enabled 'yes'
    list FileServer '1.1.1.1:80'
    list FileServer '1.1.1.2:80'
    listSecureFileServer '1.1.1.1:443'
    list SecureFileServer '1.1.1.2:443'
    option ActivatorDownloadPath '/Activator/Sessionless/Httpserver.asp'
    option SecureDownload 'no'
    option PresentCertificateEnabled 'no'
    option ValidateServerCertificateEnabled 'no'
    option CertificateFile '/etc/httpclient.crt'
    option CertificateFormat 'PEM'
    option CertificateKey '/etc/httpclient.key'
    option ActivatorChunkyDownloadPath '/activator/partial/download'
    option ChunkSize '100k'
    option RateLimit '2'
    option CAFile ''
    option IgnoreServerCertificateStatus '0'

```

37.10 User management using UCI

User management is not currently available using the web interface. You can configure the feature using UCI or Activator.

37.10.1 User management packages

Package	Sections
management_users	Users

37.10.2 Configuring user management

You can create different users on the system by defining them in the user management configuration file. This gives users access to different services.

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
General settings					
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].enabled Opt: enable	Enables/creates the user. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].username Opt: username	Specifies the user's username.				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].password Opt: password	Specifies the user's password. When entering the user password enter in plain text using the password option. After reboot the password is displayed encrypted via the CLI using the hashpassword option. UCI: management_users.@user[x].hashpassword Opt: hashpassword. Note: a SRP user password will be displayed using the srphash option				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].webuser Opt: webuser	Specifies web access permissions for the user. Note: webuser will only work if linuxuser is set to Enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].chapuser Opt: chapuser	Specifies CHAP access permissions for the PPP connection. Note: chapuser will only work if linux user is set to Enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].papuser Opt: papuser	Specifies PAP access permissions for the PPP connection. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].srpuser Opt: srpuser	Specifies SRP access permissions for the PPP connection. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: management_users.@user[x].smsuser Opt: smsuser	Specifies SMS access permissions for the user. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: n/a UCI: linuxuser Opt: linuxuser	Specifies linuxuser access permissions for the user. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Web: n/a UCI: List allowed_pages Opt: list allowed_pages	Specifies which pages the user can view. Multiple pages should be entered using a space to separate if using UCI.
--	---

Table 143: Information table for config user commands**Note:**

- webuser will only work if linuxuser is set to **yes**
- chapuser will only work if linuxuser is set to **no**

When a new user is created on the system and given web access, you will no longer be able to login to the router web interface with the default root user details. The user must use their new user login details.

37.11 Configuring the management user password using UCI

The user password is displayed encrypted via the CLI using the hashpassword option.

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show management_users
management_users.@user[0].username=test
management_users.@user[0].hashpassword=$1$XVzDHHPQ$SKK4geFonctihuffMjS4U0
```

If you are changing the password via the UCI, enter the new password in plain text using the password option.

```
root@VA_router:~# uci set management_users.@user[0].username=newpassword
root@VA_router:~# uci commit
```

The new password will take effect after reboot and will now be displayed in encrypted format through the hashpassword option.

37.12 Configuring management user password using package options

The root password is displayed encrypted via CLI using the hashpassword option.

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export management_users
package management_users

config user
    option hashpassword '$1$wRYYiJOz$EeHN.GQcxXhRgNPVbqxVw
```

If you are changing the password using UCI, enter the new password in plain text using the password option.

```
package management_users
```

```

config user
    option hashpassword '$1$wRYYiJ0z$EeHN.GQcxXhRgNPVbqxVw
    option password 'newpassword'

```

The new password will take effect after reboot and will now be displayed in encrypted format via the hashpassword option.

37.13 User management using UCI

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show management_users
management_users.@user[0]=user
management_users.@user[0].enabled=1
management_users.@user[0].username=test
management_users.@user[0].hashpassword=$1$XVzDHHPQ$SKK4geFonctihuffMjS4U0
management_users.@user[0].webuser=1
management_users.@user[0].linuxuser=1
management_users.@user[0].papuser=0
management_users.@user[0].chapuser=0
management_users.@user[0].srpuser=0
management_users.@user[0].smsuser=0

```

37.14 User management using package options

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export management_users

package management_users
config user
    option enabled '1'
    option username 'test'
    option hashpassword '$1$XVzDHHPQ$SKK4geFonctihuffMjS4U0'
option webuser '1'
    option linuxuser '1'
    option papuser '0'
    option chapuser '0'
    option srpuser '0'
    options smsuser '0'

```

37.15 Configuring user access to specific web pages

To specify particular pages a user can view, add the list `allowed_pages`. Examples are:

```
listallowed_pages '/admin/status'
```

The user can view admin status page only.

```
listallowed_pages 'admin/system/flashops'
```

The user can view flash operation page only.

To specify monitor widgets only, enter:

```
listallowed_pages 'monitor/<widgetname>'
```

Example widget names are: dhcp, arp, 3gstats, interfaces, memory, multiwan, network, openvpn, routes, system, ipsec, dmvpn, tserverd.

38 Configuring Monitor

38.1 Introduction

Virtual Access monitoring system (Monitor) is a secure portal that provides:

- Centralised monitoring of devices
- Device status
- GPS location
- Syslog reporting
- Real time diagnostics
- Email notification
- Advanced statistics
- Dashboard graph reporting

You must configure each router in the network to send the required information to Monitor. This chapter explains how to configure the different information that can be sent to Monitor, including the required router configuration for:

- Reporting device status to Monitor
- Reporting GPS location to Monitor
- Reporting syslog to Monitor
- Configuration of interface statistics collection (ISAD)

For detailed information on operating Monitor, read the Monitor User Manual.

38.2 Reporting device status to Monitor

To allow Monitor to track the IP address and ongoing presence of a device, a keepalive heartbeat SNMP trap is sent from the router. The router is capable of sending SNMP in version 1, 2c and 3.

The SNMP keepalive heartbeat sends basic information on interface status but can also be configured to contain more detailed information such as GPS location.

The basic heartbeat configuration consists of two parts:

- enabling the heartbeat keepalive
- enabling the interface(s) to be monitored

38.2.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
monitor	keepalive
network	interface

38.2.2 Configuring keepalive heartbeat using the web interface

Select **Services -> Monitor**. The Monitor Keepalive & ISAD page appears.

The keepalive heartbeat is configured under the **Basic Settings** section.

A single instance keepalive can be configured to multiple monitor address using the same reference, heartbeat interval and other options. Or alternatively multiple keepalive instances can be configured with unique options.

Figure 194: The Monitor & ISAD keepalive page

38.2.2.1 Basic settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Enabled UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].enabled Opt: Enabled	Enables Monitor to send heartbeats to the router.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Dev Reference UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].dev_reference Opt: dev_reference	Sets a unique identification for this device known to Monitor.	
Web: Monitor Address UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].monitor_ip Opt: list monitor_ip	Defines the IP address of Monitor. It is possible to specify multiple addresses to which SNMP heartbeat traps will be sent. To configure via UCI use a space separator. Example: monitor.@keepalive[0].monitor_ip=1.1.1.1 2.2.2.2	
Web: Monitor Heartbeat Interval UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].interval_min Opt: interval_min	Specifies the interval, in minutes, at which traps are sent.	
	1	Trap set every 1 minute.
	Range	
Web: SNMP Protocol Version UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].snmp_version Opt: snmp_version	Specifies what SNMP version is sent to remote Manager.	
	1	snmp version 1
	2c	SNMP version 2c
	3	SNMP version 3

Table 144: Information table for Monitor & ISAD basic configuration

The figure below shows options that are relevant only if you have selected SNMP version 3.

SNMP Protocol Version	3 ▼
User Name	
Authentication Protocol	SHA ▼
Authentication Password	
Privacy Protocol	AES ▼
Privacy Password	
SNMPv3 Context	
SNMPv3 Context Engine ID	
SNMPv3 Security Engine ID	

Figure 195: The Monitor & ISAD keepalive page for SNMP v3

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description						
Web: User Name UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].snmp_uname Opt: snmp_uname	Specifies user name. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>Default value</td></tr> <tr> <td>String</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Blank	Default value	String			
Blank	Default value						
String							
Web: Authentication Password UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].snmp_auth_pass Opt: snmp_auth_pass	Specifies snmpv3 authentication password.						
Web: Authentication Protocol UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].snmp_auth_proto Opt: snmp_auth_proto	Specifies snmpv3 authentication protocol. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>Default value</td></tr> <tr> <td>MD5</td><td>MD5 as authentication protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>SHA</td><td>SHA as authentication protocol</td></tr> </table>	Blank	Default value	MD5	MD5 as authentication protocol	SHA	SHA as authentication protocol
Blank	Default value						
MD5	MD5 as authentication protocol						
SHA	SHA as authentication protocol						
Web: Privacy Protocol UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].snmp_priv_proto Opt: snmp_priv_proto	Specifies snmpv3 privacy protocol <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>Default value</td></tr> <tr> <td>AES</td><td>AES as privacy protocol</td></tr> <tr> <td>DES</td><td>MD5 as privacy protocol</td></tr> </table>	Blank	Default value	AES	AES as privacy protocol	DES	MD5 as privacy protocol
Blank	Default value						
AES	AES as privacy protocol						
DES	MD5 as privacy protocol						
Web: Privacy Password UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].snmp_priv_pass Opt: snmp_priv_pass	Specifies snmpv3 privacy password.						
Web: SNMPv3 Context UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].snmp_context Opt: snmp_context	Specifies snmpv3 context name.						
Web: SNMPv3 Context Engine ID UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].snmp_context_eid Opt: snmp_context_eid	Specifies snmpv3 context engine ID.						

Web: SNMPv3 Security Engine ID UCI: monitor.@keepalive[0].snmp_sec_eid Opt: snmp_sec_eid	Specifies snmpv3 security engine ID.
---	--------------------------------------

Table 145: Information table for SNMP v3 reporting device commands

38.2.3 Configuring keepalive heartbeat using command line

Keepalive is configured under the monitor package.

By default, all keepalive instances are named 'keepalive', instances are identified by @keepalive then the keepalive position in the package as a number. For example, for the first keepalive in the package using UCI:

```
monitor.@keepalive[0]=keepalive
monitor.@ keepalive[0].enabled=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config keepalive
    option enabled '1'
```

However, to better identify, it is recommended to give the keepalive instance a name. For example, to create a keepalive instance named keepalivev1.

To define a named keepalive instance using UCI, enter:

```
monitor.keepalivev1=keepalive
monitor.keepalivev1.enable=1
```

To define a named keepalive instance using package options, enter:

```
config keepalive 'keepalivev1'
    option enabled '1'
```

38.2.4 Keepalive using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show monitor
monitor.keepalivev1=keepalive
monitor.keepalivev1enabled=1
monitor.keepalivev1.interval_min=1
monitor.keepalivev1.dev_reference=router1
monitor.keepalivev1.monitor_ip=10.1.83.36
monitor.keepalivev1.snmp_version=1
monitor.keepalivev2=keepalive
```

```

monitor.keepalived2.enable=1
monitor.keepalived2.interval_min=1
monitor.keepalived2.monitor_ip=172.16.250.100
monitor.keepalived2.dev_reference=TEST
monitor.keepalived2.snmp_version=2c
monitor.keepalived3=keepalive
monitor.keepalived3.enable=1
monitor.keepalived3.interval_min=1
monitor.keepalived3.monitor_ip=172.16.250.101
monitor.keepalived3.dev_reference=TEST
monitor.keepalived3.snmp_version=3
monitor.keepalived3.snmp_uname=TEST
monitor.keepalived3.snmp_auth_pass=vasecret
monitor.keepalived3.snmp_auth_proto=MD5
monitor.keepalived3.snmp_priv_pass=vasecret
monitor.keepalived3.snmp_priv_proto=DES

```

38.2.5 Keepalive using package options

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export monitor
package 'monitor'

config keepalive 'keepalive1'
    option enabled '1'
    option interval_min '1'
    option dev_reference 'router1'
    option enabled 'yes'
    list monitor_ip '10.1.83.36'

config keepalive 'keepalive2'
    option enable '1'
    option interval_min '1'
    list monitor_ip '172.16.250.100'
    option dev_reference 'TEST'
    option snmp_version '2c'

config keepalive 'keepalive3'

```



```

option enable '1'
option interval_min '1'
list monitor_ip '172.16.250.101'
option dev_reference 'TEST'
option snmp_version '3'
option snmp_uname 'TEST'
option snmp_auth_pass 'vasecret'
option snmp_auth_proto 'MD5'
option snmp_priv_pass 'vasecret'
option snmp_priv_proto 'DES'

```

38.2.6 Enabling interface status in keepalive heartbeat via web interface

The keepalive heartbeat can send information on multiple interfaces. To send an interface status to Monitor, select **Network -> Interfaces**, then under the required interface select **Edit**. Under **Advanced Settings** enable the Monitor interface state option.

Interfaces - WAN

On this page you can configure the network interfaces. You can bridge several interfaces by ticking the "bridge interfaces" field and spaces. You can also use VLAN notation `INTERFACE.VLANNR` (e.g., `eth0.1`).

Common Configuration

General Setup | Advanced Settings | Firewall Settings

Bring up on boot ☒

Monitor interface state ☒ This interface state would be reported to VA Monitor via keep-alive

Figure 196: The interface common configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Monitor interface state	Enables interface status to be sent in the heartbeat trap to Monitor.
UCI: network.@interface[0].monitored	
Opt: monitored	
	0 Disabled.
	1 Enabled.

Table 146: Information table for enabling interface status command

38.2.7 Enabling interface status using command line

Interface status is configured under the network package.

38.2.7.1 Enable interface status using UCI

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show network
network.@interface[0]=interface
.....

```

```
network.@interface[0].monitored=1
```

```
.....
```

38.2.7.2 Enable interface status using package option

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export network
```

```
package network
```

```
config interface 'WAN'
```

```
.....
```

```
option monitored '1'
```

```
.....
```

38.3 Reporting GPS location to Monitor

To allow Monitor to display a router GPS location, you can configure the GPS coordinates to be sent in the heartbeat keepalive from the router.

GPS location is only available in supported hardware models.

Ensure monitor keepalive heartbeat is correctly configured as in section 38.2 above.

38.3.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
gpsd	gpsd

38.3.2 Configuring GPS location via the web interface

Select **Services -> GPS**. The GPS configuration page appears.

The web interface configures a gpsd section named core.

Main Settings

Enable GPS ☒

Figure 197: The GPS configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Enable GPS	Enables GPS coordinates to be sent in the heartbeat keepalive to Monitor.
UCI: monitor.core.enabled	
Opt: enabled	
	0 Disabled.
	1 Enabled.

Table 147: Information table for reporting GPS commands

38.3.3 Configuring GPS using command line

GPS location is configured under the gpsd package.

38.3.3.1 GPS using UCI

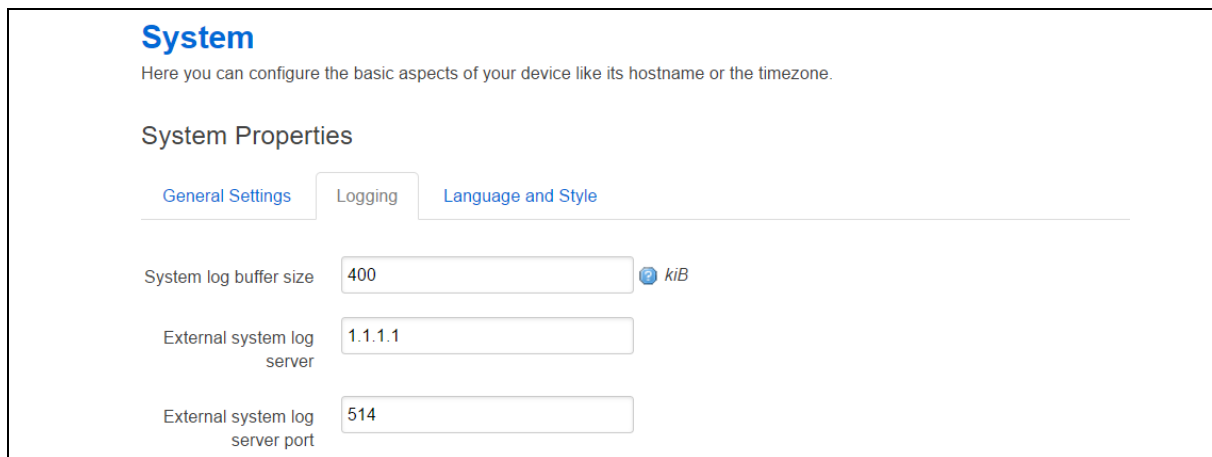
```
root@VA_router:~# uci show gpsd
gpsd.core=gpsd
gpsd.core.enabled=1
```

38.3.3.2 GPS using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export gpsd
package gpsd
config gpsd 'core'
    option enabled '1'
```

38.3.4 GPS diagnostics

To view information on GPS coordinates via the web interface, select **Status -> GPS Information**.



System
Here you can configure the basic aspects of your device like its hostname or the timezone.

System Properties

General Settings | Logging | Language and Style

System log buffer size: 400 kiB

External system log server: 1.1.1.1

External system log server port: 514

Figure 198: The GPS status page

To view GPS coordinates via command line, enter gpspeek:

```
root@VA_router:~# gpspeek
Fix: 3D,1495467700,53.342529,-
6.241236,27.700000,202.600000,0.000000,0.000000
```

38.4 Reporting syslog to Monitor

38.4.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
system	main

38.4.2 Configuring syslog to Monitor via the web interface

Monitor can display syslog events sent from the router. To configure the router to send syslog events, select **System -> System -> Logging** and set **External system log server** to the Monitor IP. You can also configure the syslog server port if required.

All syslog events are sent to the syslog server.

System
Here you can configure the basic aspects of your device like its hostname or the timezone.

System Properties

General Settings | **Logging** | Language and Style

System log buffer size: 400 kiB

External system log server: 34.250.103.126

External system log server port: 514

Figure 199: The system properties page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: External system log server UCI: system.main.log_ip Opt: log_ip	Defines the external syslog server IP address.
Web: External system log server UCI: system.main.log_port Opt: log_port	Defines the external syslog server destination port number for syslog messages.
	514
	Range

Table 148: Information table for syslog properties commands

38.4.3 Configuring syslog events to Monitor using command line

Syslog is configured under the system package.

38.4.3.1 Syslog events to Monitor using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show system
system.main=system
.....
system.main.log_ip=1.1.1.1
system.main.log_port=514
.....
```

38.4.3.2 Syslog events to Monitor using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export system
package system
```

```

config system 'main'
.....
    option log_ip '1.1.1.1'
    option log_port '514'
.....

```

38.5 Configuring ISAD

ISAD is a system for collecting interface stats to be displayed on Monitor.

The following section explains how to configure interface statistics collection (iSAD). Statistical data is collected in bins with each bin containing interface transmit and receive packets/bytes/errors for a period. Signal strength and also temperature parameters are also stored in the bins. Bins are uploaded to Monitor periodically.

Note: Ensure monitor keepalive heartbeat and interface status is correctly configured as in section 30.2 above. Interfaces should have option `monitored` enabled as part of the collection.

ISAD replaces the deprecated SLA feature.

38.5.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
monitor	interface_stats

38.5.2 Configuring ISAD using the web interface

Select **Services -> Monitor**. The Monitor Keepalive & ISAD page appears. ISAD is configured under the **Interface Stats** section.

Figure 200: The Monitor Keepalive & ISAD Interface Stats page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Enabled	Enables ISAD.
UCI: monitor.stats.enabled=1	0 Disabled.
Opt: enabled	1 Enabled.

Web: Bin Period UCI: monitor.stats.bin_period Opt: time	Specifies how long to collect data for one bin.	
	Specifies the interval, in minutes, at which traps are sent.	
	1h	Bin collected for 1 hour
Web: Maximum Number of Bins UCI: monitor.stats.bin_cache_size Opt: bin_cache_size	Range	
	Specifies the maximum number of bins to store.	
	Empty	24
	Range	

Table 149: Information table for ISAD Monitor keepalive & ISAD interface stats section

38.5.3 Configuring ISAD using the command line

ISAD is configured under the Monitor package.

38.5.3.1 ISAD using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show monitor
monitor.keepalivev1=keepalive
monitor.keepalivev1.enabled=1
monitor.keepalivev1.interval_min=1
monitor.keepalivev1.dev_reference=router1
monitor.keepalivev1.monitor_ip=10.1.83.36
monitor.keepalivev1.snmp_version=1
monitor.stats=interface_stats
monitor.stats.enabled=1
monitor.stats.bin_period=1h
monitor.stats.bin_cache_size=24
```

38.5.3.2 ISAD using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export monitor
package monitor

config keepalive 'keepalivev1'
    option interval_min '1'
    option enabled '1'
    list monitor_ip '10.1.83.36'
    option dev_reference 'router1'

config interface_stats 'stats'
    option enabled '1'
    option bin_period '1h'
    option bin_cache_size '24'
```

38.5.4 ISAD diagnostics

38.5.4.1 Checking process

To check to see if ISAD is running, enter `pgrep -fl isad`:

```
root@VA_router:~# pgrep -fl isad
5303 /usr/sbin/isad -b 60 -s 10 -c 200 -u /var/state /var/const_state
```

38.5.4.2 Checking bin statistics

To check if stats are being collected, enter `cat /var/state/monitor`:

```
root@VA_router:~# cat /var/state/monitor
monitor.bin_0=isad
monitor.bin_0.end_ts=85020
monitor.bin_0.start_ts=84960
monitor.bin_1=isad
monitor.bin_1.end_ts=85080
monitor.bin_1.start_ts=85020
monitor.bin_2=isad
monitor.bin_2.end_ts=85140
monitor.bin_2.start_ts=85080
```

38.5.5 ISAD operation

The bin statistics stored on the router must be periodically pushed statistics to Monitor.

This is normally done centrally when statistics are enabled on Monitor. Monitor contacts each router and auto-generates a script that will automatically schedule the upload of the bin statistics.

However, if Monitor cannot access the router WAN IP, you must do this manually on each router using a UDS script. An example is shown below where the bins are uploaded every hour to a Monitor server IP 89.101.154.154 using TFTP.

```
package uds

config script 'isb_upload_scr'
    option enabled '1'
    option exec_type 'periodic'
    option period '1h'
    list text '/usr/sbin/isb_upload.lua 89.101.154.154:69'
```

39 Configuring SNMP

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is an internet-standard protocol for managing devices on IP networks. SNMP exposes management data in the form of a hierarchy of variables in a MIB (Management Information Base). These variables can be queried individually, or in groups using their OIDs (Object Identifiers) defined in MIBs. In addition, information from the router can be pushed to a network management station in the form of SNMP traps.

39.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections				
snmpd	access	exec	inventory	monitor_load	system
	agent	group	inventory_iftable	monitor_memory	trapreceiver
	com2sec	heartbeat	monitor_disk	monitor_process	usm_user
	constant	informreceiver	monitor_ioerror	pass	view

The SNMP application has several configuration sections:

System and Agent	Configures the SNMP agent.
Com2Sec	Maps SNMP community names into an arbitrary security name.
Group	Assigns community names and SNMP protocols to groups.
View and Access	Creates views and sub views of the whole available SNMP tree and grants specific access to those views on a group by group basis.
usm_user	Define a user for SNMPv3 USM.
Trap receiver	Address of a notification receiver that should be sent SNMPv1 TRAPs and SNMPv2c TRAP2s.
Inform receiver	Address of a notification receiver that should be sent SNMPv2 INFORM notifications respectively.

39.2 Configuring SMNP using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Services -> SNMP**. The SNMP Service page appears.

Figure 201: The SNMP service page

39.2.1 System and agent settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
System settings					
Web: System Location UCI: snmpd.system[0].sysLocation Opt: sysLocation	Sets the system location, system contact or system name for the agent. This information is reported in the 'system' group in the mibII tree.				
Web: System Contact UCI: snmpd.system[0].sysContact Opt: sysContact					
Web: System Name UCI: snmpd.system[0].sysName Opt: sysName					
Agent Settings					
Web: Agent Address UCI: snmpd.agent[0].agentaddress Opt: agentaddress	Specifies the address(es) and port(s) on which the agent should listen. [(udp tcp):]port[@address][,...]				
Web: Enable Authentication Traps UCI: snmpd.agent[0].authtrapeenabled Opt: authtrapeenabled	Enables or disables SNMP authentication trap.				
	<table><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
	0	Disabled.			
1	Enabled.				
Note: this is the SNMP poll authentication trap to be set when there is a community mismatch.					
Web: Enable Link State Notification UCI: snmpd.agent[0].link_updown_notify Opt: link_updown_notify	Generates trap/info when interface goes up or down. When enabled, the router sends a trap notification link up or down.				
	<table><tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr></table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
	0	Disabled.			
1	Enabled.				

Table 150: Information table for system and agent settings

39.2.2 Com2Sec settings

To access Com2Sec settings, scroll down the SNMP Services page.

Use the COM2Sec section to map SNMP community names into an arbitrary security name. Map community names into security names based on the community name and the source subnet. Use the first source/community combination that matches the incoming packet.

A community string is a password that is applied to a device to restrict both read-only and read-write access to the SNMP data on the device. These community strings should be chosen carefully to ensure they are not trivial. They should also be changed at regular intervals and in accordance with network security policies.

COM2SEC Settings

Security Name	Source	Community	
public	ro	default	public
private	rw	localhost	private

Add

Figure 202: The COM2Sec settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Security Name UCI: snmpd.com2sec[x].secname Opt: secname	Specifies an arbitrary security name for the user.
Web: Source UCI: snmpd.com2sec[x].source Opt: source	A hostname, localhost or a subnet specified as a.b.c.d/mask or a.b.c.d/bits or 'default' for no restrictions.
Web: Community UCI: snmpd.com2sec[x].community Opt: community	Specifies the community string being presented in the request.

Table 151: Information table for Com2Sec settings

39.2.3 Group settings

Group settings assign community names and SNMP protocols to groups.

Group Settings

Group	Version	Security Name	
public_v1	public	v1	ro
public_v2c	public	v2c	ro
public_usm	public	usm	ro
private_v1	private	v1	rw
private_v2c	private	v2c	rw

Figure 203: The group settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description								
Web: Group UCI: snmpd.group[x].group Opt: group	Specifies an arbitrary group name.								
Web: Version UCI: snmpd.group[x].version Opt: version	Specifies the SNMP version number being used in the request: v1, v2c and usm (User-based Security Module) are supported. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>v1</td><td>SNMP v1</td></tr> <tr> <td>v2v</td><td>SNMP v2</td></tr> <tr> <td>usm</td><td>SNMP v3</td></tr> <tr> <td>any</td><td>Any SNMP version</td></tr> </table>	v1	SNMP v1	v2v	SNMP v2	usm	SNMP v3	any	Any SNMP version
v1	SNMP v1								
v2v	SNMP v2								
usm	SNMP v3								
any	Any SNMP version								
Web: Security Name UCI: snmpd.group[x].secname Opt: secname	An already defined security name that is being included in this group.								

Table 152: Information table for group settings

39.2.4 View settings

View settings define a named "view", which is a subset of the overall OID tree. This is most commonly a single subtree, but several view directives can be given with the same view name, to build up a more complex collection of OIDs.

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "View Settings". It contains a table with three columns: "Name", "Type", and "OID". Below the table, there are input fields for "Name" (containing "all"), "Type" (a dropdown menu showing "included"), and "OID" (containing "1"). There are also "Add" and "Delete" buttons.

Figure 204: The view settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Name UCI: snmpd.view[x].viewname Opt: viewname	Specifies an arbitrary view name. Typically it describes what the view shows.				
Web: Type UCI: snmpd.view[x].type Opt: type	Specifies whether the view lists oids that are included in the view or lists oids to be excluded from the view (in which case all other oids are visible apart from those ones listed). <table border="1"> <tr> <td>included</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>excluded</td><td></td></tr> </table>	included		excluded	
included					
excluded					
Web: OID UCI: snmpd.view[x].oid Opt: oid	OID to be included in or excluded from the view. Only numerical representation is supported. Example <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Everything</td></tr> <tr> <td>1.3.6.1.2.1.2</td><td>Interfaces table</td></tr> </table>	1	Everything	1.3.6.1.2.1.2	Interfaces table
1	Everything				
1.3.6.1.2.1.2	Interfaces table				

Table 153: Information table for view settings

39.2.5 Access settings

Access settings map from a group of users/communities, in a specific context and with a particular SNMP version and minimum security level, to one of three views, depending on the request being processed.

Figure 205: The access settings section

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description								
Web: Group UCI: snmpd.access[x].group Opt: group	Specifies the group to which access is being granted.								
Web: Context UCI: snmpd.access[x].context Opt: context	SNMPv3 request context is matched against the value according to the prefix below. For SNMP v1 and SNMP v2c, the context must be none . <table border="1"> <tr><td>none</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>all</td><td></td></tr> </table>	none		all					
none									
all									
Web: Version UCI: snmpd.access[x].version Opt: version	Specifies the SNMP version number being used in the request: any, v1, v2c and usm are supported. <table border="1"> <tr><td>v1</td><td>SNMP v1</td></tr> <tr><td>v2v</td><td>SNMP v2</td></tr> <tr><td>usm</td><td>SNMP v3</td></tr> <tr><td>any</td><td>Any SNMP version</td></tr> </table>	v1	SNMP v1	v2v	SNMP v2	usm	SNMP v3	any	Any SNMP version
v1	SNMP v1								
v2v	SNMP v2								
usm	SNMP v3								
any	Any SNMP version								
Web: Level UCI: snmpd.access[x].level Opt: level	Specifies the security level. For SNMP v1 and SNMP v2c level must be noauth . <table border="1"> <tr><td>noauth</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>auth</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>priv</td><td></td></tr> </table>	noauth		auth		priv			
noauth									
auth									
priv									
Web: Prefix UCI: snmpd.access[x].prefix Opt: prefix	Prefix specifies how context (above) should be matched against the context of the incoming pdu. <table border="1"> <tr><td>exact</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>any</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>all</td><td></td></tr> </table>	exact		any		all			
exact									
any									
all									
Web: Read UCI: snmpd.access[x].read Opt: read	Specifies the view to be used for read access.								
Web: Write UCI: snmpd.access[x].write Opt: write	Specifies the view to be used for write access.								
Web: Notify UCI: snmpd.access[x].notify Opt: notify	Specifies the view to be used for notify access.								

Table 154: Information table for access settings

39.2.6 Trap receiver

Trap receiver settings define a notification receiver that should be sent SNMPv1 TRAPs and SNMPv2c TRAP2.

Figure 206: The trap receiver settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Host UCI: snmpd.trapreceiver[x].host Opt: host	Host address. Can be either an IP address or an FQDN.				
Web: Port UCI: snmpd.trapreceiver[x].port Opt: port	UDP port to be used for sending traps. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>162</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Range		162	
Range					
162					
Web: Version UCI: snmpd.trapreceiver[x].version Opt: version	SNMP version. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>v1</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>V2</td><td></td></tr> </table>	v1		V2	
v1					
V2					
Web: Community UCI: snmpd.trapreceiver[x].community Opt: community	Community to use in trap messages for this host.				

Table 155: Information table for trap receiver settings

39.2.7 Inform receiver

Inform receiver settings define a notification receiver that should be sent SNMPv2c INFORM notifications.

Figure 207: The inform receiver settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Host UCI: snmpd.informreceiver[x].host Opt: host	Host address. Can be either an IP address or an FQDN.				
Web: Port UCI: snmpd.informreceiver[x].port Opt: port	UDP port to be used for sending traps. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>162</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Range		162	
Range					
162					
Web: Community UCI: snmpd.informreceiver[x].community Opt: community	Community to use in inform messages for this host.				

Table 156: Information table for trap receiver settings

39.2.8 USM user

Configure a user for for SNMPv3 USM (User Based Security Model).

Figure 208: The USM user settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: Username UCI: snmpd.@usm_user[0].name Opt: name	Defines a USM username.				
Web: Auth Protocol UCI: snmpd.@usm_user[0].auth_protocol Opt: auth_protocol	Defines the authentication protocol to use. Note: if omitted the user will be defined as noauth user. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>MD5</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>SHA</td><td></td></tr> </table>	MD5		SHA	
MD5					
SHA					
Web: Auth Password UCI: snmpd.@usm_user[0].auth_password Opt: auth_password	Defines the authentication password. Note: password must be at least 8 characters long.				
Web: Priv Protocol UCI: snmpd.@usm_user[0].priv_protocol Opt: priv_protocol	Defines the privacy protocol to use. Note: if omitted the user will be defined as authNoPriv user. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>MD5</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>SHA</td><td></td></tr> </table>	MD5		SHA	
MD5					
SHA					
Web: Priv Password UCI: snmpd.@usm_user[0].priv_password Opt: priv_password	Defines the privacy password. Note: password must be at least 8 characters long.				
Web: OID UCI: snmpd.@usm_user[0].oid Opt: oid	Defines the OID branch to restrict this user to. Similar to view restrictions in v1 and v2c				

Table 157: Information table for USM user settings

39.3 Configuring SNMP using command line

SNMP is configured under the `snmpd` package. The configuration files are stored on `/etc/config/snmpd`.

39.3.1 System settings using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show snmpd
snmpd.system=system
snmpd.system.sysLocation=Office 123
snmpd.system.sysContact=Mr White
snmpd.system.sysName=Backup Access 4
snmpd.agent=agent
snmpd.agent.agentaddress=UDP:161
snmpd.agent.authtrapenabled=yes
snmpd.agent.link_updown_notify=yes
```

39.3.2 System settings using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export snmpd
package snmpd
config 'system'
    option sysLocation 'Office 123'
    option sysContact 'Mr White'
    option sysName 'Backup Access 4'

config 'agent'
    option agentaddress 'UDP:161'
    option authtrapenabled '1'
    option link_updown_notify '1'
```

Another sample agent configuration shown below causes the agent to listen on UDP port 161, TCP port 161 and UDP port 9161 on only the interface associated with the localhost address.

```
config 'agent'
    option agentaddress 'UDP:161,tcp:161,9161@localhost'
```

39.3.3 com2sec settings

The following sample specifies that a request from any source using “public” as the community string will be dealt with using the security name “ro”. However, any request

from the localhost itself using “private” as the community string will be dealt with using the security name “rw”.

Note: the security names of “ro” and “rw” here are simply names – the fact of a security name having read only or read-write permissions is handled in the access section and dealt with at a group granularity.

39.3.3.1 Com2sec using UCI

```
snmpd.c2s_1=com2sec
snmpd.c2s_1.source=default
snmpd.c2s_1.community=public
snmpd.c2s_1.secname=rw
snmpd.c2s_2=com2sec
snmpd.c2s_2.source=localhost
snmpd.c2s_2.community=private
snmpd.c2s_2.secname=ro
```

39.3.3.2 Com2sec using package options

```
config 'com2sec' 'public'
    option secname 'ro'
    option source 'default'
    option community 'public'

config 'com2sec' 'private'
    option secname 'rw'
    option source 'localhost'
    option community 'private'
```

39.3.4 Group settings

The following example specifies that a request from the security name “ro” using snmp v1, v2c or USM (User Based Security Model for SNMPv3) are all mapped to the “public” group. Similarly, requests from the security name “rw” in all protocols are mapped to the “private” group.

39.3.4.1 Group settings using UCI

```
snmpd.grp_1_v1=group
snmpd.grp_1_v1.version=v1
snmpd.grp_1_v1.group=public
snmpd.grp_1_v1.secname=ro
snmpd.grp_1_v2c=group
snmpd.grp_1_v2c.version=v2c
```



```
snmpd.grp_1_v2c.group=public
snmpd.grp_1_v2c.secname=ro
snmpd.grp_1_usm=group
snmpd.grp_1_usm.version=usm
snmpd.grp_1_usm.group=public
snmpd.grp_1_usm.secname=ro
snmpd.grp_1_access=access
snmpd.grp_1_access.context=none
snmpd.grp_1_access.version=any
snmpd.grp_1_access.level=noauth
snmpd.grp_1_access.prefix=exact
snmpd.grp_1_access.read=all
snmpd.grp_1_access.write=none
snmpd.grp_1_access.notify=none
snmpd.grp_1_access.group=public
snmpd.grp_2_v1=group
snmpd.grp_2_v1.version=v1
snmpd.grp_2_v1.group=public
snmpd.grp_2_v1.secname=ro
snmpd.grp_2_v2c=group
snmpd.grp_2_v2c.version=v2c
snmpd.grp_2_v2c.group=public
snmpd.grp_2_v2c.secname=ro
snmpd.grp_2_usm=group
snmpd.grp_2_usm.version=usm
snmpd.grp_2_usm.group=public
snmpd.grp_2_usm.secname=ro
snmpd.grp_2_access=access
snmpd.grp_2_access.context=none
snmpd.grp_2_access.version=any
snmpd.grp_2_access.level=noauth
snmpd.grp_2_access.prefix=exact
snmpd.grp_2_access.read=all
snmpd.grp_2_access.write=all
snmpd.grp_2_access.notify=all
snmpd.grp_2_access.group=public
```

39.3.4.2 Group settings using package options

```
config 'group' 'public_v1'
    option group 'public'
    option version 'v1'
    option secname 'ro'

config 'group' 'public_v2c'
    option group 'public'
    option version 'v2c'
    option secname 'ro'

config 'group' 'public_usm'
    option group 'public'
    option version 'usm'
    option secname 'ro'

config 'group' 'private_v1'
    option group 'private'
    option version 'v1'
    option secname 'rw'
config 'group' 'private_v2c'
    option group 'private'

    option version 'v2c'
    option secname 'rw'

config 'group' 'private_usm'
    option group 'private'
    option version 'usm'
    option secname 'rw'
```

39.3.5 View settings

The following example defines two views, one for the entire system and another for only mib2.

39.3.5.1 View settings using UCI

```
snmpd.all=view
snmpd.all.viewname=all
snmpd.all.oid=.1
snmpd.mib2=view
snmpd.mib2.viewname=mib2
snmpd.mib2.type=included
snmpd.mib2.oid=.iso.org.dod.Internet.mgmt.mib-2
```

39.3.5.2 View settings using package options

```
config 'view' 'all'
    option viewname 'all'
    option type 'included'
    option oid '.1'

config 'view' 'mib2'
    option viewname 'mib2'
    option type 'included'
    option oid '.iso.org.dod.Internet.mgmt.mib-2'
```

39.3.6 Access settings

The following example shows the “public” group being granted read access on the “all” view and the “private” group being granted read and write access on the “all” view. Although it is possible to write some settings using SNMP write permission, it is not recommended, as any changes to the configuration made through an snmpset command may conflict with the UCI configuration. In this instance the changes will be overwritten by other processes and will not persist after a reboot.

39.3.6.1 Access using package options

```
config 'access' 'public_access'
    option group 'public'
    option context 'none'
    option version 'any'
    option level 'noauth'
    option prefix 'exact'
    option read 'all'
```

```

    option write 'none'
    option notify 'none'

config 'access' 'private_access'
    option group 'private'
    option context 'none'
    option version 'any'
    option level 'noauth'
    option prefix 'exact'
    option read 'all'
    option write 'all'
    option notify 'all'

```

39.3.7 SNMP traps settings

By default, all SNMP trap instances are named 'trapreceiver', it is identified by @trapreceiver then the trap receiver position in the package as a number. For example, for the first trap receiver in the package using UCI:

```

snmpd.@trapreceiver[0]=trapreceiver
snmpd.@trapreceiver[0].host=1.1.1.1:161

```

Or using package options:

```

config trapreceiver
    option host '1.1.1.1:161'

```

However, to better identify, it is recommended to give the trap receiver instance a name. For example, to create a trap receiver instance named TrapRecv1.

To define a named trap receiver instance using UCI, enter:

```

snmpd.TrapRecv1=TrapRecv1
snmpd.TrapRecv1.host=1.1.1.1:161

```

To define a named trap receiver instance using package options, enter:

```

config trapreceiver TrapRecv1
    option host '1.1.1.1:161'

```

39.3.7.1 SNMP trap using UCI

```
snmpd.@trapreceiver[0]=trapreceiver
snmpd.@trapreceiver[0].host=1.1.1.1:161
snmpd.@trapreceiver[0].version=v1
snmpd.@trapreceiver[0].community=public
```

39.3.7.2 SNMP trap using package options

```
# for SNMPv1 or v2c trap receivers
config trapreceiver
    option host 'IPADDR[:PORT]'
    option version 'v1|v2c'
    option community 'COMMUNITY STRING'
```

39.3.8 SNMP inform receiver settings

By default, all SNMP inform receiver instances are named 'informreceiver', it is identified by @informreceiver then the inform receiver position in the package as a number. For example, for the first inform receiver in the package using UCI:

```
snmpd.@informreceiver [0]=informreceiver
snmpd.@informreceiver [0].host=1.1.1.1
```

Or using package options:

```
config informreceiver
    option host '1.1.1.1'
```

However, to better identify, it is recommended to give the inform receiver instance a name. For example, to create a inform receiver instance named InformRecv1.

To define a named trap receiver instance using UCI, enter:

```
snmpd.InformRecv1=InformRecv1
snmpd.InformRecv1.host=1.1.1.1
```

To define a named trap receiver instance using package options, enter:

```
config informreceiver InformRecv1
    option host '1.1.1.1'
```

39.3.8.1 SNMP inform receiver using UCI

```
snmpd.@informreceiver[0]=informreceiver
snmpd.@informreceiver[0].host=1.1.1.1
snmpd.@informreceiver[0].port=67
snmpd.@informreceiver[0].community=private
```

39.3.8.2 SNMP inform receiver using package options

```
config informreceiver
    option host '1.1.1.1'
    option port '67'
    option community 'private'
```

39.3.9 SNMP USM user settings

By default, all USM User instances are named 'usm_user', it is identified by @usm_user then the USM user position in the package as a number. For example, for the first USM User in the package using UCI:

```
snmpd.@usm_user[0]=usm_user
snmpd.@usm_user[0].name=username
```

Or using package options:

```
config usm_user
    option name 'username'
```

However, to better identify, it is recommended to give the usm_user instance a name. For example, to create a usm_user instance named User1.

To define a named usm_user instance using UCI, enter:

```
snmpd.User1=User1
snmpd.User1.name=username
```

To define a named usm_user instance using package options, enter:

```
config usm_user 'User1'
    option name 'username'
```

39.3.9.1 SNMP USM user using UCI

```
snmpd.@usm_user[0]=usm_user
snmpd.@usm_user[0].name=username
snmpd.@usm_user[0].auth_protocol=SHA
```

```
snmpd.@usm_user[0].auth_password=password
snmpd.@usm_user[0].priv_protocol=AES
snmpd.@usm_user[0].priv_password=password
snmpd.@usm_user[0].oid=1.2.3.4
```

39.3.9.2 SNMP USM user using package options

```
config usm_user
    option name 'username'
    option auth_protocol 'SHA'
    option auth_password 'password'
    option priv_protocol 'AES'
    option priv_password 'aespassword'
    option oid '1.2.3.4'
```

39.4 Configuring SNMP interface alias with static SNMP index

A Linux interface index changes dynamically. This is not ideal for SNMP managers that require static interface indexes to be defined.

The network package interface section allows defining a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface.

An alias entry is created in the SNMP ifEntry table at index (**snmp_alias_ifindex + 1000**). This entry is a shadow of the real underlying Linux interface corresponding to the UCI definition. You may use any numbering scheme you wish; the alias values do not need to be consecutive.

39.4.1 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
network	interface

39.4.2 Configuring SNMP interface alias

To enter and SNMP alias for an interface, select **Network->Interfaces->Edit->Common Configuration->Advanced Settings**.

Enter a small index value for **SNMP Alias ifindex** that is unique to this interface. To retrieve SNMP statistics for this interface, the SNMP manager should be configured to poll (**snmp_alias_ifindex + 1000**). For example, if an interface is configured with an **snmp_alias_ifindex** of 11, then the SNMP manager should poll **ifIndex=1011**. The ifIndex will remain fixed regardless of how many times the underlying interface is added or removed.

If the Linux interface associated with the UCI entry is active when the alias index is polled, the normal ifEntry information for that interface is reported. Otherwise, a dummy entry is created with the same ifDescr, and its ifOper field set to **DOWN**.

Note: if you are using SIM roaming, where mobile interfaces are created dynamically, you need to specify a fixed **snmp_alias_ifindex** value and a fixed **ifName** value in the roaming template. All roaming entries will then map to the same Linux interface name and underlying device.

Figure 209: The interface SNMP Alias ifindex field advanced settings page

UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: SNMP Alias ifindex UCI: network.@interface[X].snmp_alias_ifindex Opt: snmp_alias_ifindex	Defines a static SNMP interface alias index for this interface, that can be polled using via the SNMP interface index (snmp_alias_ifindex+1000) <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>No SNMP interface alias index</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0 - 4294966295</td></tr> </table>	Blank	No SNMP interface alias index	Range	0 - 4294966295
Blank	No SNMP interface alias index				
Range	0 - 4294966295				
Web: n/a UCI: network.@interface[X].snmp_alias_ifdescr Opt: snmp_alias_ifdescr	Defines an alias name to be reported for the UCI name in the enterprise MIB for UCI interfaces, and in alias entries in the ifIndex table. If present, this option supercedes the default ifDescr value (usually the UCI interface name, or configured ifName) <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Blank</td><td>No SNMP interface alias name</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	Blank	No SNMP interface alias name	Range	
Blank	No SNMP interface alias name				
Range					

Table 158: Information table for static SNMP alias interface

39.4.3 Configuring SNMP interface alias using the command line

SNMP interface alias is configured under the network package **/etc/config/network**

The following examples use an interface section named MOBILE.

39.4.3.1 SNMP interface alias using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network
network.MOBILE=interface
.....
network.MOBILE.snmp_alias_ifindex=11
network.MOBILE.snmp_alias_ifdescr=primary_mobile
.....
```

39.4.3.2 SNMP interface alias using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show network
config interface 'MOBILE'
.....
    option snmp_alias_ifindex '11'
    option snmp_alias_ifdescr 'primary_mobile'
.....
```


39.4.4 SNMP interface alias MIBS

OID Name	OID
interface alias table	.1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.1.
snmp_alias_ifindex	.1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.1.<snmp_alias_ifindex+1000>
snmp_alias_ifdescr	1.3.6.1.4.1.2078.3.2.66.1.1.<index>.{5,6}

39.5 SNMP diagnostics

39.5.1 SNMP process

To check the SNMP process is running correctly, enter `pgrep -fl snmpd`.

```
root@VA_router:~# pgrep -fl snmpd
6970 /usr/sbin/snmpd -Lsd0-6 -p /var/run/snmpd.pid -m -c
/var/conf/snmpd.conf
```

39.5.2 SNMP port

To check that SNMP service is listening on the configured port, enter `netstat -pantu | grep snmp`

```
root@VA_router:~# netstat -pantu | grep snmp
udp    0 0 0.0.0.0:161  0.0.0.0:*      6970/snmpd
```

39.5.3 Retrieving SNMP values

SNMP values can be queried by an `snmpwalk` or `snmpget` either locally or remotely.

39.5.3.1 snmpwalk

To do an `snmpwalk` locally, enter `snmpwalk`. An example `snmpwalk` is shown below:

```
root@VA_router:~# snmpwalk -c public -v 1 localhost .1.3.6.1.2.1.1
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.1.0 = STRING: "Virtual Access GWXXXX, SN# 00E0C812D1A0,
EDG-21.00.07.008"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.2.0 = OID: iso.3.6.1.4.1.2078
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0 = Timeticks: (71816) 0:11:58.16
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.4.0 = STRING: "info@virtualaccess.com"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.5.0 = STRING: "GWXXXX"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.6.0 = STRING: "UK"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.7.0 = INTEGER: 79
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.8.0 = Timeticks: (60) 0:00:00.60
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.1 = OID: iso.3.6.1.2.1.4
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.2 = OID: iso.3.6.1.6.3.1
```

```
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.3 = OID: iso.3.6.1.2.1.49
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.4 = OID: iso.3.6.1.2.1.50
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.5 = OID: iso.3.6.1.6.3.16.2.2.1
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.6 = OID: iso.3.6.1.6.3.10.3.1.1
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.7 = OID: iso.3.6.1.6.3.11.3.1.1
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.8 = OID: iso.3.6.1.6.3.15.2.1.1
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.2.9 = OID: iso.3.6.1.2.1.10.131
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.4.4 = Timeticks: (35) 0:00:00.35
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.4.5 = Timeticks: (38) 0:00:00.38
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.4.6 = Timeticks: (38) 0:00:00.38
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.4.7 = Timeticks: (38) 0:00:00.38
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.4.8 = Timeticks: (38) 0:00:00.38
iso.3.6.1.2.1.1.9.1.4.9 = Timeticks: (60) 0:00:00.60
.....
```

39.5.3.2 snmpget

To do an snmpget locally, use snmpget. An example snmpget is shown below.

```
root@VA_router:~# snmpget -c public -v 1 localhost .1.3.6.1.4.1.2078.3.14.2
iso.3.6.1.4.1.2078.3.14.2 = STRING: "EDG-21.00.07.008"
```

39.5.4 SNMP status

To view an overview including tx/rx packets and uptime of the SNMP process, enter snmpstatus.

```
root@VA_router:~# snmpstatus -c public -v 2c localhost
[UDP: [0.0.0.0]->[127.0.0.1]:161]=>[Virtual Access GWXXXX, SN#
00E0C812D1A0, EDG-21.00.07.008] Up: 0:17:05.87
Interfaces: 21, Recv/Trans packets: 47632/9130 | IP: 15045/8256
15 interfaces are down!
```

40 Event system

Virtual Access routers feature an event system. It allows you to forward Virtual Access specific router events to predefined targets for efficient control and management of devices.

This chapter explains how the event system works and how to configure it using UCI commands.

40.1 Configuration package used

Package	Section
va_eventd	main
	forwarding
	target
	conn_tester

40.2 Event system overview

40.2.1 Implementation of the event system

The event system is implemented by the **va_eventd** application.

The va_eventd application defines three types of object:

Forwardings	Rules that define what kind of events should be generated. For example, you might want an event to be created when an IPSec tunnel comes up or down.
Targets	Define the targets to send the event to. The event may be sent to a target via a syslog message, a snmp trap or email.
Connection testers	Define methods to test the target is reachable. IP connectivity to a server and link state may be checked prior to sending events.

For example, if you want to configure an SNMP trap to be sent when an IPSec tunnel comes up, you will need to:

- Define a forwarding rule for IPSec tunnel up events.
- Set an SNMP manager as the target.
- Optionally use a connection tester to ensure the SNMP manager is reachable.

40.2.2 Supported events

Events have a class, ID, name and a severity. These properties are used to fine tune which events to report.

Note: only VA events can be forwarded using the event system. A comprehensive table of events is available from the CLI by entering '**vae_cli -d**'.

40.2.3 Supported targets

The table below describes the targets currently supported.

Target	Description
Syslog	Event sent to syslog server.
Email	Event sent via email.
SNMP	Event sent via SNMP trap.
Exec	Command executed when event occurs.
SMS	Event sent via SMS.
File	Events written to a file

Table 159: Targets currently supported

The attributes of a target vary significantly depending on its type.

40.2.4 Supported connection testers

The table below describes the methods to test a connection that are currently supported.

Type	Description
link	Checks if the interface used to reach the target is up.
ping	Pings the target. And then assumes there is connectivity during a configurable amount of time.

Table 160: Event system - supported connection tester methods

40.3 Configuring the event system using the web interface

To configure the event system, select **Services->VA Event System**. The VA Event System page appears.

There are four sections in the VA Event System page.

Section	Description
Basic Settings	Configures basic global event system parameters.
Connection Tester	Configures the connection testers.
Events Destination	Configures the event targets.
Event Filters	Configures the forwarding rules.

40.3.1 Basic settings

The screenshot shows the 'VA Event System' configuration page. Under the 'Basic Settings' section, there is a checkbox for 'Enabled' which is checked. Below it, the 'Queue File' is set to '/tmp/event_buffer' with a tooltip explaining its use. The 'Maximum Queue File Size' is set to '128K' with a tooltip explaining that events older than this size will be discarded.

Figure 210: The VA event system basic settings configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Enabled UCI: va_eventd.main.enabled Opt: enabled	Enables VA Event System.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
	Defines the file to temporarily queue events when they cannot be sent immediately. Note: Use /tmp path if persistence is not required and /root if persistence is required.	
	/tmp/event_buffer	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Enabled UCI: va_eventd.main.event_queue_size Opt: event_queue_size	Defines the file size for the temporary queue. Older events are discarded once file size is reached.	
	128K	128 Kilobytes.
	Range	

Table 161: Information table for event system basic settings

40.3.2 Connection tester

A connection tester is used to verify the event destination before forwarding the event. Connection testers configure the uci conn_tester section rules. Multiple connection testers can be configured. There are two types of connection tester:

Type	Description
link	Checks if the interface used to reach the target is up.
ping	Pings the target. And then assumes there is connectivity during a configurable amount of time.

Connection Tester

☐ Disabled
☒ Enabled

Delete

Connection Tester Name

PINGER

Type

Ping

Ping Target

192.168.100.1

Ping Source

eth0

Ping Success Duration

60

Every successful ping will allow uninterrupted event stream for the specified number of seconds

Figure 211: The VA event system connection tester configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description		
Web: Enabled UCI: va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables a connection tester.		
	0	Disabled.	
	1	Enabled.	
Web: Connection Tester Name UCI: va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].name Opt: name	Defines the connection tester name. This is used when configuring a connection tester for an event destination.		
Web: Type UCI: va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].type Opt: type	Defines the connection tester type.		
	Web Value	Description	UCI
	Ping	Verifies target by ping.	ping
	Link	Verifies target by checking routed interface is up.	link

Web: Ping Target UCI: va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_dest_addr Opt: ping_dest_addr	Defines the IP address for the target ping. Note: only displayed if connection tester type is set to 'Ping'. <table> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>			Range	
Range					
Web: Ping Source UCI: va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_source Opt: ping_source	Defines an interface or IP address to source the pings from. Note: only displayed if connection tester type is set to 'Ping'. <table> <tr><td>eth0</td><td>Use eth0 IP for ping source.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	eth0	Use eth0 IP for ping source.	Range	
eth0	Use eth0 IP for ping source.				
Range					
Web: Ping Success Duration UCI: va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_success_duration_sec Opt: ping_success_duration_sec	Defines the duration, in seconds, for which a successful ping defines a connection tester as up. Note: only displayed if connection tester type is set to 'Ping'. <table> <tr><td>60</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	60		Range	
60					
Range					
Web: Link Interface UCI: va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].link_iface Opt: link_iface	Defines the interface to monitor when the connection tester type is set to 'link'. Configured interfaces are listed. Note: only displayed if connection tester type is set to 'Link'. <table> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>			Range	
Range					

Table 162: Information table for event system connection tester settings

40.3.3 Event Destination

An event destination is the target for the event. Event destinations configure the uci target section rules. Multiple event destinations can be configured. There are currently six configurable event destinations.

Target Type	Description
Syslog	Event sent to syslog server.
Email	Event sent via email.
SNMP	Event sent via SNMP trap.
Execute	Command executed when event occurs.
SMS	Event sent via SMS.
File	Event written to a file

The available configuration options differ depending on the event destination type.

40.3.3.1 Syslog target

When a syslog target receives an event, it sends it to the configured syslog server.

Event Destination

Enabled ☒

Destination Name: SYSLOG

Type: Syslog

Connection Tester Name: PINGER

Destination Address: 192.168.100.126:514

Syslog Over TCP: ☒

Message Template: For Syslog and SNMP types message template has reasonable default so it is safe to leave blank

Delete

Figure 212: The VA event system syslog event destination configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description		
Web: Enabled UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables an event destination. This is used in the event filters section.		
	0	Disabled.	
	1	Enabled.	
Web: Destination name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].name Opt: name	Defines a name for the event destination.		
	Range		
Web: Type UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].type Opt: type	Defines the event destination type. For syslog server choose Syslog .		
	Web Value	Description	UCI
	Syslog		syslog
	SNMP Trap		snmptrap
	Email		email
	Execute		exec
	SMS		sms
	File	File target	file
Web: Connection Tester Name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0]. conn_tester Opt: conn_tester	Defines the connection tester (if any) to use to verify the syslog target.		
	None	No connection tester. UCI option not present.	
	Range		
Web: Destination Address UCI: va_eventd.@target[0]. target_addr Opt: target_addr	Defines the syslog target IP/FQDN and port.		
	Range	a.b.c.d:port or fqdn:port	
Web: Syslog Over TCP UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].tcp_syslog Opt: tcp_syslog	Defines whether to use TCP for delivery of the syslog event.		
	0	Use UDP	
	1	Use TCP	
Web: Message Template UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].template Opt: template	Defines the message template to use for the event. In general, this should be left empty.		
	See the section on message templates below.		
	Range		

Table 163: Information table for event system syslog event destination settings

40.3.3.2 Email target

When an email target receives an event, it sends it to the configured email address.

Event Destination

Enabled ☒

Destination Name

Type

Connection Tester Name

From

To

Subject Template Template for email subject

Body Template Template for email body. Safe to leave blank

SMTP Server Address

SMTP User Name

SMTP Password

Use TLS ☐

Send Timeout

Delete

Figure 213: The VA event system email event destination configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description		
Web: Enabled UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables an event destination.		
	0	Disabled.	
	1	Enabled.	
Web: Destination name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].name Opt: name	Defines a name for the event destination.		
	Range		
Web: Type UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].type Opt: type	Defines the event destination type. For an email server choose Email .		
	Web Value	Description	UCI
	Syslog	Syslog target	syslog
	SNMP Trap	SNMP target	snmptrap
	Email	Email target	email
	Execute	Execure target	exec
	SMS	SMS target	sms
	File	File target	file
Web: Connection Tester Name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0]. conn_tester Opt: conn_tester	Defines the connection tester (if any) to use to verify the email target.		
	None	No connection tester. UCI option not present.	
	Range		
Web: From UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].from Opt: from	Defines the from address for the email.		
	Range		
Web: To UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].to Opt: to	Defines to address for the email.		
	Range		

Web: Subject Template UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].subject_template Opt: subject_template	Defines subject template for the email. In general, this should be left empty. Example: va_eventd.@target[0].subject_template="%{severityName}%{eventName}!!!" See the section on message templates below. <table> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>			Range	
Range					
Web: Body Template UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].body_template Opt: body_template	Defines the email body template. In general, this should be left blank. Example: va_eventd.@target[0].body_template="%{eventName} (%{class}.%{subclass}) happened!" See the section on message templates below. <table> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>			Range	
Range					
Web: SMTP Server Address UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].smtp_addr Opt: smtp_addr	Defines the email server address and port. <table> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>a.b.c.d:port or fqdn:port</td></tr> </table>			Range	a.b.c.d:port or fqdn:port
Range	a.b.c.d:port or fqdn:port				
Web: SMTP User Name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].smtp_user Opt: smtp_user	Defines user name for SMTP authentication. <table> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>name@site.com</td></tr> </table>			Range	name@site.com
Range	name@site.com				
Web: SMTP Password UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].smtp_password Opt: smtp_password	Defines the password for SMTP authentication. <table> <tr><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>			Range	
Range					
Web: Use TLS UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].use_tls Opt: use_tls	Enables TLS (Transport Layer Security) support. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		1	
0					
1					
Web: Send Timeout UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].timeout_sec Opt: timeout_sec	Defines the email send timeout in seconds. <table> <tr><td>10</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	10		Range	
10					
Range					
Web: Use StartTLS UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].tls_starttls Opt: tls_starttls	Enables StartTLS support for TLS. (Only displayed when TLS is enabled) <table> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		1	
0					
1					
Web: Force SSLv3 UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].tls_forcessl3 Opt: tls_forcessl3	Enables force SSLv3 for TLS. (Only displayed when TLS is enabled) <table> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		1	
0					
1					

Table 164: Information table for event system email event destination settings

40.3.3.3 SNMP target

When a SNMP target receives an event, it sends it in a trap to the configured SNMP manager.

Event Destination

Enabled ☒

Destination Name

Type

Connection Tester Name

Destination Address

Message Template
For Syslog and SNMP types message template has reasonable default so it is safe to leave blank

Agent Address

SNMP Protocol Version

Community

Figure 214: The VA event system SNMP event destination configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																							
Web: Enabled UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables an event destination. <table><tr><td>0</td><td colspan="2">Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Enabled.</td></tr></table>			0	Disabled.		1	Enabled.																
0	Disabled.																							
1	Enabled.																							
Web: Destination name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].name Opt: name	Defines a name for the event destination. <table><tr><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr></table>						Range																	
Range																								
Web: Type UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].type Opt: type	Defines the event destination type. For SNMP server choose SNMP Trap . <table><tr><th>Web Value</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>Syslog</td><td>Syslog target</td><td>syslog</td></tr><tr><td>SNMP Trap</td><td>SNMP target</td><td>snmptrap</td></tr><tr><td>Email</td><td>Email target</td><td>email</td></tr><tr><td>Execute</td><td>Execure target</td><td>exec</td></tr><tr><td>SMS</td><td>SMS target</td><td>sms</td></tr><tr><td>File</td><td>File target</td><td>file</td></tr></table>			Web Value	Description	UCI	Syslog	Syslog target	syslog	SNMP Trap	SNMP target	snmptrap	Email	Email target	email	Execute	Execure target	exec	SMS	SMS target	sms	File	File target	file
Web Value	Description	UCI																						
Syslog	Syslog target	syslog																						
SNMP Trap	SNMP target	snmptrap																						
Email	Email target	email																						
Execute	Execure target	exec																						
SMS	SMS target	sms																						
File	File target	file																						
Web: Connection Tester Name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0]. conn_tester Opt: conn_tester	Defines the connection tester (if any) to use to verify the SNMP target. <table><tr><td>None</td><td colspan="2">No connection tester. UCI option not present.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr></table>			None	No connection tester. UCI option not present.		Range																	
None	No connection tester. UCI option not present.																							
Range																								
Web: Destination Address UCI: va_eventd.@target[0]. target_addr Opt: target_addr	Defines the SNMP target IP/FQDN and port. <table><tr><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2">a.b.c.d:port or fqdn:port</td></tr></table>						Range	a.b.c.d:port or fqdn:port																
Range	a.b.c.d:port or fqdn:port																							
Web: Message Template UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].template Opt: template	Defines the message template to use for the event. In general, this should be left empty. Example: va_eventd.@target[0].template="%{eventName}%{eventSpecificTemplate}" See the section on message templates below. <table><tr><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr></table>						Range																	
Range																								
Web: Agent Address UCI: va_eventd.@target[0]. agent_addr Opt: agent_addr	Defines the IP address to source the SNMP trap. (optional) <table><tr><td>localhost</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr></table>			localhost			Range																	
localhost																								
Range																								

Web: SNMP Protocol Version UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_version Opt: snmp_version	Defines the SNMP version.	
	1	SNMPv1
	2c	SNMPv2c
	3	SNMPv3
Web: Community UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].community Opt: community	Defines the community string for SNMPv1.	
	Range	
Web: Username UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_uname Opt: snmp_uname	Defines the username for SNMPv3. (Only displayed when SNMP protocol version is SNMPv3)	
	Range	
Web: Authentication Protocol UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_auth_proto Opt: snmp_auth_proto	Defines the SNMPv3 authentication protocol (Only displayed when SNMP protocol version is SNMPv3.)	
	MD5	
	SHA	
Web: Authentication Password UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_auth_pass Opt: snmp_auth_pass	Defines the SNMPv3 authentication password (Only displayed when SNMPv3 authentication protocol is configured.)	
	MD5	
	SHA	
Web: Privacy Protocol UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_priv_proto Opt: snmp_priv_proto	Defines the SNMPv3 privacy protocol. (Only displayed when SNMP authentication protocol is configured.)	
	DES	
	AES	
Web: Privacy Password UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_priv_pass Opt: snmp_priv_pass	Defines SNMPv3 privacy password. (Only displayed when SNMP privacy protocol is configured.)	
	Range	
Web: SNMPv3 Context UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_context Opt: snmp_context	Defines the SNMPv3 context. (Only displayed when SNMP authentication protocol is configured.)	
	Range	
Web: SNMPv3 Context Engine ID UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_context_eid Opt: snmp_context_eid	Defines the SNMPv3 context engine ID. (Only displayed when SNMP authentication protocol is configured.)	
	Range	
Web: SNMPv3 Security Engine ID UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_sec_eid Opt: snmp_sec_eid	Defines the SNMPv3 security engine ID. (Only displayed when SNMP authentication protocol is configured.)	
	Range	

Table 165: Information table for event system SNMP event destination settings

40.3.3.4 Exec target

When an Execute target receives an event, it executes a shell command.

Figure 215: The VA event system exec event destination configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																							
Web: Enabled UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables an event destination. <table><tr><td>0</td><td colspan="2">Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Enabled.</td></tr></table>			0	Disabled.		1	Enabled.																
0	Disabled.																							
1	Enabled.																							
Web: Destination name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].name Opt: name	Defines a name for the event destination. <table><tr><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr></table>						Range																	
Range																								
Web: Type UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].type Opt: type	Defines the event destination type. For shell command execution, choose Execute . <table><tr><th>Web Value</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>Syslog</td><td>Syslog target</td><td>syslog</td></tr><tr><td>SNMP Trap</td><td>SNMP target</td><td>snmptrap</td></tr><tr><td>Email</td><td>Email target</td><td>email</td></tr><tr><td>Execute</td><td>Execure target</td><td>exec</td></tr><tr><td>SMS</td><td>SMS target</td><td>sms</td></tr><tr><td>File</td><td>File target</td><td>file</td></tr></table>			Web Value	Description	UCI	Syslog	Syslog target	syslog	SNMP Trap	SNMP target	snmptrap	Email	Email target	email	Execute	Execure target	exec	SMS	SMS target	sms	File	File target	file
Web Value	Description	UCI																						
Syslog	Syslog target	syslog																						
SNMP Trap	SNMP target	snmptrap																						
Email	Email target	email																						
Execute	Execure target	exec																						
SMS	SMS target	sms																						
File	File target	file																						
Web: Connection Tester Name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0]. conn_tester Opt: conn_tester	Defines the connection tester (if any) to use to verify the execute target. <table><tr><td>None</td><td colspan="2">No connection tester. UCI option not present.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr></table>			None	No connection tester. UCI option not present.		Range																	
None	No connection tester. UCI option not present.																							
Range																								
Web: Command Template UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].cmd_template Opt: cmd_template	Defines the command template to use for the event. Example to log a syslog message: va_eventd.@target[0].cmd_template="logger -t eventer %{eventName}" See the section on message templates below. <table><tr><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr></table>						Range																	
Range																								

Table 166: Information table for event system execute event destination settings

40.3.3.5 SMS target

When an SMS target receives an event, it sends an SMS message.

Figure 216: The VA event system SMS event destination configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description			
Web: Enabled UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables an event destination.			
	0	Disabled.		
	1	Enabled.		
Web: Destination name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].name Opt: name	Defines a name for the event destination.			
	Range			
Web: Type UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].type Opt: type	Defines the event destination type. For SMS destination choose SMS .			
	Web Value	Description	UCI	
	Syslog		syslog	
	SNMP Trap		snmptrap	
	Email		email	
	Execute		exec	
	SMS		sms	
	File		file	
	Web: Connection Tester Name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0]. conn_tester Opt: conn_tester	Defines the connection tester (if any) to use to verify the SMS target.		
		None	No connection tester. UCI option not present.	
Range				
Web: Message Template UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].template Opt: template	Defines the message template to use for the event. In general, this should be left empty. Example: va_eventd.@target[0].template="%{eventName}" See the section on message templates below.			
	Range			
Web: Phone Number UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].callee Opt: callee	Defines the phone number for sending SMS to.			
	Range			

Table 167: Information table for event system SMS event destination settings

40.3.3.6 File target

When file target receives an event, it logs to a file.

Figure 217: The VA event system file event destination configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																							
Web: Enabled UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables an event destination. <table><tr><td>0</td><td colspan="2">Disabled.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td colspan="2">Enabled.</td></tr></table>			0	Disabled.		1	Enabled.																
0	Disabled.																							
1	Enabled.																							
Web: Destination Name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].name Opt: name	Defines a name for the event destination. <table><tr><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr></table>						Range																	
Range																								
Web: Type UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].type Opt: type	Defines the event destination type. For file choose File . <table><tr><th>Web Value</th><th>Description</th><th>UCI</th></tr><tr><td>Syslog</td><td></td><td>syslog</td></tr><tr><td>SNMP Trap</td><td></td><td>snmptrap</td></tr><tr><td>Email</td><td></td><td>email</td></tr><tr><td>Execute</td><td></td><td>exec</td></tr><tr><td>SMS</td><td></td><td>sms</td></tr><tr><td>File</td><td></td><td>file</td></tr></table>			Web Value	Description	UCI	Syslog		syslog	SNMP Trap		snmptrap	Email		email	Execute		exec	SMS		sms	File		file
Web Value	Description	UCI																						
Syslog		syslog																						
SNMP Trap		snmptrap																						
Email		email																						
Execute		exec																						
SMS		sms																						
File		file																						
Web: Connection Tester Name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].conn_tester Opt: conn_tester	Defines the connection tester (if any) to use to verify the File target. <table><tr><td>None</td><td colspan="2">No connection tester. UCI option not present.</td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr></table>			None	No connection tester. UCI option not present.		Range																	
None	No connection tester. UCI option not present.																							
Range																								
Web: Message Template UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].template Opt: template	Defines the message template to use for the event. In general, this should be left empty. See the section on message templates below. <table><tr><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr></table>						Range																	
Range																								
Web: File Name UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].file_name Opt: file_name	Defines a file name for the event destination. (full path) <table><tr><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr></table>						Range																	
Range																								
Web: Max Size (KiB) UCI: va_eventd.@target[0].max_size_kb Opt: file_name	Defines a file size in kilobits. <table><tr><td>2048</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr><tr><td>Range</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr></table>			2048			Range																	
2048																								
Range																								

Table 168: Information table for event system file event destination settings

40.3.4 Event filters

Event filters are use to classify the events to be sent to the event destination. Multiple event filters can be defined. Event filters configure the uci forwarding section rules.

Figure 218: The VA event system event filters configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description																
Web: Enabled UCI: va_eventd.@forwarding[0].enabled Opt: enabled	Enables an event filter. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Disabled.	0	Enabled.												
1	Disabled.																
0	Enabled.																
Web: Class Name UCI: va_eventd.@forwarding[0].className Opt: className	Only match events with the given class name. Available class names are listed or can be viewed using the command <code>vae_cli -d</code>																
Web: Event Name UCI: va_eventd.@forwarding[0].eventName Opt: eventName	Only match events with the given event name. Available event names are listed. The event name is optional and can be omitted.																
Web: Minimum Severity UCI: va_eventd.@forwarding[0].severity Opt: severity	Defines the minimum event severity. The minimum severity event is DEBUG. Events generated within the minimum and maximum event severity will be matched. Minimum and maximum severity are specified in the one UCI option and entered using a dash (-) separator in the form minimum-maximum. Example: <code>va_eventd.@forwarding[0].severity=debug-error</code> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>debug</td><td>minimum severity</td></tr> <tr> <td>info</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>notice</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>warning</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>error</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>critical</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>alert</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>emergency</td><td>maximum severity</td></tr> </table>	debug	minimum severity	info		notice		warning		error		critical		alert		emergency	maximum severity
debug	minimum severity																
info																	
notice																	
warning																	
error																	
critical																	
alert																	
emergency	maximum severity																

Web: Maximum Severity UCI: va_eventd.@forwarding[0].severity Opt: severity	Defines the maximum event severity. The maximum event severity is EMERGENCY. Events generated within the minimum and maximum event severity will be matched. The UCI command for specifying minimum and maximum severity is the same and is entered with two parameters using a dash (-) separator minimum-maximum. Example: va_eventd.@forwarding[0].severity=debug-error <table border="1"> <tr> <td>debug</td><td>minimum severity</td></tr> <tr> <td>info</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>notice</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>warning</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>error</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>critical</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>alert</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>emergency</td><td>maximum severity</td></tr> </table>	debug	minimum severity	info		notice		warning		error		critical		alert		emergency	maximum severity
debug	minimum severity																
info																	
notice																	
warning																	
error																	
critical																	
alert																	
emergency	maximum severity																
Web: Target UCI: va_eventd.@forwarding[0].target Opt: target	Defines the event destination to forward the event to. All configured event destinations will be displayed.																

Table 169: Information table for event system event filters settings

40.4 Configuring the event system using command line

The event system configuration files are stored at **/etc/config/va_eventd**

There are four config sections main, conn_tester, target and forwarding.

You can configure multiple conn_tester, target and forwarding sections.

By default, all conn_tester instances are named conn_tester, it is identified by @conn_tester then the conn_tester position in the package as a number. For example, for the first conn_tester in the package using UCI:

```
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0]=conn_tester
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].enabled=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config conn_tester
    option enabled '1'
```

By default, all target instances are named target. The target instance is identified by @target then the target position in the package as a number. For example, for the first target in the package using UCI:

```
va_eventd.@target[0]=target
va_eventd.@target[0].enabled=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config target
    option enabled '1'
```


By default, all forwarding instances are named forwarding. The forwarding instance is identified by @forwarding then the forwarding position in the package as a number. For example, for the first forwarding rule in the package using UCI:

```
va_eventd.@lforwarding[0]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].enabled=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config forwarding
    option enabled '1'
```

40.4.1 Event system using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show va_eventd
#Sample basic settings
va_eventd.main=va_eventd
va_eventd.main.event_queue_file=/tmp/event_buffer
va_eventd.main.event_queue_size=128K

#Sample SNMP
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0]=conn_tester
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].type=ping
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_dest_addr=192.168.100.1
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_success_duration_sec=60
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].name=SNMPTest
va_eventd.@conn_tester[0].ping_source=LAN1
va_eventd.@target[0]=target
va_eventd.@target[0].suppress_duplicate_forwardings=no
va_eventd.@target[0].type=snmp
va_eventd.@target[0].agent_addr=localhost
va_eventd.@target[0].name=SNMPTarget
va_eventd.@target[0].conn_tester=SNMPTest
va_eventd.@target[0].target_addr=192.168.100.126:68
va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_version=3
va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_uname=v3username
va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_auth_proto=MD5
va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_auth_pass=md5password
va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_priv_proto=AES
va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_priv_pass=aespassword
va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_context=v3context
```

```
va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_context_eid=v3contextID
va_eventd.@target[0].snmp_sec_eid=v3SecurityID
va_eventd.@forwarding[0]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].className=mobile
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].target=SNMPTarget
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].eventName=LinkUp
va_eventd.@forwarding[0].severity=notice-notice

#Sample Syslog
va_eventd.@conn_tester[1]=conn_tester
va_eventd.@conn_tester[1].name=SyslogTest
va_eventd.@conn_tester[1].type=ping
va_eventd.@conn_tester[1].ping_dest_addr=192.168.100.2
va_eventd.@conn_tester[1].ping_source=LAN1
va_eventd.@conn_tester[1].ping_success_duration_sec=60
va_eventd.@target[1]=target
va_eventd.@target[1].name=SyslogTarget
va_eventd.@target[1].type=syslog
va_eventd.@target[1].conn_tester=SyslogTest
va_eventd.@target[1].target_addr=192.168.100.2:514
va_eventd.@target[1].tcp_syslog=0
va_eventd.@forwarding[1]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[1].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[1].severity=debug-error
va_eventd.@forwarding[1].target=SyslogTarget

#Sample Email
va_eventd.@conn_tester[2]=conn_tester
va_eventd.@conn_tester[2].name=EmailTest
va_eventd.@conn_tester[2].type=link
va_eventd.@conn_tester[2].link_iface=PoAADSL
va_eventd.@target[2]=target
va_eventd.@target[2].timeout_sec=10
va_eventd.@target[2].name=EmailTarget
va_eventd.@target[2].type=email
va_eventd.@target[2].conn_tester=EmailTest
```

```

va_eventd.@target[2].from=from@example.com
va_eventd.@target[2].to=to@example.com
va_eventd.@target[2].subject_template=%{serial} %{severityName} %{eventName}!!!
va_eventd.@target[2].body_template=%{eventName} (%{class}.%{subclass})
happened!
va_eventd.@target[2].smtp_addr=192.168.100.3:25
va_eventd.@target[2].smtp_user=root
va_eventd.@target[2].smtp_password=admin
va_eventd.@target[2].use_tls=0
va_eventd.@target[2].tls_starttls=0
va_eventd.@target[2].tls_forcessl3=0
va_eventd.@forwarding[2]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[2].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[2].className=power
va_eventd.@forwarding[2].eventName=IgnitionOff
va_eventd.@forwarding[2].severity=notice-notice
va_eventd.@forwarding[2].target=EmailTarget

#Sample SMS
va_eventd.@target[3]=target
va_eventd.@target[3].name=SMSTarget
va_eventd.@forwarding[3].target=SMSTarget
va_eventd.@target[3].type=sms
va_eventd.@target[3].template=%{serial} %{severityName} %{eventName}!!!
va_eventd.@target[3].callee=0123456789
va_eventd.@forwarding[3]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[3].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[3].target=SMSTarget
va_eventd.@forwarding[3].className=auth
va_eventd.@forwarding[3].eventName=LoginSSH
va_eventd.@forwarding[3].severity=notice-notice

#Sample Execute
va_eventd.@target[4]=target
va_eventd.@target[4].name=ExecTarget
va_eventd.@target[4].type=exec

```

```

va_eventd.@target[4].cmd_template=logger -t eventer %{eventName}
va_eventd.@forwarding[4]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[4].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[4].target=ExecTarget
va_eventd.@forwarding[4].className=ppp
va_eventd.@forwarding[4].severity=debug-error

#Sample File
va_eventd.@target[5]=target
va_eventd.@target[5].name=FileTarget
va_eventd.@target[5].type=file
va_eventd.@target[5].file_name=\tmp\eventfile
va_eventd.@target[5].max_size_kb=1028
va_eventd.@forwarding[5]=forwarding
va_eventd.@forwarding[5].enabled=yes
va_eventd.@forwarding[5].target=FileTarget
va_eventd.@forwarding[5].severity=debug-error

```

40.4.1.1 Event system using package options

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export va_eventd
package va_eventd

config va_eventd 'main'
    option event_queue_file '/tmp/event_buffer'
    option event_queue_size '128K'

# Sample SNMP
config conn_tester
    option type 'ping'
    option ping_dest_addr '192.168.100.1'
    option ping_success_duration_sec '60'
    option name 'SNMPTest'
    option ping_source 'LAN1'

config target
    option suppress_duplicate_forwardings 'no'
    option type 'snmp'

```

```
option agent_addr 'localhost'
option name 'SNMPTarget'
option conn_tester 'SNMPTest'
option target_addr '192.168.100.126:68'
option snmp_version '3'
option snmp_uname 'v3username'
option snmp_auth_proto 'MD5'
option snmp_auth_pass 'md5password'
option snmp_priv_proto 'AES'
option snmp_priv_pass 'aespassword'
option snmp_context 'v3context'
option snmp_context_eid 'v3contextID'
option snmp_sec_eid 'v3SecurityID'

config forwarding
    option enabled 'yes'
    option className 'mobile'
    option severity 'notice-notice'
    option target 'SNMPTarget'
    option eventname 'LinkUp'

# Sample Syslog
config conn_tester
    option name 'SyslogTest'
    option type 'ping'
    option ping_dest_addr '192.168.100.2'
    option ping_source 'LAN1'
    option ping_success_duration_sec '60'

config target
    option name 'SyslogTarget'
    option type 'syslog'
    option conn_tester 'SyslogTest'
    option target_addr '192.168.100.2:514'
    option tcp_syslog '0'

config forwarding
```

```
    option enabled 'yes'
    option severity 'debug-error'
    option target 'SyslogTarget'

# Sample Email
config conn_tester
    option name 'EmailTest'
    option type 'link'
    option link_iface 'PoAADSL'

config target
    option timeout_sec '10'
    option name 'EmailTarget'
    option type 'email'
    option conn_tester 'EmailTest'
    option from 'from@example.com'
    option to 'to@example.com'
    option subject_template '%{serial} %{severityName} %{eventName}!!!'
    option body_template '%{eventName} (%{class}.%{subclass})
happened!'
    option smtp_addr '192.168.100.3:25'
    option smtp_user 'root'
    option smtp_password 'admin'
    option use_tls 'no'
    option tls_starttls 'no'
    option tls_forcesssl3 'no'

config forwarding
    option enabled 'yes'
    option target 'EmailTarget'
    option className 'power'
    option eventName 'IgnitionOff'
    option severity 'notice-notice'

# Sample SMS
config target
    option name 'SMStarget'
```

```
    option type 'sms'
    option template '%{serial} %{severityName} %{eventName}!!!'
    option callee '0123456789'

config forwarding
    option enabled 'yes'
    option target 'SMSTarget'
    option className 'auth'
    option eventName 'LoginSSH'
    option severity 'notice-notice'

# Sample Execute
config target
    option name 'ExecTarget'
    option type 'exec'
    option cmd_template 'logger -t eventer %{eventName}'

config forwarding
    option enabled 'yes'
    option target 'ExecTarget'
    option className 'ppp'
    option severity 'debug-error'

# Sample File
config target
    option name 'FileTarget'
    option type 'file'
    option file_name '\tmp\eventfile'
    option max_size_kb '1028'

config forwarding
    option enabled 'yes'
    option target 'FileTarget'
    option severity 'debug-error'
```

40.5 Event system diagnostics

40.5.1 Displaying VA events

To view a list of all available class names, events and severity levels, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# vae_cli -d
```

The following is an example of the output from this command:

Class	ID	Name	Severity	Specific Template
internal	1	EventdConfigErr	error	
%{p1} %{p2}: %{p3} has bad value..				
internal	2	EventdConfigWarn	warning	
%{p1} %{p2}: %{p3} has bad value..				
internal	3	EventdConfigUnknown	informat	%{p1} %{p2}: field '%{p3}' is no..
internal	4	EventdSystemErr	error	
%{p1} %{p2}: %{p3} %{p4} %{p5} %..				
internal	5	EventdSystemWarn	error	
%{p1} %{p2}: %{p3} %{p4} %{p5} %..				
internal	6	EventdUpAndRunning	informat	
internal	7	EventdStopped	warning	%{p1}
mobile	1	SIMin	notice	SIM card #{p1} inserted
mobile	2	SIMout	notice	SIM card #{p1} removed
mobile	3	LinkUp	notice	3g link %{p1} up using sim #{p2}..
mobile	4	LinkDown	notice	3g link %{p1} down
mobile	5	SMSByPassword	notice	Received SMS from %{p1} (by pass..
mobile	6	SMSByCaller	notice	Received SMS from %{p1} (%{p2}):..
mobile	7	SMSFromUnknown	warning	Received SMS from unknown sender..
mobile	8	SMSSendSuccess	informat	SMS send success: %{p1}
mobile	9	SMSSendError	warning	SMS send error: %{p1}
mobile	10	SMSSent	notice	Sent SMS to %{p1}: %{p2}
ethernet	1	LinkUp	notice	Ethernet %{p1} up
ethernet	2	LinkDown	notice	Ethernet %{p1} down
auth	2	BadPasswordSSH	warning	SSH login attempt from %{p2}: ba..
auth	3	BadUserConsole	warning	Console login attempt on %{p1}: ..


```

| auth      | 4 | BadPasswordConsole | warning | Console login attempt
on %{p2}: ..
| auth      | 5 | BadUserTelnet      | warning | Telnet login attempt:
bad username
| auth      | 6 | BadPasswordTelnet  | warning | Telnet login attempt:
bad passwo..
| auth      | 7 | BadUserLuCI        | warning | LuCI login attempt: bad
username..
| auth      | 8 | BadPasswordLuCI    | warning | LuCI login attempt: bad
password..
| auth      | 9 | LoginSSH           | notice  | SSH login: user %{p2}
from %{p3}
| auth      | 10 | LogoffSSH          | notice  | SSH logoff: user %{p1}
due to "%..
| auth      | 11 | LoginConsole       | notice  | Console login:
user %{p1} on %{p2}
| auth      | 12 | LogoffConsole      | notice  | Console logoff on %{p1}
| auth      | 13 | LoginTelnet        | notice  | Telnet login:
user %{p1}
| auth      | 14 | LoginLuCI          | notice  | LuCI login: user %{p1}
| auth      | 15 | ConsoleCommand     | informat | %{p1}@%{p2} %{p3}
| auth      | 16 | LuCIAction         | informat
| %{p1}@%{p2} %{p3} %{p4} %{p5}
| ipsec     | 6 | IPSecInitIKE       | informat | IPSec IKE %{p1}
established
| ipsec     | 7 | IPSecInitSA        | informat | IPSec SA %{p1}
established
| ipsec     | 8 | IPSecCloseIKE      | informat | IPSec IKE %{p1} deleted
| ipsec     | 9 | IPSecCloseSA       | informat | IPSec SA %{p1} closed
| ipsec     | 10 | IPSecDPDTimeOut    | informat | IPSec IKE %{p1} DPD
timed out
| wifi      | 1 | WiFiConnectedToAP  | notice  | WiFi %{p1} connected to
AP %{p2}
| wifi      | 1 | WiFiConnectedToAP  | notice  | WiFi %{p1} connected to
AP %{p2}
| wifi      | 2 | WiFiDisconnectedFromAP | notice  | WiFi %{p1}
disconnected from AP
| wifi      | 2 | WiFiDisconnectedFromAP | notice  | WiFi %{p1}
disconnected from AP
| wifi      | 3 | WiFiStationAttached | notice  | WiFi
station %{p2} connected to ..
| wifi      | 3 | WiFiStationAttached | notice  | WiFi
station %{p2} connected to ..

```

```

| wifi      | 4 | WiFiStationDetached | notice | WiFi
station %{p2} disconnected ..
| wifi      | 4 | WiFiStationDetached | notice | WiFi
station %{p2} disconnected ..
| wifi      | 5 | WiFiStationAttachFailed | notice | WiFi
station %{p2} failed to con..
| wifi      | 5 | WiFiStationAttachFailed | notice | WiFi
station %{p2} failed to con..
| ppp       | 1 | LinkUp              | informat | PPP for
interface %{p2} (protoco..
| ppp       | 2 | LinkDown            | informat | PPP for
interface %{p2} (protoco..
| ppp       | 3 | ConnEstablished     | informat | PPP connection
for interface %{p..
| adsl      | 1 | LinkUp              | notice | ADSL trained.
Starting interface..
| adsl      | 2 | LinkDown            | notice | ADSL down.
Stopping interface %{..
| adsl      | 3 | Silent              | debug   | ADSL silent
| adsl      | 4 | Training            | debug   | ADSL training
| adsl      | 5 | TrainingSuccess     | notice  | ADSL training
successful: data ..
| system    | 1 | BootSuccess        | informat | Success booting into %{p1}
| system    | 2 | DigitalInputChange  | notice  | Digital
Input %{p1} changed valu..
| ntp       | 1 | InitialSync        | notice  | Initial NTP sync:
time: %{p1}; o..
| ntp       | 2 | Adjust             | informat | NTP adjust by %{p1}
| ntp       | 3 | QueryTimeout       | warning | NTP query to %{p1} timed
out. Ne..
| ntp       | 4 | QueryFailed        | warning | NTP query failed: %{p1}

```

41 Configuring data usage monitor

41.1 Introduction

Virtual Access software provides support for monitoring of data usage on mobile interfaces and to disable if the monthly limit is exceeded. This allows an element of control over data usage for SIMs with a limited data plan.

DISCLAIMER: data usage statistics calculated by Virtual Access data usage feature are best estimates and may vary from the mobile carrier statistics that are used for billing. Virtual Access cannot be held liable for any fees charged by the carrier to the customer for their data usage. We recommend that the configured data usage is lower than the allowance and that traffic percentage alerts are used.

41.2 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
procrustes	limit

41.3 Configuring data usage using the web interface

Select **Services -> Data Usage**. The Data Usage page appears.

You can monitor interfaces as a collective group, so enter a name for the group and select **Add**. The examples below show a group name configured as 'wan'.

You can configure multiple groups.

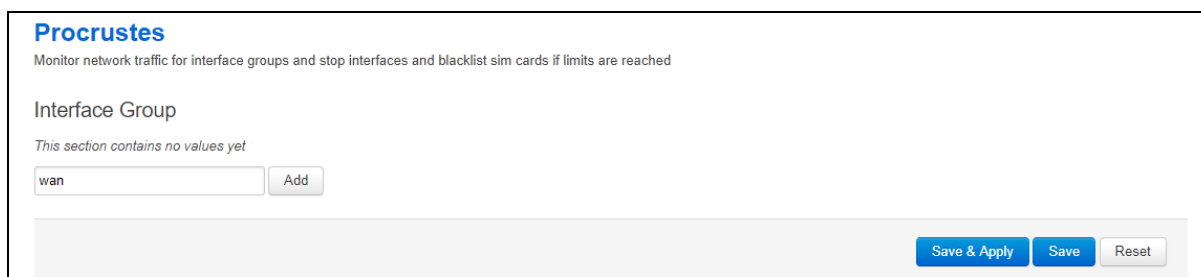


Figure 219: The data usage page

Procrustes
Monitor network traffic for interface groups and stop interfaces and blacklist sim cards if limits are reached

Interface Group

[Delete](#)

WAN

Enabled ☒ DISCLAIMER: By clicking Enabled you agree that data presented are estimates and may vary from what your carrier uses for billing. Virtual Access cannot be held liable for any fees charged by the carrier to the customer for their data usage. We recommend that you set the configured data usage lower than the allowance and also use traffic alerts.

Interfaces

- ☐ lan:
- ☐ lan1: (no interfaces attached)
- ☐ loopback:
- ☒ wan:
- ☐ wlan:
- ☐ wlan1:

Billing Start Day of month when billing period starts (1-28)

Monthly Limit (MB) 0 means "no limit"

Monthly Warnings (MB)

-
-

When usage would reach any of these levels, message will be sent

Figure 220: The data usage configuration page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Enabled	Enable data usage monitor on this interface group.	
UCI: procrustes.@limit[0].enabled	0	Disabled.
Opt: enabled	1	Enabled.
Web: Billing Start	Day of month on which the billing period starts.	
UCI: procrustes.@limit[0].billing_period_start_day	1	
Opt: billing_period_start_day	Range	1 – 28
Web: Interfaces	Monitor and apply limits to these interfaces as a group. Configure multiple interfaces via UCI using a space separator.	
UCI: procrustes.@limit[0].interfaces	Example: uci set procrustes.@limit[0].interfaces="lan wan"	
Web: Monthly Limit (MB)	Defines monthly data traffic limit in megabytes (MB). This is total RX and TX on the interface.	
UCI: procrustes.@limit[0].monthly_data_limit	0	Zero means no limit.
Opt: monthly_data_limit	Range	
Web: Monthly Warnings (MB)	Defines data usage limits for generating a log message and a VA event alert when used traffic reaches specified levels. Levels are specified in MB.	
UCI: procrustes.@limit[0].monthly_warning_levels	Set multiple limits via UCI using a space separator.	
Opt: monthly_warning_levels	Example: uci set procrustes.@limit[0].monthly_warning_levels="15 25"	
	0	Zero means no limit.
	Range	

Table 170: Information table for data usage commands

41.3.1 Configuring data usage using command line

Data usage is configured under the **procrustes** package **/etc/config/procrustes**.

By default, all limit instances are named 'limit', and are identified by @limit followed by the limit position in the package as a number. For example, for the first limit in the package using UCI:

```
procrustes.@limit[0]=limit
procrustes.@limit[0].enabled=1
```

Or using package options:

```
config limit
    option enabled '1'
```

However, to better identify instances, it is recommended to give the limit instance a name. For example, create a limit instance named MOBILE1.

To define a named limit instance using UCI, enter:

```
procrustes.@limit[0]=wan
procrustes.wan.enabled=1
```

To define a named limit instance using package options, enter:

```
config limit 'wan'
    option enabled '1'
```

The following examples show two limit groups wan and lan.

41.3.2 Procrustes using UCI

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show procrustes
procrustes.lan=limit
procrustes.lan.enabled=1
procrustes.lan.interfaces=LAN1
procrustes.lan.billing_period_start_day=1
procrustes.lan.monthly_data_limit=30
procrustes.lan.monthly_warning_levels=15 25
procrustes.wan=limit
procrustes.wan.enabled=1
procrustes.wan.interfaces=MOBILE1
procrustes.wan.billing_period_start_day=1
procrustes.wan.monthly_data_limit=30
procrustes.wan.monthly_warning_levels=15 25
```

41.3.3 Procrustes using package options

```

root@VA_router:~# uci export procrustes
package procrustes

config limit 'lan'
    option enabled '1'
    option interfaces 'LAN1'
    option billing_period_start_day '1'
    option monthly_data_limit '30'
    option monthly_warning_levels '15 25'

config limit 'wan'
    option enabled '1'
    option interfaces 'MOBILE1'
    option billing_period_start_day '1'
    option monthly_data_limit '30'
    option monthly_warning_levels '15 25'

```

41.4 Data usage status

Select **Status -> Overview**. The Status page appears.

To check current data usage, scroll to **Network -> Data Usage (MiB)** row.

Data usage is presented as progress bar.



Figure 221: The data usage status progress bar

41.5 Data usage diagnostics

41.5.1 Syslog events

The following events can be generated in logs by the data usage feature:

Severity	Tag	Text
NOTICE	procrustes	<if_group_name>: using counter 1404674 saved on 2017-09-30 16:26:57
NOTICE	procrustes	<if_group_name>: warning level 2097152 is reached
WARNING	procrustes	<if_group_name>: hard limit 10485760 is reached

NOTICE	procrustes	Data limit on SIM <iccid> exceeded and sim will be banned until the next month
ERROR	procrustes	Could not get iccid for <ifname>
DEBUG	procrustes	Interface <ifname> is not up
WARNING	procrustes	network.<ifname>.ifname is not defined
NOTICE	procrustes	<ifname>: reached billing start. Resetting...
DEBUG	procrustes	Saving current limit values
NOTICE	procrustes	<if_group_name>: not enabled
WARNING	procrustes	<if_group_name>: defines no interfaces
DEBUG	procrustes	<if_group_name>: sim interface <ifname>
ERROR	procrustes	Daemonization failed
ERROR	procrustes	another procrustes is running. Exiting...
NOTICE	procrustes	No limits defined. Exiting...
ERROR	mobile	SIM <iccid> is blacklisted, not establishing connection

41.5.2 Viewing data usage

The router has monitoring application named **procrustatus.lua** that can be used for viewing data usage.

This application displays data statistics used for different interface groups, percentage of time left to next billing period start and percentage of data left for use before the interface will be shut down.

To view the application, enter the command `procrustes.lua`

```
root@VA_router:~# procrustatus.lua
name      current/      max  time left  data left
lan:      1404674/  10485760    1.03%    86.60%
wan:      433436/   1048576    1.03%    58.66%
```

Alternatively, total data usage can be checked via the command `cat /var/state/procrustes`

```
root@VA_router:~# cat /var/state/procrustes
procrustes.lan.total_bytes=215780
procrustes.wan.total_bytes=433436
```

41.5.3 Additional debugging commands

Additional useful debug commands via the command line are described in the table below.

Diagnostic Command	Description
<code>logread grep procrustes</code>	Shows logs related to "procrustes" only
<code>ls /root/procrustes/sim_blacklist/</code>	Shows list of blacklisted SIM iccids

42 Configuring Terminal Server

42.1 Overview

Terminal Server is a background application whose main task is to forward data between TCP connections or UDP streams and asynchronous or synchronous serial ports.

The Terminal Server application serves up to four sessions simultaneously, one for each serial port, depending on the device. Each Terminal Server session has an IP endpoint and an associated specific serial port.

You can configure the IP endpoint of each Terminal Server session to be a:

- TCP server: each session is listening on a unique port.
- TCP client: Terminal Server makes a TCP connection to external TCP server.
- UDP endpoint: Terminal Server forwards data between a UDP stream and a serial port.

42.2 Configuration packages used

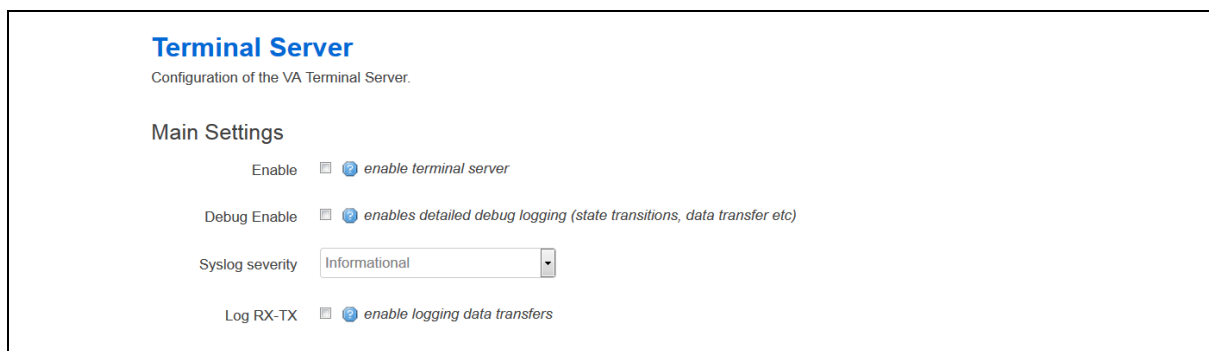
Package	Sections
tservd	main
	port

42.3 Configuring Terminal Server using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Services -> Terminal Server**. The Terminal Server Configuration page appears. You must configure two main sections:

- Main Settings to enable Terminal Server, syslog settings, and to enable log setting.
- Port Settings section is for general port settings, serial settings such as port mode, port speed, parity stop bit and so on; and finally, network settings to configure the network side of the Terminal Server.

42.3.1 Configure main settings



The screenshot shows the 'Terminal Server' configuration page with the subtitle 'Configuration of the VA Terminal Server.' Under the 'Main Settings' section, there are four configuration items:

- Enable:** A checkbox is checked, followed by a help icon and the text 'enable terminal server'.
- Debug Enable:** A checkbox is checked, followed by a help icon and the text 'enables detailed debug logging (state transitions, data transfer etc)'.
- Syslog severity:** A dropdown menu is set to 'Informational'.
- Log RX-TX:** A checkbox is checked, followed by a help icon and the text 'enable logging data transfers'.

Figure 222: The terminal server main settings page

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Enable UCI: tservd.main.enable Opt: enable	Enables Terminal Server on the router.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Debug Enable UCI: tservd.main.debug_ev_enable Opt: debug_ev_enable	Enables detailed debug logging.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Syslog severity UCI: tservd.main.log_severity Opt: log_severity	Determines the syslog level. Events up to this priority will be logged.	
	0	Emergency
	1	Alert
	2	Critical
	3	Error
	4	Warning
	5	Notice
	6	Informational
	7	Debug
Web: Log RX-TX UCI: tservd.main.debug_rx_tx_enable Opt: debug_rx_tx_enable	Enables logging data transfers.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.

Table 171: Information table for main settings

42.3.2 Configure port settings

The Port Settings section is divided into 3 sub-sections:

- General
- Serial
- Network

42.3.2.1 Port settings: general section

In this section you can configure general port settings. The settings are usually the same for the central and the remote site.

Port Settings

PORT1

General Serial Network

Enable ☒ enable port

Network Forwarding Buffer Size Forwarding buffer size (serial to network)

Network Forwarding Timeout (ms) Forwarding timeout in milliseconds (serial to network)

Network Forwarding timer mode Forwarding timer mode (serial to network)

Serial Forwarding Buffer Size Forwarding buffer size (network to serial)

Serial Forwarding Timeout (ms) Forwarding timeout in milliseconds (network to serial)

Serial Forwarding timer mode Forwarding timer mode (network to serial)

Proxy mode ☐ enable proxy mode

Disable remote client's local echo (Telnet option) ☐

Telnet COM port control (RFC2217) ☐

Enable HDLC Pseudowire over UDP (RFC4618) ☐

Serial receive debug log size bytes (0=disable)

Serial transmit debug log size bytes (0=disable)

Figure 223: The general tab fields

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Enable UCI: tservd.@port[0].enable Opt: enable	Enables Terminal Server port.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Network Forwarding Buffer Size UCI: tservd.@port[0].fwd_buffer_size Opt: fwd_buffer_size	Forwarding buffer size in bytes (serial to network).	
	256	256 bytes
	Range	0-2048
Web: Network Forwarding Timeout(ms) UCI: tservd.@port[0].fwd_timeout Opt: fwd_timeout	Forwarding timeout in milliseconds (serial to network).	
	30	30 ms
	Range	0-10000
Web: Network Forwarding Timer Mode UCI: tservd.@port[0].fwd_timer_mode Opt: fwd_timer_mode	Forwarding timer mode (serial to network).	
	Idle	Timer is re-started on each received data.
	Aging	Timer started on the first Rx.
Web: Serial Forwarding Buffer Size UCI: tservd.@port[0].sfwd_buffer_size Opt: sfwd_buffer_size	Forwarding buffer size in bytes (network to serial). Set to 0 to use maximum possible network Rx buffer size.	
	0	2048 bytes
	Range	0-2048
Web: Serial Forwarding Timeout (ms) UCI: tservd.@port[0].sfwd_timeout Opt: sfwd_timeout	Forwarding timeout in milliseconds (network to serial). Set to 0 to forward to serial immediately.	
	20	20 ms
	Range	0-10000

Web: Serial Forwarding Timer Mode UCI: tservd.@port[0].sfwd_timer_mode Opt: sfwd_timer_mode	Forwarding timer mode (network to serial). <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Idle</td><td>Timer is re-started on each received data</td></tr> <tr> <td>Aging</td><td>Timer started on the first Rx.</td></tr> </table>	Idle	Timer is re-started on each received data	Aging	Timer started on the first Rx.
Idle	Timer is re-started on each received data				
Aging	Timer started on the first Rx.				
Web: Proxy Mode UCI: tservd.@port[0].proxy_mode Opt: proxy_mode	Defines if special proxy mode is configured to allow 'hijacking' of the terminal server. It allows a connection to be made from a remote location and redirect terminal server data temporarily for troubleshooting. When enabled, a TCP proxy server is started which listens for an incoming TCP connection from a remote peer. Once an incoming new TCP connection on the proxy server TCP port is accepted: The existing terminal server TCP client connection is disconnected. The terminal server automatically reconnects the TCP client side but this time to the local loopback address 127.0.0.1 and to the local proxies TCP port number. When the proxy server has both local and remote TCP sessions connected it simply forwards the data between the two connections, taking into account the flow control. When either side TCP socket closes, the main terminal server client re-connects to the normal IP destination and the server proxy returns to listening for another connection from the far end. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Disable Remote Client's Local Echo (Telnet option) UCI: tservd.@port[0].disable_echo Opt: disable_echo	Set to 1 to send IAC WILL ECHO Telnet option to remote client forcing it to disable local echo. For server mode only. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Telnet COM Port Control UCI: tservd.@port[0].com_port_control Opt: com_port_control	Set to 1 to enable support for Telnet COM port control (RFC2217). <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Enable HDLC Pseudowire over UDP (RFC4618) UCI: tservd.@port[0].hdlc_pw_enabled Opt: hdlc_pw_enabled	Set to 1 to enable HDLC pseudowire over UDP support based on RFC4618. Requires Transport Mode (udpmode) to be enabled. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Serial Receive Debug Log Size UCI: tservd.@port[0].serialRxLogSize Opt: serialRxLogSize	Configures serial receive log size in bytes and enables receive data logging. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Serial Transmit Debug Log Size UCI: tservd.@port[0].serialTxLogSize Opt: serialTxLogSize	Configures serial transmit log size in bytes and enables transmit data logging. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Table 172: Information table for port settings section

42.3.2.2 Port settings: serial section

In this section you can configure serial interface settings, such as port mode, port speed, parity stop bit and so on.

Note:

- The displayed settings vary depending on options selected.
- DTR <--> DSR signalling is not available on GW2028 router models.

The figure below shows the options available if you have selected RS232 mode.

PORT1

General Serial Network

Device: /dev/ttySC0 serial device name

Portmode: RS-232 serial interface mode

GPIO Control: ☐ use GPIO pin to set the port mode

Speed (bps): 19200 asynchronous baud rate

Word size: 8 serial device word size in bits

Parity: Even serial device parity in bits

Stop bits: 1 serial device number of stop bits

Flow Control: NONE serial device flow control type

Auto RTS Invert: ☐ invert RTS in auto-RTS mode

Keep serial port always open: ☒ keep serial port always activated

RS232 Half Duplex: ☐ enable RS232 half duplex mode for interfacing to external V.23 modem

RTS timeout: 30 RS232 half duplex mode RTS timeout in milliseconds

POST RTS timeout: 20 RS232 half duplex mode Post RTS timeout in milliseconds

Serial device idle timeout: 0 Serial device idle timeout in seconds

Figure 224: The serial section fields (port mode RS232)

The figure below shows the options available if you have selected RS485 mode.

PORT2

General Serial Network

Device: /dev/ttySC1 serial device name

Portmode: RS-485 Full Duplex serial interface mode

GPIO Control: ☒ use GPIO pin to set the port mode

Speed (bps): 19200 asynchronous baud rate

Word size: 8 serial device word size in bits

Parity: None serial device parity in bits

Stop bits: 1 serial device number of stop bits

Flow Control: RTS/CTS serial device flow control type

RS485 termination: ☐ enable RS485 line termination

Auto RTS Invert: ☐ invert RTS in auto-RTS mode

Keep serial port always open: ☒ keep serial port always activated

RTS timeout: 30 RS232 half duplex mode RTS timeout in milliseconds

POST RTS timeout: 20 RS232 half duplex mode Post RTS timeout in milliseconds

Serial device idle timeout: 0 Serial device idle timeout in seconds

Figure 225: The serial section fields (port mode RS485)

The figure below shows the options available if you have selected X.21 mode.

PORT1

General Serial **Network**

Device: serial device name

Portmode: serial interface mode

GPIO Control: ☐ use GPIO pin to set the port mode

Keep serial port always open: ☒ keep serial port always activated

Serial device idle timeout: Serial device idle timeout in seconds

Synchronous mode: synchronous mode

DTR control mode: DTR output control mode

RTS control mode: RTS output control mode

Synchronous rate: synchronous baud rate

Invert receive clock: ☐ enable receive clock inversion

Invert transmit clock: ☐ enable transmit clock inversion

RX MSBF: ☐ receive most significant bit first

TX MSBF: ☐ transmit most significant bit first

RX data delay: Rx data delay in bit positions

TX data delay: Tx data delay in bit positions

Dual X.21 card bit reverse: ☐

Dual X.21 card DTE TT Invert: ☐

Dual X.21 card DCE TCLK Invert: ☐

Dual X.21 card DCE RCLK Invert: ☐

Dual X.21 card CLK Invert: ☐

Dual X.21 card RX data delay:

Figure 226: The serial section fields (port mode X.21)

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description										
Web: Device UCI: tserverd.@port[0].devName Opt: devName	Serial device name. <table border="1"> <tr><td>/dev/ttySC0</td><td>serial port 1</td></tr> <tr><td>/dev/ttySC1</td><td>serial port 2</td></tr> <tr><td>/dev/ttySC2</td><td>serial port 3</td></tr> <tr><td>/dev/ttySC3</td><td>serial port 4</td></tr> </table>	/dev/ttySC0	serial port 1	/dev/ttySC1	serial port 2	/dev/ttySC2	serial port 3	/dev/ttySC3	serial port 4		
/dev/ttySC0	serial port 1										
/dev/ttySC1	serial port 2										
/dev/ttySC2	serial port 3										
/dev/ttySC3	serial port 4										
Web: Port mode UCI: tserverd.@port[0].port_mode Opt: port_mode	Sets the serial interface mode. <table border="1"> <tr><td>rs232</td><td>RS232 mode.</td></tr> <tr><td>rs485hdx</td><td>RS485 2 wire half duplex mode in which transmitter drives RTS.</td></tr> <tr><td>rs485fdx</td><td>Rs485 4 wire full duplex mode.</td></tr> <tr><td>v23</td><td>Uses V.23 leased line card driver.</td></tr> <tr><td>x21</td><td>Uses USB serial card in sync mode.</td></tr> </table>	rs232	RS232 mode.	rs485hdx	RS485 2 wire half duplex mode in which transmitter drives RTS.	rs485fdx	Rs485 4 wire full duplex mode.	v23	Uses V.23 leased line card driver.	x21	Uses USB serial card in sync mode.
rs232	RS232 mode.										
rs485hdx	RS485 2 wire half duplex mode in which transmitter drives RTS.										
rs485fdx	Rs485 4 wire full duplex mode.										
v23	Uses V.23 leased line card driver.										
x21	Uses USB serial card in sync mode.										

Web: GPIO Control UCI: tservd.@port[1].serial_mode)gpio_control Opt: serial_mode_gpio_control	Enables or disables software control of the port mode between RS232 and RS485. Applies only to port 1 (ttySC1) and not to port 0. Note: the port mode is set with the option port mode described above. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Port mode is configured by hardware settings (not user configurable). Set to 0 for port 0.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled. Port mode is configurable by software settings. This is applicable to serial port 1 on devices that are capable of RS485.</td></tr> </table>	0	Port mode is configured by hardware settings (not user configurable). Set to 0 for port 0.	1	Enabled. Port mode is configurable by software settings. This is applicable to serial port 1 on devices that are capable of RS485.				
0	Port mode is configured by hardware settings (not user configurable). Set to 0 for port 0.								
1	Enabled. Port mode is configurable by software settings. This is applicable to serial port 1 on devices that are capable of RS485.								
Web: Speed (bps) UCI: tservd.@port[0].speed Opt: speed	Serial device speed in baud (bps). <table> <tr> <td>9600</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>115200; 57600; 38400; 19200; 9600 4800; 2400; 1800; 1200; 600; 300; 200; 150; 134; 110; 75; 50</td></tr> </table>	9600		Range	115200; 57600; 38400; 19200; 9600 4800; 2400; 1800; 1200; 600; 300; 200; 150; 134; 110; 75; 50				
9600									
Range	115200; 57600; 38400; 19200; 9600 4800; 2400; 1800; 1200; 600; 300; 200; 150; 134; 110; 75; 50								
Web: Word size UCI: tservd.@port[0].wsiz Opt: wsiz	Serial device word size. <table> <tr> <td>8</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>5-8</td></tr> </table>	8		Range	5-8				
8									
Range	5-8								
Web: Parity UCI: tservd.@port[0].parity Opt: parity	Serial device parity. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Even</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>Odd</td></tr> <tr> <td>3</td><td>Space</td></tr> </table>	0	None	1	Even	2	Odd	3	Space
0	None								
1	Even								
2	Odd								
3	Space								
Web: Stop Bits UCI: tservd.@port[0].stops Opt: stops	Serial device number of stop bits. <table> <tr> <td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>1-2</td></tr> </table>	1		Range	1-2				
1									
Range	1-2								
Web: Flow Control UCI: tservd.@port[0].fc_mode Opt: fc_mode	Serial flow control mode. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>None</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>RTS/CTS</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>XON/XOFF</td></tr> </table>	0	None	1	RTS/CTS	2	XON/XOFF		
0	None								
1	RTS/CTS								
2	XON/XOFF								
Web: RS485 Termination UCI: tservd.@port[0].rs485_line_termination Opt: rs485_line_termination	Enables or disable RS485 termination. Applies only if port mode is set to RS485. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Auto RTS Invert UCI: tservd.@port[0].rtsinvert Opt: rtsinvert	Invert RTS in auto-RTS mode, if port mode is set to RS485. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Keep Serial Port Always Open UCI: tservd.@port[0].tty_always_open Opt: tty_always_open	Keep serial port always open. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: RS232 Half Duplex UCI: tservd.@port[0].hd_mode Opt: hd_mode	Defines whether to enable special mode in the asynchronous serial driver for communication to an externally connected V.23 half-duplex modem. Note: this setting does not enable half-duplex mode in the serial hardware of the router. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Full duplex mode.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Half duplex mode.</td></tr> </table>	0	Full duplex mode.	1	Half duplex mode.				
0	Full duplex mode.								
1	Half duplex mode.								
Web: RTS Timeout UCI: tservd.@port[0].rts_timeout Opt: rts_timeout	In RS232 half-duplex mode, time in milliseconds between raising RTS and enabling the transmitter. For use with an externally connected V.23 modem. <table> <tr> <td>30</td><td>30ms</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	30	30ms	Range					
30	30ms								
Range									
Web: POST RTS Timeout UCI: tservd.@port[0].post_rts_timeout Opt: post_rts_timeout	In RS232 half duplex mode, time in milliseconds between dropping RTS (transmission finished) and enabling the receiver. For use with externally connected V.23 modem. <table> <tr> <td>20</td><td>20 ms</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	20	20 ms	Range					
20	20 ms								
Range									

Web: Synchronous mode UCI: tserverd.@port[0].sync mode Opt: sync mode	Defines synchronous frame mode. This setting is only displayed if an Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>hdlc</td><td>HDLC frame mode.</td></tr> <tr> <td>transp</td><td>Transparent mode.</td></tr> </table>	hdlc	HDLC frame mode.	transp	Transparent mode.						
hdlc	HDLC frame mode.										
transp	Transparent mode.										
Web: Use CRC32 UCI: tserverd.@port[0].sync_crc32 Opt: sync_crc32	Defines whether to use CRC32 or CRC16 in HDLC mode. This setting is only displayed if an Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Use CRC16.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Use CRC32.</td></tr> </table>	0	Use CRC16.	1	Use CRC32.						
0	Use CRC16.										
1	Use CRC32.										
Web: DTR control mode UCI: tserverd.@port[0].dtr_control_mode Opt: dtr_control_mode	Defines DTR line control modes. This setting is only displayed if an Atmel USB serial card is enabled and port mode is X21. <table> <tr> <td>auto</td><td>DTR set to on when port is open. Off when the port is closed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>on</td><td>DTR always on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>off</td><td>DTR always off.</td></tr> <tr> <td>app</td><td>DTR controlled by the application.</td></tr> <tr> <td>ontx</td><td>In HDLC mode DTR is on during frame transmission.</td></tr> </table>	auto	DTR set to on when port is open. Off when the port is closed.	on	DTR always on.	off	DTR always off.	app	DTR controlled by the application.	ontx	In HDLC mode DTR is on during frame transmission.
auto	DTR set to on when port is open. Off when the port is closed.										
on	DTR always on.										
off	DTR always off.										
app	DTR controlled by the application.										
ontx	In HDLC mode DTR is on during frame transmission.										
Web: RTS control mode UCI: tserverd.@port[0].rts_control_mode Opt: rts_control_mode	Defines RTS line control modes. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled and port mode is X21. <table> <tr> <td>auto</td><td>RTS set to on when port is open. Off when the port is closed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>on</td><td>RTS always on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>off</td><td>RTS always off.</td></tr> <tr> <td>app</td><td>RTS controlled by the application.</td></tr> <tr> <td>ontx</td><td>In HDLC mode RTS is on during frame transmission.</td></tr> </table>	auto	RTS set to on when port is open. Off when the port is closed.	on	RTS always on.	off	RTS always off.	app	RTS controlled by the application.	ontx	In HDLC mode RTS is on during frame transmission.
auto	RTS set to on when port is open. Off when the port is closed.										
on	RTS always on.										
off	RTS always off.										
app	RTS controlled by the application.										
ontx	In HDLC mode RTS is on during frame transmission.										
Web: Synchronous rate UCI: tserverd.@port[0].sync_speed Opt: sync_speed	Defines the synchronous speed in bps. Set to 0 for external clock. If not set to 0, an internal clock is used. This setting is only displayed if an Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>64000</td><td>64 kbps</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>2048000; 1024000; 768000; 512000; 384000; 256000; 128000; 19200; 9600</td></tr> </table>	64000	64 kbps	Range	2048000; 1024000; 768000; 512000; 384000; 256000; 128000; 19200; 9600						
64000	64 kbps										
Range	2048000; 1024000; 768000; 512000; 384000; 256000; 128000; 19200; 9600										
Web: Invert receive clock UCI: tserverd.@port[0].sync_invert_rxclk Opt: sync_invert_rxclk	Defines receive clock inversion. Normal clock data is sampled on falling edge. Inverted clock data is sampled on rising edge. This setting is only displayed if an Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Normal.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Invert.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal.	1	Invert.						
0	Normal.										
1	Invert.										
Web: Invert transmit clock UCI: tserverd.@port[0].sync_invert_txclk Opt: sync_invert_txclk	Defines transmit clock inversion. Normal clock data transmitted on falling edge. Inverted clock data transmitted on rising edge. Only displayed if Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Normal.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Invert.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal.	1	Invert.						
0	Normal.										
1	Invert.										
Web: RX MSBF UCI: tserverd.@port[0].sync_rx_msbf Opt: sync_rx_msbf	Defines whether most significant bit is received first. This setting is only displayed if an Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Receive least significant bit first.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Receive most significant bit first.</td></tr> </table>	0	Receive least significant bit first.	1	Receive most significant bit first.						
0	Receive least significant bit first.										
1	Receive most significant bit first.										
Web: TX MSBF UCI: tserverd.@port[0].sync_tx_msbf Opt: sync_tx_msbf	Defines whether most significant bit is transmitted first. This setting is only displayed if an Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Transmit least significant bit first.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Transmit most significant bit first.</td></tr> </table>	0	Transmit least significant bit first.	1	Transmit most significant bit first.						
0	Transmit least significant bit first.										
1	Transmit most significant bit first.										
Web: RX data delay UCI: tserverd.@port[0].sync_rxdata_dly Opt: sync_rxdata_dly	Defines the number of bit positions to delay sampling data from the detecting clock edge. This setting is only displayed if an Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range							
0											
Range											

Web: TX data delay UCI: tservd.@port[0].sync_txdata_dly Opt: sync_txdata_dly	Defines the number of bit positions to delay output of data from the detecting clock edge. This setting is only displayed if an Atmel USB serial card is enabled. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	0		Range					
0									
Range									
Web: Dual X.21 card bit reverse UCI: tservd.@port[0].bit_reverse Opt: bit_reverse	Enables bit reversal of all bits in 8 byte word during transmission. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Normal.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Reverse.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal.	1	Reverse.				
0	Normal.								
1	Reverse.								
Web: Dual X.21 card DTE TT Invert UCI: tservd.@port[0].dte_tt_inv Opt: dte_tt_inv	Enables X.21 TT clock signal inversion. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Normal.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Invert.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal.	1	Invert.				
0	Normal.								
1	Invert.								
Web: Dual X.21 card DCE TCLK Invert UCI: tservd.@port[0].dce_tclk_inv Opt: dce_tclk_inv	Enables X.21 DCE TCLK signal inversion. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Normal.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Invert.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal.	1	Invert.				
0	Normal.								
1	Invert.								
Web: Dual X.21 card DCE RCLK Invert UCI: tservd.@port[0].dce_rclk_inv Opt: dce_rclk_inv	Enables X.21 DCE RCLK signal inversion. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Normal.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Invert.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal.	1	Invert.				
0	Normal.								
1	Invert.								
Web: Dual X.21 card CLK Invert UCI: tservd.@port[0].x21_clk_invert Opt: x21_clk_invert	Enables X.21 DCE CLK signal inversion. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Normal.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Invert.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal.	1	Invert.				
0	Normal.								
1	Invert.								
Web: Dual X.21 card RX data delay UCI: tservd.@port[0].x21_data_delay Opt: x21_data_delay	Sets X.21 card RX data delay in number of bit positions. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 – 7</td></tr> </table>	0		Range	0 – 7				
0									
Range	0 – 7								
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].sync_tx_idle Opt: sync_tx_idle	Defines the value of idle character (decimal) to transmit in case of transmit underrun. In HDLC mode, this configures inter-frame fill. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Transmit 0 (in HDLC mode)</td></tr> <tr><td>126</td><td>Transmit flags (in HDLC mode)</td></tr> <tr><td>255</td><td>Transmit 1 (in HDLC mode)</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 – 255</td></tr> </table>	0	Transmit 0 (in HDLC mode)	126	Transmit flags (in HDLC mode)	255	Transmit 1 (in HDLC mode)	Range	0 – 255
0	Transmit 0 (in HDLC mode)								
126	Transmit flags (in HDLC mode)								
255	Transmit 1 (in HDLC mode)								
Range	0 – 255								
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_inband_carrier_signalling Opt: v23_inband_carrier_signalling	Enables signalling of carrier by sending special characters. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_inband_carrier_on_char Opt: v23_inband_carrier_on_char	Defines the character decimal to signal remote carrier on. <table> <tr><td>255</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>0 - 255</td></tr> </table>	255		Range	0 - 255				
255									
Range	0 - 255								
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_tx_gain Opt: v23_tx_gain	Defines the transmit gain for v23 mode. <table> <tr><td>2</td><td>Transmit samples multiplied by 2</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	2	Transmit samples multiplied by 2	Range					
2	Transmit samples multiplied by 2								
Range									
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_rx_loss Opt: v23_rx_loss	Defines the receive loss for v23 mode. <table> <tr><td>1</td><td>Receive samples divided by 1.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	1	Receive samples divided by 1.	Range					
1	Receive samples divided by 1.								
Range									
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_rts_to_cts_delay Opt: v23_rts_to_cts_delay	Defines the v23 modem RTS to CTS delay in milliseconds. <table> <tr><td>20</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td></td></tr> </table>	20		Range					
20									
Range									
Web: n/a UCI: tservd.@port[0].v23_is_four_wire Opt: v23_is_four_wire	Defines the V23 modem LIM operation. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>2-wire</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>4-wire</td></tr> </table>	0	2-wire	1	4-wire				
0	2-wire								
1	4-wire								

Web: n/a UCI: tserverd.@port[0].v23_tx_timeout Opt: v23_tx_timeout	Defines the V23 modem receive echo suppression timeout in milliseconds. 20 Range
Web: n/a UCI: tserverd.@port[0].v23_tx_rampdown Opt: v23_tx_rampdown	Defines the time in milliseconds it takes the V23 transmitter to rampdown carrier from peak to zero. 30 Range
Web: n/a UCI: tserverd.@port[0].v23_tx_maxfill Opt: v23_tx_maxfill	Defines the maximum transmit queue fill level in bytes. 127 Range 0 - 255

Table 173: Information table for port settings serial section

42.3.2.3 Port settings: network section

In this section you can configure the network side of the Terminal Server.

Note: the displayed settings vary depending on options selected.

PORT1

General Serial **Network**

Transport mode: TCP Network transport protocol

Local IP: 0.0.0.0 Local IP interface to use

TCP mode: Server TCP mode

TCP listen port: 999 TCP listening port

Remote IP 1: 0.0.0.0 remote peer IP address (primary)

Remote IP 2: 0.0.0.0 remote peer IP address (failover)

Enable TCP keepalives: ☒ enable TCP keepalives

TCP Keepalive interval: 5 TCP Keepalive send interval (seconds)

TCP Keepalive timeout: 2 TCP Keepalive timeout (seconds)

TCP Keepalive count: 1 TCP Keepalive maximum probe count

TCP User timeout: 20000 TCP close maximum wait ack time (milliseconds)

TCP nodelay: ☐ disable TCP Nagle algorithm

TCP always on: ☒ keep TCP always connected

Close TCP on DSR: ☐ close TCP session on detection of DSR signal low

Reconnect time (ms): 5000 time in milliseconds to start re-connecting after setting DTR low

Figure 227: The port settings network fields (TCP server mode)

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web: Transport Mode UCI: tserverd.@port[0].udpMode Opt: udpMode	Selects the transport mode. 0 TCP 1 UDP
Web: Local IP UCI: tserverd.@port[0].local_ip Opt: local_ip	Local IP address to listen on. 0.0.0.0 Listen on any interface. Range IPv4 address.

Web: TCP Mode UCI: tserverd.@port[0].server_mode Opt: server_mode	Select between server and client modes of TCP. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Client Mode.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Server Mode.</td></tr> </table>	0	Client Mode.	1	Server Mode.
0	Client Mode.				
1	Server Mode.				
Web: TCP Listen Port UCI: tserverd.@port[0].listen_port Opt: listen_port	TCP listen port for server mode. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP and server mode is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>999</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>1 - 65535</td></tr> </table>	999		Range	1 - 65535
999					
Range	1 - 65535				
Web: Remote TCP Port 1 UCI: tserverd.@port[0].ip_port1 Opt: ip_port1	Destination peer port IP 1 number. Only displayed if client mode is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>951</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>1 - 65535</td></tr> </table>	951		Range	1 - 65535
951					
Range	1 - 65535				
Web: Remote TCP Port 2 UCI: tserverd.@port[0].ip_port2 Opt: ip_port2	Destination peer port IP 2 number for failover. Only displayed if client mode is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>951</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>1 - 65535</td></tr> </table>	951		Range	1 - 65535
951					
Range	1 - 65535				
Web: Remote IP 1 UCI: tserverd.@port[0].remote_ip1 Opt: remote_ip1	Destination peer IP 1 address. <table> <tr> <td>0.0.0.0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>IPv4 address.</td></tr> </table>	0.0.0.0		Range	IPv4 address.
0.0.0.0					
Range	IPv4 address.				
Web: Remote IP 2 UCI: tserverd.@port[0].remote_ip2 Opt: remote_ip2	Destination peer IP 2 address for failover. <table> <tr> <td>0.0.0.0</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>IPv4 address.</td></tr> </table>	0.0.0.0		Range	IPv4 address.
0.0.0.0					
Range	IPv4 address.				
Web: Enable TCP Keepalives UCI: tserverd.@port[0].tcp_keepalives_enabled Opt: tcp_keepalives_enabled	Enable or disables TCP keepalives. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: TCP Keepalive Interval UCI: tserverd.@port[0].tcp_keepalive_interval Opt: tcp_keepalive_interval	Interval in seconds between TCP keepalive probes. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table> <tr> <td>5</td><td>5 seconds.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0-65535</td></tr> </table>	5	5 seconds.	Range	0-65535
5	5 seconds.				
Range	0-65535				
Web: TCP Keepalive Timeout UCI: tserverd.@port[0].tcp_keepalive_timeout Opt: tcp_keepalive_timeout	Time in seconds to wait for response to a TCP keepalive probe. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table> <tr> <td>2</td><td>2 seconds.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0-65535</td></tr> </table>	2	2 seconds.	Range	0-65535
2	2 seconds.				
Range	0-65535				
Web: TCP Keepalive Count UCI: tserverd.@port[0].tcp_keepalive_count Opt: tcp_keepalive_count	Number of TCP keepalive probes to send before connection is closed. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table> <tr> <td>1</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0-65535</td></tr> </table>	1		Range	0-65535
1					
Range	0-65535				
Web: TCP User Timeout UCI: tserverd.@port[0].tcp_user_timeout Opt: tcp_user_timeout	Maximum time in milliseconds for TCP to wait for transmitted data to be 'acked' before closing connection in established state. Set to 0 to use kernel defaults. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table> <tr> <td>20000</td><td>20 seconds.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0-65535</td></tr> </table>	20000	20 seconds.	Range	0-65535
20000	20 seconds.				
Range	0-65535				
Web: TCP Nodelay UCI: tserverd.@port[0].tcp_nodelay Opt: tcp_nodelay	Sets TCP to delay behaviour. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Normal operation.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Disable TCP Nagle algorithm. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP.</td></tr> </table>	0	Normal operation.	1	Disable TCP Nagle algorithm. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP.
0	Normal operation.				
1	Disable TCP Nagle algorithm. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP.				

Web: TCP Always on UCI: tserverd.@port[0].tcp_always_on Opt: tcp_always_on	Keep TCP session always connected. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP and client mode is enabled.	
	0	Disabled. TCP connection / UDP session is initiated on detecting high state on the DSR interface signal.
	1	Enabled. If it disconnects in the established state the TCP connection / UDP session is re-initiated.
Web: Close TCP on DSR UCI: tserverd.@port[0].close_tcp_on_dsr Opt: close_tcp_on_dsr	Close TCP session on detection of DSR signal low. Only displayed if Transport Mode is TCP and client mode is enabled.	
	0	Disabled. Detecting DSR down does not affect the TCP connection.
	1	Enabled. Detecting DSR down closes the established TCP connection.
Web: Reconnect Time (ms) UCI: tserverd.@port[0].disc_time_ms Opt: disc_time_ms	Time in milliseconds to start reconnecting after setting DTR low.	
	5000	5 seconds.
	Range	0 – 10000
Web: UDP Keepalive Interval UCI: tserverd.@port[0].udpKaIntervalMs Opt: udpKaIntervalMs	Defines time in milliseconds to send UDP keepalives (empty UDP packets) when no data to send. Only displayed if transport mode is UDP.	
	0	Disabled.
	Range	0-65535
Web: UDP Keepalive Count UCI: tserverd.@port[0].udpKaCount Opt: udpKaCount	Defines the maximum number of remote UDP keepalives not received before UDP stream is considered broken. Only displayed if transport mode is UDP.	
	3	
	Range	0-65535
Web: local UDP Port UCI: tserverd.@port[0].udpLocalPort Opt: udpLocalPort	Local UDP port used by terminal server. Only displayed if transport mode is UDP.	
	0	
	Range	0-65535
Web: remote UDP Port UCI: tserverd.@port[0].udpRemotePort Opt: udpRemotePort	Remote UDP port used by terminal server. Only displayed if transport mode is UDP.	
	0	
	Range	0-65535

Table 174: Information table for port settings network section

42.4 Terminal Server using UCI

```

root@VA_router:~# uci show tserverd
tserverd.main=tserverd
tserverd.main.log_severity=0
tserverd.main.debug_rx_tx_enable=1
tserverd.main.debug_ev_enable=1
tserverd.@port[0]=port
tserverd.@port[0].devName=/dev/ttySC0
tserverd.@port[0].remote_ip1=0.0.0.0
tserverd.@port[0].remote_ip2=0.0.0.0

```

42.5 Terminal Server using package options

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export tserverd
package tserverd

config tserverd 'main'
    option log_severity '0'
    option debug_rx_tx_enable '1'
    option debug_ev_enable '1'

config port
    option devName '/dev/ttySC0'
    option remote_ip1 '0.0.0.0'
    option remote_ip2 '0.0.0.0'
```

42.6 Terminal server DSR signal management network configuration

On the IP network side, the terminal server can operate in one of three modes:

- TCP Client
- TCP Server
- UDP

Based on the chosen network configuration, the DSR behaviour may vary.

42.6.1 DSR signal behaviour in TCP client mode

42.6.1.1 TCP connection management

Initial TCP connection initiation or next TCP connection initiation after disconnection is affected by configuration options `tcp_always_on` and `close_tcp_on_dsr`.

When option `tcp_always_on` is enabled terminal server keeps the TCP session always connected. If it disconnects in the established state, the TCP session is reinitiated.

If `tcp_always_on` is disabled TCP connection is initiated on detection of a high state on the DSP interface signal.

When option `close_tcp_on_dsr` is enabled terminal server detecting DSR down signal and closes the established TCP connection.

If option `close_tcp_on_dsr` is disabled then detecting DSR down does not affect the TCP connection.

42.6.1.2 TCP connection initiation at startup

If you have set option `tcp_always_on1`, or DSR state is UP, the TCP connection setup is initiated immediately.

If you have set option `tcp_always_on0`, and DSR is DOWN, the terminal server waits for a DSR UP signal. When DSR UP is detected, the TCP connection is initiated.

42.6.1.3 TCP connection clearing

The TCP connection is cleared either by the network or by the terminal server application itself.

The TCP connection is cleared by the terminal server when it detects DSR interface signal DOWN and option `close_tcp_on_dsr` is 1.

42.6.1.4 TCP connection re-initiation

After TCP connection clearing, the terminal server takes action to re-setup the TCP connection after a hand off timeout.

If you have set option `tcp_always_on1`, or DSR state is UP, the TCP connection setup is initiated.

If you have set option `tcp_always_on0`, and DSR is DOWN, the terminal server waits for a DSR UP signal and then initiates a new TCP connection.

42.6.2 DSR signal behaviour in TCP server mode

42.6.2.1 TCP connection initiation at startup

After a short startup delay, the terminal server starts listening for an incoming TCP connection from the remote peer.

42.6.2.2 TCP connection clearing

When in a TCP connection state, the TCP connection is cleared only by the network. Serial interface signals such as DSR do not cause TCP disconnection.

42.6.2.3 TCP connection re-initiation

When a TCP session goes down in the connected state, the terminal server immediately restarts listening for a new TCP connection from a remote peer.

42.6.3 DSR signal behaviour in UDP mode

42.6.3.1 UDP session setup at startup

If you have set option `tcp_always_on1`, or DSR state is UP, the UDP session is setup immediately on startup.

If you have set option `tcp_always_on0`, and DSR is DOWN, the terminal server waits for a DSR UP signal. When DSR UP is detected, the UDP session is setup.

42.6.3.2 UDP session clearing

A UDP session is normally never cleared, but if it is closed by the network sub-system, it gets re-setup after a hand off timeout.

A DSR signal DOWN event does not clear UDP session in the connected state.

42.6.3.3 UDP session reset

After UDP session clearing the terminal server takes action to reset up a UDP session after a hand off timeout.

If you have set option `tcp_always_on1`, or DSR state is UP, the UDP session is setup.

If you have set option `tcp_always_on0`, and DSR is DOWN, the terminal server waits for a DSR UP signal and then it resets up the UDP session.

42.7 Serial mode GPIO control

On some models of Virtual Access routers it is possible to change the physical transmission mode between RS232 and RS485. This is only applicable to the second serial port on the routers: `/dev/ttySC1`.

To enable `serial_mode_gpio_control` set the option to **1**.

Use the `portmode` option in addition to `serial_mode_gpio_control` to select between RS232, RS485 full duplex, RS485 half duplex, X.21 and V.23.

42.7.1 Checking the current `serial_mode_gpio_control`

To check if Terminal Server is running, enter the following command:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci show tserverd | grep serial_mode_gpio_control
```

The output of the above command will look similar to the example below if `serial_mode_gpio_control` is enabled for the second serial port.

```
tserverd.port0.serial_mode_gpio_control=0
tserverd.port1.serial_mode_gpio_control=1
```

42.8 Terminal Server diagnostics

The `tserverd` process has to be running otherwise diagnostics options for Terminal Server will not be available.

42.8.1 Checking Terminal Server process

To check if Terminal Server is running, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# -fl tserverd
1264 root      1032 S  tserverd
```

If Terminal Server is running it will be shown with its process ID.

42.8.2 Terminal Server statistics

To view Terminal Server statistics, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# tserver show stats
TERMINAL 1, Dev: /dev/ttySC0
```

```

State:          LISTENING
Serial Bytes    Rx (0)  Tx (0)  TxErrs (0)
TCP Packets     Rx (0)  Tx (0)  TxErrs (0)    TxBlocked (0)
TCP Bytes       Rx (0)  Tx (0)
UDP Datagrams   Rx (0)  Tx (0)  TxErrs (0)
UDP Bytes       Rx (0)  Tx (0)
DSR             Up (0)  Down (0)

```

42.8.3 Terminal Server debug statistics

To see debug statistics about Terminal Server, enter:

```

root@VA_router:~# tserv show debug all

TERMINAL 1, Dev: /dev/ttySC0
State:          LISTENING
netRxBuf length=0 offset=0 hdrsz=0
ttyRxBuf length=0 offset=16 hdrsz=16
line_status_mask = 0x0 line_status = 0x0
RFC2217 negotiated=0
Tcp tx last error: 0

```

42.8.4 Terminal Server serial signals debugging

To see Terminal Server serial signals statistics, enter:

```

root@VA_router:~# tserv show serial

TERMINAL-1, Dev: /dev/ttySC1
DSR=0 DTR=1 RTS=1 CTS=0 CAR=0 CD=0 RNG=0 LE=0 RI=0 ST=0 SR=0

TERMINAL-2, Dev: /dev/ttySC0
DSR=0 DTR=1 RTS=1 CTS=0 CAR=0 CD=0 RNG=0 LE=0 RI=0 ST=0 SR=0

```

42.8.5 Terminal Server advanced debugging

To view Terminal Server advanced debug commands for the terminal server, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# tserv
=== Termserv disgnostics. Command syntax: ===
tserv show stats - show statistics
tserv clear stats - clear statistics
tserv show serial - show serial interface status
tserv send serial0 <data>- send data to serial port 0
tserv start capture N, N=port number (0 to 3) - start capturing rx serial
data
tserv print capture N, N=port number (0 to 3) - print captured rx serial
data
tserv show serial txlog-hex <Port> [length], Port=port cfg index (0 to 3),
length=length to show
tserv show serial rxlog-hex <Port> [length], Port=port cfg index (0 to 3),
length=length to show
tserv show serial txlog-asc <Port> [length], Port=port cfg index (0 to 3),
length=length to show
tserv show serial rxlog-asc <Port> [length], Port=port cfg index (0 to 3),
length=length to show
tserv show debug - show debug info
tserv start userial rxlog - start USB serial card rx log
tserv show userial rxlog <offs> <length> - show USB serial card rx log
tserv quit - terminate termserv process
```


43 Configuring SAToP and CESoPSN

SAToP and CESoPSN are supported on all hardware models that have synchronous serial cards such as X.21, E1 and analogue Leased Line (LL).

43.1 What are SAToP and CESoPSN?

SAToP is an abbreviation for “Structure-Agnostic Time Division Multiplexing (TDM) over Packet (SAToP)”. It is defined in IETF RFC4553 and is currently supported on Virtual Access router models fitted with an E1 interface. It is used to carry an entire E1 signal over a packet switched network.

CESoPSN is an abbreviation for “Circuit Emulation Services over Packet Switched Network”. It is defined in IETF RFC5086 and is currently supported on Virtual Access router models fitted with LL, X.21 or E1/T1 interfaces. It is used to carry an analogue leased line, an X.21 interface, an E1 timeslot or a group of E1 timeslots over a packet switched network.

Both SAToP and CESoPSN are pseudowire protocols.

43.2 Clocking

For the SAToP/CESoPSN function to work satisfactory it is essential that you synchronize the clocks used for the TDM signals of the routers. That is, run at exactly the same frequency, otherwise over-runs and under-runs in the packet buffers will occur.

Router models supporting SAToP/CESoPSN can use the following clock sources:

- Internal clock
- Clock recovered from E1 interface in TE mode
- Clock input on X.21 interface in DTE mode
- Clock recovered from pseudo-wire

When there is a SAToP or CESoPSN connection between two routers then one of them should use clock recovered from pseudo-wire.

It is also necessary to configure the customer equipment correctly so that the same clock is used by the two routers and two customer equipments.

Note:

- E1 interfaces in TE mode are clock slaves
- E1 interfaces in NT mode are clock masters
- X.21 interfaces in DTE mode are clock slaves
- X.21 interfaces in DCE mode are clock masters
- LL interfaces do not carry a clock
- Ensure you enable clock recovery on the clock slave only

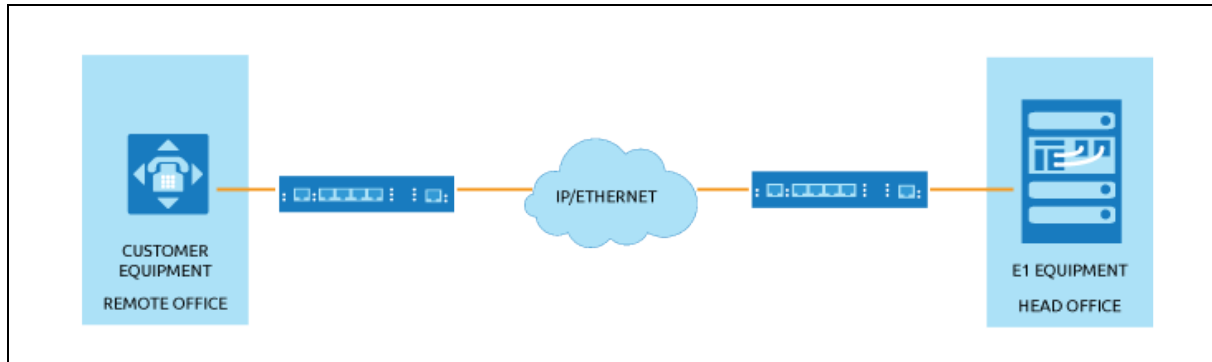


Figure 228: SAToP/CESoPSN P2P architecture

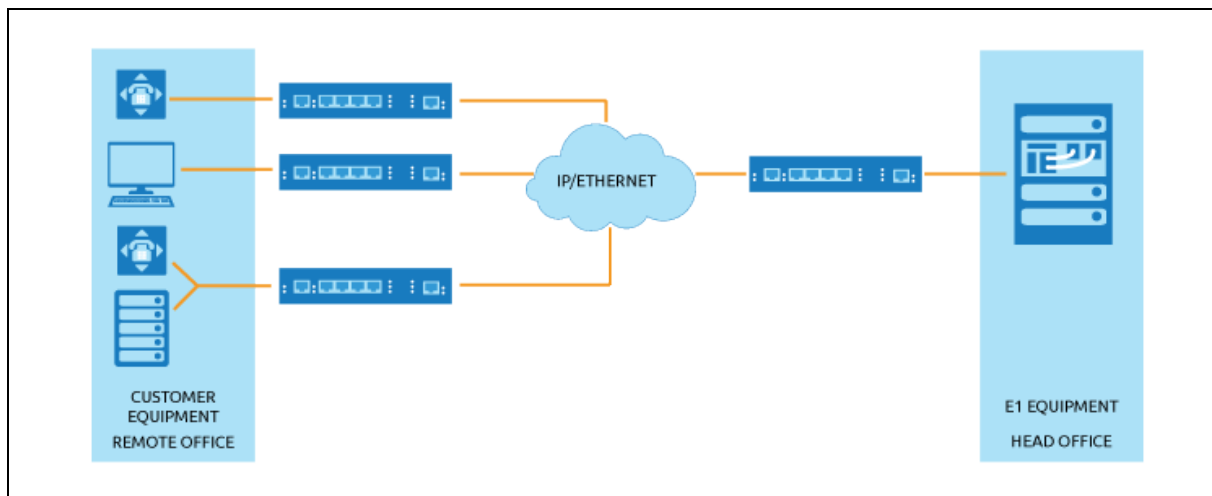


Figure 229: SAToP/CESoPSN P2MP architecture

43.3 Virtual Access proprietary SAToP/CESoPSN protocol extension

To compensate for packet loss in the network, Virtual Access implemented a proprietary extension to SAToP/CESoPSN. When enabled, a copy of the previous packet payload is added to the end of the packet. With the help of this mechanism it is possible to overcome the loss of single packets. However, the loss of consecutive packets cannot be compensated by this mechanism.

Note: enabling this redundancy mechanism nearly doubles the required bandwidth for the CESoPSN service.

43.4 Configuration package used

Package	Sections
Cesopd	Main Port

43.5 Configuring SAToP/CESoPSN

To configure SAToP/ CESoPSN using the web interface, in the top menu, select **Services** -> **CESoPSN**. The SAToP/CESoPSN page appears.

43.5.1 Configuring main settings using the web interface

The web interface is divided into 3 sections: Basic, Blackbox and Advanced.

Note: the Blackbox tab only appears if Blackbox is configured on your router.

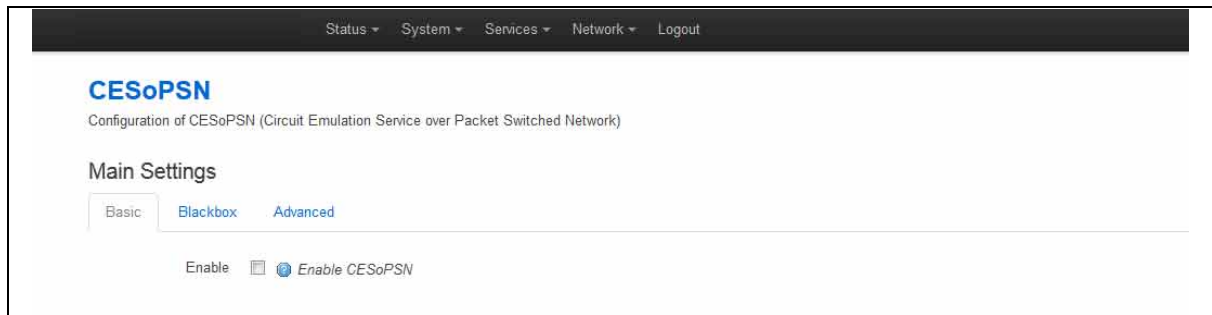


Figure 230: SAToP/CESoPSN basic settings

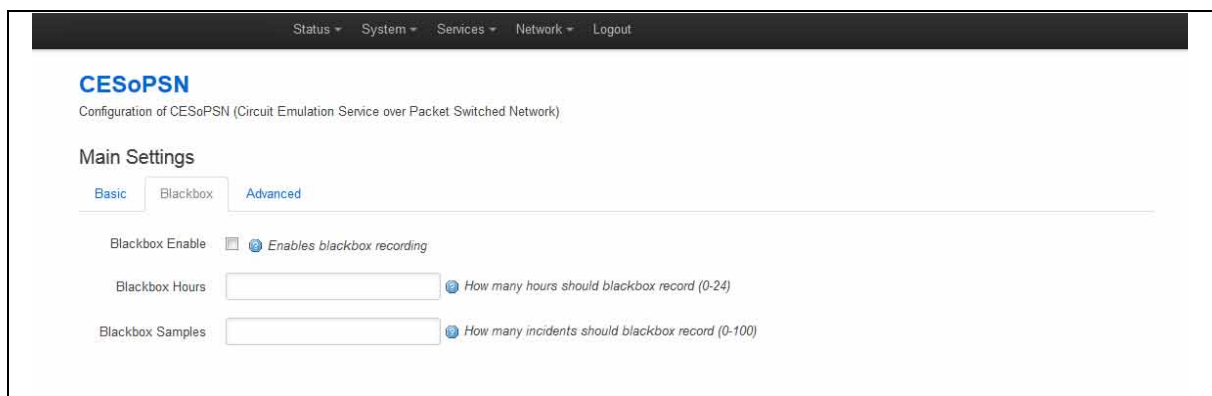


Figure 231: SAToP/CESoPSN blackbox settings

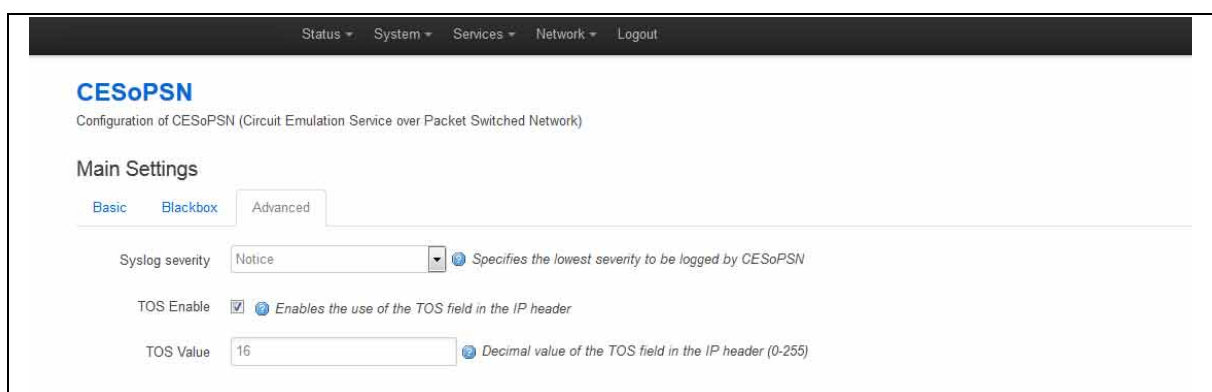


Figure 232: SAToP/CESoPSN advanced settings

Use the information table below to configure your main settings.

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Basic settings		
Web: Enable	Enables SAToP/CESoPSN services.	
UCI: cesopd.main.enable	0	Disabled.
Opt: enable	1	Enabled.
Advanced settings		
Web: Syslog Severity	Selects the severity used for logging events for SAToP/CESoPSN in syslog. The following levels are available:	
UCI: cesopd.main.severity	0	Emergency
Opt: log_severity	1	Alert
	2	Critical
	3	Error
	4	Warning
	5	Notice
	6	Informational
	7	Debug
Web: TOS Enable	Enables the use of the TOS field in the IP header.	
UCI: cesopd.main.tos_enabled	0	Disabled.
Opt: tos_enabled	1	Enabled.
Web: TOS Value	Note: before changing this value, consult with Virtual Access support.	
UCI: cesopd.main.tos_value	16	Decimal value of the TOS field in the IP header.
Opt: tos_value	Range	0-255
Blackbox settings		
Web: Blackbox Enable	Enables blackbox recordings. See section ‘cesop blackbox show’ for more information.	
UCI: cesopd.main.blackbox_enabled	0	Disabled.
Opt: blackbox_enabled	1	Enabled.
Web: Blackbox Hours		
UCI: cesopd.main.blackbox_hours	10	Defines the time period contained in the blackbox. Entries older than the specified period will be overwritten.
Opt: blackbox_hours	Range	1-24
Web: Blackbox Samples		
UCI: cesopd.main.blackbox_samples	20	Maximum number of instances recorded in the blackbox. When the capacity is full the oldest entry will be overwritten.
Opt: blackbox_samples	Range	1-24

Table 175: Information table for CESoPSN main settings

43.6 Configuring main settings using UCI

The CESoPSN configuration file is stored on **/etc/config/cesopd**

The main settings are stored in the cesopd section of /etc/config/cesopd. There is only one cesopd section.

```
config cesopd 'main'
    option log_severity '5'
    option enable '1'
```

```
option tos_enabled '1'
option tos_value '1'
option blackbox_enabled '0'
option blackbox_hours '10'
option blackbox_samples '20'
```

43.7 Configuring port settings using the web interface

The web interface for port settings is divided into 5 sections: Basic, Advanced, E1, Dual X.21 and Analog Leased Line (LL).

Note: for E1 CESoPSN, a port represents a timeslot or group of timeslots.

The screenshot shows the 'PORT1' configuration page with the 'Basic' tab selected. The settings include:

- Enable:** A checked checkbox with a tooltip 'Enable port'.
- Local IP:** A text input field containing '0.0.0.0' with a tooltip 'Local IP interface to use'.
- Local Port:** A text input field containing '5152' with a tooltip 'Local UDP port'.
- Remote IP:** A text input field containing '192.168.100.249' with a tooltip 'Remote IP interface to use'.
- Remote Port:** A text input field containing '5152' with a tooltip 'Remote UDP port'.
- Packetization latency:** A text input field containing '8' with a tooltip 'Packetization latency in milliseconds'.
- Clock Recovery:** A checked checkbox with a tooltip 'Enables clock recovery'.
- Device:** A text input field containing 'ttyLC0' with a tooltip 'Serial device name'.
- Rate:** A text input field containing '64000' with a tooltip 'Serial interface clock rate (bps)'.
- External Clock Mode:** An unchecked checkbox with a tooltip 'Enables external clock mode'.

At the bottom, there is an empty text input field and an 'Add' button.

Figure 233: CESoPSN basic port settings

The screenshot shows the 'PORT1' configuration page with the 'Advanced' tab selected. The settings include:

- RTP payload type:** A text input field containing '96' with a tooltip 'RTP payload type'.
- Enable Jitter Buffer:** An unchecked checkbox with a tooltip 'enable software jitter buffer'.
- Jitter Buffer Size:** A text input field with a tooltip 'Jitter buffer size in milliseconds'.
- Remote loopback:** An unchecked checkbox with a tooltip 'Enable packet loopback'.
- Local loopback:** An unchecked checkbox with a tooltip 'Enables serial interface loopback mode'.
- App bit reversal:** An unchecked checkbox with a tooltip 'Reverse data bits in CESOP application'.
- App rx data shift:** A text input field with a tooltip 'Configures shifting rx data in CESOP application by -7..0..7 bits'.

At the bottom, there is an empty text input field and an 'Add' button. A 'Delete' button is located in the top right corner of the configuration area.

Figure 234: CESoPSN advanced port settings

Status ▾ System ▾ Services ▾ Network ▾ Logout

Delete

PORT1

Basic Advanced **E1** Dual X.21 Analog Leased Line

End Specifies the TE/NT mode of the local end of the E1 interface

Line Code Specifies the line code

Framing Specifies the framing

Impedance Specifies the impedance

Timeslot Specifies the timeslot

Protocol Specifies the protocol

Save & Apply Save Reset

Figure 235: CESoPSN E1 port settings

Port Settings

Delete

PORT1

Basic Advanced **E1** Dual X.21 Analog Leased Line

DCE ☒ Enables DCE mode

Bypass ☐ Enables serial interface bypass mode

FIFO IRQ Level Serial interface driver Fifo irq level

Driver Tx Queue Size Configures driver maximum software Tx Queue size in bytes

Bit reverse ☐ Serial interface bit reversal

V.24 DTE TT Clock Invert ☐ Serial interface DTE TT clock inversion

V.24 DCE Tx Clock Invert ☐ Serial interface DCE Tx clock inversion

V.24 DCE Rx Clock Invert ☐ Serial interface DCE Rx clock inversion

X.21 Clock Invert ☐ Serial interface X.21 clock inversion

X.21 Use VCO ☒ X.21 mode use of VCO: 0=local clock, 1=VCO

X.21 data delay 0-7 delay in lock clock or VCO clock cycles

Driver poll interval Driver poll interval in milliseconds

Add

Figure 236: CESoPSN dual X.21 port settings

Port Settings

Delete

PORT1

Basic Advanced E1 Dual X.21 Analog Leased Line

4-wire mode ☒ Enables/disables 4-wire mode

PCM Encoding A-Law Selects the PCM encoding

Receive Attenuator Enabled Enables the analogue input attenuator (3.8dB)

Receive Analogue Gain Enabled Enables an analogue 6.02dB gain in receive direction

Transmit Analogue Loss Enabled Enables an analogue 6.02dB loss (attenuation) in transmit direction

Receive Digital Gain 0 dB Configurable 0 - 12 dB digital gain in receive direction

Transmit Digital Loss 0 dB Configurable 0 - 12 dB digital loss (attenuation) in transmit direction

Add

Figure 237: CESoPSN analog Leased Line port settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description	
Web: Enable UCI: cesopd.[port].enable Opt: enable	Enables the port.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Local IP UCI: cesopd.[port].udp_local_ipaddr Opt: udp_local_ipaddr	Specifies the interface IP address to listen on for incoming packets.	
	127.0.0.1	Specific interface IP address.
	0.0.0.0	Listens on all available interfaces.
Web: Local Port UCI: cesopd.[port].udp_local_port Opt: udp_local_port	UDP port to listen for incoming packets on.	
	5566	49152-65535 recommended.
	Range	0-65535
Web: Remote IP UCI: cesopd.[port].udp_remote_ipaddr Opt: udp_remote_ipaddr	Specifies the remote IP address to send packets to.	
	127.0.0.1	Specific remote interface IP address.
	Range	Packets are accepted from all sources and received source IP address will be used as the destination.
Web: Remote Port UCI: cesopd.[port].udp_remote_port Opt: udp_remote_port	UDP port to send packets to. The port can be 0; in which case the source port of the incoming packets will be used as the destination.	
	6655	49152-65535 recommended.
	Range	0-65535
Web: Packetization Latency UCI: cesopd.[port].packetization_latency Opt: packetization_latency		
	8	Specifies the packetization latency.
	Range	5-20 milliseconds.
Web: Clock Recovery UCI: cesopd.[port].clock_recovery_enabled Opt: clock_recovery_enabled	Enables the port to use the received packet data to adjust the TDM data clock of the router.	
	Note: enable clock recovery on one port only.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.
Web: Enable RTP Header UCI: cesopd.[port].rtp_header_enabled Opt: rtp_header_enabled	Enables the use of RTP header as specified in RFC5086.	
	Note: before disabling the use of RTP header, ensure that the peer supports this.	
	0	Disabled.
	1	Enabled.

Web: Enable Packet Redundancy UCI: cesopd.[port].va_prop_payload_redundancy_enabled Opt: va_prop_payload_redundancy_enabled	Enables a Virtual Access proprietary CESoPSN protocol extension, which can help to overcome packet loss. See the section 'Virtual Access proprietary CESoPSN protocol extension' for more information. Note: this mechanism can only overcome single, but not consecutive, packet losses. Note: only enable when this mechanism is supported by the peer. This might require a software upgrade on the peer. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								
Web: Device UCI: cesopd.[port].devname Opt: devname	Selects the linux device associated with the TDM interface to be used with this port. Note: for E1 CESoPSN, set all ports to ttyU0 <table> <tr> <td>'ttyLC0'</td><td>analogue LL interface</td></tr> <tr> <td>'ttyXHFC0'</td><td>First dual X.21 port</td></tr> <tr> <td>'ttyXHFC1'</td><td>Second dual X.21 port</td></tr> <tr> <td>'ttyU0'</td><td>E1 interface.</td></tr> </table>	'ttyLC0'	analogue LL interface	'ttyXHFC0'	First dual X.21 port	'ttyXHFC1'	Second dual X.21 port	'ttyU0'	E1 interface.
'ttyLC0'	analogue LL interface								
'ttyXHFC0'	First dual X.21 port								
'ttyXHFC1'	Second dual X.21 port								
'ttyU0'	E1 interface.								
Web: Rate UCI: cesopd.[port].rate Opt: rate	Selects the interface rate. N/A for E1. <table> <tr> <td>64000</td><td>The rate has to be a multiple of 64000. For the analogue LL interface only 64000 is supported.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>64000-2048000</td></tr> </table>	64000	The rate has to be a multiple of 64000. For the analogue LL interface only 64000 is supported.	Range	64000-2048000				
64000	The rate has to be a multiple of 64000. For the analogue LL interface only 64000 is supported.								
Range	64000-2048000								
Web: External clock mode UCI: cesopd.[port].ext_clock Opt: ext_clock	Enables the use of an external clock. N/A for E1 and analogue LL. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.								
1	Enabled.								

Table 176: Information table for basic port settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: RTP Payload Type UCI: cesopd.[port].rtp_payload_type Opt: rtp_payload_type	RTP payload types are specified by IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority); see http://www.iana.org/assignments/rtp-parameters/rtp-parameters.txt for the complete range of available types. Note: this setting only applies if the use of the RTP header is enabled. <table> <tr> <td>96 (Dynamic)</td><td>Specifies the RTP payload header type.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0-127</td></tr> </table>	96 (Dynamic)	Specifies the RTP payload header type.	Range	0-127
96 (Dynamic)	Specifies the RTP payload header type.				
Range	0-127				
Web: Enable Jitter Buffer UCI: cesopd.[port].rx_jitter_buffer_enabled Opt: rx_jitter_buffer_enabled	Enables the network jitter buffer. <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Jitter Buffer Size UCI: cesopd.[port].rx_jitter_buffer_size_ms Opt: rx_jitter_buffer_size_ms	Specifies the size of the network jitter buffer. <table> <tr> <td>16</td><td>Defines the size of the network jitter buffer in bytes.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Range</td><td>0-160</td></tr> </table>	16	Defines the size of the network jitter buffer in bytes.	Range	0-160
16	Defines the size of the network jitter buffer in bytes.				
Range	0-160				
Web: Remote Loopback UCI: cesopd.[port].local_loopback Opt: remote_loopback	Enables remote loopback (loops back received pseudo-wire payload data). <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: Local Loopback UCI: cesopd.[port].local_loopback Opt: remote_loopback	Enables local loopback (loops back received TDM data). <table> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Web: N/A UCI: cesopd.[port].app_bit_reverse Opt: app_bit_reverse	Enables reverse bit order of TDM data. N/A for E1 and analogue LL. For X.21 it is more efficient to use the bit_reverse option. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.		
0	Disabled.						
1	Enabled.						
Web: N/A UCI: cesopd.[port].app_rx_shift Opt: app_rx_shift	Specified shifts of TDM data. N/A for E1. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Specifies the shift.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>-7 to 7.</td></tr> </table>	0	Specifies the shift.	Range	-7 to 7.		
0	Specifies the shift.						
Range	-7 to 7.						
E1 port settings Note: for CESoPSN an E1 port is a timeslot or group of timeslots on the E1.							
Web: End UCI: cesopd.[port].e1t1_end Opt: e1t1_end	Specifies the TE/NT mode of the local end of the E1 interface. For CESoPSN this should be defined for first port only. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>TE.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>NT.</td></tr> </table>	0	TE.	1	NT.		
0	TE.						
1	NT.						
Web: Line Code UCI: cesopd.[port].e1t1_line_code Opt: e1t1_line_code	Specifies the line code. For CESoPSN this should be defined for first port only. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>AMI.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>HDB3.</td></tr> </table>	0	AMI.	1	HDB3.		
0	AMI.						
1	HDB3.						
Web: Framing UCI: cesopd.[port].e1t1_framing Opt: e1t1_framing	Specifies the framing. For SAToP this should be set for E1 unframed. For CESoPSN this should be set for E1 double frame or E1 CRC-4 multiframe. For CESoPSN this should be defined for first port only. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>E1 unframed.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>E1 double frame (basic frame).</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>E1 CRC-4 multi-frame</td></tr> </table>	0	E1 unframed.	1	E1 double frame (basic frame).	2	E1 CRC-4 multi-frame
0	E1 unframed.						
1	E1 double frame (basic frame).						
2	E1 CRC-4 multi-frame						
Web: Impedance UCI: cesopd.[port].e1t1_line_code Opt: e1t1_line_code	Specifies the impedance. For CESoPSN this should be defined for first port only. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>75 ohm.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>120 ohm.</td></tr> </table>	0	75 ohm.	1	120 ohm.		
0	75 ohm.						
1	120 ohm.						
Web: Timeslot UCI: cesopd.[port].e1t1_line_code Opt: e1t1_line_code	Specifies the timeslot(s). For multiple timeslots use a colon separated list of timeslots and/or timeslot ranges e.g. 1:5:15-20:30-31 <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Specifies the timeslot</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>SAToP : 0 CESoPSN : 1-31</td></tr> </table>	0	Specifies the timeslot	Range	SAToP : 0 CESoPSN : 1-31		
0	Specifies the timeslot						
Range	SAToP : 0 CESoPSN : 1-31						
Web: Protocol UCI: cesopd.[port].e1t1_protocol Opt: e1t1_protocol	Specifies the protocol. If set for HDLC the timeslot or timeslot group is configured for HDLC and the pseudowire is an HDLC pseudowire. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Transparent (for SAToP/CESoPSN).</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>HDLC.</td></tr> </table>	0	Transparent (for SAToP/CESoPSN).	1	HDLC.		
0	Transparent (for SAToP/CESoPSN).						
1	HDLC.						

Table 177: Information table for advanced port settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description				
Web: DCE UCI: cesopd.[port].dce Opt: dce	Enables DCE mode. N/A for E1 and analogue LL. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				
Web: FIFO IRQ Level UCI: cesopd.[port].fifo_irq_level Opt: fifo_irq_level	Specifies the FIFO IRQ Level. <table> <tr><td>1</td><td>Specifies the IRQ level.</td></tr> <tr><td>Range</td><td>1-5.</td></tr> </table>	1	Specifies the IRQ level.	Range	1-5.
1	Specifies the IRQ level.				
Range	1-5.				
Web: Bit reverse UCI: cesopd.[port].bit_reverse Opt: bit_reverse	Enables reverse bit order of TDM data. <table> <tr><td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> </table>	0	Disabled.	1	Enabled.
0	Disabled.				
1	Enabled.				

Web:X.21 Clock Invert UCI: cesopd.[port].x21_clk_invert Opt: x21_clock_invert	Enables inversion of X.21 clock. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web:X.21 Use VCO UCI: cesopd.[port].x21_use_vco Opt: x21_use_vco	Enables inversion of voltage controlled oscillator. Enable this when using clock recovery. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web:X.21 data delay UCI: cesopd.[port].x21_data_delay Opt: x21_data_delay	Specifies the X.21 data delay in clock cycles. 0 Specifies the data delay. Range 0-7.
Web:Driver Poll Interval UCI: cesopd.[port].tdm_intvl_ms Opt: tdm_intvl_ms	Specifies the driver poll interval in milliseconds. 2 Specifies the poll interval. Range 1-10.

Table 178: Dual X.21 port settings

Web Field / UCI / Package Option	Description
Web:4-Wire Mode UCI: cesop.[port].all_four_wire_mode Opt: all_four_wire_mode	Specifies the analogue LL interface mode. 0 Analogue LL interface operates in 2-wire mode. 1 Analogue LL interface operates in 4-wire mode.
Web: PCM Encoding UCI: cesop.[port].all_pcm_encoding Opt: all_pcm_encoding	Selects the PCM companding algorithm. For more information, see ITU-T G.711 alaw Selects the A-law algorithm. ulaw Selects the μ -law algorithm.
Web: Receive Attenuator Enabled UCI: cesop.[port].all_rx_attenuator_enabled Opt: all_rx_attenuator_enabled	Enables the analogue input attenuator (3.8dB) 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web: Receive Analogue Gain UCI: cesop.[port].all_rx_analogue_gain_enabled Opt: all_rx_analogue_gain_enabled	Enables an analogue 6.02dB input gain. 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web:Transmit Analogue Loss Enabled UCI: cesop.[port].tx_analogue_loss_enabled Opt: all_tx_analogue_loss_enabled	Enables an analogue 6.02dB output loss (attenuation) 0 Disabled. 1 Enabled.
Web: Receive Digital Gain UCI: cesop.[port].all_rx_digital_gain Opt: all_rx_digital_gain	Specifies the input digital gain in dB. 0 Disabled. Range 0-12dB
Web: Transmit Digital Loss UCI: cesop.[port].all_tx_digital_loss Opt: all_tx_digital_loss	Specifies the output digital loss in dB. 0 Disabled. Range 0-12dB

Table 179: Information table for analogue LL port settings

43.8 Configuring port settings using UCI

Settings for the individual ports are stored in the port sections of /etc/config/cesopd

Each port has its own section.

For analogue LL and X.21 and an unframed E1, the port configuration is the configuration for that interface.

For a framed E1, the first port configuration is the configuration for the interface. The first timeslot or group of timeslots, and subsequent ports configurations are the configuration for further timeslots or groups of timeslots. All the ports have the same devname in this case.

The examples below show a port section labelled 'Port 1'.

```
config port 'Port1'
    option enable '1'
    option devname 'ttyLC0'
    option udp_local_ipaddr '0.0.0.0'
    option udp_remote_ipaddr '10.1.42.63'
    option udp_local_port '5152'
    option udp_remote_port '5152'
    option rtp_payload_type '96'
    option rx_jitter_buffer_size_ms '24'
    option rate '64000'
    option clock_recovery_enabled '1'
    option packetization_latency '5'
    .....
    <port config also contains port specific options>
```

43.8.1 E1 interface settings

```
config port 'Port1'
    option enable '1'
    option devname 'ttyU0'
    <generic port options>
    .....
    option e1t1_end '1'
    option e1t1_line_code '1'
    option e1t1_framing '2'
    option e1t1_impedance '1'
    option e1t1_timeslot '1'
    option e1t1_protocol '0'
```

43.8.2 Analogue LL interface settings

```
config port 'Port1'
    option enable '1'
    option devname 'ttyLC0'
    .....
    <generic port options>
    .....
    option all_four_wire_mode '0'
    option all_pcm_encoding 'alaw'
    option all_tx_analogue_loss_enabled '1'
    option all_tx_digital_loss '6'
    option all_rx_analogue_gain_enabled '1'
    option all_rx_digital_gain '2'
    option all_rx_attenuator_enabled '1'
```

43.8.3 Dual X.21 interface settings

```
config port 'Port1'
    option fifo_irq_level '1'
    option bit_reverse '0'
    option x21_clk_invert '0'
    option x21_data_delay '0'
    option x21_use_vco '0'
```

43.9 CESoPSN diagnostics

SAToP/CESoPSN uses one package: cesopd.

To view the SAToP/CESoPSN configuration, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# # uci export cesopd
package cesopd

config cesopd 'main'
    option log_severity '5'
    option enable '1'
config port 'Port1'
    option enable '1'
    option devname 'ttyLC0'
```

The `cesop` command provides several options to investigate the operation of the SAToP/CESoPSN service. The output provided by these commands will allow the Virtual Access support team to assist you.

```
root@VA_router:~# cesop
=== CESOPD diagnostics. Command syntax: ===

cesop show all - show all
cesop show config - show configuration
cesop show status - show status
cesop show stats - show statistics
cesop clear stats - clear statistics
cesop quit - terminate cesopd process
cesop show debug - show diagnostical information
cesop blackbox - show blackbox information
cesop upgrade usbcard - upgrade usb card
cesop show usbcard status - show USB serial card status
cesop show usbcard stats - show USB serial card statistics
cesop clear usbcard stats - clear USB serial card statistics
cesop show usbcard version - show USB serial card firmware version
cesop show usbcard cpld status - show USB serial card CPLD programming
status
cesop bert - configure bit error rate test
cesop show bert stats - show bit error rate test statistics
cesop clear bert stats - clear bit error rate test statistics
```

43.9.1 cesop show config

To show the currently running configuration, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cesop show config
Main Config
-----
enable                : 1
nodaemon              : 0
log_severity          : 5
tos_enabled           : 1
tos_value             : 16
blackbox_enabled      : 0
blackbox_hours        : 10
```

```

blackbox_samples      : 20
adjust_mtu_enable     : 0

Port 1 config
-----

cardType              : USB E1/T1 card
enable                : 1
clock_recovery_enabled : 1
clock_recovery_debug   : 0
remote_loopback       : 0
udp_local_ipaddr      : 1.1.1.1
udp_local_port        : 50151
udp_remote_ipaddr     : 1.1.1.2
udp_remote_port       : 50152
rtp_header_enabled    : 1
rtp_payload_type      : 100
packetization_latency : 8
rx_jitter_buffer_enabled : 0
rx_jitter_buffer_size_ms : 16
app_bit_reverse       : 0
app_rx_shift          : 0
va_prop_payload_redundancy_enabled : 0
devname               : ttyU0
local_loopback        : 0
dce                   : 1
rate                  : 0
ext_clock              : 0
fifo_irq_level        : 1
bit_reverse           : 0
dte_tt_inv            : 0
dce_tclk_inv          : 0
dce_rclk_inv          : 0
x21_clk_invert        : 0
x21_data_delay        : 0
x21_use_vco           : 0
tdm_intvl_ms          : 2
all_four_wire_mode    : 0

```

```

all_pcm_encoding      : alaw
all_rx_attenuator_enabled : 1
all_rx_analogue_gain_enabled : 0
all_tx_analogue_loss_enabled : 0
all_rx_digital_gain    : 0
all_tx_digital_loss    : 0
e1t1_end              : 1
e1t1_line_code         : 1
e1t1_framing           : 2
e1t1_impedance         : 1
e1t1_timeslot          : 1
e1t1_protocol          : 0

```

43.9.2 cesop show status

To show the current operating configuration, enter:

```

root@VA_router:~# cesop show status
Port 1
=====
Clock Recovery Status
-----
Output Voltage      1.769998V
Protocol Status
-----
UDP Session        Open
Remote IP Address   1.1.1.2
Remote UDP Port     50152
Protocol            CESoP
Rx CESoPSN Header L-Bit  0
Rx CESoPSN Header R-Bit  0
Rx CESoPSN Header M-Bits 0
Rx TDM Payload      [55][D5]...
Tx CESoPSN Header L-Bit  0
Tx CESoPSN Header R-Bit  0
Tx CESoPSN Header M-Bits 0
Tx TDM Payload      [D4][51]...
Uptime  40 hrs 45 mins 47 secs

```

43.9.3 cesop show stats

To view SAToP/CESoPSN service statistical information, enter:

```

root@VA_router:~# cesop show stats
Port 1
=====
Serial statistics
-----
Frames read                18359581
Frames written             18359581
Bytes read                 1175013184
Bytes written              1468766480

UDP statistics
-----
Datagrams transmitted      18359581
Datagrams received         18359581
Bytes transmitted         1468766480
Bytes received             1468766480
Transmit failures          0
Receive failures           0

SAToP/CESoP statistics
-----
Rx: header errors          0
Rx: packets lost           1
Rx: lost packets recovered 0
Rx: TDM payload length errors 0

```

43.9.4 cesop clear stats

To reset the statistical counters, enter:

```

root@VA_router:~# cesop clear stats
cesopd stats cleared
cesop show debug

```


The output provided by `cesop show debug` is intended for Virtual Access support technicians and therefore the interpretation of the output produced by `cesop show debug` command is not explained here.

```

root@VA_router:~# cesop show debug

Port 1
=====

Clock Recovery Status
-----

Output Voltage          1.763998V

Protocol Status
-----

UDP Session             Open
Remote IP Address       1.1.1.2
Remote UDP Port         50152
Protocol                CESoP
Rx RTP Payload Type     100
Rx RTP SSRC             87654321
Rx Payload Size         64
Rx CESoPSN Header L-Bit 0
Rx CESoPSN Header R-Bit 0
Rx CESoPSN Header M-Bits 0
Rx TDM Payload          [55][D5]...
Tx RTP Payload Type     100
Tx RTP SSRC             863d24f9
Tx Payload Size         64
Tx CESoPSN Header L-Bit 0
Tx CESoPSN Header R-Bit 0
Tx CESoPSN Header M-Bits 0
Tx TDM Payload          [D5][53]...

Uptime  40 hrs 47 mins 36 secs

Port 1
=====

```

```

Serial statistics
-----
Frames read                1134
Empty frames read          0
Frame read failures        0
Frames written             1135
Frame write failures       0
Incomplete frames written  0
Bytes read                 72576
Bytes written              90800

```

```

UDP statistics
-----
Datagrams transmitted      1136
Datagrams received         1136
Bytes transmitted          90880
Bytes received             90880
Transmit failures          0
Receive failures           0
Receive address errors     0

```

```

SAToP/CESoP statistics
-----
Rx: header errors          0
Rx: packets lost           0
Rx: lost packets recovered 0
Rx: TDM payload length errors 0
Tx: TDM payload length errors 0

```

43.9.5 cesop blackbox show

If enabled, the blackbox records instances of packet loss or the late transmission and reception of packets. The information stored in the blackbox can help Virtual Access support analyse problems such as excessive jitter and packet loss. The information in the blackbox is intended for Virtual Access technicians and therefore, the interpretation of the output produced by `cesop blackbox show` command is not explained here.

```

root@VA_router:~# cesop blackbox show 1
1          1      31      0      1      28      0    2016/01/29@09:51:18
active

```

```

TX Ticks delta (min/mean/max)us:      282      7991      63796
RX Ticks delta (min/mean/max)us:      297      7991      56167

Transmit sample buffers:
2016/01/29@09:51:18      53346      min/mean/max:      282      17846      500728
Local Lost
active  0      min/mean/max:      293      7998      15715

Receive sample buffers:
2016/01/29@09:51:18      2846      min/mean/max:      366      17737      495308
Local Lost
active  0      min/mean/max:      7446      7987      8534

```

43.9.6 cesop upgrade usbcard

The command `cesop upgrade usbcard` re-programs the E1 card with the image in `/lib/firmware/va-usbserial.bin`

The command is used for software upgrade of the E1 card. If an upgrade is necessary the image will be provided by Virtual Access.

The upgrade process is logged on syslog.

```

root@VA_router:~# cesop upgrade usbcard

cesop show usbcard status
To view E1 card status, enter:
root@VA_router:~# cesop show usbcard status
USB-e1t1 card status
-----
Line:
LOS      off
LOF      off
LOMF     off
AIS      off
RDI      off
Unavailable off

```

43.9.7 cesop show usbcard stats

To view E1 card statistical information, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cesop show usbcard stats
USB-e1t1 card stats
-----
Line:
  Frame Alignment Signal Errors 0
  Line Code Errors 0
  CRC Errors 1
  Remote CRC Errors 0
  TX Slips 275
  RX Slips 0
  Errored Seconds          0
  Severely Errored Seconds 0
  Unavailable Seconds      0
Flow 0:
  Bytes TX 1806272 RX 1806336
  Frames TX 0 RX 0
  rxCrcErrors 0 rxLengthErrors 0
  txUnderrunErr 4 txFifoErr 0
  rxOverrunErr 0 rxCrcErr 0 rxLengthErr 0 rxAborts 0
```

43.9.8 cesop clear usbcard stats

To reset the E1 card statistical counters, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cesop clear usbcard stats
USB card stats cleared
```

43.9.9 cesop show usbcard version

To see the E1 card's software, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cesop show usbcard version
USB card firmware version: 2.0.0
```

43.9.10 cesop show usbcard cpld status

The E1 card has a CPLD which is programmed on startup.

To see the result of E1 card's CPLD programming, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cesop show usbcard cpld status
USB card CPLD programming status: 0
```

The status should be **0**.

43.9.11 cesop bert

Use this command to configure bit error rate testing.

Currently supported for E1 card only. The BER pattern is transmitted towards the E1 interface and checked against the received data from the E1 interface. If the E1 is configured as framed the first configured timeslot or group of timeslots is used.

To start the bit error rate test, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cesop bert start
```

To stop the bit error rate test, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cesop bert stop
```

43.9.12 cesop show bert stats

To view the bit error rate test status and statistical counters, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cesop show bert stats
Bit Error Rate Test Status
-----
BERT Sync                OK
Bit errors                0
Bit rate                 64000 bps
Elapsed time             23 seconds
```

43.9.13 cesop clear bert stats

To reset the bit error rate test statistical counters, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cesop clear bert stats
bert stats cleared
```

44 Configuring ISDN pseudowire

ISDN pseudowire is an optional interface on the GW6600V and GW7600V Series.

44.1 Introduction

ISDN pseudowire is delivered via an ISDN S/T interface in NT mode. This allows you to connect existing ISDN equipment with BRI interfaces, such as phones, audio contribution boxes, and so on, directly to the Virtual Access router.

When the ISDN equipment attempts to make a call, its messages are converted into SIP/RTP protocol and relayed to a provider, such as the GW7610-PRI. The GW7610-PRI is connected directly to a real ISDN network and converts the messages received over SIP/RTP back into native ISDN messages for the real ISDN network.

In this way, access to the real ISDN network is extended to the remote site over IP and the equipment at the remote site that is connected to GW6610V-ISDN will be able to make and receive calls to and from any number on the real network.

The router is equipped with an ADSL WAN interface and is the interface of choice for connecting the device to the core network.

Note: success of the pseudowire relies on the network's ability to transfer the data without loss between the Virtual Access router and the provider. IP packet loss will result in momentary corruption of data, typically around 20 milliseconds in length. If you apply a codec to the data content, the codec may need to resynchronise the data stream, resulting in a larger outage of length determined solely by the codec.

When configuring ISDN pseudowire, you must decide the device's role. A device typically acts as a client, which is the usual role for a GW6610V-ISDN provider or for GW6610V-ISDN in a back-to-back scenario.

The following sections explain the configuration of two scenarios using a GW6610V-F-ISDN as an example.

- GW6610V-F-ISDN in client role
 - This allows ISDN user equipment connected to the GW6610V-F-ISDN unit to reach or be reached from any number on the ISDN network available at the provider, typically a GW7610-PRI.
- GW6610V-F-ISDN in client and provider role
 - This allows ISDN user equipment connected to the GW6610V-F-ISDN unit on one site connect to ISDN user equipment at another site, where there is another GW6610V-F-ISDN unit.

44.2 Pseudowire functionality

Two packages are used to control the ISDN to SIP/RTP conversion: LCR and Asterisk.

Package	Sections
lcr	main
asterisk	export

LCR acts as a channel driver and allows asterisk to access the ISDN hardware.

Asterisk then sends SIP messages to the provider to establish communications channels and forwards the data content of active ISDN B channels over RTP.

The router has an automatic clock recovery feature to allow the BRI interface to effectively run at the same clock rate as the provider.

44.3 ISDN pseudowire in client role

The most typical scenario for the GW6610V-F-ISDN is for it to act in a client role whereby locally attached ISDN equipment can make and receive calls on a remote ISDN network over an IP network, typically via the ADSL interface on the GW6610V-F-ISDN router.

In the example below it is assumed the routers involved have the following attributes:

- GW6610V-F-ISDN client has two MSNs (Multiple Subscriber Numbers): 384720 and 384721
- A provider exists at 10.1.23.15

44.3.1 Configuring LCR for ISDN pseudowire in a client role

You only need to configure LCR with the MSN of the user equipment connected to the BRI interface on the router. Most ISDN user equipment supports two or more MSNs.

LCR configuration files are stored on: /etc/config/lcr

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export lcr
package lcr

config lcr 'main'
    option enable '1'
    list msn '384720'
    list msn '384721'
```

UCI / Package Option	Description				
UCI: config.lcr.main.enable Opt: enable	Specifies whether or not LRC should run and allow asterisk access to the ISDN hardware. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
UCI: config.lcr.main.msn Opt: list msn	Specifies the MSN number that the ISDN user equipment is configured to respond to. You can configure multiple MSN's as list entries.				

Configuring Asterisk ISDN pseudowire in a client role

You must configure Asterisk with an identifying address, to enable it to reach the provider and credentials.

Asterisk configuration files are stored on **/etc/config/asterisk**

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export asterisk
package asterisk

config provider
    option host '10.1.23.15'
    option hostport '5060'
    option username 'usernameForUnit20'
    option secret 'secretForUnit20'
```

UCI / Package Option	Description
UCI: config.provider.host Opt: host	Specifies the IP address of the provider to register with.
UCI: config.provider.hostport Opt: hostport	Specifies the port to send registration requests to.
UCI: config.provider.username Opt: username	Specifies the username to present to the provider to identify this site. Note: The provider will be configured with an association for this username and an MSN hosted by this unit. Calls to MSN's configured on this site will only be routed to this site if the provider is configured with the appropriate username/password/MSN triplet.
UCI: config.provider.secret Opt: secret	Specifies the password to present to the provider to identify this site.

44.4 ISDN pseudowire in client and provider role (back-to-back)

Another scenario is to use two routers to connect two sites so that they can make and receive ISDN between one another over IP. As the entire network is self-contained, you can choose any numbering plan and it does not need to agree with 'real-world' numbering.

In the example below it is assumed the routers involved have the following attributes. Typically this scenario would be implemented using two GW6610V-F-ISDN routers.

- First GW6610V-F-ISDN client
 - o has two MSNs: 384720 and 384721
 - o exists at address 10.1.183.20
- Second GWX610V-F-ISDN client
 - o has two MSNs 384740 and 384741
 - o exists at address 10.1.183.40

44.4.1 Configuring LCR for ISDN pseudowire in a client and provider role

You only need to connect LCR with the MSNs of the user equipment connected to the BRI interface on the router. Most ISDN user equipment supports two or more MSNs.

LCR configuration files are stored on **/etc/config/lcr**

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export lcr
package lcr

config lcr 'main'
    option enable '1'
    list msn '384720'
    list msn '384721'
```

UCI / Package Option	Description				
UCI: config lcr.main.enable Opt: enable	Specifies whether or not LRC should run and allow asterisk access to the ISDN hardware. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td><td>Enabled.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Disabled.</td></tr> </table>	1	Enabled.	0	Disabled.
1	Enabled.				
0	Disabled.				
UCI: config.lcr.main.msn Opt: list msn	Specifies the MSN number that the ISDN user equipment is configured to respond to. You can configure multiple MSN's as list entries.				

44.4.2 Configuring Asterisk for ISDN pseudowire in a client and provider role

You must configure Asterisk with an identifying address, to enable it to reach the provider and credentials.

In addition you must configure details of the remote ISDN equipment that is connecting to this router using the config client options

Asterisk configuration files are stored on **/etc/config/asterisk**

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export asterisk
package asterisk
```

```

config provider
    option host '10.1.183.40'
    option hostport '5060'
    option username 'usernameForUnit20'
    option secret 'secretForUnit20'

config client
    option username 'usernameForUnit40'
    option secret 'secretForUnit40'
    option msn '384740'

config client
    option username 'usernameForUnit40' #typically same as above
    option secret 'secretForUnit40' #typically same as above
    option msn '384741'

```

UCI / Package Option	Description
UCI: config.provider.host Opt: host	Specifies the IP address of the provider to register with.
UCI: config.provider.hostport Opt: hostport	Specifies the port to send registration requests to.
UCI: config.provider.username Opt: username	Specifies the username to present to the provider to identify this site. Note: The provider will be configured with an association for this username and an MSN hosted by this unit. Calls to MSNs configured on this site will only be routed to this site if the provider is configured with the appropriate username/password/MSN triplet.
UCI: config.provider.secret Opt: secret	Specifies the password to present to the provider to identify this site.

Table 180: Options for provider configurations

UCI / Package Option	Description
UCI: config.client.address Opt: address	Specifies the IP address of the client that register with.
UCI: config.client.network_prefix Opt: network_prefix	Optional prefix presented by ISDN (phone network) before MSN, e.g. access or area code.
UCI: config.client.msn Opt: msn	Subscriber Number, i.e. phone number assigned to clients of phone service provider.
UCI: config.client.username Opt: username	Specifies the username to present to the provider to identify this site. Note: The provider will be configured with an association for this username and an MSN hosted by this unit. Calls to MSN's configured on this site will only be routed to this site if the provider is configured with the appropriate username/password/MSN triplet.
UCI: config.client.secret Opt: secret	Specifies the password to present to the provider to identify this site.

Table 181: Options for client configurations

Note: the configuration for the provider in back-to-back mode is identical to that for client only mode. This is because, as in client mode, the unit must simply register with a provider and prove its identity.

To complete the configuration, the settings must also allow the other GW6610V-F-ISDN unit in the back-to-back pair to connect to this unit. To do so, one 'client' section is required for each MSN number hosted by the other GW6610V-F-ISDN unit. As most ISDN equipment supports at least two MSN numbers, there are typically two or more such sections.

Note: on the other device there will also be an LCR configuration and an Asterisk configuration where the provider and client sections are swapped.

A typical example of an asterisk and LCR configuration for the other unit in a back-to-back configuration is shown below.

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export lcr
package lcr

config lcr 'main'
    option enable '1'
    list msn '384740'
    list msn '384741'

root@VA_router:~# uci export asterisk
package asterisk

config provider
    option host '10.1.183.20'
    option hostport '5060'
    option username 'usernameForUnit40'
    option secret 'secretForUnit40'

config client
    option username 'usernameForUnit20'
    option secret 'secretForUnit20'
    option msn '384720'

config client
    option username 'usernameForUnit20' #typically same as above
    option secret 'secretForUnit20' #typically same as above
    option msn '384721'
```

45 Configuring a leased line interface

The Leased Line (LL) interface provides a 2- or 4-wire analogue interface. The behaviour of the interface depends on the application using it. The interface can currently be used with two applications: Terminal Server or CESoPSN.

The LL interface has the device name 'ttyLC0'.

45.1 Terminal Server: V.23 modem emulation

When used with the Terminal Server application the LL interface enables a V.23 modem emulation. The V.23 modem emulation passes the decoded modem call data to the terminal server application.

Note: gain and attenuation cannot currently be controlled when operating in V.23 modem emulation mode.

45.2 CESoPSN: transparent mode

When used with CESoPSN, the PCM encoded data is passed transparently to the application which then encapsulates in CESoPSN data packets.

45.3 Gain and attenuation control

The LL interface provides you with the possibility to adjust the gain and attenuation. The following diagram shows the signal flow and the options available to control it.

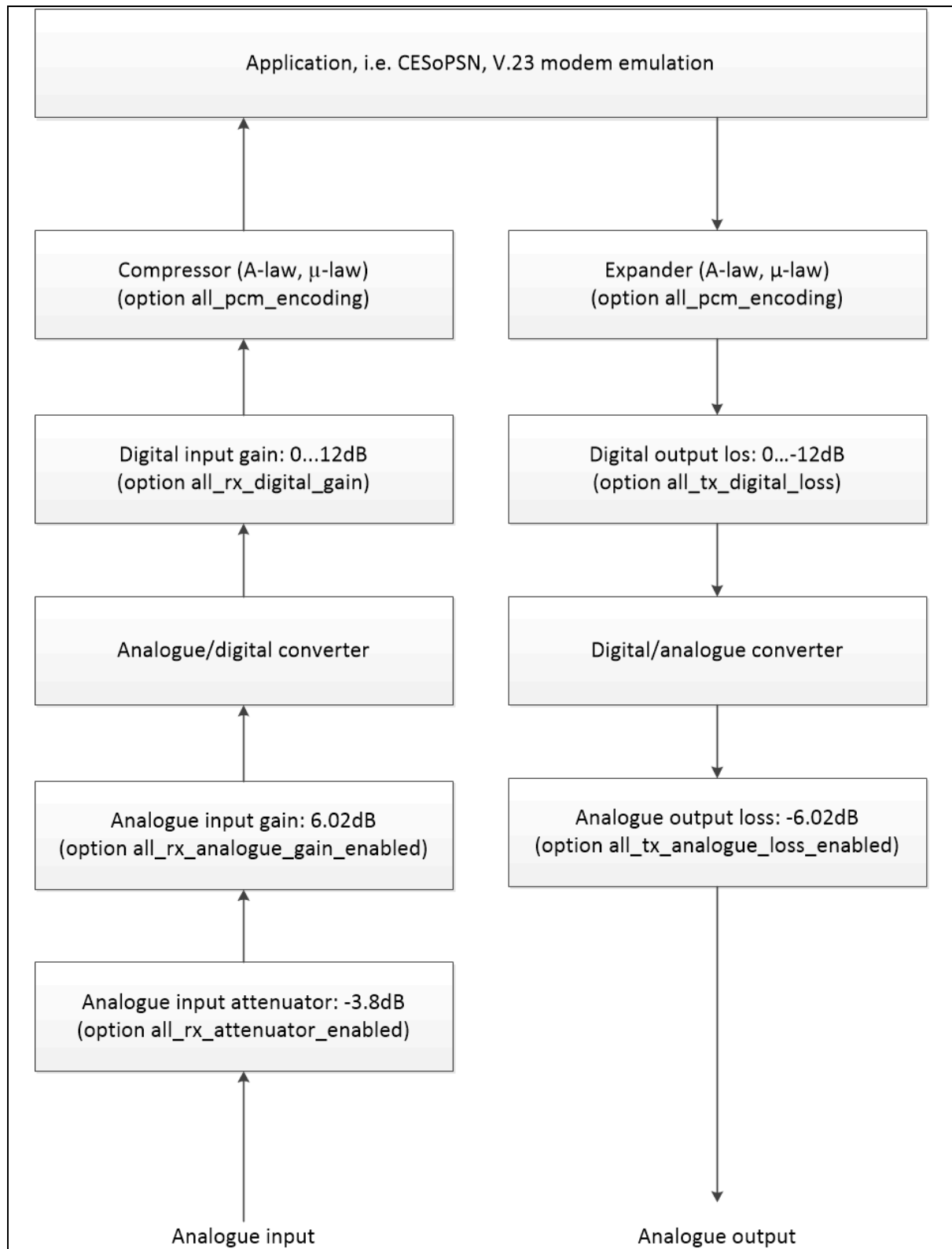


Figure 238: Gain and attenuation flow

45.4 Leased line (LL) status

To view the status of the LL interface, enter:

```
va5420_status /dev/ttyLC0
```

The following output is shown:

```
root@client_B:~#
root@client_B:~# va5420_status /dev/ttyLC0
Mode:          Transparent
Wire mode:     2-wire
PCM Encoding:  A-Law
root@client_B:~#
```

45.5 Leased line (LL) statistics

To view statistical information about the LL interface, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# va5420_stats /dev/ttyLC0
TRANSMIT STATS
    tx bytes          44661000
    tx buffer full counts  0
    tx underruns       289
    tx discards (bytes) 16280

RECEIVE STATS
    rx bytes          44692864
    rx overruns        33
    rx discards (bytes) 0

V.23 MODE STATS
    rx bytes          0
    tx bytes          0
    rx samples         0
    tx samples         0
    rx carrier on      0
    tx carrier on      0
```

Tx underruns or discards can indicate that recovery clock algorithm has not synchronized yet or there is no jitter buffer enabled in the CESoP configuration if network is jittery.

Note: enabling a jitter buffer will add latency.

To see whether a jitter buffer is enabled and what size it is, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# uci export cesopd

package cesopd

config cesopd 'main'
    option log_severity '5'
    option enable '1'

config port 'Port1'
    ....
    option rx_jitter_buffer_enabled '1'
    option rx_ _buffer_size_ms '20'
```

If the cesop application is running, to check stats, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# cesop show config
Main Config
-----
enable                : 1
nodaemon              : 0
log_severity          : 7
...

Port 1 config
-----
cardType              : Single AAL card
enable                : 1
clock_recovery_enabled : 1
clock_recovery_debug   : 1
...
rx_jitter_buffer_enabled : 0
rx_jitter_buffer_size_ms : 24
```

45.5.1 Leased line (LL) statistics clearing

To clear statistics for LL interface, enter:

```
root@VA_router:~# va5420_stats_reset /dev/ttyLC0
Statistics reset
```

45.6 LL wiring

45.6.1 2-wire

- RJ11 RJ45
- 2 RED (TIP) 5 tx/rx
- 3 GREEN (RING) 4 tx/rx

45.6.2 4-wire

- RJ-11 RJ-45
- 1 YELLOW (TIP1) 5 TIP1
- 2 RED (TIP) 6 TIP
- 3 GREEN (RING) 3 RING
- 4 BLACK (RING1) 4 RING1

45.6.3 RJ45

- 1 not connected
- 2 not connected
- 3 RX
- 4 TX
- 5 TX
- 6 RX
- 7 not connected
- 8 not connected

46 Serial interface

46.1 Overview

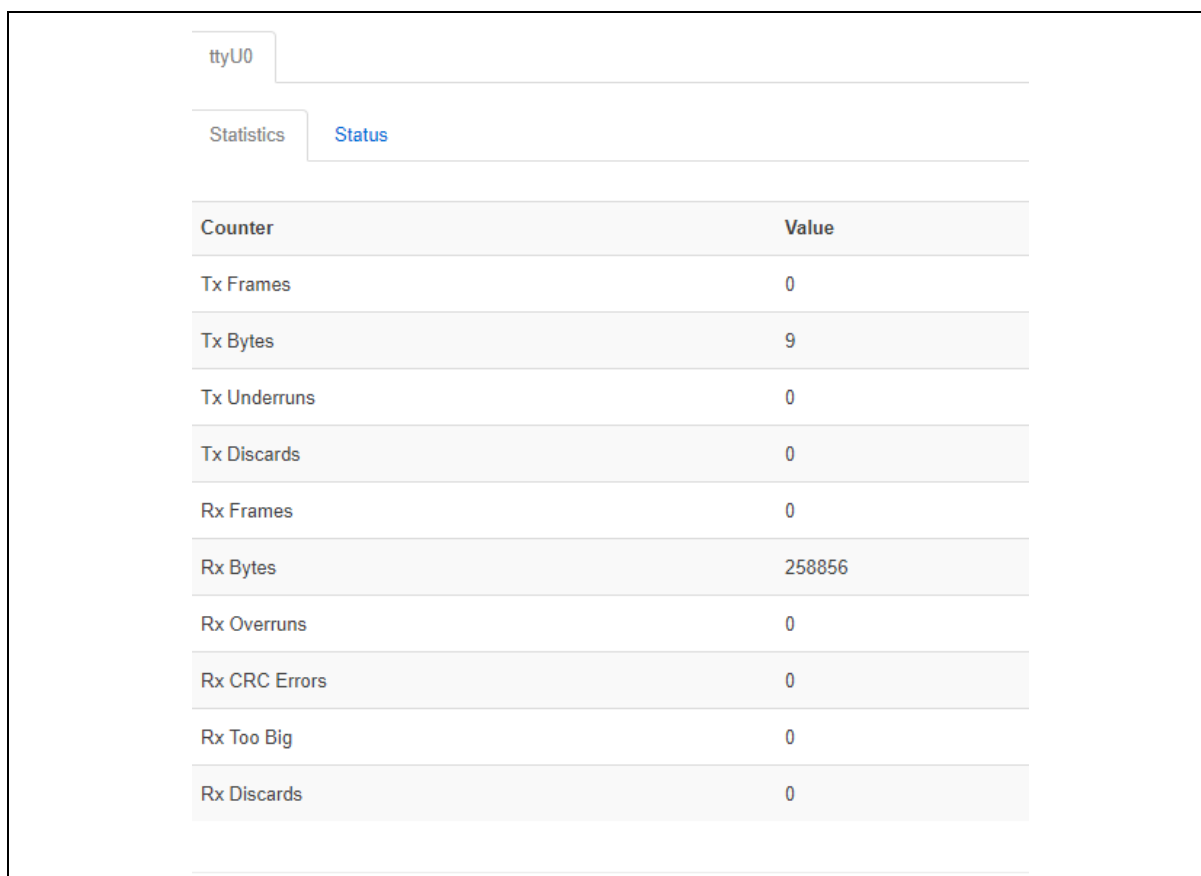
Many different applications and device drivers use the serial interface. You configure the serial interface using the relevant application; for example Terminal Server, therefore there is no standalone serial configuration page.

You can monitor the various serial interfaces using either the command line or the web interface.

46.2 Monitoring serial interfaces using the web interface

In the top menu, select **Status -> Serial Interfaces**. Depending on the number of serial interfaces present in the device, a number of tabs will appear giving access to information about each interface. The information presented will also depend on the actual type of the serial interface.

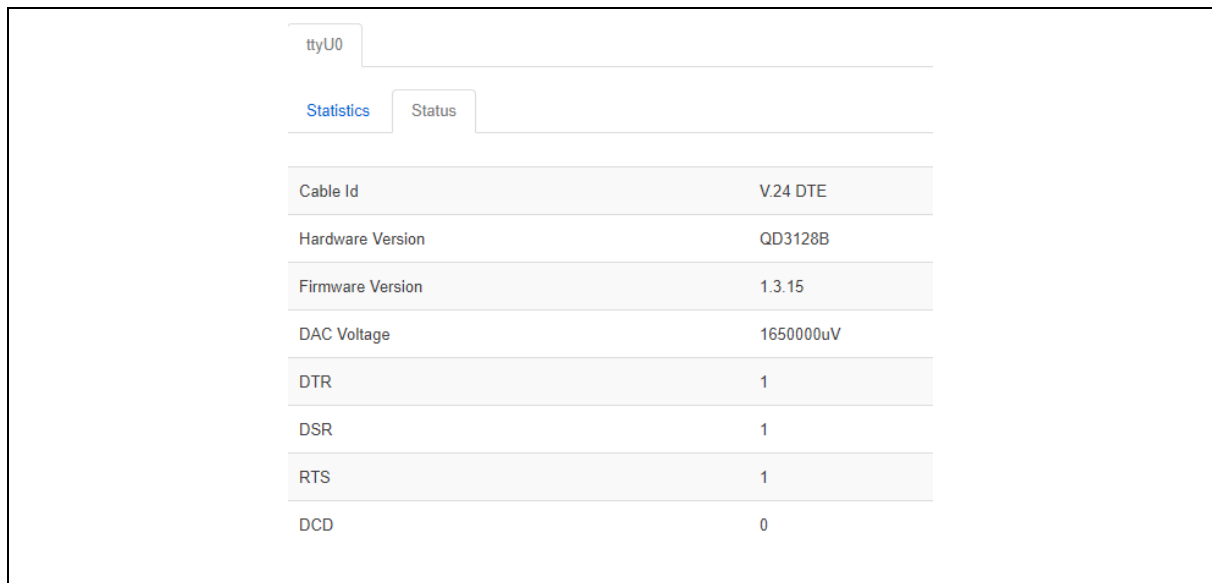
46.2.1 Serial statistics



ttyU0	
Statistics	Status
Counter	Value
Tx Frames	0
Tx Bytes	9
Tx Underruns	0
Tx Discards	0
Rx Frames	0
Rx Bytes	258856
Rx Overruns	0
Rx CRC Errors	0
Rx Too Big	0
Rx Discards	0

Figure 239: The serial statistics page for serial-0

46.2.2 Serial status



Cable Id	V.24 DTE
Hardware Version	QD3128B
Firmware Version	1.3.15
DAC Voltage	1650000uV
DTR	1
DSR	1
RTS	1
DCD	0

Figure 240: The serial status page for serial-0

46.3 Monitoring serial interfaces using command line

46.3.1 Serial statistics using command line

To view serial statistics, enter: `serial_stats`.

```
root@VirtualAccess:~# serial_stats
ttyU0 statistics
Tx Frames          0
Tx Bytes           9
Tx Underruns       0
Tx Discards        0
Rx Frames          0
Rx Bytes          258856
Rx Overruns        0
Rx CRC Errors      0
Rx Too Big         0
Rx Discards        0
```

46.3.2 Serial status using command line

To view serial statistics, enter: `serial_status`.

```
root@VirtualAccess:~# serial_status
ttyU0 status
Cable Id          V.24 DTE
Hardware Version   QD3128B
Firmware Version   1.3.15
DAC Voltage        1650000uV
DTR                1
DSR                1
RTS                1
DCD                0
```

46.3.3 Resetting serial statistics

To reset serial statistics, enter: `serial_stats_reset`.

```
root@VirtualAccess:~# serial_stats_reset ttyU0
Serial interface statistics reset
```

You can reset statistics for all or individual serial interfaces.